Plan A

1 **6 Units**

18

Lectures

المحاضرة	المحتوى
الأولى	Part One: Lessons 1&2
الثانية	Part Two: Lessons 3&4
الثالثة	Part Three: Lessons 5&6

Or **Plan B**

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

2 **6 Units**

12

Lectures

المحاضرة	المحتوى
الأولى	Part One: Lessons 1&2
الثانية	Part Two: Lessons 3&4

ياريت تدعو للشخص اللي قام بتصوير الكتاب

3

2

Lectures

المحاضرة	المحتوى
الأولى	Part Three: Lessons 5&6 الوحدات ٣،٢،١
الثانية	Part Three: Lessons 5&6 الوحدات ٦،٥،٤

Total

☆ وبذلك تكون قد انتهيت من دراسة المنهج بالكامل كالآتى:

المحاضرة	المحتوى
١٨ محاضرة	Plan A
١٤ محاضرة	Plan B

تنويه: تختلف الخطة الزمنية بحسب طريقة وأسلوب كل معلم وطالب والوقت المتاح له.

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

MODULE 1 Making history

UNIT 7 The meaning of success ..... page 12

UNIT 8 Work experience ..... page 73

UNIT 9 Starting again ..... page 148

Revision 3 ..... page 227

MODULE 2 Working well

UNIT 10 Places of cultural interest ..... page 233

UNIT 11 Finding your culture ..... page 309

UNIT 12 Myths and fables ..... page 393

Revision 4 ..... page 475

NOVEL on Great Expectations page 481

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

Learning Outcomes :

- **Reading :**
  An article about achieving success despite challenges
- **Writing :**
  An invitation to an event
- **Listening :**
  A short lecture about what successful people have in common
- **Speaking :**
  Research, plan and give a presentation abo a successful person
- **Language :**
  Present perfect simple versus present perfe continuous; adverbs and adjectives (review)
- **Life skills :**
  Critical thinking: Evaluate the meaning of success; Problem solving: How to achieve set goals



موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

لإتقان الوحدة

- لإتقان المفردات اللغوية (حفظ الكلمات) فى ملحق بنك الأسئلة.
- بنك الأسئلة والامتحانات التدريبية.
- دليل المعاصر فى المهارات.
- دليل المعاصر فى القواعد اللغوية.
- قاموس المعاصر اللغوى.
- تدريبات للأزهر الشريف فى نهاية كل وحدة وملحق بنك الأسئلة.

Part I Vocabulary

تنويه • اختبر مدى اتقانك للمفردات الرئيسية فى كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

achieve(d) (v)	يُنجز - يحقق	inspiring(adj)	مُلهم
achievement(n)	إنجاز	inspiration(n)	إلهام
administrative(adj)	إداري	powerlifting(n)	رياضة القوة - رفع الأثقال
challenge (d) (v/n)	يتحدى - تَحَدِّي	quality(n)	سِمة - خاصية
combine(d) (v)	يربط - يجمع/يضم	quote(d) (v/n)	يقتبس - اقتباس
councillor(n)	عضو مجلس - قنصل	signposting(n)	إرشاد - لافتة - دلالة
impress(ed) (v)	يُبهِر - يثير إعجاب	signposting language (n)	اللغة الدلالية
impressive(adj)	مُبهِر	success(n)	النجاح
independent(adj)	مُستقل		
inspire(d) (v)	يُلهم - يُحفِّز		

تنويه • المفردات اللغوية باللون الأحمر هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية.

2 Important Vocabulary

assistant(n)	مُساعد	male(n/adj)	ذَكَر - مذكر
average(adj/n)	عادي - المتوسط	muscle(n)	عضلة
averagely(adv)	في المعدّل/ في المتوسط	opportunity(n)	فُرصة
celebrate(d) (v)	يحتفل بـ/يُحيي مُناسبة	overcome - overcame - overcome (v)	يتغلب علي
certain(adj)	مُتأكِّد	opportunity(n)	فُرْصة
championship(n)	بطولة	Paralympics(n)	الألعاب الأوليمبية لذوي الهمم
childhood(n)	الطفولة	paraphrase(d) (v)	يشرح/يُفسِّر
choice(n)	اختيار	perform(ed) (v)	يؤدي
coach(n)	مُدرب	persevere(d) (v)	يثابر - يناضل
colleague(n)	زميل عمل	physical(adj)	بدني/جسدي
committee(n)	لجنة	polio = (poliomyelitis) (n)	شلل الأطفال
demonstrate(d) (v)	يوضح	presentation(n)	عرض تقديمي
determination(n)	العزم - التصميم	psychologist(n)	عالم نفس
determined(adj)	مُصمِّم - عاقد العزم		

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

disability(n)	صعوبة/إعاقة
Downs Syndrome(n)	متلازمة داون
enthusiastic(adj)	مُتحمس – شغوف
evaluate(d) (v)	يُقيِّم – يُقدِّر
extremely(adv)	للغاية
facilities(n)	مَرافق – تسهيلات
female(n/adj)	أنثي – مؤنث
highlight(ed) (v)	يُبرز – يُظلل
identify(ied) (v)	يُحدد
interest(ed) (n/v)	اهتمام – يثير اهتمام
lecture(n)	محاضرة
lift(ed) (v)	يرفع
majority(n)	الأغلبية
qualities	سمات/خصائص
role model(n)	مَثَل أعلي/قدوة
significant(adj)	كبير/ملحوظ
silver(n)	ميدالية فضية – الفضة
specific(adj)	مُحدَّد
summarise(d) (v)	يُلخص
success(n)	النجاح
task(n)	مَهمَّة/تكليف
treat(ed) (v)	يُعامل – يعالج
Valladolid(n)	بلد الوليد
value(n)	قيمة
vast (adj)	كبير – عظيم
vote(d) (n/v)	تصويت/اقتراع – يُصوِّت/يقترع
whisper (ed) (v/n)	يهمس – همسة

3 Definitions تعريفات

administrative (adj) إداري (خاص بالإدارة)	relating to the work of managing a company or organization
challenge (n) تَحَدِّي	something that tests strength القوة, skill, or ability, especially in a way that is interesting
combine(d) (v) يجمع بين / يضم	to do two different activities at the same time
councillor(n) عضو مجلس	a member of a council مجلس
impressive(adj) مُبهِر	making you admire يُعجب بـ it because it is very good, large, important, etc.
independent(adj) مُستقل	confident واثق and able to do things by yourself in your own way, without needing help or advice from other people
inspiration(n) إلهام	- a person, experience, place, etc. that gives you new ideas for something you do - a good idea about what you should do, write, say, etc., especially one which you get suddenly
quality(n) سِمة – خاصية	something that people may have as part of their character, for example courage or intelligence
quote(d) (v) يقتبس	to give a piece of information that is written dow... somewhere

Exercise On Vocabulary • Understand

• ✪ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

1 Key vocabulary

1. Diets are most effective when ..... with exercise. *(LM)*
   a. dealt b. prevented c. separated d. combined

2. Because of his accomplishments, my father has always been a/an ..... to my sons; he is their favourite role model. *(LM)*
   a. inspiration b. respiration c. hindrance d. obstacle

3. My uncle is an ..... assistant at the City Council. *(LM)*
   a. administrative b. administrations
   c. administrate d. administrator

4. Don't expect to ..... immediate success because it could take a long time. *(LM)*
   a. achieve b. relieve c. believe d. deceive

5. I was really fascinated; the view was ..... . *(LM)*
   a. impressing b. impression c. impressive d. impress

6. The project is a real .....; we have achieved high profits. *(LM)*
   a. successful b. success c. succession d. successive

7. Which ..... do successful people share, so they can keep making progress? *(LM)*
   a. quantities b. qualities c. demerits d. obstacles

8. Efficient teachers usually use different strategies to assess students' ..... at school. *(Practice Ex. 3)*
   a. replacement b. movement
   c. achievement d. encouragement

9. The new hotel is very ..... . It has 200 rooms and three swimming pools by the sea. *(Practice Ex. 4)*
   a. impressive b. impress c. impressed d. impression

10. To me, secondary 3 is a/an ..... I work hard to overcome.
    a. achievement b. success c. inspiration d. challenge

11. Teenagers look forward to being totally ..... of their families.
a. inspiring b. independent c. impressive d. administrative

12. Your performance has ..... us. You're really talented.
a. evaluated b. combined c. impressed d. paraphrased

13. Poets find nature ..... . It is the source of the ideas for most poems.
a. inspiring b. independent c. impressed d. administrative

14. I began ..... at 14, and at 20 I got into boxing.
a. value b. powerlifting c. polio d. Syndrome

15. As a writer, Naguib Mahfouz found ..... for his novels in the Cairo society around him.
a. achievement b. success c. inspiration d. challenge

16. The great achievements Dr Zewail made ..... young scientists.
a. evaluate b. combine c. summarise d. inspire

17. Criminals ..... the authority of law, so they are punished by law.
a. challenge b. achieve c. overcome d. treat

2 Important vocabulary

18. Success in life is based on hard work and ..... . *(LM)*
a. aviation b. elimination c. deterioration d. determination

19. The champion was able to ..... his physical disability and win the gold medal. *(LM)*
a. overcome b. overhear c. overdo d. oversleep

20. You should ..... the lecture by using key words if you don't need to remember the details. *(LM)*
a. confuse b. paraphrase c. delete d. refuse

21. You don't have to .....; no one can hear us. *(LM)*
a. cry b. whisper c. shout d. speak

22. Successful people are always looking for new ..... to learn more and develop their skills. *(LM)*
a. results b. disadvantages
c. obstacles d. opportunities

23. Rehab is ....., but that hasn't stopped her from working out. *(LM)*
a. disabled b. unable c. fit d. ready

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

24. He can't move; he has a ..... problem with his leg. *(LM)*
a. psychological b. physical c. chemical d. biological

25. I sent my complaint شكوي to the local ..... .
a. quote b. disability c. role model d. councillor

26. We need to ..... the new system to see how much we've achieved.
a. evaluate b. combine c. impress d. inspire

27. I have a cousin who suffers from Downs ..... .
a. value b. powerlifting c. polio d. Syndrome

28. I was careful to attend Professor Sallam's ..... .
a. votes b. averages c. lectures d. Paralympics

29. Teenagers like it when you ..... them like grown-ups.
a. challenge b. achieve c. overcome d. treat

30. My father is ..... about football. He never misses watching a match.
a. enthusiastic b. significant c. male d. female

31. I won't go out until I finish the ..... in hand.
a. facility b. task c. polio d. Syndrome

32. I look up to my father. He is my ..... .
a. quote b. disability c. role model d. modal

33. The first symptoms أعراض of ..... are fever الحُمَّي, headache and a stiff neck.
a. value b. powerlifting c. polio d. Syndrome

34. Giving a/an ..... needs a lot of careful preparation.
a. determination b. presentation c. opportunity d. championship

35. Despite her disability, she won the gold in the ..... .
a. Olympics b. average c. lecture d. Paralympics

36. My father has played a/an ..... role in my life. I am all his.
a. enthusiastic b. significant c. male d. female

37. Mrs Nadene, my secretary, ... the long report in only two pages.
a. evaluated b. combined c. summarised d. inspired

38. Our city lacks the car parking ..... .
a. facility b. task c. polio d. Syndrome

39. I think Liverpool will win the ..... this year.
a. determination b. presentation c. opportunity d. championship

40. He won the ..... and became a member of the local council.
a. vote b. average c. lecture d. Paralympic

41. Sometimes, ... is what encourages a person to prove he is not less than ordinary people.
a. quote b. disability c. role model d. councillor

42. Take this job, Omar. It is a/an ..... that is rarely available.
a. determination b. presentation c. opportunity d. championship

3 Definitions

43. A ..... is a member of a council.
a. counsellor b. councillor c. challenge d. role model

44. A/An ..... is a good idea about what you should do, write, say, etc., especially one which you get suddenly.
a. inspiration b. value c. challenge d. role model

45. ..... means confident and able to do things by yourself in your own way, without needing help or advice from other people.
a. Specific b. Independent c. Extreme d. Impressive

46. To ..... is to do two different activities at the same time.
a. combine b. overcome c. treat d. evaluate

47. Something that is ..... means making you admire it because it is very good, large, important, etc.
a. specific b. independent c. extreme d. impressive

48. A/An ..... is something that tests strength, skill, or ability, especially in a way that is interesting.
a. inspiration b. value c. challenge d. role model

49. ..... means relating to the work of managing a company or organisation.
a. Administrative b. Independent c. Impressive d. Ugly

50. A ..... is something that people may have as part of their character, for example courage or intelligence.
a. counsellor b. councillor c. challenge d. quality

51. To ..... is to give a piece of information that is written down somewhere.
a. combine b. overcome c. quote d. evaluate

Part II Vocabulary Study

تنويه ساعد مُعلمك على الإرتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مُسبقًا بشكل جيد.

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

achieve	an important position يُحقق مكانة هامة	**make**	... a success يجعل ... ناجحًا
	set goals يُحقق الأهداف الموضوعة		a successful student يجعل الطالب ناجح
	success يحقق نجاح		their own choices يختاروا
become	free يُصبح متاحًا	**overcome**	a challenge يكسب التحدِّي
catch	a disease يُصاب بمرض	**play**	the drums يُطبِّل - يدق الطبلة
change	people's mind يُغيِّر رأي الناس	**set**	goals يحدد أهداف
do	a sport يمارس رياضة the housework يقوم بالأعمال المنزلية well يؤدي جيدًا	**take**	a break يأخذ استراحة care of يرعي/يعتني بـ notes يدوِّن ملاحظات
give	a presentation يقدم عرض تقديمي	**treat**	... with respect يعامل ... باحترام
have	... in common بينهم ... مشتركة	**win**	the vote يفوز في اقتراع (انتخابات)

Mini Test 1 Collocations

✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. His hard work stands behind the important position he has ..... .
   a. done b. achieved c. treated d. made
2. I have to work hard to achieve the goals I've ..... for myself.
   a. caught b. taken c. achieved d. set
3. The qualities we ..... in common make us a matching couple.
   a. change b. give c. have d. win
4. It is better for children to let them ..... their own choices.
   a. do b. overcome c. become d. make

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

5. Be careful, otherwise, you'll ..... diseases.
   a. catch b. win c. achieve d. set
6. The most sociable student ..... the class vote.
   a. became b. gave c. played d. won
7. Fortunately, I ..... well in the final exam.
   a. did b. had c. treated d. made
8. Here's a pen and a notebook in case you need to take ..... .
   a. a break b. care of c. notes d. out
9. I am to ..... a presentation at the next meeting.
   a. change b. give c. set d. win

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
achieve (v)	يُنجز - يحقق	reach / realise / fulfil / carry out
impressive(adj)	مُبهِر	admirable
independent(adj)	مُستقل	self-reliant
inspiration(n)	إلهام	motivation
overcome (v)	يتغلب علي	defeat / beat / conquer

3 Antonyms متضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)	
achieve (v)	يُنجز - يحقق	fail/miss	يفشل
impressive(adj)	مُبهِر	unimpressive/ ordinary	غير مُبهِر/عادي
independent(adj)	مُستقل	dependent	مُعتمِد/متواكل
success(n)	النجاح	failure	الفشل

Mini Test 2 Synonyms & Antonyms

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. "You need to overcome your fear of heights." The verb 'overcome' in this context is a synonym of ..... .
   a. reach b. conquer c. fail d. mess
2. When one is a success, this means they're not ..... .
   a. a triumph b. winners c. successful d. a failure
3. "I've achieved nearly all my goals." The verb 'achieved' here is an antonym of ..... .
   a. failed b. realised c. reached d. b & c

4. "He's made an impressive achievement." The adjective 'impressive' here can be replaced by ..... .
   a. admired b. admirable c. ordinary d. usual

4 Derivatives المشتقات

Verb	Noun	Adjective
achieve يُنجِز - يحقق	achievement إنجاز	achievable يمكن تحقيقه
administrate / administer يدير	administration الإدارة	administrative إداري (خاص بالإدارة)
challenge يتحدَّي	challenge تَحَدِّي	challenging يمثل أو يشكل تحدى - صعب التحقيق
combine يجمع بين - يضم - يربط	combination مزيج - خليط - توليفة - المزج - الخلط	combined مترابط - ممتزج
impress يُبهِر - يثير إعجاب	impression انطباع - تأثير - أثر	impressive مُبهِر - شديد التأثير
	independence استقلالية	independent مُستقل
inspire يُلهِم	inspiration إلهام	inspiring مُلهِم inspirational مُشَجِّع/ مُحفِّز
succeed ينجح	success النجاح	successful ناجح

Mini Test 3 Derivatives

• ✪ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. Mohammed Salah is a source of ..... to so many young people.
   a. inspires b. inspired c. inspiration d. b& c
2. Mohammed Salah ..... so many young people.
   a. inspires b. inspiring c. inspiration d. b& c
3. Mohammed Salah is ..... to so many young people.
   a. inspire b. inspiring c. inspirations d. b& c
4. She is a ..... .
   a. succeeds b. success c. successful d. successfully
5. She is ..... .
   a. succeeds b. success c. successful d. successfully
6. She has achieved her goal ..... .
   a. succeeds b. success c. successful d. successfully
7. The performance of the team ..... all fans.
   a. impressed b. impression c. impressive d. impress

8. The performance of the team gave a good ..... to all fans.
   a. impressed b. impression c. impressive d. impress
9. The performance of the team was ..... to all fans.
   a. impressed b. impression c. impressive d. impress
10. Good ..... is good behaviour.
   a. treats b. treat c. treated d. treatment
11. A child needs to ..... with others to improve his/her communication skills.
   a. combines b. combine c. combination d. combined
12. A child needs ..... with others to improve his/her communication skills.
   a. combines b. combine c. combination d. combined
13. After years of his work as a councillor, he developed his valuable ..... skills.
   a. administrate b. administrative c. counsellor d. administer

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

average person	الشخص العادي	learning disability	صعوبة التعلُّم
be a mother to	تكون أمًا لـ	see no good reason why	لا يجد مبررًا قويًا لـ
be an inspiration to	يُمثِّل إلهامًا لـ	signposting language	اللغة الدلالية
be likely to	من المرجح أن	signposting words and phrases	المفردات والعبارات الدلالية
different to/from	مختلف عن	vast majority	الغالبية العظمى
enthusiastic about	مُتحمِّس لـ	town councillor	عضو مجلس المدينة
in common	مُشتَرَك	World Para Powerlifting Championship	بطولة العالم لألعاب القوة لذوي الهمم

6 Synonymous Expressions تعبيرات مترادفة

aged fifteen = at the age of fifteen بالغ من العمر خمسة عشر عامًا	come to the conclusion that = concludes that يستنتج أن - يَخْلُص إلي
develop an interest in = become more interested in يزداد شغفه بـ	in terms of = in relation to بالنظر إلى / مع وضع ..... في الاعتبار
hardly ever = almost no قلَّما (قليلًا ما)	try your best = spare no effort = do everything you can تبذل قصارى جهدك
on their own = alone/without help بمفردهم	

7 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

combine ... with	يجمع بين ... و ...	result in	يؤدي إلي
grow up	يكبر - يترعرع	take up	يحترف - يتخذ ..... كمهنة
move on to	ينتقل إلي	write down	يُدوِّن/يُسجِّل

Mini Test 4 Expressions, Prepositions & Idioms

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I'm enthusiastic ..... the new post I occupy. *(LM)*
   a. for b. about c. in d. with
2. Sorrowfully, everything in some people's lives is measured in ..... of money. *(LM)*
   a. advance b. fact c. turn d. terms
3. He is a/an ..... person, neither very tall nor extremely short.
   a. certain b. certainly c. average d. averagely
4. "Smoking results in several health problems." The phrasal verb 'results in' in this utterance can be replaced by '.....'.
   a. leads to b. comes from c. results rom d. brings to
5. Which of the following is used to mean 'without help'?
   a. of their own b. on their own
   c. helplessly d. on the other hand
6. Many people can combine family care ..... success at work.
   a. from b. at c. with d. about
7. Many students want to take ..... medicine after they graduate.
   a. at b. of c. down d.up
8. That is all about this point. Let's move ..... the next one.
   a. on to b. away from c. result in d. on down
9. I find no good reason ..... she has refused to marry him.
   a. for b. of c. why d. what
10. My grandmother died last year, ... ninety-two.
    a. aged b. at the age of c. when she is d. a & b
11. The two sisters have several things ..... common.
    a. at b. in c. about d. from
12. When you take notes, this means you write some notes ..... .
    a. up b. down c. to d. from

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

8 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

Down syndrome

Down Syndrome or Down's Syndrome is a genetic disorder caused by the presence of all or part of a third copy of chromosome 21. It is usually associated with physical growth delays, mild to moderate intellectual disability, and characteristic facial features.

متلازمة داون هي متلازمة وراثية تنتج عن تغير في الكروموسومات؛ حيث توجد نسخة إضافية من كروموسوم ٢١ أو جزء منه في الخلايا مما يسبب تغيرًا في المورِّثات، وتتسم الحالة بوجود تغييرات كبيرة أو صغيرة في بنية الجسم، ويصاحب المتلازمة غالبًا ضعف في القدرات الذهنية والنمو البدني، وبمظاهر وجهية مميزة.

powerlifting / weightlifting

- **powerlifting (n)** رياضة القوة (اسم غير معدود)

Powerlifting is a strength sport that consists of three attempts at maximal weight on three lifts: squat, bench press, and deadlift.

- رياضة القوة هي إحدى أنواع رياضات رفع الأثقال، وتتألف من ثلاثة أقسام وهي: بنش برس، القرفصاء، الرفعة الميتة.

- **weightlifting (n)** رفع الأثقال (اسم غير معدود)

- Weightlifting is the sport of lifting specially shaped pieces of metal that weigh an exact amount.

- رفع الأثقال هي رياضة رفع قطع معدنية ذات أشكال خاصة ذات وزن مُحدَّد.

success / successful

- **be successful = be a success** ناجح

- His first novel was successful.
= His first novel was a success.

councillor / counsellor

- **councillor / councilor** عضو مجلس

- The councillors tried to solve the problem.

- **counsellor (n)** مستشار / مُرشد

- It is a good idea to talk to a marriage counsellor before you get married.

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

9 Master your Key Vocabulary كل ما يخص المفردات الرئيسية

challenge

• **challenge (d) (v)** يتحدى
- I can't challenge him at maths. He is much better than me.

• **challenge (n)** تَحَدِّي
- Winning the final match was a challenge, but it was our team's day.

• **challenging (adj)** يُمثِّل تحديًا (به قدر من الإثارة مع الصعوبة)
- He doesn't like routine, so he looks for a challenging job.

• **unchallenged (adj)** مقبول - متعارف عليه - مُتَّفق عليه
- My grandfather's opinions are always unchallenged.

• **unchallengeable (adj)** مُطْلَق / راسخ / ثابت / غير قابل للنقاش
- I have unchallengeable belief in the importance of hard work.

لاحظ استخدم الصفة (challenged) بمعني (مُعاق):
- physically challenged مُعاق بدنيًا
- visually challenged مُعاق بصريًا
- mentally challenged مُعاق ذهنيًا
- Wheelchairs are used by those who are physically challenged.

impressive

• **impress (with/by) (v)** يُبهِر/يُثير إعجاب
- Some teenagers buy very expensive clothes to impress other people.
- She has impressed us with her intelligence.

• **impress (on) (v)** يُرَسِّخ في الذِّهْن
- My grandfather impressed on me love of reading.

• **impressive(adj)** مُبهِر/مثير للإعجاب ≠ **unimpressive** عادي
- Mr Ayman gave an impressive presentation.

• **impressively(adv)** بشكل مُبهِر
- El-Moasser's exercises are impressively professional.

• **impression (n)** انطباع
- My grandfather left a great impression on me.

• **impression (n)** محاكاة/تقليد = **imitation**
- This singer does a great impression of Um Kulthoum.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- make/give/create/leave an impression يترك انطباع
- get an impression يتولد لديه انطباع
- first impression counts الانطباع الأول يدوم

independent

• **depend (on / upon) = rely (on / upon) (v)** يعتمد (على)

- Children completely depend on their parents.

• **dependants / dependents (n)** عيال / مَعولين (عالة على غيرهم)

- Think of your dependents before leaving the job.

• **independent (of) (adj)** مستقل بذاته ≠ **dependent** مُعتمد على غيره - متواكل

- I have an independent business.

• **independent (of) (adj)** معتمد على نفسه - مستقل في حياته وقراراته

- He got a good job and now he is independent of his family.

• **independent (adj)** مستقل - غير مُحتل

- Egypt is an independent country.

• **independence (from)** استقلال (عن) ≠ **dependence (on)** اعتماد (على)

- Most African countries gained independence from European occupation الاحتلال الأوروبى.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- grant independence يمنح الاستقلال
- get / gain / achieve / win independence يحصل علي الاستقلال
- full / complete independence استقلال تام
- economic / political independence استقلال اقتصادي / سياسي
- Independence Day عيد الاستقلال
- struggle for independence يناضل من اجل الاستقلال

inspiration

• **inspire (d) (... to) (v)**

- The fans in the stadium inspired the team to play better. يُحفِّز / يُشجع

• **inspire (d) (v)** يوحي بـ

- His low voice inspires great respect.

- **inspire (d) (v)** يُلهِم
  - Poets are usually inspired by nature, the night, the moon, etc.
- **inspired (adj)** مُلهَم
  - Ahmed Shawki was an inspired poet.
- **inspiring (adj)** مُلهِم
  - Poets usually find nature inspiring.
- **inspirational (adj)** مُلهِم/مُحفِّز
  - Dr Zewail was an inspirational scientist.
- **inspiration (n)** الوحي/الإلهام
  - Nature is the source of inspiration to most poets.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- be an inspiration to — يكون مصدر إلهام لـ
  - The rising morning sun represents an inspiration to me.
- under the inspiration of — بإلهام من
  - Many parents encouraged their sons to play football under the inspiration of Mohammed Salah.
- get/take/draw inspiration from — يقتدي بـ/ يستلهم من
- provide inspiration for — يُلهِم / يُمثل إلهامًا لـ

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

تنويه : التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Being independent ..... your parents does not mean not looking after them.
   a. from b. for c. of d. about
2. Love of hard work has been ..... on us by our parents and teachers.
   a. treated b. impressed c. overcome d. paraphrased
3. I trust my elder brother. I find his advice ..... .
   a. inspire b. inspired
   c. challengeable d. unchallengeable
4. Samir Ghanim used to ..... a good impression of other actors.
   a. do b. make c. combine d. impress
5. Egypt gained independence ..... British occupation in 1956.
   a. from b. for c. of d. about

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	c	التعبير (independent of) يعني (مستقل عن)
2.	b	الفعل (impressed) هنا يعني (رَسَخَ في الذِّهْن)
3.	d	الصفة (unchallengeable) تعني (مُطْلق/غير قابل للنقاش)
4.	a	التعبير (do an impression of) يعني (يُقلِّد/يُحاكي)
5.	a	التعبير (independence from) يعني (استقلال عن)

Part III Reading & Listening

Tapescript نصوص استماع الوحدة

1 Reading Texts

Overcoming challenges (SB page 7)

Rehab Ahmed enjoyed watching powerlifting(1) on television while she was growing up,(2) but she rarely(3) did any sport herself. After she completed her studies, she met the Egyptian powerlifting team's coach(4) at a gym and soon developed a strong interest(5) in the sport.

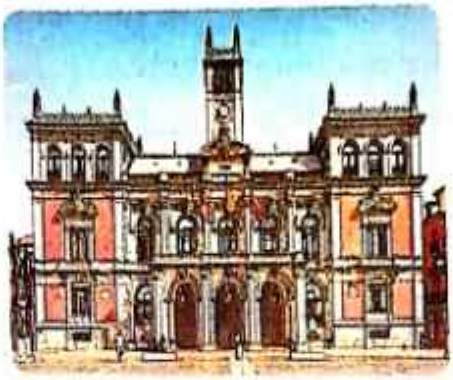


Rehab is disabled, but she hasn't let this stop her lifting(6) weights. In fact, her disability(7) has probably been the least significant(8) challenge(9) that she's had to overcome.(10) At first, Rehab wasn't sure if she could successfully combine(11) powerlifting with being a mother to her young daughter. Powerlifting is also seen as a male sport(12) and there aren't many role models(13) for female(14) powerlifters.

Rehab has now become an inspiration(15) to other young women due to(16) her achievements,(17) which have included winning gold at the 2019 World Para Powerlifting Championships(18) and silver(19) at the 2016 and 2020 Paralympics.(20)

Check Vocabulary	
(1)	رياضة القوة / رفع الأثقال
(2)	يكبر / يترعرع
(3)	نادرًا
(4)	مُدرّب
(5)	اهتمام
(6)	يرفع
(7)	إعاقة
(8)	كبير/ملحوظ
(9)	تَحَدّي
(10)	يتغلب على
(11)	يربط - يجمع/يضم
(12)	رياضة ذكور
(13)	مَثَل أعلى/قدوة
(14)	أنثي
(15)	إلهام
(16)	بسبب
(17)	إنجازات
(18)	بطولة
(19)	ميدالية فضية
(20)	الألعاب الأوليمبية لذوي الهمم

Angela Bachiller comes from Valladolid(1) in Spain. She was born with Down's Syndrome,(2) which usually results in(3) people having a learning disability(4) and not being as tall as the average(5) person. However, Angela's family has never treated(6) her any differently because of this. They saw no good reason why Angela shouldn't grow up(7) with the values(8) of the importance(9) of hard work, trying your best(10) and trying to help other people.



After working as an administrative(11) assistant(12) at the town hall in Valladolid for two and a half years, a position as a town councillor(13) became free. Angela won the vote(14) and since 2013 she has performed(15) the role of town councillor in the same way as another person doing that job.

Her strong character and determination(16) not to be treated differently have helped her to change people's minds about people with Down's Syndrome and accept(17) her as someone who can do a responsible job.

Check Vocabulary

(1) بلد الوليد
(2) متلازمة داون
(3) يؤدي إلي
(4) صعوبة/إعاقة
(5) متوسط/عادي
(6) يُعامل
(7) يكبر - يترعرع
(8) قيم
(9) أهمية
(10) تبذل قصاري جهدك
(11) إداري
(12) مُساعد
(13) عضو مجلس
(14) تصويت/اقتراع
(15) يؤدي
(16) إصرار
(17) يقبل

(WB page 3)

Scientists have been studying what makes a successful student for many years. Now, they have published a report on their results.



Firstly, how many times have you done the housework? You may be surprised to know that students who have helped with the housework are often more successful workers when they become independent(1) adults.(2) These students realise that work is something we all have to do to help each other. So, students of parents who have been planning what time they do everything are likely to be less independent. Students who can make their own choices(3) and plans will be more successful.

Check Vocabulary

(1) مُستقل
(2) بالغ/راشد
(3) يختار

Students who are able to solve problems with others or on their own[4] are also more likely to achieve success[5] in later life. The most successful students are often those who enjoy a challenge.

If a student has failed at a task,[6] he doesn't worry, but sees it as an opportunity. Students should always set goals[7] for the future. So, has this article inspired you to become a better student?

(4) بمفردهم
(5) يحقق النجاح
(6) مُهمة/تكليف
(7) يحدد / يضع هدف

2 Listening Texts

Sherif Osman

(WB page 2)

Sherif Osman was born in 1982. When he was aged nine, he caught a disease[1] called polio and since that time he has not been able to use all of his muscles[2] very well. He grew up[3] in a small village where there were hardly any facilities[4] for people with disabilities like him. However, he was determined[5] to succeed in life and wanted his family to feel really proud of him. He took Language Studies at Minia University, and after graduating, a friend suggested that he tried powerlifting[6]. So, he started training in Cairo in 2005. His inspiring[7] coach[8], Said Abd El Hafez thought that Sherif's powerlifting was very impressive[9] and encouraged him to take up[10] the sport, and since that time, he has been extremely successful. He has won gold medals at the Paralympic Games in 2008, 2012 and 2016 and also four gold medals in World Championships[11] in 2010, 2014, 2017 and 2019. He also worked for the International Paralympic Committee[12] from 2018 to 2012, and he continued to train hard for four hours every day. When he was younger, he wanted to send a strong message to the world to show that he could overcome his disability and do anything that he wanted. He has certainly done that.

Check Vocabulary

(1) يُصاب بمرض
(2) عضلات
(3) يكبر - يترعرع
(4) إمكانيات
(5) مُصمِّم
(6) رياضة رفع الأثقال
(7) مُلهِم
(8) مُدرب
(9) مُبهِر
(10) يحترف
(11) بطولة
(12) لجنة

The qualities of successful people

(SB page 8)



Researchers have been looking at what makes people successful for a very long time. Of course, there isn't one answer to the question of which qualities(1) successful people share. However, I've identified(2) four qualities that the vast majority(3) of successful people appear to have. Today, I'd like to tell you about these.

Successful people don't just have goals; they have very specific(4) goals. Psychologists(5) have demonstrated(6) that the more specific your goals are, the more likely you are to achieve them. You also tend(7) to be more motivated(8) if your goals are specific.

Successful people also understand that in order to achieve these goals, you need to learn new things and develop your skills so they're prepared to do this. For example, a very successful colleague(9) of mine who researches Egyptian history has been taking Arabic classes since she moved to Egypt. Successful people never stop trying to learn something new, or doing something they've never tried before.

Now let's move on to the third quality I wanted to tell you about today. Being successful isn't just a matter(10) of working hard for a short period of time, it's something you have to do every day, or at least every week for months and usually years at a time. Successful people persevere(11).

Successful people don't give up(12) even if something has gone wrong or they've failed(13). This is the third quality they seem to share.

Successful people are prepared to wait to achieve their goals, and this brings me to the fourth and final quality: patience(14). An example is Olympic athletes(15) who have all been waiting for at least four years since the last Olympics for the chance(16) of winning a medal. There're also many successful authors and others who don't achieve success(17) until later in life.

Check Vocabulary

(1) سِمات – خصائص
(2) يُحدِد
(3) الغالبية العظمي
(4) مُحدَّد
(5) علماء النفس
(6) يوضِح
(7) يميل
(8) متحفِز
(9) زميل عمل
(10) مسألة - أمر
(11) يثابر
(12) يستسلم
(13) يفشل
(14) الصبر
(15) الرياضيون
(16) فرصة
(17) يُحقِق النجاح

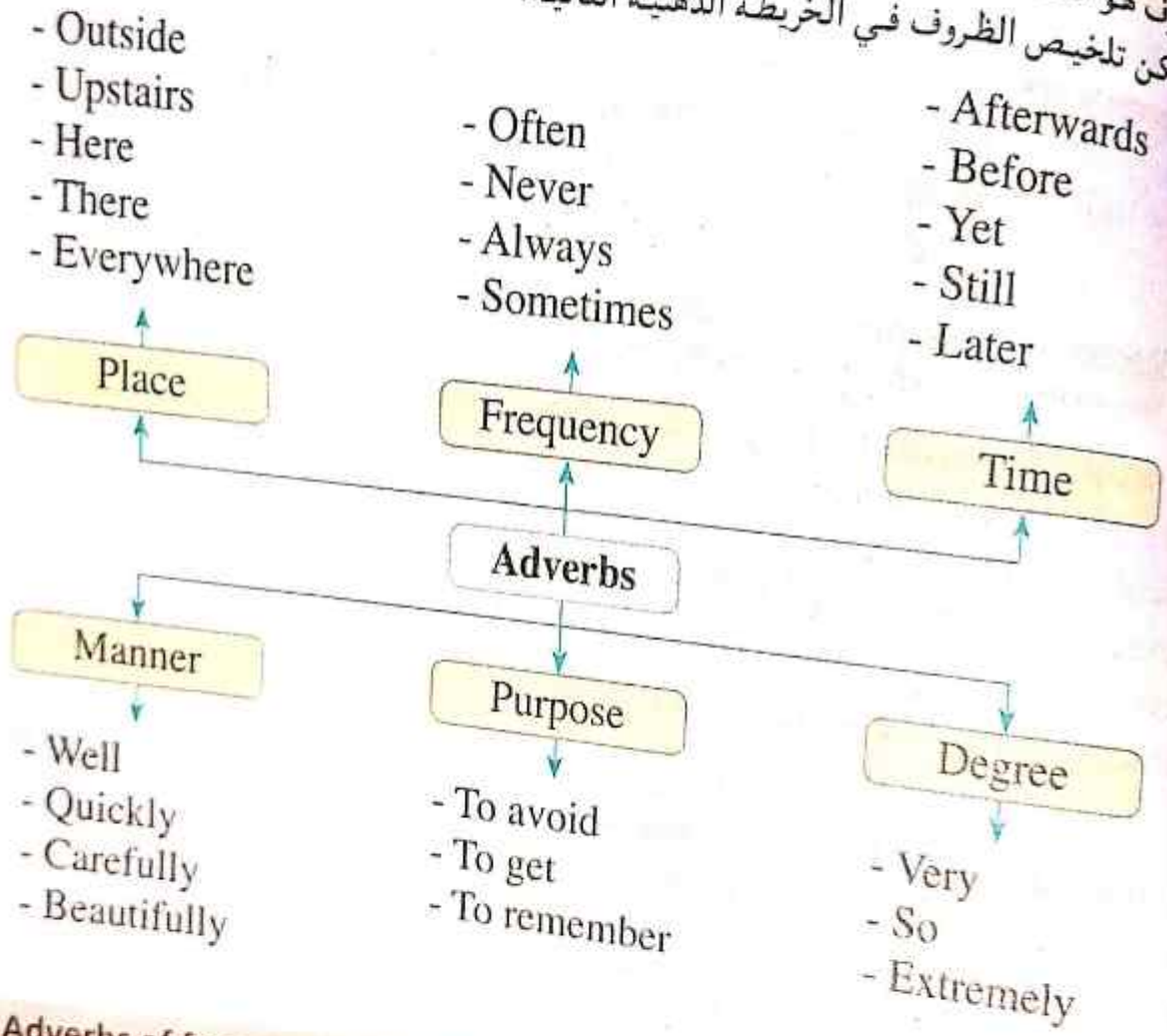
Part IV Language

تنويه: تم شرح الصفات في الوحدة الثانية من صفحة (١٥٢) وحتي صفحة (١٥٨)، وسيتم الاكتفاء هنا بشرح ظروف الكيفية لكن التدريبات ستكون شاملة علي الصفات والظروف.

What is an adverb ? ما هو الظرف/الحال ؟

- **It is a word that expresses frequency, time, place, purpose, degree or manner.**

- الظرف هو كلمة تعبر عن التكرار أو الزمان أو المكان أو الغرض أو الدرجة أو الطريقة (الكيفية)، ويمكن تلخيص الظروف في الخريطة الذهنية التالية:



1 Adverbs of frequency : ظروف التكرار

وفيما يلى شرح مبسط لأنواع الظروف :

تُستخدم ظروف التكرار للدلالة على درجة تكرار الحدث، وتستخدم ظروف التكرار التالية قبل جميع الأفعال ما عدا (be) فتأتي بعده:

always دائماً – usually عادة – often/ frequently غالباً – sometimes أحياناً – never أبداً ...etc.

occasionally بين الحين والآخر – rarely/seldom نادراً

- Mr Nasser always arrives at work on time.
- Mr Nasser is always at work on time.

وأحياناً تأتي بعض هذه الظروف في بداية أو نهاية الجملة :

- Sometimes, Yara prepares the family lunch.
- Yara prepares the family lunch sometimes.

وتأتي ظروف التكرار التالية غالباً في بداية أو نهاية الجملة :

- once مَرَّة - twice مرتين - three times - four times (an hour / a day / a week / a month / a year ...etc.)
- every (morning / day / week / year...)

- I get up early every morning. = Every morning, I get up early.

2 Adverbs of time : ظروف الزمان

تُستخدم ظروف الزمان للدلالة على وقت حدوث الفعل، وغالباً تأتي في بداية أو نهاية الجملة وقد تأتي أيضاً بعد الأفعال المساعدة والناقصة، ومن أمثلة ظروف الزمان ما يلي:

today, yesterday, now, still, currently, afterwards, after, before, yet ... etc.

- I haven't done the shopping yet.
- I am sure we met somewhere before.
- She is still doing the shopping.

3 Adverbs of place : ظروف المكان

تُستخدم ظروف المكان للدلالة على مكان حدوث الفعل، وغالباً تأتي في بداية أو نهاية الجملة، ومن أمثلة ظروف الزمان ما يلي:

inside, outside, here, there, somewhere, everywhere, outdoors, indoors ...etc.

- I have lived here since I was born.
- The children are playing outdoors.

4 Adverbs of purpose : ظروف الغرض

وهي عبارات ظرفية تبدأ بـ (to + inf.) بمعني (لكي) وتستخدم للتعبير عن الغرض وتأتي في البداية أو النهاية :

- I follow a strict diet to lose weight.
- To overcome a challenge, you need to work hard.

5 Adverbs of degree : ظروف الدرجة

تُستخدم ظروف الدرجة لتحديد درجة الصفة، ومن أمثلة ظروف الدرجة ما يلي :

quite/rather إلي حد ما - very - extremely للغاية - completely - إلي حد كبير so - utterly تماماً - totally كلياً - absolutely تماماً...etc.

- The weather is very hot today.
- She is completely exhausted.

تنويه : راجع استخدام ظروف الدرجة مع الصفات القوية والصفات العادية في الوحدة الثانية من كتاب المعاصر.

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

6 Adverbs of manner : ظروف الكيفية (الطريقة)

نستخدم ظروف الكيفية لوصف كيفية حدوث الفعل وهي تمثل إجابة للسؤال بـ (how) :

- A: How did Sama write ? B: She wrote clearly.
- A: How does he walk ? B: He walks quickly.

يأتي ظرف الكيفية بعد الفعل أو بعد المفعول:

- A tortoise moves slowly.
- Rodayna spoke to me quietly.

How to change an adjective into an adverb of manner : طريقة تحويل الصفة إلى ظرف كيفية

١ بصفة عامة يتم تكوين ظرف الكيفية بإضافة (ly) إلى الصفة :

- impressive مُبهِر – impressively بشكل مُبهِر
- weak ضعيف – weakly بضعف
- significant ملحوظ – significantly بشكل ملحوظ
- quiet هادئ – quietly بهدوء

٢ وتُضاف (ly) حتى وان كانت الصفة منتهية بحرف (l) :

- hopeful متفائل – hopefully من المُنتظَر
- beautiful جميل – beautifully بطريقة جميلة

٣ الصفة المنتهية بـ (le) يتم حذف حرف (e) وإضافة (y) :

- terrible فظيع – terribly بشكل فظيع
- sensible عقلاني – sensibly بعقلانية

٤ الصفة المنتهية بـ (y) مسبوق بحرف ساكن يتحول إلي (ily) :

- happy سعيد – happily بسعادة
- crazy مجنون – crazily بجنون

٥ الصفة المنتهية بـ (ly) تتحول إلى ظرف باستخدام (in a ..... way) :

- friendly ودود – in a friendly way بود/بحميمية
- cowardly جبان – in a cowardly way بجُبن

٦ هناك ظروف غير منتظمة مثل:

- fast سريع – fast بسرعة
- late متأخر – late مُتأخراً
- good جيد – well جيداً
- hard جاد – hard بجد
- early مُبكر – early مُبكراً

Clear up the confusion : لاحظ الفرق

❶ hard / hardly

• **hard (adj)** صلب – صعب – شاق (صفة)

- This rock is too hard صلب to be broken easily.
- Last year's exam was really hard. صعب
- He got tired of the hard شاق work in that factory.

• **hard (adv)** بجد – بقوة (ظرف)

- My father has worked hard to provide good life for our family.
- You must hit the rock hard to break it.

• **hardly ... (any / at all) (adv)** بِالْكَاد / قلَّما

- I have eaten hardly anything today.
- She hardly meets her old friends at all.

• **hardly ever = almost never** بِالْكَاد / قلَّما (تدل علي النفي)

- She hardly ever goes out = she almost never goes out.
- He hardly speaks spanish, does he ?

❷ late / lately

• **late - later - latest (adj)**

تُستخدم (late) كصفة (adjective) بمعني (متأخِّر) - أي أنها تأتي قبل الاسم أو بعد الأفعال التقريبية:

- I am late for school.
- The head teacher punished the late students.

تُستخدم (late) كصفة (adjective) بمعني (أواخر/قرب النهاية) – وتأتي قبل الاسم فقط :

- She is in her late forties.

• **late - later – (no superlative) (adv)**

تُستخدم (late) كظرف (adverb) بمعني (متأخِّراً) :

- I am late for school.

تُستخدم (later) كظرف بمعني (فيما بعد) :

- I will call you later.

تُستخدم (lately) كظرف (adverb) بمعني (مُؤخَّراً/حديثاً) :

- I have visited my aunt lately. (= recently)

لاحظ الفرق بين (later) و (latter) :

• **later (adv)** فيما بعد = after some time

- I met her two years later. (= after two years)

•later (adj) لاحق - تالي
- We will discuss this problem in a later meeting.

•latter (n) الآخر - الثاني
- I have two daughters: Rodayna and Sama. The latter is younger.
- We will announce the result of the competition in the latter part of the program.

3 most / most of / mostly

تستخدم (most/most of) كصفة (adjective) بمعني (غالبية/مُعظَم/جُلّ):
- Most students like Mr Nasser. (= more than 50% of the students)
- Most of my friends go to the same school. (= more than 50% of my friends)

تستخدم (most) كظرف (adverb) بمعني (الأكثر):
- Amira is the most intelligent student in class.
- I play tennis and handball, but I like football most/the most.

تستخدم (mostly) كظرف (adverb) بمعني (أساساً/عامةً/عادةً):
- We mostly play football, but sometimes we play table tennis.

4 good / well

كلمة (good) صفة بينما كلمة (well) ظرف:

Adjective / adverb	Comparative	Superlative
good(adj) جيد - صالح - مفيد	better أفضل	best الأفضل
well(adj) جيد - صالح - مفيد	better بشكل أفضل	best بالشكل الأفضل

تُستخدم (good) كصفة (adjective) بمعني (جيد/صالح/طيب):
- Mr Taha is a good man.
- His good presentation impressed us all.

تُستخدم (well) كظرف (adverb) بمعني (جيداً/بشكل جيد):
- She did well in the final exam.

تُستخدم (well) كصفة (adjective) بمعني (بصحة جيدة/على ما يرام):
- A: How are you? B: Very well, thanks.

يمكن استخدام (good) كاسم (noun) بمعني الخير:
- Exercise does me good.

Important notes on adverbs ملاحظات هامة على الظروف

❶ الصفة تصف اسم بينما ظرف الكيفية يصف فعل :

... verb فعل + adverb ظرف / adjective صفة + noun

- She is a good speaker. / She speaks well.
- Amir is a quick runner. / Amir runs quickly.
- Chess is an indoor game. / Chess is played indoors.

❷ بعد أداة الاستفهام (how) نستخدم صفة لوصف اسم ونستخدم ظرف لوصف فعل :

- How good is his behaviour?
- How well does he behave?

❸ يمكن مقارنة الظروف مثل الصفات الطويلة باستخدام :

more أكثر / less أقل + adv. الظرف + than

- Sama writes more carefully than Ahmed.
- I drive less quickly than Moataz.

❹ تأتي ظروف الشك /الاحتمال او التكرار قبل الفعل وليس بعده والعكس مع (be) :

usually – probably – possibly – definitely .....

- It is possible that he will visit us. = - He will possibly visit us.

❺ هناك ظروف يمكن أن تُستخدم لتغير معني الجملة بالكامل وتُسمَّي (Sentence Adverbs)، وغالبا تستخدم في بداية الجملة مثل:

Fortunately, / Luckily, لحسن الحظ – unfortunately, /Unluckily, لسوء الحظ –
Strangely, من الغريب – Interestingly, من المثير للاهتمام – Surprisingly, من المُدهش ...

- Luckily, I found my lost keys.
- Strangely, he agreed to help us.

Notes for application

❶ **... verb فعل + adverb ظرف = ... adjective صفة + in / at ... + (inf. + ing)**

- She speaks English well. = She is good at speaking English.

❷ **... adverb ظرف = in + adj. صفة + way / manner.**

- His behaviour was friendly. = He behaved in a friendly way.

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

❸ **It is + adj. صفة = adverb ظرف**

- It is strange that she refused the offer.
= Strangely, she refused the offer.

❹ **... be + adverb ظرف + adj. صفة = have + adj. صفة + noun .....**

- I am seriously ill. = I have a serious illness.

❺ **Subject + never / rarely / hardly / no sooner ... + verb .....**
= Never / Rarely / Hardly / No sooner/Little + فعل مساعد + subj. + verb

- Mai never went shopping.
= Rarely did Mai go shopping.

General Exercise On Language

✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting Started

1. They are on the beach now. They are playing ..... .
a. outdoor b. outdoors c. indoors d. b & c
2. Football is an ..... game.
a. outdoor b. outdoors c. indoors d. indoor
3. Rodayna has ..... handwriting.
a. a well b. well c. will d. good
4. Rodayna writes ..... .
a. a well b. well c. will d. a good
5. Compared to nobody, I run ..... .
a. fast b. fastly c. faster d. the fastest
6. Omar runs ..... than me.
a. fast b. fastly c. faster d. the fastest
7. Of all my friends who run quickly, Omar runs ..... .
a. fast b. fastly c. faster d. the fastest
8. By nature, Mr Ayman works ..... .
a. hard b. harder c. the hardest d. hardly
9. By nature, Mr Ayman is a ..... worker.
a. hard b. harder c. the hardest d. hardly
10. By nature, Mr Ayman works ..... than me.
a. hard b. harder c. the hardest d. hardly

11. Of all the thirty hard workers in the office, Mr Ayman works ..... .
a. hard b. harder c. the hardest d. hardly

12. By nature, Mr Ayman ..... wastes any time at all.
a. hard b. harder c. the hardest d. hardly

13. She became enthusiastic about her new sport very ..... .
a. hard b. hardly c. quicker d. quickly

14. Her achievements are ..... for other women who are interested in powerlifting.
a. inspire b. inspired c. inspiring d. inspiringly

15. Other women who are interested in powerlifting look ..... by her achievements.
a. inspire b. inspired c. inspiring d. inspiringly

16. She didn't receive ..... treatment from her family because she had Down's Syndrome.
a. normal b. normally c. normalise d. normalised

17. She was not treated ..... by her family because she had Down's Syndrome.
a. normal b. normally c. normalise d. normalised

18. Angela is able to do her current job in a perfectly ..... way.
a. difference b. differ c. different d. differently

19. Angela is able to do her current job ..... .
a. difference b. differ c. different d. differently

20. He caught a disease called polio and since then he has not been able to use all of his muscles in a ..... way.
a. good b. well c. better d. best

21. He caught a disease called polio and since then he has not been able to use all of his muscles very..... .
a. good b. well c. better d. best

22. He wanted his family to feel ..... proud of him.
a. reality b. real c. really d. b & c

23. He wanted his family to take ..... pride in him.
a. reality b. real c. really d. b & c

24. Since that time, he has been ..... successful.
a. extreme b. extremes c. extremity d. extremely

25. Since that time, he has achieved ..... success.
a. extreme b. extremes c. extremity d. extremely

26. He has ..... achieved his goal.
a. certain b. certainly c. uncertain d. certainty

27. She was ..... in her talk.
a. impress b. impressed c. impressive d. impressively

28. She talked ..... .
a. impress b. impressed c. impressive d. impressively

29. I ..... lunch outdoors.
a. have rarely b. rarely have c. am rarely d. rarely am

30. I ..... out for lunch.
a. have rarely b. rarely have c. am rarely d. rarely am

31. Which of the following is/are correct?
a. I go to school everyday. b. I go to school every day.
c. Every day, I go to school. d. b & c

2 Special Cases

32. How ..... did you do at the exam?
a. will b. well c. good d. a good

33. How ..... are you at maths?
a. will b. well c. good d. a good

34. Which of the following is/are correct?
a. She walked towards the spider slowly.
b. She walked slowly towards the spider.
c. Slowly, she walked towards the spider.
d. a, b & c

35. I will call you ..... today.
a. later b. latter c. lately d. a & c

36. I haven't gone for walks ..... since I have been really busy.
a. later b. latter c. lately d. a & c

37. I have two cars. One is a BMW and the ..... is a Mercedes.
a. later b. latter c. lately d. a & c

38. "She is late for school." The word 'late' here is a/an ..... .
a. adjective b. adverb c. comparative d. superlative

39. "She is in her late twenties." The word 'late' here is a/an ..... .
a. adjective b. adverb c. comparative d. superlative

40. "I'll take a later bus." The word 'later' here is a/an ..... .
a. adjective b. adverb c. comparative d. superlative

41. "She arrived at school very late." The word 'late' here is a/an ..... .
a. adjective b. adverb c. comparative d. superlative

42. "Lately, Sama has been very busy." The word 'lately' here is a/an ..... .
a. adjective b. adverb c. comparative d. superlative

43. "Ahmed has left his office early this evening." The word 'early' here is a/an ..... .
a. adjective b. adverb c. comparative d. superlative

44. "The train is five minutes early." The word 'early' here is a/an ..... .
a. adjective b. adverb c. comparative d. superlative

45. "She has left early to catch the train." In this sentence, the clause 'to catch the train' is an adverbial clause of ..... .
a. frequency b. manner c. degree d. purpose

46. "The weather is so hot today." The word 'so' here is a/an ..... .
a. adjective b. conjunction
c. adverb of degree d. pronoun

47. Sama is playing outdoors." The word 'outdoors' is an adverb of ..... .
a. time b. place c. frequency d. manner

48. "She is still having lunch." The word 'still' here is an adverb of ..... .
a. time b. place c. frequency d. manner

3 Check your understanding

49. "She almost has no free time." This means ..... .
a. She has some free time b. She hardly has any free time
c. She has very little hard time d. She has enough free time

50. "He does his best at work." What does this mean?
a. He works hard. b. He hardly works.
c. He works hardly. d. He has to work hard.

51. "I like football more than any other sport." This means ..... .
a. of all sports, I like football most
b. of all sports, I like football the most
c. a & b
d. of all sports, I like football the least

52. "She is a good speaker." This means ..... .
a. She is good at speaking b. She speaks good
c. She speaks well d. a & c

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

53. "How hard does he work?" Which of the following questions gives the same meaning?
a. How hard is he at work? b. How hardly is he at work?
c. How hardly does he work? d. a & b

54. "It is possible that he comes to work late." This means that .....
a. He possibly is late for work.
b. He is possibly late for work.
c. It is impossible that he early is for work.
d. He is impossibly early for work.

55. "Mai has a severe illness." This means that Mai ..... .
a. is severe illness b. is severely ill
c. has severely ill d. has severe ill

Advanced Exercise on Language

تنويه : التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Which of the following is NOT correct?
a. I rarely go to bed late. b. Rarely I go to bed late.
c. I sometimes go to bed late. d. Sometimes, I go to bed late.

2. I talked to her, but it did not do any ..... .
a. well b. good c. better d. best

3. I rarely come to school late, ... ?
a. do I b. don't I c. am I d. aren't I

4. Hardly ..... has visited us this week. All our close friends have had a busy week.
a. everyone b. none c. anyone d. b & c

No.	Answer & Explanation
1.	b
2.	b
3.	a
4.	c

الإجابة والتوضيح

- عندما تأتي الظروف الدالة على النفي مثل (rarely) في بداية الجملة فإن الفعل المساعد يتقدم على الفاعل، وتكون الصيغة الصحيحة كما يلي:
- Rarely do I go to bed late.

- كلمة (good) هنا اسم بمعني (الخير)

- الظرف (rarely) يدل علي النفي لذا يكون السؤال المذيل مثبتاً

- تُستخدم (any) وليس (no) بعد الظرف (hardly)

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

LESSON 3 & 4

SB pages 10 & 11 WB pages 4 & 5



Part I Vocabulary

تنويه

- اختبر مدى اتقانك للمفردات الرئيسية فى كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.
- المفردات اللغوية باللون الأحمر هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية.

Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

aid(ed) (n/v)	مُساعدة - يساعد	list(n)	قائمة
attached(adj)	مُرفَق	memorize(d) (v)	يحفظ
attend(ed) (v)	يَحضُر	multiplication(n)	الضرب(رياضيات)
audience(n)	الجمهور (المستمعين أو القُرّاء)	organise(d) (v)	يُنظِّم
		party(n)	حفل - حزب - فوج
award(ed) (n/v)	جائزة - يمنح جائزة	pause(d) (v/n)	يتوقف - وقفة
belt(n)	حزام	perform(ed) (v)	يؤدي
category(n)	تصنيف	picnic(ked) (v)	يتنزه
ceremony(n)	حفل	picnic(n)	(طعام) النُزهة
certificate(n)	شهادة	picnic(n)	نُزهة خلوية
compare(d) (v)	يقارن	presentation(n)	عرض تقديمي
competition(n)	مسابقة	profit(ed) (n/v)	ربح - يربح/يستفيد
complicated (adj)	مُعقَّد/مُركَّب	R.S.V.P form	استمارة الرد
creativity(n)	الإبداع	rhetorical (adj)	بلاغي
define(d) (v)	يُعرِّف - يُحدِّد	right(n)	حق
degree(n)	شهادة جامعية	score(d) (n/v)	نقطة - يسجل
diagram(n)	رسم بياني	short notice(n)	رسالة موجزة
elegant(adj)	أنيق - كَيِّس	significantly (adv)	بشكل ملحوظ
enjoyable(adj)	ممتع	smart(adj)	ذكي - أنيق
feedback(n)	التغذية الراجعة	sponsor(ed) (n/v)	راعي - يرعي / يموِّل
forum(n)	منتدى	swan(n)	بجعة
global(adj)	عالمي	talent(n)	موهبة
graduate(d) (n/v)	خرِّيج - يتخرج	talk(n)	حديث/خطبة
graduation(n)	التخرُّج	technique(n)	تقنية/أسلوب

indicate(d) (v)	يوضح/يشير إلي	trust(ed) (n/v)	ثقة - يثق بـ
invitation(n)	دعوة	unique(adj)	فريد - مُميَز
lift(ed) (v)	يرفع	visual (adj)	بصري
		visual (n)	مرئي

Exercise On Vocabulary • Understand

• ✪ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1 Key & Important vocabulary

1. A/An..... question is the one that you don't expect to get a specifi answer to. (L
   a. amusing b. ordinary c. retelling d. rhetorical
2. In today's world, success is sometimes ..... by how much money you make from your job. (L
   a. refined b. defined c. refused d. appeared
3. The refugees اللاجئين need urgent ..... .
   a. audience b. diagram c. feedback d. aid
4. Parents of students are invited to the graduation ..... .
   a. creativity b. certificate c. ceremony d. category
5. Most of my friends ..... my brother's wedding.
   a. attended b. indicated c. organised d. paused
6. Flash cards, videos and diagrams are all ..... aids teachers now use
   a. rhetorical b. visual c. elegant d. complicated
7. After ....., young men join the army for military service.
   a. picnic b. talk c. graduate d. graduation
8. A ..... joins the army for military service.
   a. picnic b. talk c. graduate d. graduation
9. I got my university ..... in 1998.
   a. technique b. profit c. short notice d. degree
10. It was not easy for me to give a presentation to a/an ..... I did not know for the first time.
    a. audience b. diagram c. feedback d. aid
11. I look forward to getting my General Secondary Education ..... this year.
    a. Creativity b. Certificate c. Ceremony d. Category

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

12. During your presentation, you may need to ..... for a few seconds after saying something that you want the audience to remember.
a. attend b. indicate c. organise d. pause

13. Mr Baleigh was dressed in a/an ..... black suit.
a. rhetorical b. visual c. elegant d. complicated

14. Giving a ..... to a foreign audience needs good preparation.
a. picnic b. talk c. graduate d. graduation

15. She made much ..... from selling clothes.
a. technique b. profit c. short notice d. degree

16. Sometimes, it is difficult to provide ..... without making someone angry.
a. audience b. diagram c. feedback d. aid

17. ..... is what makes you different.
a. Creativity b. Certificate c. Ceremony d. Pause

18. Your bad marks in physics ..... that you need to work harder to be better at it.
a. attend b. indicate c. organise d. pause

19. Using ..... language in a presentation makes it difficult for your audience to get your points easily.
a. rhetorical b. visual c. elegant d. complicated

20. I've gone on a ..... with my close friends.
a. picnic b. talk c. graduate d. graduation

21. It's a bit ....., but can you come tomorrow?
a. technique b. profit c. short notice d. degree

22. A/An ..... is one of the visuals a presenter can employ.
a. audience b. diagram c. feedback d. aid

23. People are different. This makes it difficult to put them into ..... .
a. creativities b. certificates c. ceremonies d. categories

24. Sociable students are better at ..... picnics.
a. lifting b. indicating c. organising d. pausing

25. "My mother made the picnic and put it in a big bag." The word 'picnic' here can be replaced by ..... .
a. trip b. outdoor meal c. visit d. journey

26. Asking rhetorical questions is a ..... used in giving presentations.
a. technique b. profit c. short notice d. degree

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

Part II Vocabulary Study

ساعد مُعلمك على الإرتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مُسبقًا بشكل جيد.

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

do	some research	يقوم بإجراء بحث	organise	a picnic	يُرتب نزهة خلوية
make	notes	يُبدي ملاحظات	tell	a story	يحكي قصة

Mini Test 1 Collocations

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I do not believe the stories he ..... us about his generosity. I know he is a miser.
   a. does b. makes c. organises d. tells
2. We are discussing the findings of the research my team have .....
   a. done b. made c. organised d. told
3. Amir is good at ..... picnics.
   a. doing b. taking c. organizing d. telling
4. I need to look at the notes I ..... at the meeting.
   a. did b. made c. organised d. told

2 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

at a young age	في سن صغير	related to	مرتبط/متعلق بـ
at midday	في منتصف النهار	rhetorical question	الاستفهام البلاغي/ سؤال لمجرد التأثير الخطابي
attached to	مُرفق مع - متصل بـ	short notice	إشعار عاجل
children's rights to an education	حقوق الأطفال في التعليم	sporting achievements	إنجازات رياضية
Creativity Award	جائزة الإبداع	sporting club	نادي رياضي
get a degree in	يحصل على شهادة جامعية في	sports people	الرياضيون
make it clear	يجعل من الواضح	United Nations	الأمم المتحدة
R.S.V.P. form	استمارة الرد	visual aids	الوسائل البصرية المساعدة

3 Synonymous Expressions تعبيرات مترادفة

make notes on = write down notes about يُبدي ملاحظات علي	the first ever... = the first... to + inf. أول من ... على الإطلاق
be proud of = take pride in فخور بـ	the year to come = next year العام المقبل
	young people = youth الشباب

4 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

compare ... with	يقارن ... بـ ...	walk in	يدخل
dream of/about	يحلم بـ	walk into	يدخل إلي
give out	يوزع		

Mini Test 2 Expressions, Prepositions & Idioms

✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. "I'm proud of being Egyptian." This means I ..... being Egyptian.
   a. dream of b. take pride in c. ashamed of d. am proud in
2. It is not always right to compare a child ..... other children in public.
   a. with b. about c. for d. from
3. We agreed to meet ..... midday.
   a. on b. of c. with d. at
4. Each child has the right ..... good education.
   a. for b. about c. to d. off
5. Mr Mohammed has ..... it clear that he will never argue over football.
   a. made b. got c. did d. took
6. "Salah is the first Egyptian footballer to win the golden boot in the Premier League." This means Salah ..... .
   a. was the first player ever to win it
   b. is the first footballer ever to win it
   c. is the first Egyptian ever to win it
   d. hardly won it at all
7. These are the prizes we are giving ..... to toppers.
   a. a way b. out c. up d. in
8. "Teenagers still need some guidance." The word 'Teenagers' can be replaced by '.....'.
   a. Young men b. Young boys c. Young d. Young people
9. The applicants' personal photos are attached ..... their application forms.
   a. at b. up c. to d. of

10. She unlocked the door and walked ..... .
a. into b. in c. with d. to

11. I am going to join university ..... .
a. in the past b. last year
c. in 2020 d. in the year to come

5 Clear the Confusion لاحظ الفرق

R.S.V.P. form

(R.S.V.P.) هو اختصار لعبارة فرنسية تعني (إذا سمحت)، وهي تُستخدم في الرسائل الخاصة بالدعوة: اختصار

- R.S.V.P. = répondez, s'il vous plaît = Please Reply

walk in - walk into

- **walk in** يدخل (لا يأتي بعدها المفعول)
  - She opened the door and walked in.
- **walk into** يدخل إلي (لابد أن يأتي بعدها المفعول)
  - She opened the door and walked into her room.

... to come

- **... to come = next ... = the following ...** القادم/التالي ...
  - the year to come = next year = the following year
  - the days to come = the next days = the following days

be proud of/to - take pride in

- **be proud of (something / someone)** فخور بـ
  - Her parents are very proud of her.
- **be proud to do something** فخور أن
  - I am proud to receive this award.
- **take / have pride in** يفتخر بـ
  - She takes / has pride in her respectable family.

Mini Test 3 Clear the Confusion

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Next week means the week ..... .
a. next b. the following c. the next d. to come

2. I opened the gate and carefully walked ..... .
a. in b. into c. of d. a & b

3. I opened the gate and carefully walked ..... the garden.
a. out b. into c. of d. a & b

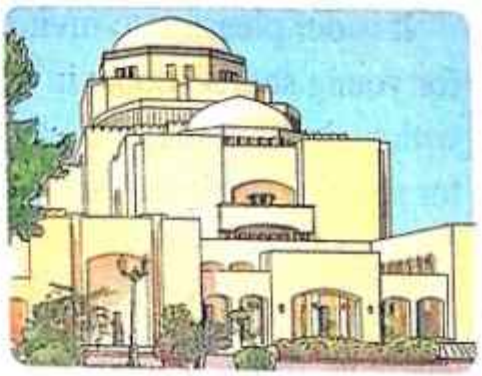
4. I'm proud ..... my success.
   a. to b. in c. of d. from
5. I'm proud ..... be a success.
   a. to b. in c. of d. from
6. I take pride ..... my success.
   a. to b. in c. of d. from

Part III Reading & Listening

1 Reading Texts

A presentation

(WB page 4)



Hi everyone. Thank you for coming to my presentation[1] today. I'm going to tell you about the life and achievements of Fatma Said. Have you heard this name before? Well, she is one of the world's best opera singers. She started singing lessons at the Cairo Opera House when she was just fourteen. The first time I heard Fatma I thought, I want to be an opera singer too! But it is not easy. When she was younger, she worked very hard and studied in other countries. She got a degree[2] in music at a university in Germany. Then, in 2014, she became the first ever Egyptian to sing at the famous opera house in Milan, Italy. That is like playing football at the world's most famous stadium.

She has also done some amazing[3] things, for example, she has sung for children's rights[4] to an education[5] for the United Nations[6] and in 2016, she won Egypt's Creativity[7] Award,[8] a very important prize.

If you look at this poster,[9] you can see a list[10] of her awards. These include[11] competitions[12] she has won in Ireland, Turkey and Germany.

And that brings me to the end of my presentation. Does anyone have any questions?

Check Vocabulary

(1) عرض تقديمي
(2) شهادة جامعية
(3) رائع/مُذهِل
(4) حقوق
(5) التعليم
(6) الأمم المتحدة
(7) الإبداع
(8) جائزة
(9) مُلصَق
(10) قائمة
(11) يتضمن/يشتمل علي
(12) مسابقة

Two Invitations to Dina

Hi Dina,

We're organising[1] a surprise 50th birthday party[2] for Aunt Soha on Saturday evening. I know it's a bit short notice,[3] but do you think you can make it? The plan is that we all meet at her favourite restaurant at 6.45. Then Aunt Soha walks in with Uncle Sami at 7.00 and finds us all there!

Let me know by tomorrow evening if you can come. Hope to see you there!

Cousin Reem

Dear Dina Osman,

It is our pleasure to invite you to the awards ceremony[1] for young sports people in our area. The evening will begin with a dinner at the Sporting Club[2] and after that, prizes for sporting achievements over the last year will be given out[3] to the winners.[4]

We trust that this will be a very enjoyable[5] evening where we can celebrate your sporting achievements and, we hope, inspire you to continue to perform[6] at such a high level[7] over the year to come.

Please use the attached[8] RSVP form[9] to indicate[10] whether or not you can attend[11] and send it to Mrs Noha El Taweel at the Club office by 14th June.

Yours sincerely,

Magdy El Sayed

Hi Ali,

We're organising a picnic[1] in the park for my cousins who are visiting from Australia. It's tomorrow evening. It's a bit short notice, but do you think you can come?



The plan is that we meet at our house at midday[2]. Then we can prepare[3] a picnic[4] and take it to the park. Let me know by this evening if you can make it. Hope to see you soon!

Best wishes,

Nabil

Dear Mr and Mrs Amir,

(WB page 5)

It is our pleasure to invite you to your daughter's graduation(1) ceremony on 12 July. The day will begin at the university hall, when the certificates(2) will be given out to the graduates.(3) We will then move to the university restaurant for an evening meal for the parents.



Check Vocabulary

(1) التَخَرُّج
(2) شهادات
(3) خِرِّيجين
(4) يثق
(5) الشباب

We trust(4) that this will be a very enjoyable day where we can celebrate your daughter's achievements with the other parents and young people(5) at the university.

Please use the attached RSVP form to indicate whether you can attend and send it to the university office by 1st July.

Yours sincerely,

Mrs Magda

2 Listening Texts

Youssef's presentation

(SB page 10)

Youssef : Hi everyone! Thank you for coming to my presentation(1) today. I'm going to tell you about the life and achievements of Mahmoud Wael. Have you heard this name before? Probably not. But what if I told you that he was called the smartest(2) kid in the world when he was younger ? Teachers and global(3) companies like Microsoft recognised(4) Mahmoud's talent(5) at an early age. When only 14, he was already teaching computer programming to university students and this made him the youngest person in the world to teach this subject at a university. Microsoft recognised his unique(6) talent and sponsored(7) him to continue his university studies. Let's go back to the beginning. Mahmoud was born in Egypt in 1999. It was clear from a very young age that he was extremely good with numbers, and that he had an amazing memory. The first words Mahmoud said as a baby were numbers and by the age

Check Vocabulary

(1) عرض تقديمي
(2) الأذكى
(3) عالمي
(4) يتعرف علي
(5) موهبة
(6) فريد – مُميَز
(7) يرعي - يمول

of three, he could already memorise[8] every multiplication table[9]. Wh
he took an IQ test aged 6, he scored[10] 155!
Having such a high score[11] is like being the smartest
person in every thousand people, or being smarter than
99.97 percent of people. Mahmoud can also speak French
and German and he has a brown belt[12] in karate.

The first time that I saw Mahmoud was in a video online.
He was at an event[13] called the 'World Youth Forum[14],
in Sharm el-Sheikh. This is a big event where young people
who have a special talent or who have achieved important things come
together to discuss ideas with each other, and with adults[15] who can help
them with their projects and give them advice. I remember that Mahmoud
received a prize for his achievements and everyone was saying that he was
the ... smartest ... kid in ... the ... world.

(8) يحفظ
(9) جدول الضرب
(10) حرز - يُسجل
(11) مجموع النقاط
(12) حزام
(13) مناسبة
(14) منتدى
(15) الكبار

I think Mahmoud's story shows us that you don't have to wait until you grow up to achieve the things that you want to achieve. Of course, you need to be very talented and work hard. But even if you aren't as smart as Mahmoud, you can still make a difference by doing something like teaching other people how to do something that you can do well.

Thanks for listening! Does anyone have any questions? Anything you would like to know more about?

3 Video Script

How to achieve balance in your life

(SB Page 11)

Achieving success in your studies or at work is one thing, being happy and relaxed while you're enjoying that success is something quite different. It's often something that you have to learn how to do.

If your studies or your work is the only thing in your life that makes you feel good, you'll probably work so much that you become ill

and you probably won't really enjoy anything else that you do. That's why it's really enjoy anything else that you do. That's why it's really important to find activities you can do, like sports or creative (1) activities, which make you happy too. Try to find something that makes you forget about everything else that's going on in your life while you're doing it.

Check Vocabulary

(1) إبداعى/مبدع
(2) يحقق التوازن
(3) فرص
(4) راحة
(5) منطقة

A second and very important thing you can do to achieve balance (2) in your life is to learn to say 'no'. We might think that success is all about saying 'yes' to opportunities (3) and being brave enough to try anything that we're asked to do, even if it's outside our comfort (4) zone (5). In reality though, saying 'yes' too often can leave you feeling exhausted because you're doing too much and doing things you don't necessarily enjoy.

If you feel that you're saying 'yes' because you think you should do something and not because you really want to, then you need to change your 'yes' to a 'no'.

One final point about finding balance is to notice the 'story' that you're telling yourself about your life.

Sometimes, we tell ourselves the story that we aren't doing well enough if we don't work or study all the time. This means that working or studying all the time will make us feel good - at least for a short time - because it's showing us that this story is true. In the long term, however, we will not have enough balance in our lives. We need to change our stories to get our balance back.

Part IV Language

تنويه

تم شرح زمن المضارع التام البسيط والمضارع التام المستمر فى الوحدة الأولى. وسنكتفى هنا بالإشارة لبعض الفروق الجوهرية بين الزمنين فى الجدول التالى :

The difference between the present perfect simple and continuous

الفرق بين المضارع التام البسيط والمضارع التام المستمر

١ يُستخدم المضارع التام البسيط للدلالة على حدث تم وله أثر أو نتيجة في المضارع (الأثر أو النتيجة نتجت علي اكتمال أو تمام الحدث):

- He's had his meal, so he is full.
- Rokaya has done the housework, so she can watch TV now.

❷ لكن يُستخدم المضارع التام المستمر للدلالة على حدث له أثر أو نتيجة في المضارع (الأثر أو النتيجة نتجت عن الحدث وليس تمامه):

- I've been having my meal so there are plates, spoons and cups all over the table.
- Rokaya has been doing the housework, so she looks very tired.

❸ يُستخدم المضارع التام فقط وليس المضارع التام المستمر عند ذكر العدد أو الكم، ومن الكلمات الدالة على ذلك:

two / three ..... / many / a few / few / several / a lot of / lots of / all / plenty of ...+ مفعول جمع

- He has been drinking three cups of tea this evening. (✗)
- He has drunk three cups of tea this evening. (✓)
- He has been drinking at least a litre of tea this evening. (✗)
- He has drunk at least a litre of tea this evening. (✓)
- I have been meeting many customers recently. (✗)
- I have met many customers recently. (✓)

❹ يُستخدم المضارع التام فقط و ليس المضارع التام المستمر مع الأفعال اللحظية أو الأفعال التقريرية (أفعال الادراك والمشاعر و الحواس والتملك ...الخ):

-A fast car has been crashing into a rock by the road.(✗)
- A fast car has crashed into a rock by the road. (✓)
-We have been owning this flat for 15 years. (✗)
-We have owned this flat for 15 years. (✓)
-She has been knowing these friends for a year. (✗)
-She has known these friends for a year. (✓)

General Exercise | On Language | Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting Started

1. I ..... Wuthering Heights all day. It's very interesting, but I'm only on chapter 3. *(LM)*

a. have been reading
b. had read
c. had been reading
d. have read

2. Your hands are really dirty. What ..... ? *(LM)*
   a. had you been doing b. had you done
   c. have you been doing d. will you be doing

3. My grandfather ..... abroad; he prefers to spend his time wandering round his hometown. *(LM)*
   a. has ever travelled b. has never travelled
   c. has already travelled d. had never travelled

4. I miss you so much; I ..... you for ages! *(LM)*
   a. won't see b. hadn't seen
   c. haven't been seeing d. haven't seen

5. Since the beginning of the COVID-19 pandemic, the world economy ..... . *(LM)*
   a. has greatly affected b. had been greatly affected
   c. has been greatly affected d. had greatly affected

6. ..... doing the new exercise yet? *(LM)*
   a. Have you finished b. Had you finished
   c. Will you finish d. Are you finishing

7. They ..... the road to our village recently. *(LM)*
   a. had paved b. have been paved
   c. have been paving d. had been paving

8. He hasn't been able to play tennis ..... he broke his leg. *(LM)*
   a. since b. for c. go d. when

9. You can't meet Taher because he ..... Cairo International Book Fair. *(LM)*
   a. has been to b. has gone to c. has gone d. has been

10. They ..... in London since 2004. They are still living there. *(LM)*
   a. had lived b. have lived
   c. have been living d. had been living

11. My sister ..... at university for three years. She comes home every weekend.
   a. is b. has been c. is being d. had been

12. .....I started my job, I have met important people from all over the world.
   a. For b. Since c. Until d. When

13. His style of painting ..... over the years.
   a. have changed b. changing c. has changed d. is changed

14. Naguib Mahfouz's books ..... into many languages.
a. have translated b. had translated
c. were translating d. have been translated

15. Dr Barakat is funny. He has always ..... to his clinic by scooter.
a. come b. been coming c. came d. comes

16. Dr Barakat is funny. He always ..... to his clinic by scooter.
a. come b. been coming c. came d. comes

17. The forest fires ..... for three weeks now. We need a lot of rain t
put them out.
a. has burnt b. have been burning
c. has been burning d. have burnt

18. The forest fires ..... for three weeks. Now there are no trees.
a. has burnt b. have been burning
c. has been burning d. have burnt

19. I have ..... a car since 2018.
a. had b. been having c. having d. had been

20. She's ..... three letters this afternoon.
a. written b. been writing c. wrote d. writes

21. They're angry. They ..... for us for ages.
a. had been waiting b. waited
c. have waited d. have been waiting

22. They were angry. They ..... for us for ages.
a. had been waiting b. waited
c. have waited d. have been waiting

23. He was in hospital because he ..... an accident.
a. has had b. has been having
c. had had d. had been having

24. He's in hospital because he ..... an accident.
a. has had b. has been having
c. had had d. had been having

25. I've ..... this page four times and I still don't understand it all.
a. reading b. not read c. been reading d. read

26. I'm dead tired. I ..... for ten hours now.
a. had worked b. 've been working
c. 've worked d. had been working

27. I was dead tired. I ..... for ten hours then.
a. had worked b. 've been working
c. 've worked d. had been working

2 Special Cases

28. I am still working; I ..... doing that task yet. *(LM)*
a. hadn't finished b. haven't finished
c. won't finish d. have finished

29. She ..... a thorough cleaning of the house. Everything is sparkling. *(LM)*
a. had done b. had been doing
c. has been doing d. has done

30. ..... Luxor before? - Yes, I went there last winter. *(LM)*
a. Are you visiting b. Have you visited
c. Have you been visited d. Will you visit

31. You ..... the hall; it looks lovely!
a. were decorating b. will decorate c. have decorated d. had decorated

32. I ..... the movie you recommended. I'm enjoying it. *(LM)*
a. have watched b. had watched
c. have been watching d. had been watching

33. He ..... three cups of coffee since he reached the office this morning. *(LM)*
a. had drunk b. has drunk
c. is drinking d. has been drinking

34. I ..... reading the book you recommended, so we can talk about it now. *(LM)*
a. had finished b. have finished
c. have been finishing d. had been finishing

35. I ..... my friend, Kamel, since we were at school. *(LM)*
a. have known b. had known
c. are knowing d. have been knowing

36. I ..... 2000 metres today. *(LM)*
a. have run b. had run
c. have been running d. had been running

37. Tamer ..... his new car for five months now. *(LM)*
a. had had b. has had
c. has been having d. had been having

38. Please help me; I ..... my passport. What can I do?
a. had lost
b. will be losing
c. has been losing
d. have lost

39. How long ..... ? - I wish it would stop.
a. has it rained
b. has it been raining
c. will it be raining
d. was it raining

40. Omar ..... in a band since 2011. Now, he is its master violinist.
a. plays
b. has played
c. has been playing
d. is playing

41. Look! Someone ..... that window.
a. have broken
b. has broken
c. has been breaking
d. hasn't broken

42. ..... have you been studying English?
a. How long b. How long ago c. How much d. When

43. ..... did you start studying English?
a. How long b. How long ago c. How much d. When

44. I ..... letters all day. I wonder when I will finish.
a. typed
b. have been typing
c. have been typed
d. have typed

45. It's the first time I ..... the skateboard.
a. see b. have been seeing c. saw d. have seen

46. Splendid ! Has Sama done all the washing-up ..... ?
a. yet b. ever c. already d. since

47. Great news! You ..... the competition.
a. 've won b. have been winning c. haven't won d. are winnin

3 Check your understanding

48. " It's more than 40 years since I travelled abroad." This means that .....
a. I haven't ever travelled abroad.
b. I have travelled abroad forty years ago.
c. I last travelled abroad forty years ago.
d. I have travelled abroad for forty years.

49. This is the sixth email ..... .
a. I have sent today
b. I have been sending today
c. a & b
d. I had sent today

38. Please help me; I ..... my passport. What can I do?
a. had lost b. will be losing
c. has been losing d. have lost

39. How long ..... ? - I wish it would stop.
a. has it rained b. has it been raining
c. will it be raining d. was it raining

40. Omar ..... in a band since 2011. Now, he is its master violinist.
a. plays b. has played
c. has been playing d. is playing

41. Look! Someone ..... that window.
a. have broken b. has broken
c. has been breaking d. hasn't broken

42. ..... have you been studying English?
a. How long b. How long ago c. How much d. When

43. ..... did you start studying English?
a. How long b. How long ago c. How much d. When

44. I ..... letters all day. I wonder when I will finish.
a. typed b. have been typing
c. have been typed d. have typed

45. It's the first time I ..... the skateboard.
a. see b. have been seeing c. saw d. have seen

46. Splendid ! Has Sama done all the washing-up ..... ?
a. yet b. ever c. already d. since

47. Great news! You ..... the competition.
a. 've won b. have been winning c. haven't won d. are winnin

3 Check your understanding

48. " It's more than 40 years since I travelled abroad." This means that .....
a. I haven't ever travelled abroad.
b. I have travelled abroad forty years ago.
c. I last travelled abroad forty years ago.
d. I have travelled abroad for forty years.

49. This is the sixth email ..... .
a. I have sent today b. I have been sending today
c. a & b d. I had sent today

50. I started to know my neighbour Omar when we moved into this flat 10 years ago.
    a. I have been knowing my neighbour Omar since 2013.
    b. I have known my neighbour Omar for 2013.
    c. I have been known my neighbour Omar since 2013.
    d. I have known my neighbour Omar since 2013.

51. I was on the ground just after the finishing line out of breath; ..... .
    a. I have run 10 kilometres
    b. I have been running 10 kilometres
    c. I had been running 10 kilometres
    d. I had run 10 kilometres

52. I am on the ground just after the finishing line out of breath; ..... .
    a. I have run 10 kilometres
    b. I have been running 10 kilometres
    c. I had been running 10 kilometres
    d. I had run 10 kilometres

53. Which of the following is correctly structured ?
    a. I have been drinking four liters of water today.
    b. I had been drinking four liters of water today.
    c. I have drunk four liters of water today.
    d. I had drunk four liters of water today.

54. ..... now.
    a. He hasn't been watching a match for two months
    b. He hadn't been watching a match for two months
    c. He hadn't watched a match for two months
    d. He hasn't watched a match for two months

55. I ..... .
    a. haven't seen my cousin since last October
    b. didn't see my cousin for last October
    c. a & b
    d. haven't been seeing my cousin since last October

4 Feedback Exercise

56. She ..... lunch for two hours before her children returned home. *(LM)*
    a. had prepared
    b. has prepared
    c. has been preparing
    d. had been preparing

57. My aunt ..... in Tanta for ten years only. Now, she is living in Mansoura. *(LM)*
    a. has lived
    b. had lived
    c. has been living
    d. lived

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

LESSONS 5 & 6

SB pages 12 - 15 WB pages 6 & 7



Part I Vocabulary & Definitions

تنويه
• هذا الجزء خاص بالمفردات والتعبيرات الرئيسية للقصة. لقراءة نص القصة المقررة وللمزيد من المفردات اللغوية والتدريبات نهاية الكتاب.

1 Key Vocabulary, Idioms & Collocations
المفردات الرئيسية، التعبيرات الرئيسية والمتلازمات اللفظية

adore (d) (v)	يعشق - يحب ... بشدة	influence (d) (v-n)	يؤثر على - تأثير
annoyed(adj)	متضايق - منزعج	jealous(adj)	غيور - حاسد
call(ed) on(phr.v)	يزور	keep away from	يبقى بعيدًا عن
client(n)	عميل/زبون	leave it to me	دعني بعيدًا عن
dismiss (ed) (v)	يفصل من العمل	property(n)	دع الأمر لي
elegant(adj)	أنيق	recover (ed) (v)	عقار
gatekeeper(n)	بواب - حارس عقار	unpleasant(adj)	يتعافى - يسترد وعيه
gloomy(adj)	كئيب	wealthy(adj)	غير سار
guilty(adj)	مُذنِب	whisper (ed) (v/n)	ثري
			يهمس - همسة

2 Definitions تعريفات

تنويه لابد من قراءة التعريفات التالية جيدًا، فهي موضع امتحان.

adore (d) (v) يعشق - يحب ... بشدة	to love someone or something very much
call(ed) on(phr.v) يزور	to visit someone for a short time
client(n) عميل/زبون	someone who pays a person for a service or advice
dismiss (ed) (v) يفصل من العمل	to make someone leave their job
elegant(adj) أنيق	having an attractive and graceful appearance حَسَن
gatekeeper(n) بواب - حارس عقار	a person whose job is to guard an entrance يحرس مَدخَل
influence (d) (v) يؤثر على	to have an effect on the way someone behaves
jealous(adj) غيور - حاسد	feeling unhappy because someone has something that you wish you had
keep away from يبقى بعيدًا عن	to avoid going to or seeing

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

recover (ed) (v) يشفي - يسترد وعيه	to get better from an illness or injury
whisper (ed) (v/n) يهمس - همسة	to say something very quietly

Exercise On Vocabulary • Understand

• ✪ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. I ..... this type of sport; I like it very much. *(LM)*
   a. adore b. deal c. detest d. delay
2. I'm glad that my neighbour ..... and left hospital. *(LM)*
   a. healed b. cured c. recovered d. discovered
3. I noticed an elegant lady sitting next to my aunt. "Elegant" is similar in meaning to ".....". *(LM)*
   a. regretful b. dutiful c. armful d. graceful
4. We need to work hard to ..... the minds of foreign investors about the efficiency of Egyptian workers. . *(LM)*
   a. change b. charge c. check d. refuse
5. Nadia is ..... of her cousin because she's just got an iPhone.
   a. guilty b. gloomy c. jealous d. elegant
6. The job of a ..... is to open and close a gate, to decide who can enter the property.
   a. relative b. client c. gatekeeper d. whisper
7. Don't worry about anything at all. Just ..... .
   a. keep away from b. make a picnic for
   c. take pride in d. leave it to me
8. Why do you .....? - There is no one around.
   a. whisper b. recover c. adore d. dismiss
9. We were warned to..... that part of the city at night.
   a. keep away from b. make a picnic for
   c. take pride in d. leave it to me
10. Hana is a ..... of mine. She comes to my clinic every three months to check her teeth.
    a. relative b. client c. gatekeeper d. whisper

Part II Skills

المهارات الخاصة بالوحدة تم شرحها متبوعة بالتدريبات فى ملحق (Master your skills) كل وحدة على حدة.

Translation الترجمة

① Choose the best Arabic translation :

1. Without motivation in life, it's hard to strive for success and achieve internal happiness. You should try to achieve more success for yourself first before trying to please other people.

أ. بدون مشاكل الحياة، من السهل السعي لتحقيق الطموح وتحقيق السعادة الداخلية. يجب أن تحاول تحقيق المزيد من النجاح لإرضاء نفسك أولاً قبل محاولة إرضاء الآخرين.

ب. بدون الدافع في الحياة، من الصعب السعي لتحقيق النجاح وتحقيق السعادة الداخلية. يجب أن تحاول تحقيق المزيد من النجاح لنفسك أولاً قبل محاولة إرضاء الآخرين.

ج. بدون الدافع في الحياة، من السهل السعي لتحقيق النجاح وتحقيق الذات. يجب أن تحاول تحقيق المزيد من النجاح لنفسك أولاً قبل محاولة إرضاء الآخرين.

د. بدون الدافع في الحياة، من الصعب السعي لتحقيق النجاح وتحقيق السعادة مع الآخرين. يجب أن تحاول تحقيق المزيد من النجاح لإثبات ذاتك أولاً قبل محاولة إرضاء الآخرين.

2. You don't have to be a genius or a visionary or even a college graduate to be successful. You just need a framework and a dream

أ. عليك أن تكون عبقريًا أو صاحب رؤية أو حتى خريجًا جامعيًا لتكون ناجحًا، أنت فقط بحاجة إلى إطار عمل وحلم.

ب. ليس عليك أن تكون عبقريًا أو مرائيًا أو حتى خريجًا جامعيًا لتكون ناجحًا، أنت فقط بحاجة إلى إطار عمل وحلم.

ج. ليس عليك أن تكون عبقريًا أو صاحب رؤية أو حتى خريجًا جامعيًا لتكون ناجحًا، أنت فقط بحاجة إلى برواز وحلم.

د. ليس عليك أن تكون عبقريًا أو صاحب رؤية أو حتى خريجًا جامعيًا لتكون ناجحًا، أنت فقط بحاجة إلى إطار عمل وحلم.

3. There are two types of people who will tell you that you cannot make a difference: those who are afraid to try and those who are afraid you will succeed.

أ. هناك نوعان من الأشخاص الذين سيقولون لك أنه لا يمكنك صنع الاختلاف: أولئك الذين يخشون المحاولة وأولئك الذين يخشون أنك لن تنجح.

ب. هناك نوعان من الأشخاص الذين سيقولون لك أنه لا يمكنك صنع شيء مختلف: أولئك الذين يخشون المحاولة وأولئك الذين يحبون أنك ستنجح.

جـ. هناك نوعان من الأشخاص الذين سيقولون لك أنه لا يمكنك إحداث الفارق: أولئك الذين يخشون المحاولة وأولئك الذين يخشون أنك ستنجح.

د. هناك نوعان من الأشخاص الذين سيقولون لك أنه يمكنك إحداث الفارق: أولئك الذين لا يخشون المحاولة وأولئك الذين يخشون أنك ستنجح.

---

4. The real test is whether you let failure harden or shame you into inaction, or whether you learn from it; whether you choose to persevere.

أ. الاختبار الحقيقي هو ما إذا كنت تركت الفشل يقوى أو يخجلك إلى التقاعس، أو ما إذا كنت تتعلم منه. سواء اخترت المثابرة.

ب. إن الاختبار الحقيقي هو هل ستترك الفشل يشتد أو يخجلك إلى التقاعس، أو ما إذا كنت تتعلم منه. سواء اخترت المثابرة.

جـ. إن الاختبار الحقيقي هو هل ستترك الفشل يشتد أو يخجلك لتتقاعس، أو ما إذا كنت تتعلم منه. سواء اخترت المثابرة.

د. إن الاختبار الحقيقي هو هل ستترك الفشل يشتد أو يخجلك لتتقاعس، أو ما إذا كنت تتعلم منه وستختار المثابرة.

② Choose the best English translation :

١. التنمية المستدامة هي استراتيجية تهدف إلى تحقيق أهداف التنمية البشرية مع الحفاظ في الوقت نفسه على الموارد الطبيعية التي يعتمد عليها الاقتصاد والمجتمع. *LM)*

. Sustainable development is a strategy that aims to achieve humane development goals while simultaneously preserving the natural sources that the economy and society rely on.

. Social development is a strategy that aims to achieve human development goals while simultaneously preserving the natural resources that the country and society rely on.

. Sustainable development is a strategy that aims to achieve human development goals while simultaneously preserving the natural resources that the economy and society rely on.

. Sustainable development is a strategy that needs to achieve human development plans while simultaneously preserving the natural resources that the economy and society rely on.

---

٢. لم تكن الإعاقة الجسدية أبدًا عقبة في طريق النجاح، فكم من معاقين حققوا ما لم يحققه الأصحاء.

. Physical disability has never been an obstacle in the way of success, for how many disabled people have achieved what the healthy have not.

b. Physical disability has never been an obstacle in the way of success. There are so many disabled people have achieved what the healthy ha not.

c. Physical disability has never been an obstacle in the way of success. There are so many disabled people that have achieved what the healthy has not.

d. Physician disability has never been an obstacle in the way of success. There are so many disabled people who have achieved what the healthy have not.

لا توجد كلمة «مستحيل» في قاموس مفردات الإنسان الناجح، فالمستحيل يصبح ممكنًا بالتفكير والعمل الجاد.

a. There is no word "impossible" in the vocabulary of a successful person, the impossible becomes possible by thinking and hard work.

b. There is no "impossible" in the vocabulary dictionary of a successful person, the impossible become possible by thanking and hard work.

c. The word "impossible" does not belong to the vocabulary of a successful person. What is impossible becomes possible by thinking and hard work.

d. The word "impossible" does not belong to the vocabulary of a successful person. What is possible becomes impossible by thinking and hard work.

شخصيتها القوية وإصرارها على ألّا تُعامَل بشكل مختلف ساعداها على تغيير رأي الناس في الذين يعانون من متلازمة داون.

a. Her strong character and determination not to be treated differently have helped her to change people's minds about people with Down's Syndrome.

b. Her strong character and discrimination not to be treated differently have helped her to change people's minds about people with Down's Syndrome.

c. Her strong character and determination not to treat differently have helped her to change people's minds about people with Down's Syndrome.

d. Her strong character and determination not to be treated differently have helped her to change the people of Down's Syndrome minds.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. It is a great feeling when you ..... a challenge.
   a. change b. achieve c. overcome d. treat
2. Helping others during hard times is something of great ..... .
   a. value b. powerlifting c. polio d. Syndrome
3. On ....., I drink three coffees a day.
   a. vote b. average c. lecture d. Paralympic
4. I enjoy reading ..... which are extracted from the works of great writers.
   a. quotes b. disabilities c. role models d. councillors
5. To ..... is to behave towards someone or something in a particular way.
   a. overcome b. combine c. treat d. evaluate
6. We ..... notes to remember important information.
   a. do b. achieve c. treat d. make
7. I've achieved nearly all my goals." The verb 'achieved' here is a synonym of ..... .
   a. failed b. realised c. reached d. b&c
8. You '.....' when you do everything you can.
   a. do your best b. spare no effort c. try again d. a & b
9. Angela's parents encouraged her to work ..... and this helped her to achieve an important position at work.
   a. hard b. hardly c. hardy d. b & c
10. ....., no one was hurt in the accident.
    a. Lucky b. Luckily c. Unluckily d. Unlucky
11. Everybody looked ..... by her talk.
    a. impress b. impressed c. impressive d. impressively
12. She had ..... ever done any sport before she started doing powerlifting.
    a. hard b. hardly c. quick d. quickly
13. Ouch! I ..... my finger!
    a. don't cut b. will cut c. have been cutting d. 've cut

14. My mother is making sandwiches; she ..... bread all morning.
a. has cut b. has been cutting
c. was cut d. has cutting

15. My mother is making sandwiches; she ..... all the bread.
a. has cut b. has been cutting
c. was cut d. has cutting

16. Amazing! Have you finished the task ..... ?
a. yet b. just c. already d. never

Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

There are a number of reasons why the current voting age of 18 should be lowered to 16. First, a lower voting age in the United States would encourage other countries to follow this example. Many countries are discussing and debating the pros and cons of lowering the voting age, and if the United States gives 16 year-olds the right to vote, it will serve as an important example for the rest of the world.

More importantly, if 16 year-olds are old enough to engage in other adult activities, then they are old enough to vote. In many states, 16 year-olds can work, get a driver's licence, and **engage** in many other adult activities that make them mature enough to vote. If, at 16, a young person is old enough to manage the responsibilities of work and school then it is clear that they are responsible enough to make informed decisions about politics and politicians.

But the most important reason why the voting age should be lowered to 16 is that it will decrease apathy اللامبالاة and cynicism السلبية while stimulating a lifelong interest in political participation. Many young people feel as though their opinion doesn't matter. By the time they reach voting age, they are often disenchanted with politics and cynical about the entire political process.

If the voting age was lowered to 16, young people would know that their opinion does count. They would be inspired to exercise their right to vote not just as young adults but throughout their lives. The long-term results—a much higher percentage of interested voters and better voter turnout—will benefit our entire nation.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

17. The best title for this passage is ..... .
    a. A legal right for youth b. Impossible task
    c. Voting disadvantages d. Decreasing voting
18. We can infer that the word "**engage**" means ..... .
    a. exclude b. involve c. disappear d. include
19. The last paragraph deals with ..... lowering the voting age.
    a. the reasons for b. the demerits of
    c. the benefits of d. an argument against
20. If the United States lowered the voting age, most countries all over the world will ..... that.
    a. imitate b. ignore c. neglect d. avoid
21. Lowering the age of voting will increase the youth's ..... in political life.
    a. cynicism b. apathy c. isolation d. interest
22. Lowering the voting age to 16 years ..... in many countries.
    a. has been applied b. is being totally refused
    c. has become a law d. is still being discussed
23. The writer thinks that young people should vote ..... .
    a. after finishing university b. before having a job
    c. at the age of 16 d. at the age of 18
24. When the youth are able to vote, they will have their ..... personalities.
    a. dependent b. independent c. tolerant d. impatient

✪ Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Food addiction, mindless eating, living to eat; they're all related. It is a desire to **consume** foods that are not necessarily the healthiest choices or the best quantities, or at times when our bodies don't really need fuel. Do you like eating or you would like to follow a diet? Some people like eating food to be healthy and strong as it was believed that being overweight was healthy, but nowadays most people disagree with this viewpoint.

من أن مواقع التواصل الاجتماعى ظهرت من فترة قصيرة، إلا أنها تلعب دورًا هامًا ومؤثرًا فى الأفراد.

a. Although social networking sites had appeared recently, they played important and influential role in individuals' lives.

b. Although social networking media have disappeared recently, they p an important and influential role in individual's lives.

c. Although social networking media has appeared recently, they play a important and influential role in individual's lives.

d. Although social networking sites have appeared recently, they play a important and influential role in individuals' lives.

✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

37. Which of the following is used to show one of the merits of the internet?
    a. We can't ignore the fact that the internet has become the home lot of e-crimes.
    b. The main advantage to emphasise is that the internet is the mo rapid source of information.
    c. To me, the internet is really a double-edged weapon. Therefore should be used carefully.
    d. Regrettably, many people, particularly in rural regions, do not h access to the internet.

38. You summarise the content of your essay when you .....
    a. develop the main idea.
    b. write the elements of your essay in detail.
    c. make the end open.
    d. write the conclusion of your essay.

39. Which of the following is punctuated correctly?
    a. "I'm visiting you tonight, my friend said".
    b. "I'm visiting you tonight" my friend said.
    c. "I'm visiting you tonight," my friend said.
    d. "I m visiting you tonight," my friend said.

40. "Although we are surrounded by these mass-produced devices, thi does not mean that their use should be implemented in the future: This could be part of an essay about ..... . (Practice Ex. 1)
    a. technology b. equality c. mobile phones d. films

1. (a) (b) (c) (d)
2. (a) (b) (c) (d)
3. (a) (b) (c) (d)
4. (a) (b) (c) (d)
5. (a) (b) (c) (d)
6. (a) (b) (c) (d)
7. (a) (b) (c) (d)
8. (a) (b) (c) (d)
9. (a) (b) (c) (d)
10. (a) (b) (c) (d)
11. (a) (b) (c) (d)
12. (a) (b) (c) (d)
13. (a) (b) (c) (d)
14. (a) (b) (c) (d)
15. (a) (b) (c) (d)
16. (a) (b) (c) (d)
17. (a) (b) (c) (d)
18. (a) (b) (c) (d)
19. (a) (b) (c) (d)
20. (a) (b) (c) (d)
21. (a) (b) (c) (d)
22. (a) (b) (c) (d)
23. (a) (b) (c) (d)
24. (a) (b) (c) (d)
25. (a) (b) (c) (d)
26. (a) (b) (c) (d)
27. (a) (b) (c) (d)
28. (a) (b) (c) (d)
29. (a) (b) (c) (d)
30. (a) (b) (c) (d)
31. (a) (b) (c) (d)
32. (a) (b) (c) (d)
33. (د) (ج) (ب) (أ)
34. (د) (ج) (ب) (أ)
35. (a) (b) (c) (d)
36. (a) (b) (c) (d)
37. (a) (b) (c) (d)
38. (a) (b) (c) (d)
39. (a) (b) (c) (d)
40. (a) (b) (c) (d)

General Exercises
for Al Azhar students on Unit 7

تدريبات
المزيد من
تدريبات للأزهر
تدريب - بنك
الأسئلة

1. Finish the following dialogue :

Esraa and Sara are talking about climate change.

Esraa : I'm doing a project on climate change

(1) ..... ?

Sara : Of course. (2) ..... ?

Esraa : What do you think the main cause of climate change are ?

Sara : (3) ..... .

Esraa : How can the increase in numbers of cars lead to that dangerou problem ?

Sara : They cause air pollution.

Esraa : Then, it is better for us and the environment to use electric car isn't it ?

Sara : (4) ..... .

2. Write a paragraph of one hundred and twenty (120) words on :

"How to achieve success in life"

.....

3. Translate into Arabic :

- According to experts' reports, the near future will witness further development in space exploration.

.....

4. Translate into English :

لكى تزدهر السياحة، يجب أن يعتبر كل مصرى نفسه مرشدًا سياحيًا.

.....

5. Answer the following question : (Islamic Selections) :

How was Muhammed's heart filled up with Heavenly light and Guidance ?

.....

.....

UNIT 8

Work experience

SB pages 16 : 25 WB pages 8 : 13

Learning Outcomes :

- **Reading :**
  A student CV; An excerpt from *Notes on Nursing: What it is, and What it is not* (1859)
- **Writing :**
  Write a cv and an online professional profile
- **Listening :**
  A presentation on finding the right work experience
- **Speaking :**
  Role-play an interview for an internship
- **Language :**
  Passive forms
- **Life skills :**
  Self-management and productivity : Setting goals and making achievable plans

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com



Part I Vocabulary

تنويه • اختبر مدى اتقانك للمفردات الرئيسية فى كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

apply(ied) (v)	يتقدم بطلب لـ - يُطبِّق	human being	كائن بشري
(be) charged	مُتَّهم - مشحون - مُكلف	human resources	الموارد البشرية
(be) in charge(of)	مسئول (عن)	intern(n)	
disaster(n)	كارثة/مصيبة	internship(n)	ب مهني
candidate(n)	مُرشَّح(لوظيفة/منصب)		ب المهني - الزمالة
colossal(adj)	جَسِيم - هائل	part-time(adj)	امتياز
curriculum vitae (CV)=resume (n)	السيرة الذاتية	resources(n)	م جزئي/لبعض الوقت
full-time(adj)	بدوام كامل	measure(n)	ار - إجراء - مقياس

تنويه • المفردات اللغوية باللون الأحمر هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية.

2 Important Vocabulary

achievable(adj)	مُمْكِنٌ إِنْجَازُهُ	digital(adj)	
act(ed) (v)	يتصرف	participate(d) (v)	شارك
advanced(adj)	متقدم/عالي	permanent	دائم
attractive(adj)	جذاب	point(n)	فكرة - نقطة
base(d) (v/n)	يؤسِّس - يبني - قاعدة	position(n)	وظيفة - مكانة
basically(adv)	بشكل أساسي	practise(d) (v)	يمارس
consider(ed) (v)	يُفكر في - يضع فى الاعتبار	process(n)	عملية
contact details	تفاصيل التواصل	productivity(n)	الإنتاجية
contact information	معلومات التواصُل	professionally(adv)	باحترافية/بمهنية
create(d) (v)	يُنشئ - يخلق - يبتكر	profile(n)	ملف شخصي - وضع
crowd(n)	حشد - تَجمهُر	proper (adj)	مناسب
dentist's(n)	عيادة أسنان	qualification(n)	مُؤهِّل
destroy(ed) (v)	يُدمِّر	research(ed) (v/n)	يُجري أبحاث على - بحث
determination (n)	عزيمة - إصرار	respected(adj)	حَسَن السمعة - محترم
		self-management(n)	الإدارة الذاتية
		service(n)	

LESSONS 1 & 2

SB pages 16 : 19 WB pages 8 & 9



Part I Vocabulary

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

تنويه • اختبر مدى اتقانك للمفردات الرئيسية فى كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

apply(ied) (v)	يتقدم بطلب لـ - يُطبّق	human being	إنسان/كائن بشري
(be) charged	مُتّهم - مشحون - مُكلف	human resources	الموارد البشرية
(be) in charge(of)	مسئول (عن)	intern(n)	متدرب مهني
disaster(n)	كارثة/مصيبة	internship(n)	التدريب المهني - الزمالة
candidate(n)	مُرشّح(الوظيفة/منصب)		
colossal(adj)	جَسيم - هائل	part-time(adj)	بدوام جزئي/لبعض الوقت
curriculum vitae (CV)=resume (n)	السيرة الذاتية	resources(n)	موارد
full-time(adj)	بدوام كامل	measure(n)	معيار - إجراء - مقياس

تنويه • المفردات اللغوية باللون الأحمر هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية.

2 Important Vocabulary

achievable(adj)	مُمْكِنٌ إنْجازُهُ	digital(adj)	رقمي
act(ed) (v)	يتصرف	participate(d) (v)	يشارك
advanced(adj)	متقدم/عالي	permanent	دائم
attractive(adj)	جذاب	point(n)	نكرة - نقطة
base(d) (v/n)	يؤسّس - يبني - قاعدة	position(n)	وظيفة - مكانة
basically(adv)	بشكل أساسي	practise(d) (v)	يمارس
consider(ed) (v)	يُفكر في - يضع فى الاعتبار	process(n)	عملية
contact details	تفاصيل التواصل	productivity(n)	الإنتاجية
contact information	معلومات التواصُل	professionally(adv)	باحترافية/بمهنية
create(d) (v)	يُنشئ - يخلق - يبتكر	profile(n)	ملف شخصي - وضع
crowd(n)	حشد - تَجمهُر	proper (adj)	مناسب
dentist's(n)	عيادة أسنان	qualification(n)	مُؤهِّل
destroy(ed) (v)	يُدمِّر	research(ed) (v/n)	يُجري أبحاث على - بحث
determination (n)	عزيمة - إصرار	respected(adj)	حَسَن السمعة - محترم
		self-management(n)	الإدارة الذاتية
		service(n)	خدمة

economics(n)	(علم) الاقتصاد	measures(n)	إجراءات - معايير
employer(n)	صاحب عمل	skill(n)	مهارة
evaluate(d) (v)	يُقيِّم	skilled(adj)	مُدرَّب/حاصل على تدريب
excellence(n)	التَميُّز - الكفاءة	skillful(adj)	ماهر - لديه مهارات
excerpt(n)	مُقتطف/اقتباس	specifically(adv)	تحديدًا
factors(n)	عوامل	strategy(n)	استراتيجية - خطة شاملة
fluently(adv)	بطلاقة	throughout(adv)	في كل أنحاء
lack(ed) (v/n)	ينقصه - نقص	volunteer(ed) (n/v)	مُتطوِّع - يتطوع
level(n)	مُستوي	want(n)	الحاجة/الرغبة
marketing(n)	التسويق	wetlands(n)	أراضي المستنقعات/ أهوار

3 Definitions تعريفات

apply(ied) (v) يتقدم بطلب لـ	to make a formal request, usually written, for something such as a job, a place at a university, or permission إذن to do something
be in charge مسئول - يتولى مسئولية	to be responsible for or have responsibility for
disaster(n) كارثة/مصيبة	a big problem or accident
candidate(n) مُرشَّح(لوظيفة)	a person who is interested in getting a specific job
colossal(adj) جَسيم - هائل	very large
curriculum vitae (CV) (n) السيرة الذاتية	a summary of a person's education, experience and skills curricula vitae وعند الجمع تتغير إلى
full-time(adj) بدوام كامل	describes a job someone does for the whole of the working week
human being إنسان	a human/a person
human resources قسم الموارد البشرية	the department قسم/ديوان that finds people to work and organises training at a company
in charge(adj) مسئول	being responsible for
intern(n) مُتدرب مهني	a person who is working at a company for a short time to get work experience
internship(n) التدريب المهني	when someone works for a company to get work experience
measure(n) معيار - إجراء - مقياس	ways of procedures an action, especially an official one, that is intended to deal with a particular problem
part-time(adj) بدوام جزئي/لبعض الوقت	describes a job someone only does for some of the working week

UNIT 8

Exercise On Vocabulary • Understand

• ✪ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1 Key vocabulary

1. I need a ..... job for three hours every day to increase my income.
   a. part-time b. full-time c. permanent d. complete
2. There are twenty ..... for the same job; the salary is generous.
   a. interviews b. employers c. interns d. candidates
3. I worked for a clothes factory for two months as a kind of .....
   a. internship b. intern c. membership d. scholarship
4. **Rami:** Is it a job for some time daily?
   Hatim: No, it's a ..... job as I am in need of a full salary.
   a. part-time b. full-time c. temporary d. voluntary
5. Hurricanes and tropical storms are different kinds of natural ..... that threaten man.
   a. disasters b. holidays c. celebrations d. festivals
6. Who was in ..... of the sales department after Mr. Adly had resigned?
   a. change b. charge c. choice d. chat
7. An ..... is a person who works for a company or factory for a limited period of time without being paid.
   a. internship b. intern c. employer d. employee
8. Safety ..... inside the factory must be taken seriously.
   a. measures b. manners c. chaos d. planes
9. The human ..... discusses adding some members to the staff of the company.
   a. resources b. process c. measures d. beings
10. I was in a/an ..... danger when the snake entered my room throw the window overlooking the garden.
    a. colossal b. achievable c. advanced d. voluntary
11. I have to ..... for full membership of the club to take part in the vote.
    a. evaluate b. apply c. trace d. lack

12. Each candidate is kindly asked to send their ..... by email.
a. productivity b. management
c. economics d. curricula vitae

13. When you are responsible for a crime, you are ..... it.
a. in charge of b. charged with c. applied d. traced

2 Important vocabulary

14. Success in life is based on hard work and ..... . *(LM)*
a. aviation b. elimination c. deterioration d. determination

15. You should ..... your internship on something you really enjoy. *(LM)*
a. make b. base c. sit d. leave

16. A ..... is an area of that is partly covered with water, or is not dry most of the time.
a. wetland b. finalist c. fit d. crowd

17. I had to go to the ..... to take off a bad tooth.
a. department b. dentist's c. factor d. feedback

18. Ignorance is one of the ..... that lead to terrorist activities.
a. departments b. dentist's c. factors d. feedbacks

19. I have got 3 advanced- ..... qualifications at grade A in business studies. *(LM)*
a. mark b. level c. sign d. symbol

20. I was careful to make notes of everything ..... the lecture.
a. throughout b. basically c. professionally d. fluently

21. Sama is being ..... for her wedding dress.
a. acted b. participated c. measured d. volunteered

22. I paid a professional designer to design my webpage ..... .
a. waitress b. candidate c. intern d. profile

23. This ..... of the performance impressed us all.
a. internship b. excellence c. excerpt d. calamity

24. These exercises are prepared for average students, not for the ..... level.
a. colossal b. achievable c. advanced d. trifling

25. The committee اللجنة needs to ..... how well the new plan works.
a. evaluate b. apply c. lift d. lack

26. She studied ..... at university and now she works as an accoun in an international bank.
a. productivity b. management c. economics d. curriculum
27. This is a/an ..... watch.
a. full-time b. part-time c. achievable d. digital
28. In a CV, contact ..... and contact information mean the same.
a. marketing b. details c. strategy d. want
29. He is no criminal. It is clear that he ..... in self-defence.
a. acted b. achieved c. measured d. volunteered
30. She is ..... an engineer, but she preferred to work in the field of teaching disabled children.
a. throughout b. basically c. friendly d. fluently
31. This famous actress started her work life as a/an ..... in a pizza restaura
a. waitress b. candidate c. intern d. profile
32. When a goal is ....., it can be reached.
a. colossal b. achievable c. advanced d. trifling
33. The team really ..... a talented play maker. Do you think Ammar can do well in this position?
a. evaluates b. applies c. participates d. lacks
34. Self- ..... is a good quality in a job candidate.
a. productivity b. management c. economics d. curriculum vitae
35. All businesses now pay too much care to digital ..... .
a. marketing b. process c. calamity d. want
36. A kind gentleman ..... to help the child cross the road.
a. lacked b. participated c. measured d. volunteered
37. I am a manager to a big staff, so I have to behave ..... .
a. throughout b. basically c. professionally d. fluently
38. The ..... of economic reform إصلاح needs all citizens to be patient and hard working.
a. resources b. process c. measures d. beings
39. Your ..... decreases if you are overworked or under stress.
a. productivity b. management c. economics d. curriculum vitae
40. We need a new ..... for combating pollution.
a. marketing b. details c. strategy d. want
41. Those who ..... in public service are positive citizens.
a. trace b. participate c. measure d. value

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

3 Definitions

42. A/An ..... is an action, especially an official one, that is intended to deal with a particular problem.
a. human resource b. measure c. curriculum vitae d. internship

43. A ..... job is one someone only does for some of the working week.
a. trifling b. colossal c. full-time d. part-time

44. ..... means ways or procedures.
a. Measures b. Resources c. Sources d. Internships

45. The ..... department finds people to work and organises training at a company.
a. human resources b. calamity c. curriculum vitae d. internship

46. A/An ..... is a person who is interested in getting a specific job.
a. human resource b. human being c. intern d. candidate

47. A/An ..... is a person who is working at a company for a short time to get work experience.
a. human resource b. human being c. intern d. candidate

48. A/An ..... is big problems or accidents.
a. human resources b. disaster c. curriculum vitae d. internship

49. A/An ..... is a summary of a person's education, experience and skills.
a. human resource b. calamity c. curriculum vitae d. internship

50. Something that is ..... is very large.
a. trifling b. colossal c. full-time d. part-time

51. A/An ..... is when someone works for a company to get work experience.
a. human resources b. calamity c. curriculum vitae d. internship

52. A ..... job is one someone does for the whole of the working week.
a. trifling b. colossal c. full-time d. part-time

53. A/An ..... means a person.
a. human resource b. human being c. intern d. candidate

54. To ..... means to be responsible or have responsibility.
a. be charged b. trace c. be in charge d. apply

Part II Vocabulary Study

تنويه ساعد مُعلمك على الإرتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مُسبقًا بشكل جيد.

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

accept	the challenge يقبل التحدى	go	bird watching الطيور wrong
build	websites ينشىء موقع إلكترونى	make	achievable plans خطط من الممكن إنجازها
design	websites يصمم موقع إلكترونى		a choice
develop	a social media strategy يطور استراتيجية وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى		links between بين
find	employment يجد عمل		videos فيديو
do	an internship يقضى فترة تدريب مهنى	play	the violin على الكمان
give	feedback on يقدم بعض الملاحظات عن	set	goals أهداف
	presentations يقوم بعروض تقديمية	take	photographs صور
	talks يلقى خُطَب	work	part-time عمل بدوام جزئى

Mini Test 1 Collocations

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I'm able to build websites perfectly. "Build" here is similar in meaning to ".....". *(LM)*
   a. sign b. appear c. do d. create
2. I am going to ..... an internship at a nearby factory during the school holidays.
   a. agree b. enroll c. do d. make
3. I am sure you have the ability to ..... the correct choice. *(LM)*
   a. go b. get c. find d. make
4. They ..... bird watching near the lake.
   a. went b. got c. found d. made
5. She has ..... employment in a supermarket.
   a. gone b. moved on c. found d. made

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

6. I was very nervous when I ..... my first talk.
a. went b. gave c. played d. received

7. As a university student, you can ..... only part-time.
a. work b. build c. make d. do

8. The task seems impossible, but I ..... the challenge.
a. make b. set c. accept d. give

9. My PC stopped because something ..... wrong with the power supply.
a. went b. gave c. played d. received

10. The goals ..... for this child does not suit his abilities.
a. make b. set c. accept d. give

11. Rodayna can ..... some musical instruments like the violin.
a. go b. give c. play d. receive

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
be in charge (of)	مسئول عن	be responsible / have responsibility for
be charged with	مُتَّهم بـ	be accused of
disaster	كارثة / مصيبة	calamity / catastrophe
colossal	جسيم - هائل	very large / massive / gigantic
human being	إنسان / كائن بشرى	man/person
CV (Curriculum Vitae)	سيرة ذاتية	résumé

3 Antonyms متضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)	
be charged	متهم	be innocent	بريء
be charged	مشحون	be empty/be dead	فارغ
be charged	مكلف - مدفوع	be free/be free of charge	متفرغ/مجانى
colossal (adj)	جسيم - هائل	tiny/minute/little	ضئيل الحجم

Mini Test 2 Synonyms & Antonyms

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The statue of Ramsis II is colossal. "Colossal" is opposite in meaning to "..... ". (LM)
a. tidy b. huge c. big d. tiny

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

2. "He was charged with disturbing إزعاج the authorities." The word 'charged' in this sentence is a synonym of ..... .
   a. innocent b. accused c. filled d. fined
3. "I want to know who is in charge here." In this sentence, 'in charge' can be replaced by ..... .
   a. colossal b. fined c. full d. responsible
4. "Buying all these toys is a colossal waste of money." The adjective 'colossal' here gives the same meaning as ..... .
   a. very large b. minute c. tiny d. average
5. "Human being" is to ..... . as calamity is to disaster.
   a. woman b. prison c. person d. beast

4 Derivatives المشتقات

Verb	Noun	Adjective
apply يتقدم بطلب / يطبق	application/app تطبيق application طلب انضمام applicant متقدم بطلب	applied تطبيقى applicable ملائم/منطبق - متاح
	calamity كارثة/مصيبة	calamitous كارثى
	colossus شىء ضخم / عملاق	colossal جسيم/ضخم/هائل
intern يعتقل	intern متدرب مهنى - طبيب امتياز internship التدريب المهنى - الامتياز	internal داخلى

Mini Test 3 Derivatives

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Salah is a football ..... .
   a. calamitous b. colossus c. colossal d. colossally
2. Salah is a ..... talented footballer.
   a. calamitous b. colossus c. colossal d. colossally
3. Salah has a ..... talent as a footballer.
   a. calamitous b. colosseum c. colossal d. colossally
4. This solution is ..... only here. Don't try it anywhere else.
   a. applied b. application c. apply d. applicable

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

5. I studied ..... physics at university.
a. applied b. application c. apply d. applicable

6. I intend to ..... the same method طريقة of teaching for teaching grammar.
a. applied b. application c. apply d. applicable

7. Some troublemakers were ..... during the football tournament.
a. interned b. interns c. internship d. internal

8. There are 15 ..... in our company.
a. interned b. interns c. internship d. internal

9. Fifteen students are doing ..... in our company.
a. interned b. interns c. internship d. internal

10. It will be a real ..... if it does not rain this year too.
a. calamity b. calamitous c. colossus d. colossal

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a waste of time	مضيعة للوقت	in a certain way	بطريقة محددة
advanced level	مستوي متقدم	interests and hobbies	الاهتمامات والهوايات
Business Studies	دراسات الأعمال	the Egyptian public	الجمهور المصري
by post	بالبريد	old people's home	دار مُسنِّين
colossal calamities	كوارث جسيمة	or rather	أو بالأحرى
customer service	خدمة العملاء	popular with	مشهور لدي
except for	فيما عدا	proper measures	معايير مناسبة
fire brigade	إدارة المطافئ	social media posts	منشورات وسائل التواصُل
from ... down to	من ... وصولاً إلى	sure about	مُتأكِّد من
good fit for	ملائم لـ	work experience	خبرة العمل
high school	مدرسة ثانوية		

6 Synonymous expressions تعبيرات مترادفة

digital marketing = online marketing التسويق الرقمي	in contact with = have regular communication with علي تواصل مع
have responsibility for = be responsible for = be in charge of مسئول عن	take on difficult tasks = agree to do difficult tasks يقوم بالمهام الصعبة

7 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

apply for	يتقدم بطلب لـ	hear of	يسمع بـ /
benefit from	يستفيد من	look for	يبحث عن
carry out	يُنفِّذ / يقوم بـ	participate in	يشارك في
come up	يظهر - يحدُث	take on	
find out	يعرف / يكتشف	work as	
go on (phr.v)	يستمر - يحدث		

Mini Test 4 Expressions, Prepositions & Idioms

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I am looking ..... an internship at a car factory. *(LM)*
   a. with b. forward c. for d. into
2. I like meeting and talking to people, so the job of a tour guide is a good ..... for me.
   a. wetland b. finalist c. fit d. crowd
3. "Tell me what is going on, please." In this context, the phrasal verb, 'go on' means ..... .
   a. continuing b. occurring c. happening d. b & c
4. When someone ..... a task, he agrees to do it.
   a. traces ... to b. finds out c. takes on d. looks for
5. "I am in charge of this survey." This means I ..... for it.
   a. am responsible b. have responsibility
   c. have reasons d. a & b
6. When you have regular communication with someone, you are ..... them.
   a. in contact b. in contact with
   c. disconnected from d. updated to
7. I'd like very much to participate ..... the public service workshop.
   a. in b. with c. to d. as
8. I go to school in my car, ... my father's car.
   a. but b. or rather c. however d. although
9. He succeeded in carrying ..... the task before the deadline.
   a. of b. onto c. out d. down

7 Verb + Preposition

apply for	يتقدم بطلب لـ	hear of	
benefit from	يستفيد من	look for	
carry out	يُنفِّذ / يقوم به	participate in	
come up	يظهر - يحدُث	take on	
find out	يعرف / يكتشف	work as	
go on (phr.v)	يستمر - يحدث		

Mini Test 4 Expressions, Prepositions & Idioms

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d : *(LM)*

1. I am looking ..... an internship at a car factory.
a. with b. forward c. for d. into

2. I like meeting and talking to people, so the job of a tour guide is a good ..... for me.
a. wetland b. finalist c. fit d. crowd

3. "Tell me what is going on, please." In this context, the phrasal verb, 'on' means ..... .
a. continuing b. occurring c. happening d. b & c

4. When someone ..... a task, he agrees to do it.
a. traces ... to b. finds out c. takes on d. looks for

5. "I am in charge of this survey." This means I ..... for it.
a. am responsible b. have responsibility
c. have reasons d. a & b

6. When you have regular communication with someone, you are ..... them.
a. in contact b. in contact with
c. disconnected from d. updated to

7. I'd like very much to participate ..... the public service worksh
a. in b. with c. to d. as

8. I go to school in my car, ... my father's car.
a. but b. or rather c. however d. although

9. He succeeded in carrying ..... the task before the deadline.
a. of b. onto c. out d. down

10. I have never heard of this writer before. This means I ..... him before now.
a. listened to b. didn't listen to c. knew d. didn't know

11. From the city centre ..... the ring road, the bus stopped seven times.
a. down b. down to c. on d. for

12. ..... marketing means selling goods and services online.
a. Digital b. Traditional c. Partner d. Offline

13. When we say that something has come up, we mean it has suddenly ..... .
a. occurred b. reached c. arrived d. b & c

8 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

be in charge / be charged

• **be in charge** مسئول (بدون مفعول بعدها)
- I want to know who is in charge in this office.

• **be in charge of** مسئول عن (+ مفعول بعدها)
- I want to know who is in charge of this office.

• **be charged with** مُتَّهم بـ
- The terrorist was charged with deliberate murder القتل العمد.

• **be charged** مشحون
- My mobile is charged.

human being - human resources

• **human being (human beings)** إنسان/شخص (بشر / أشخاص)
- I respect all human beings.

• **human resources (HR)**
قسم الموارد البشرية (وهو قسم فى الشركة يختص بالتوظيف والتدريب ومساعدة العاملين)
- My uncle is the head of the human resources in this company.
لاحظ أن مصطلح (human resources) غالبًا يتبعه فعل جمع، لكن الفعل المفرد صحيح ويمكن استخدامه فى الإنجليزية البريطانية فقط :
- Human resources are responsible for retraining the staff. (British & American)
- Human resources is responsible for retraining the staff. (British)

app - application

• **application = app (n)** تطبيق حاسوبي
- Google store is full of applications. (✓)
= Google store is full of apps (✓)

• **application (n)** التطبيق العملي / التنفيذ
- The application of this theory in real life is impossible. (✓)
- The app of this theory in real life is impossible. (✗)

• **application (n)** طلب التحاق (بوظيفة / عضوية ...)
- Sorry, but your application was rejected. تم رفضه

applicant - candidate

• **applicant (n)** متقدم بطلب لـ (وظيفة / عضوية نادي / مؤسسة دراسية ...)
• **candidate (n) for** مُرشَّح من بين المتقدمين للحصول علي (الوظيفة / العضوية ...)
- There are only three candidates out of fifty applicants for the job.

grade - rank

• **grade** صف دراسي
- My son is in grade two.

• **grade** تقدير / درجة امتحان أو شهادة
- Your grades are very good. I'm proud of you.

• **rank** رُتبة – مكانة اجتماعية
- My father held the rank of a colonel in the army.

degree - certificate

• **degree** درجة حرارة
- The temperature dropped to seven degrees Celsius.

• **degree** قياس الزاوية
- Draw an angle of 45 degrees.

• **degree** مستوي
- This film has a high degree of violence.

• **degree** مؤهل دراسي (جامعي)
- He has a degree in law from Cairo University.

• **certificate** وثيقة رسمية – شهادة
- This is my birth certificate.

• **degree certificate** شهادة المؤهل الدراسي
- There is a copy of my degree certificate in my CV.

Mini Test 5 C

Choose the correct

1. I sent my .....
a. app
2. This ..... is
a. app
3. The manager
a. in charge
4. The manager
the company
a. in charge
5. He is .....
a. in charg
6. You are v
a. ranks
7. If you a
a. degre
8. The we
tomor
a. deg

9 Ma

• apply
- I ap
- ap
- M
-
-

Mini Test 5 Clear the Confusion

• **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. I sent my ..... as an email attachment.
   a. app b. application c. apply d. a & b
2. This ..... is free on Google Store.
   a. app b. application c. apply d. a & b
3. The manager is abroad on business, so currently I am ..... .
   a. in charge b. charged c. in charge of d. charged with
4. The manager is abroad on business, so currently I am ..... the company.
   a. in charge b. charged c. in charge of d. charged with
5. He is ..... the bank robbery.
   a. in charge b. charged c. in charge of d. charged with
6. You are very clever, Rodayna. Your ..... are excellent.
   a. ranks b. grades c. appointments d. conferences
7. If you are married, include your marriage ..... in your file.
   a. degree b. certificate c. CV d. qualification
8. The weather forecast says the temperature is going to be 43 ..... tomorrow.
   a. degrees b. certificates c. metres d. miles

9 Master your Key Vocabulary كل ما يخص المفردات

apply

• apply (ied) (v) يتقدم بطلب (التحاق / انضمام)

- I applied for this job because I need work badly.

لاحظ أن :

- **apply for** يتقدم بطلب (يأتي بعدها اسم الشيء الذي نتقدم للحصول عليه)
- Mai applied for the job of a secretary.
- **apply to** يتقدم بطلب (يأتي بعدها اسم الشخص أو الجهة الذي نتقدم إليه)
- I'll apply to the club.
- **apply in writing** يتقدم بطلب مكتوب
- It is better if you apply in writing.

• **apply (to) (v)** يطبق على - يَسْرِي على
- The discount الخصم doesn't apply to summer clothes.
- This plan seems impossible to apply.

• **applied (adj)** تطبيقي - عملي
- I studied applied maths in secondary two.

• **applicable to (adj)** ملائم لـ - ينطبق علي
- The rules are applicable only to old members.

• **applicant (n)** مُتقدم بطلب (الوظيفة / جامعة / نادي ...)
- As an applicant, I have to prepare a good CV.

disaster

• **disaster (n)** كارثة/مصيبة = **calamity**
- Coronavirus pandemic was a calamity for workers in the tourist industry.

• **calamitous (adj)** كارثي = **disastrous**
- Coronavirus pandemic had a calamitous effect on the tourist industry.

take ... on

• **take** (شخص) **on = take on** (شخص) يُوَظِّف / يُشغل - ينافس
- Our company intends to take on 200 workers next year.
= Our company intends to take 200 workers on next year.
- Egypt took on Uruguay in the first round of the World Cup 2018.

• **take +** (شيء) **on = take on** (شيء) يقبل تحمل مسئولية / يتكفل بالقيام بعمل مؤقت
- I advise you not to take on much work.
- Mr Nasser has taken on the post منصب of the manager.

• **take over = take control = become responsible** يتولى المسئولية / يتحكم
- When his father retired, he took over as a manager.

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

تنويه: التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

• **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. I do this job temporarily مؤقتاً for ..... of something better.
a. marketing b. details c. strategy d. want

2. He was one of 30 ..... for the manager's job.
a. applicable b. applies c. applicants d. appliances

3. The best ..... of coffee are very expensive.
   a. degree b. grades c. licences d. customers

4. **A :** Does the pay rise ..... to me, sir? **B :** Sure. All workers will get it.
   a. contact b. abbreviate c. achieve d. apply

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	d	التعبير (for want of something) يعني (لأنى لا أجد شيئًا أفضل للقيام به)
2.	c	الكلمة (applicants) هي الاختيار المناسب بمعني المرشحين للوظيفة
3.	b	كلمة (grade) هنا تعنى (صنف)
4.	d	الفعل (apply) هنا يعنى (يسرى على)

Part III Reading & Listening

Tapescript
نصوص
استماع الوحدة

1 Reading Texts

Emma Day *(SB page 17)*

1. **Contact information : 25 Oak Lane, Manchester, M1 3AL 07159 135 118**
   emma.day@gmail.com
   I am currently looking for an internship in digital marketing in the Manchester area.



2. **Personal statement : an organised person, with a good understanding of social media.**
3. **Education : September 2013 - July 2021.**
   Bridgetown High School, Manchester
   - 3 Advanced level qualifications at grade A in Business Studies, Economics and English
   - Awarded the school prize for excellence in Economics in my final year
4. **Work Experience : March 2020 – Present**
   Social media assistant, Manchester Evening News (part-time)
   - Designing social media posts for news stories
   - Working with colleagues to develop a social media strategy for the newspaper
   - Participating in a project to research social media habits with colleagues from other countries

January 2019 – December 2019 Waitress, Clive's Café (part-time)

- Worked as part of a team
- Developed customer service skills

5. Skills :

- Able to design and build websites
- Skilled photographer
- Able to give presentations to large audiences

6. Interests and Hobbies :

- Playing the violin in the school orchestra
- Volunteer in an old people's home at the weekend
- Taking photographs and making videos

Advice about internship

(WB page 9)



Hello and welcome. Today, I'm going to be giving advice about internships.(1) First, I'll talk about what most companies will expect from you. After that, I'll give advice about how best to put yourself in a position(2) where you might be offered a job. My final point(3) will be what to do when your internship finishes.

To start with, remember to always act(4) professionally.(5) If you hope to get a full-time(6) job at the company where you will be an intern, find out(7) what kinds of skills you will need for the job. If you lack(8) any of these skills, try to improve(9). For example, if the job wants someone who can give presentations(10), see if you can practise(11) this by giving talks(12) to your team.

Watch people at the company, too. Who is successful and why? Ask them how they got their jobs and try to learn from them. Don't be afraid to ask questions, and don't be afraid to take on(13) challenges. If something difficult comes up(14), accept the challenge(15); employees(16) will like this.

Finally, after your internship has finished, try to stay in contact with(17) important people at the company.

Check Vocabulary

(1) التدريب المهنى
(2) وظيفة - مكانة
(3) فكرة
(4) يتصرف
(5) باحترافية / بمهنية
(6) دوام كامل
(7) يعرف / يكتشف
(8) يفتقر / ينقصه
(9) يتحسن
(10) يقوم بعروض تقديمية
(11) يمارس
(12) يلقى خطاب
(13) يقبل
(14) يظهر - يحدث
(15) يقبل التحدى
(16) موظفين
(17) على تواصل مع

Being in charge

(SB page 19)

From the most colossal[1] disasters[2], down to[3] the smallest accidents, results are often poor because someone in charge[4] was not "in charge" or didn't know how to be in charge.' To be "in charge" is certainly not only to carry out[5] the proper[6] measures[7] yourself but to see that everyone else does so too.

Notes on Nursing : What it is and what it is not (1859) (Florence Nightingale)

Check Vocabulary

(1) جسيم
(2) كوارث / مصائب
(3) وصولًا إلى
(4) مسئول
(5) ينفذ / يقوم بـ
(6) مناسب
(7) إجراءات - معايير

2 Listening Texts

What is in Fatma's CV?

(WB page 8)

Hi! My name is Fatma Al Aziz. I live at Flat 1, 16 Heliopolis Road, New Cairo. I am hoping to get an internship at a dentist's[1] where a lot of the children in my area go to. I'm going to apply to the dentist's as soon as I complete my CV.

Check Vocabulary

(1) عيادة أسنان
(2) فيما عدا
(3) مُساعِد
(4) حشد - تَجمهُر
(5) يشاهد الطيور
(6) أراضي المستنقعات

I've just finished at New Secondary School, and I got top marks in all my exams except for[2] art. I've never been very good at art, and I did not pass my exams. I love children, and at weekends I work as an assistant[3] at a local children's charity. They help children from poor families in the area. I play games with the children and sometimes take them out to the local park.

I like giving talks to people, and I don't mind speaking to large crowds[4]. I can also speak English and French. My mother is from Paris.

Outside school, I love birds and I sometimes go to the countryside to go bird watching[5]. There are some amazing birds in the wetlands[6] near to where my uncle lives. I take photos of the birds too. I'm very good at photography.

How students can find the right internship

(SB page 16)

Hello and welcome. Today we're going to be looking at how students can make good choices about the type of internships[1] they apply for. We'll look at the points you need to consider when you're making choices[2]. First, I'll talk about finding an internship which is a good fit for[3] your skills and interests. After that, I'll go on[4] to look at finding a company which you'll benefit from[5] working with. And my final point will be how to choose an internship that will increase your chances of finding employment[6] afterwards.

So, start by thinking about what you really enjoy doing; what really interests you. If your choice is based on these factors[7], you're likely to benefit more from the work experience you do. Once you've identified your areas of interest, you can start to look for a work experience position where you will be able to learn more about them.

You also need to find a company or organisation that is right for you. That means finding out more information about the type of culture which exists there. When I talk about culture here, I mean the decisions that are made in a company about how work will happen there, specifically[8] how people work together, where they work and when those types of things. Find out from HR whether you'll be working in a team or mainly on your own[9], and whether the atmosphere in the workplace will be relaxed or more formal[10].

Of course, the main reason for doing an internship[11] is to get a job afterwards. So, just remember that some internships will be more helpful than others. You could, for example, try to find out if a permanent[12] job was later offered to the last person who did an internship at that company. If that was the case, and getting a job directly after completing your internship is your goal, that company clearly becomes an attractive[13] option.

On the other hand, working for well-known[14] companies will make it easier for you to find employment and any company you decide to apply to. Having an internship at respected[15] company on your CV can give you an advantage over other candidates[16] in the job market.

Check Vocabulary

(1) تدريب مهني
(2) يختار - يتخذ قرار
(3) ملائم لـ
(4) يستمر
(5) يستفيد من
(6) يجد وظيفة
(7) عوامل
(8) تحديداً
(9) بمفردك
(10) رسمي
(11) تحق بالتدريب المهني
(12) دائم
(13) جذّاب
(14) مشهور
(15) حَسَن السمعة
(16) المرشحين لوظيفة

Part IV Language

Passive forms : present, future and infinitive
صيغة المبنى للمجهول فى : المضارع - المستقبل - الصيغ المصدرية

✪ الأفعال اللازمة (التي لا تأخذ مفعول) لا تستخدم فى المبنى للمجهول، ومن أمثلة هذه الأفعال :

happen / occur يحدث ..... - **fall** يسقط - **look** يبدو - **seem** يبدو - **depend** - **go**

- My mobile fell to the ground. (Not: was fallen)
- A car accident has happened in front of the school. (Not: has been happened)

✪ الفعل المتعدى هو الذى يأخذ مفعول أو أكثر ويمكن استخدامه فى المعلوم والمجهول :

- Mum cooks lunch. (معلوم)
- Lunch is cooked by mum. (مجهول)

1 Present Simple المضارع البسيط

Form	Active معلوم	Passive مجهول
Affirm. الإثبات	- I / You / We / They + inf. ... - He / She / It + (inf.+ s /es /ies) ... - Sama studies English. - Rabbits eat carrots. - Ahmed supports me. يَدْعمني	Obj. مفعول + am / is / are + p.p... - English is studied (by Sama). - Carrots are eaten (by rabbits). - I am supported (by Ahmed).
Neg. النفى	- I / You / We / They + don't + inf. ... - He / She / It + doesn't + inf. ... - Sama doesn't study English. - Rabbits don't eat rocks. - Ahmed doesn't support me.	Obj. + am not / isn't / aren't + p.p. ... - English isn't studied (by Sama). - Rocks aren't eaten (by rabbits). - I am not supported (by Ahmed).
Yes/No Q. السؤال بـ (هل)	Do / Does + subj. فاعل + inf. ...? - Does Sama study English? - Do Rabbits eat carrots? - Does Ahmed support you?	Am / Is / Are + obj. + p.p. ... ? - Is English studied (by Sama)? - Are carrots eaten (by rabbits)? - Are you supported (by Ahmed)?

'Wh' Q. السؤال المبدوء بأداة استفهام	Q.W. أداة استفهام + do / does + subj. + inf. ...? - What does Sama study? - What do Rabbits eat? - Who supports you?	Q.W. + am / is / are + obj. + P.P. + ...? - What is studied by Sama? - What are carrots eaten by? - Who are you supported by?

Mini Test 1 Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Most students ..... at public schools.
   a. teach b. teaches c. teaching d. are taught
2. We ..... most students at public schools.
   a. teach b. teaches c. teaching d. have taught
3. ..... you with your school homework?
   a. Do you help b. Does he help c. Are you helped d. Is he helped
4. ..... with your school homework?
   a. Do you help b. Does he help c. Are you helped d. Is he helped
5. Who ..... ?
   a. does the baby look after b. looks after the baby
   c. is the baby looked after by d. b & c

2 Present continuous المضارع المستمر

Form	Active معلوم	Passive مجهول
Affirm. الإثبات	- Subj. فاعل + am / is / are + (inf.+ing) ... . - I am watching TV. - They are planting trees. - Yara is visiting me.	Obj. مفعول + am / is / are + being + p.p. ... - TV is being watched (by me). - Trees are being planted (by them). - I am being visited (by Yara).

UNIT 8

'Wh' Q. السؤال المبدوء بأداة استفهام	Q.W. أداة استفهام + do / does + subj. + inf. ...? - What does Sama study? - What do Rabbits eat? - Who supports you?	Q.W. + am / is / are + obj. + P.P. + ...? - What is studied by Sama? - What are carrots eaten by? - Who are you supported by?

Mini Test 1 Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Most students ..... at public schools.
   a. teach b. teaches c. teaching d. are taught
2. We ..... most students at public schools.
   a. teach b. teaches c. teaching d. have taught
3. ..... you with your school homework?
   a. Do you help b. Does he help c. Are you helped d. Is he helped
4. ..... with your school homework?
   a. Do you help b. Does he help c. Are you helped d. Is he helped
5. Who ..... ?
   a. does the baby look after b. looks after the baby
   c. is the baby looked after by d. b & c

Neg. النفى	**- Subj. + am not / isn't / aren't + (inf.+ing) …** - I am not watching TV. - They aren't planting trees. - Yara isn't visiting me.	**Obj. + am not / isn't /aren't + being + p.p. …** - TV isn't being watched (by me). - Trees aren't being planted (by them). - I am not being visited (by Yara).
Yes / No Q. السؤال بـ (هل)	**Am / Is /Are + subj. + (inf.+ing) …?** - Are you watching TV? - Are they planting trees? - Is Yara visiting you?	**Am / Is / Are + obj. + being + p.p. …?** - Is TV being watched (by you)? - Are trees being planted (by you)? - Are you being visited (by Yara)?
Wh - Q. السؤال المبدوء بأداة استفهام	**Q. W.+ am / is /are + subj. + (inf.+ing) …?** -What are you doing? - What are they planting? - Who is visiting you?	**Q. W.+ am / is /are + obj. + being + p.p. …?** - What is being done (by you)? - What are being planted (by them)? - Who are you being visited by?

Mini Test 2 Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. These birds ..... right now.
   a. are feeding b. are being fed c. feed d. are fed
2. We ..... these birds right now.
   a. are feeding b. are being fed c. feed d. are fed
3. ..... how to make a cake?
   a. You teach Sama b. You are teaching Sama
   c. Are you teaching Sama d. Is Sama teach
4. ..... how to make a cake?
   a. You teaching Sama b. You teaching Sama
   c. Is Sama being teaching d. Is Sama being taught

5. When ..... ?

a. are you delivering the report
b. you are delivering the report
c. is the report being delivering
d. is the report delivering

3 Modals & Semi Modals — الأفعال الناقصة وشبه الناقصة

❶ الأفعال الناقصة (M.V.) هى :

can, could, shall, should, will, would, may, might, must

Form	Active معلوم	Passive مجهول
Simple modals الأفعال الناقصة البسيطة	**Subj. + M.V. فعل ناقص + inf. ... .** - Karim will buy a tablet. - I won't study history. - Can Rody ride a bike? - Where should I park the car?	**Obj. + M.V. + be + p.p. ...** - A tablet will be bought (by Karim). - History won't be studied (by me). - Can a bike be ridden (by Rody)? - Where should the car be parked (by me)?
Perfect modals الأفعال الناقصة التامة	**Subj. + M.V. + have + p.p. ...** - I will have finished the report. - She must have lost the keys. - Should I have cleaned the house? - What would you have done?	**Obj. +M.V. + have + been + p.p. ...** - The report will have been finished (by me). - The keys must have been lost. - Should the house have been cleaned (by me)? - What would have been done (by you)?

❷ الأفعال شبه الناقصة (semi-modals) هى :

Active : Subject + used to, ought to, have to, has to, had to, will have to, have got to, has got to, need to / needn't, dare (to), daren't.

Passive : Object + semi modal + be + p.p.

• Rodayna needs to write some paragraphs. (معلوم)

- Some paragraphs need to be written (by Rodayna). (مجهول)
- I have got to fix this door. (معلوم)
- This door has got to be fixed (by me). (مجهول)

٣ تعبيرات ناقصة أخرى (semi - modals) مثل :

be to, be able to, be allowed to, be about to, be bound to, be going to, be likely to, be obliged to, be supposed to.

- Tom is about to buy a mobile. (معلوم)
- A mobile is about to be bought (by Tom). (مجهول)
- She is to leave this bad job. (معلوم)
- This bad job is to be left (by her). (مجهول)

Mini Test 3 Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Bassant ..... hard.
   a. should be studied b. should study
   c. should have been studied d. b& c
2. The patient must ..... again.
   a. examine b. have examined c. be examined d. be examining
3. The operation must ..... at once.
   a. be done b. do c. have done d. been done
4. He might ..... . I haven't seen him after his quarrel شجار with the manager.
   a. fire b. be firing c. have fired d. have been fired
5. You needn't ..... any medicine. You are all right.
   a. to give b. be giving c. be given d. have given
6. He is likely to ..... for the job. He is the best applicant.
   a. choose b. be chosen c. be choosing d. have chosen

4 Passive infinitive

صيغة المصدرية فى المبنى للمجهول

1 تتحول الأفعال التي يأتي بعدها (inf. + ing) إلي المبني للمجهول باستخدام (being + p.p.):

- Lamia doesn't like mum shouting at her. (معلوم)
- Lamia doesn't like being shouted at (by mum). (مجهول)
- I avoid meeting evil people. (معلوم)
- I avoid being met (by evil people). (مجهول)

يمكن تحويل الأفعال التي يأتي بعدها (to + inf.) إلي المبني للمجهول باستخدام (to + be + p.p.):

- to + inf. = to be + p.p.

- Rokaya wants Mr Ashraf to explain the lesson again. (معلوم)
  - Rokaya wants the lesson to be explained again (by Mr Ashraf). (مجهول)
- I expect Omar to tell me the truth. (معلوم)
  - I expect to be told the truth (by Omar). (مجهول)
- I'd like Nada to wear a long dress. (معلوم)
  - I'd like a long dress to be worn (by Nada). (مجهول)

Mini Test 4 Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I'd like you ..... this point for me.
   a. to explain b. to be explained c. be explaining d. having explained
2. I'd like this point ..... for me.
   a. to explain b. to be explained c. be explaining d. having explained
3. I remember ..... to Paris when I was ten.
   a. to take b. taking c. having taken d. being taken
4. I remember my father ..... me to Paris when I was ten.
   a. to take b. taking
   c. having been taken d. being taken

5 Special Cases — حالات خاصة

١ لاحظ أن :

by + agent الفاعل

- The baby is fed by mum.

with + instrument الأداة أو الوسيلة

- The baby is fed with a little spoon.

---

٢ الفعل (have) لا يبنى للمجهول ويحول إلى ما يساويه فى المعنى مثل :

Have = own, possess, suffer, eat, buy, spend, take.....

- We have lunch at three o'clock.
  - Lunch is had at three o'clock. (✗)
  - Lunch is eaten at three o'clock. (✓)
- He has his summer holiday in Alex.
  - His summer holiday is had in Alex. (✗)
  - His summer holiday is spent in Alex. (✓)

---

٣ لاحظ أن الفعل المتعدي لمفعولين يُبنى للمجهول بطريقتين :

- He sends me emails. (معلوم)
- Emails are sent to me. (مجهول)
- I am sent emails (by him). (مجهول)

- وفى هذه الحالة يستخدم حرف الجر **for** مع أفعال معينة مثل :

buy / build / book / find / order / make / leave / save / get / keep / call / cut / fetch ...

- He buys his mother presents. (معلوم)
- Presents are bought for his mother (by him). (مجهول)

- كما يستخدم حرف الجر **to** مع أفعال معينة مثل :

give / bring / lend / offer / pass / read / sell / show / write / hand / owe / pay / tell ...

- He sells us fresh vegetables. (معلوم)
- Fresh vegetables are sold to us (by him). (مجهول)

UNIT 8

Mini Test 5 — Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. He was hit on the head ..... a stick.
   a. from b. by c. with d. to
2. This large villa ..... by my uncle.
   a. had b. is having c. is owned d. owned
3. A single room has been booked ..... me.
   a. for b. to c. with d. from
4. The ball was passed ..... me by the play maker.
   a. for b. to c. with d. from

Notes for advanced level — ملاحظات للمتفوقين

١ لاحظ :

Adj. صفة + that + جملة ..... .

= Adj. صفة + Prep. حرف جر + being + P.P. ..... .

- He is afraid that the dogs chase him. (معلوم)
- He is afraid of being chased by the dogs. (مجهول)

٢ لاحظ أفعال الإدراك التالية وطريقة بنائها للمجهول :

Subj. + see, watch, notice, hear, feel + obj. + inf. / (inf. + ing) (معلوم)

- I see him cross (crossing) the street every day.

Obj. +be + seen, watched, noticed, heard, felt + (to + inf.) / (inf. + ing) (مجهول)

- He is seen to cross (crossing) the street every day.

٣ يمكن استخدام (get) بدلاً من (be) مع بعض الأفعال مثل :

get arrested / get killed/ get married / get divorced تُطلق / get caught يُقبض عليه

- The police arrest criminals. (معلوم)
- Criminals are arrested by the police. (مجهول)
= Criminals get arrested by the police. (مجهول)

٤ غالباً يتحول الفعل (let) للمجهول باستخدام (مصدر **be allowed to + inf.**) :

- My father lets us go out at weekends. (معلوم)
- We are allowed to go out at weekends. (مجهول)

- لكن إذا كان الفاعل هو نفسه المفعول بعد الفعل (let) نستخدم ضمير منعكس ثم (**be + P.P.**) :

- He never lets others trick him. (معلوم)
- He never lets himself be tricked (by others). (مجهول)

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

General Exercise On Language Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting Started

1. Egyptian cotton clothes ..... all over the world. *(LM)*
   a. are sold b. are to sell c. selling d. has been sold

2. ..... in medical conferences in Egypt? *(LM)*
   a. Is French speaking b. Is French spoken
   c. Can French speak d. Does French speak

3. The car ..... well; it no longer breaks down. *(LM)*
   a. did nor repair b. must have been repaired
   c. can't have been repaired d. must have repaired

4. I was doing my homework while dinner ..... by my mother. *(LM)*
   a. is prepared b. had been prepared
   c. was preparing d. was being prepared

5. Look! Our school ..... now. *(LM)*
   a. is painting b. is being painted
   c. was painting d. have been painted

6. The patient ..... thoroughly before the serious operation. *(LM)*
   a. was examining b. had to be examined
   c. had examined d. had to examine

7. I'm hoping that this serious issue ..... tomorrow. *(LM)*
   a. is resolving b. will resolve
   c. was resolved d. will be resolved

8. Because this medicine has the potential to be poisonous, it must ..... with a doctor's prescription only. *(LM)*
   a. be using b. be used c. use d. have used

9. These trees need to ..... regularly. *(LM)*
   a. be watered b. water c. be watering d. have watered

10. By next September, a new secondary school ..... in our village. *(LM)*
    a. will be built b. will have been built
    c. has been built d. will have built

11. Elderly people ..... cruelly.
a. should have treated
b. should be treating
c. shouldn't treat
d. shouldn't be treated

12. Doctors ..... to do their best in case of emergency.
a. are asking
b. are asked
c. have asked
d. asked

13. Generally speaking, I ..... film reviews because I like to be open-minded when I go to the cinema.
a. am not read
b. don't read
c. haven't read
d. haven't been reading

14. I think you ..... your energy by sweeping up those leaves. Stop it! The wind will blow more down.
a. wasted
b. are being wasted
c. are wasting
d. were wasting

15. Important laws ..... by the Parliament lately.
a. have been passed
b. has been passed
c. was passed
d. are passed

16. It ..... that an accident took place on the Ring Road.
a. reported
b. reports
c. had reported
d. has been reported

17. Since the bridge ..... , it will help the traffic flow.
a. hasn't completed
b. is completing
c. has been completed
d. completes

18. Many people ..... vegetables in their gardens.
a. growing
b. are grown
c. grow
d. is grown

19. Fossil fuels ..... from animals and plants that lived millions of years ago.
a. come
b. comes
c. are coming
d. were come

20. The film ..... only to the newcomers. الوافدين الجدد
a. shows
b. is showing
c. is shown
d. shown

21. These motorbikes ..... in China. They are from the USA.
a. don't make b. are made c. aren't made d. isn't made

22. ..... this building used any longer?
a. Is b. Are c. Does d. Do

23. **A:** How often ..... the World Cup Finals held? **B:** Every four years.
a. do b. are c. have d. has

24. We ..... that playing football now is a good idea.
a. are not thinking b. aren't thought c. thinks d. don't think

2 Special Cases

25. I ..... an email from the company every time the manager asks me to undertake a new duty. *(LM)*
a. send b. sent c. was sent d. am sent

26. He is said to ..... five opponents last year. (د. أ. م. أولى ٢٠١٣)
a. has beaten b. beating c. have beaten d. beats

27. Yehia Haqqi ..... of as the father of the Egyptian modern short story and novel. (دور ثان ٢٠١١)
a. still is thinking b. still is thought
c. is still thought d. is still thinking

28. I don't like ..... at. (دور أول حديث ٢٠١٥)
a. people laughing b. having laughed
c. being laughed d. people laughed

29. From the medical report, she ..... to have suffered from amnesia. (دور ثان ٢٠١٢)
a. believed b. is believed c. is believing d. believes

30. The play is suggested to ..... because the leading actor is ill. (دور أول ٢٠١١)
a. being cancelled b. cancel c. have cancelled d. be cancelled

31. Adham was angry because he ..... to his friend's party. (نموذج الوزارة الثاني ٢٠١٩)
a. didn't invite b. hasn't invited c. wasn't invited d. hadn't invited

32. The book .....well.

a. is to have revised b. is to be revised

c. is to revise d. is to be revising

(موعد الوزارة الأول ٢٠١٩)

33. She is really a good friend and she ..... to send me a letter each month.

a. never failed b. never fails

c. is never failed d. had never failed

(موعد الوزارة الأول ٢٠١٩)

34. The lady..... of the murder is thought to be innocent. (موعد الوزارة الثاني ٢٠١٦)

a. suspects b. is suspected c. suspected d. was suspected

35. **A:** What are you doing now? **B:** I ..... about a maths problem.

a. has thought b. am thinking c. am thought d. thinks

36. The Nubian Museum ..... by most tourists.

a. is loving b. is being loved c. is loved d. loves

37. Insects, diseases or people usually ..... trees, not old age.

a. has killed b. have been killed

c. kill d. are killed

38. Rodayna remembers ..... to her friend's wedding party.

a. to be invited b. being invited c. inviting d. to invite

3 Check your understanding

39. Which of the following is structurally correct? *(LM)*

a. The exercise can't revise well, it's full of mistakes.

b. The exercise can't be revising well, it's full of mistakes.

c. The exercise mustn't have been revised well, it's full of mistakes.

d. The exercise can't have been revised well, it's full of mistakes.

40. "Who looks after your garden?" Which choice gives the same meaning?

a. Who is looked after your garden?

b. Whom looks after your garden?

c. Who does your garden look after?

d. By whom is your garden looked after?

41. "I have a Toyota." This means ..... .

a. a Toyota is had by me
b. a Toyota is possessed by me
c. a Toyota owns me
d. a & b

42. "I am always chosen to represent my school.' This means ..... .

a. they always choose me to represent my school
b. I am always choosing to represent my school
c. I am always being chosen to represent my school
d. My school is always chosen to represent me

43. "Mai is helping me with the cooking.' I mean to say that ..... .

a. I cook on my own
b. I help Mai with the cooking
c. I am being helped with the cooking by Mai
d. I am helped with the cooking by Mai

44. "Esraa will give me a hand with the housework." What does this mean?

a. I will be helped with the housework by Esraa.
b. Esraa will help me with the housework.
c. I will be given Esraa's hand.
d. a& b

45. "The police arrest terrorists." This means that ..... .

a. Terrorists were arrested by the police
b. Terrorists arrest by the police
c. Terrorists get arrested by the police
d. b & c

46. "Never allow others to laugh at you." What does this mean?

a. Don't let others laugh at you at all
b. Don't let others laugh at you
c. Never let yourself be laughed at
d. a, b & c

47. "I see this old man crossing the road every morning." This means ..... .

a. I see this man by crossing the road
b. this man is seen crossing the road
c. this man sees me crossing the road
d. I cross the road every morning

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

48. "I am worried that the manager will fire me." This means that .....
   a. I am worried about being fired by the manager
   b. I am worried about firing the manager
   c. I will be fired by the manager who is worried
   d. a & b

49. " I expect that he will help me. " What does this mean?
   a. He is expected to help me. b. I expect him to help me.
   c. I expect him to be helped by me. d. a & b

Advanced Exercise on Language

التوجيه: التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

*** Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. He never lets himself ..... into such a trick.
   a. fall b. falls c. be fallen d. to fall

2. One should never allow oneself ..... by their desires.
   a. control b. to control c. be controlled d. to be controlled

3. People are relieved whenever a criminal .....
   a. has caught b. caught c. gets caught d. was being caught

4. Whenever my son does something wrong, he becomes afraid .....
   a. to punish b. to be punished c. of punishing d. of being punished

5. The old man ..... (crossing) the busy road.
   a. has seen b. has been seen c. sees d. is being seen

No.	Answer & Explanation الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	a — في المبنى للمعلوم، بعد الفعل (let) يأتى المفعول ثم (الفعل فى المصدر) ولا يمكن استخدام (be fallen) لأن الفعل (fall) هنا فعل لازم لا يُبني للمجهول.
2.	d — في المبنى للمجهول، بعد الفعل (allow) يأتى المفعول ثم (to + be + p.p.).
3.	c — السياق مبنى للمجهول، ولا يمكن استخدام (was being caught) لأن الحديث هنا عما هو معتاد وليس ما كان يحدث فى وقت ما.
4.	d — في المبنى للمجهول، بعد حروف الجر نستخدم (being + p.p.)، وبعد الصفة (afraid) يستخدم حرف الجر (of)
5.	b — السياق مبنى للمجهول، ولا يمكن استخدام (is being seen) لأن الفعل (see) بمعنى (يرى) لا يستخدم فى الأزمنة المستمرة.

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha.com

LESSONS 3 & 4

SB pages 20 & 21 WB pages 10 & 11



Part I Vocabulary & Definitions

تنويه
- اختبر مدى اتقانك للمفردات الرئيسية فى كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.
- المفردات اللغوية باللون الأحمر هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية.

1 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

appropriate(d) (v)	ملائم	landing(n)	الهبوط
appropriately(adv)	بشكل ملائم	long-term (adj)	بعيد المدي
award(ed) (v/n)	يمنح - منحة	manage(d) (v)	يدير
basic (adj)	أساسى	motivate(d) (v)	يُحفِّز - يُشجِّع
career(n)	مهنة - الحياة العملية	multinational(adj)	متعدد الجنسيات
charity(n)	جمعية خيرية	normal(adj)	طبيعي/عادي
cover(ed) (v)	يُغطى	organisational(adj)	تنظيمي - مؤسسي
currently(adv)	حاليًا	overlook(ed) (v)	تُطِل علي
department(n)	قسم	pandemic(n)	جائحة
details(n)	تفاصيل	particularly(adv)	بصفة خاصة/تحديدًا
dress(ed) (v/n)	يرتدى - فستان	pay - paid(v)	يدفع مال
editorial(n)	افتتاحية	permanent(adj)	دائم
excellence(n)	التَميُّز	persuade(d) (v)	يُقنع
expense(n)	تكلفة	profile(n)	ملف التعريف / الملف الشخصي - وضع
experience(n)	خبرة	protective (adj)	واقي - وقائي
feedback(n)	تغذية راجعة	publisher(n)	ناشر
finalist(n)	متأهل للأدوار النهائية	residential(adj)	سَكَني
follow-up(n)	متابعة - تكميل	reward(ed) (n/v)	مكافأة - يكافئ
foreign(adj)	أجنبى	role-play(ed) (v)	يمثل أدوار
graduate(d) (v-n)	يتخرج - خريج	sales(n)	مبيعات
impress(ed) (v)	يُبهِر	start-up(adj/n)	مبدئي - انطلاقة/بداية
impressed(adj)	مُنبهِر	task(n)	مَهمَّة
impression(n)	انطباع	team player(n)	شخص يجيد العمل في فريق
include(d) (v)	يشتمل على/يتضمن - يُضمِّن	topic(n)	موضوع
interviewer(n)	مُحاوِر/مدير الحوار	volunteer(ed) (v)	يتطوع
involve(d) (v)	ينشغل بـ - يتورط فى	youth(n)	شباب

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

2 Definitions تعريفات

appropriate(adj) ملائم	to be correct or suitable for a particular time, situation, or purpose
editorial(n) افتتاحية	a piece of writing in a newspaper that gives the editor's opinion about something, rather than reporting facts
follow-up(n) متابعة - تكميل	something that is done to make sure that earlier actions have been successful or effective
impression(n) انطباع	the opinion or feeling you have about someone something because of the way they seem
long-term (adj) بعيد المدي	continuing for a long period of time, or relating what will happen in the distant future
organisational(adj) تنظيمي - مؤسسي	relating to the way an organization and its activities are planned and arranged
pandemic(n) جائحة	a disease that affects people over a very large are or the whole world
permanent(adj) دائم	continuing to exist for a long time or for all the time in the future
residential(adj) سَكَني	a residential part of a town consists of private houses, with no offices or factories
start-up(adj/n) مبدئي - انطلاقة/بداية	connected with starting a new business
team player(n) شخص يجيد العمل في فريق	someone who works well as a member of a team, especially in business

Exercise On Vocabulary • Understand

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key & important vocabulary

1. My long-term goal is to have a successful ..... as a project manager.
   a. employee b. employer c. work d. career

2. I'm a hard-working, ... and organized individual with a genuine interest in digital marketing. *(LM)*
   a. motivate b. motivation c. motivated d. motivator

3. I've ..... all necessary information in my CV to ensure thoroughness and to make it intriguing مثير للاهتمام . *(LM)*
   a. included b. excluded c. contained d. consisted

4. He recently ..... from the faculty of commerce and is currently an accountant at an international company. *(LM)*
   a. joined b. left c. graduated d. studied

5. When I was a sales manager, I was awarded a prize for ..... in increasing sales. *(LM)*
   a. excellence b. excellent c. excellently d. excel

6. The HR ..... will give training to new employees.
   a. department b. dentist's c. factor d. feedback

7. The customer service department contacts customers to get ..... from them about our products.
   a. department b. dentist's c. factor d. feedback

8. Egypt was a ..... in the 2021 Africa Cup of Nations.
   a. wetland b. finalist c. fit d. crowd

9. At weekends, I ..... at a charity that help old people.
   a. impress b. volunteer c. persuade d. graduate

10. My audience all looked ..... by the presentation I was giving.
    a. permanent b. long-term c. impressed d. appropriate

11. It is necessary to be ..... dressed for a job interview.
    a. appropriately b. nationally c. smartly d. a & c

12. People earn money to pay for their living ..... .
    a. editorials b. expenses c. excellences d. impressions

13. It is the duty of us all to ..... those who help the community
    a. award b. cover c. overlook d. reward

14. I was ..... my secondary school certificate in 1994.
    a. awarded b. covered c. motivated d. rewarded

15. It was lack of ..... which made it difficult for me to get the job.
    a. profile b. pandemic c. experience d. follow-up

16. A/An ..... organisation or company belongs to several countries.
a. multinational b. organisational c. residential d. basic

17. Your fluency will ..... the interviewer, I am sure.
a. impress b. volunteer c. follow-up d. graduate

18. Try to use ..... words when you complain. Be polite even when y
are angry.
a. permanent b. long-term c. impressed d. appropriate

19. I never forget to have a look at the ..... of the newspaper.
a. editorial b. expense c. excellence d. impression

20. If you ..... students, that makes them willing to do better.
a. award b. cover c. motivate d. overlook

21. Coronavirus ..... has made a lot of difference in most fields.
a. profile b. pandemic c. experiences d. follow-up

22. A beginner starts by learning the ..... skills of the career.
a. multinational b. organisational c. residential d. basic

23. To be a good member of a work group, you need to be a good .....
a. team player b. interviewer c. career d. journalism

24. The accident has left a/an ..... effect on him. He can't walk without a stick in his hand.
a. permanent b. protective c. impressed d. appropriate

25. When I was a beginner as a journalist, I used to ..... local news stories.
a. award b. cover c. motivate d. reward

26. I am looking forward to a good ..... in my new job.
a. file b. pandemic c. start-up d. follow-up

27. Factories must not be built near ..... areas. People living there will be badly affected.
a. multinational b. organisational c. residential d. basic

28. I did very well while answering the ..... questions.
a. team player's b. interviewer's c. career's d. journalism's

29. His good presentation of his points ..... everybody with his opinions.
a. rewarded b. volunteered c. persuaded d.

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

30. As a student, I have a/an ..... goal. I want to take medicine as a profession.
a. inappropriate b. long-term b. impressed c. organisational

31. I think I have given a good ..... at the job interview.
a. editorial b. expense c. excellence d. impression

32. The successful advertisement raised the company's ..... .
a. profile b. pandemic c. experience d. follow-up

33. There is going to be a/an ..... change with the coming of the new management.
a. multinational b. organisational c. residential d. based

34. This type of sunscreen provides a/an ..... layer طبقة that protects your skin from harmful rays.
a. permanent b. protective b. impressed c. organisational

35. You need some ..... treatment after you leave hospital.
a. profile b. pandemic c. experience d. follow-up

2 Definitions

36. ..... means correct or suitable for a particular time, situation, or purpose.
a. Organisational b. Permanent c. Residential d. Appropriate

37. A/An ..... is something that is done to make sure that earlier actions have been successful or effective.
a. follow-up b. start-up c. impression d. editorial

38. A/An ..... is connected with beginning a new business.
a. follow-up b. start-up c. impression d. editorial

39. A ..... is someone who works well as a member of a work group, especially in business.
a. journalist b. journalism c. player d. team player

40. ..... describes a part of a town consists of private houses, with no offices or factories.
a. Organisational b. Permanent c. Residential d. Appropriate

41. The adjective ..... means continuing to exist for a long time or t
all the time in the future.
a. organisational b. permanent c. residential d. appropriate

42. A/An ..... is a disease that affects people over a very large area o
the whole world.
a. editorial b. start-up c. impression d. pandemic

43. The adjective ..... means relating to the way an organization and i
activities are planned and arranged.
a. organisational b. permanent c. residential d. appropriate

44. ..... means continuing for a long period of time, or relating to wha
will happen in the distant future.
a. Organisational b. Long-term c. Residential d. Appropriate

45. A/An ..... is the opinion or feeling you have about someone or
something because of the way they seem.
a. follow-up b. start-up c. impression d. editorial

Part II Vocabulary Study

تنويه ساعد مُعلمك على الإرتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مُسبقاً بشكل جيد.

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

achieve	career goals يحقق أهداف مهنية	get	started يبدأ
award	a prize يمنح ... جائزة	give	an answer to يجيب على
be	a team player يجيد العمل ضمن فريق		feedback يقدم ملاحظات
cover	news stories يقوم بتغطية الأخبار		training يدرب
develop	a start-up idea يطور فكرة مبدئية	give	work يوظف
dress	smartly يرتدى الملابس بطريقة أنيقة	make	a list يكتب قائمة
have	a successful career تكون لديه حياة مهنية ناجحة	offer	a permanent job يعرض وظيفة بدوام كامل
keep	going يستمر فى التقدم	role-play	a job interview يمثل أدوار مقابلة شخصية
move	abroad يسافر للخارج	take	a seat يجلس

Mini Test 1 Collocations

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. We have no time to waste. Let's ..... started. *(LM)*
   a. go b. get c. find d. make.
2. The interviewer asked me to ..... a seat. *(LM)*
   a. go on b. take c. move on to d. come up with
3. All companies now ..... regular training to their employees.
   a. keep b. do c. give d. make
4. ..... a team player is necessary for working in groups.
   a. Awarding b. Achieving c. Role-playing d. Being
5. I was interviewed by the journalist who ..... the news stories in our area.
   a. moves b. covers c. achieves d. develops
6. ..... going, Rokaya. You're doing a great job.
   a. Keep b. Offer c. Give d. Make
7. Two students ..... a job interview. The student who played the applicant was great.
   a. awarded b. achieved c. role-played d. rewarded
8. As a team member, Ayman is good at ..... start-up ideas.
   a. role-playing b. covering c. moving d. developing
9. The permanent job I've been ..... is really a good chance.
   a. kept b. offered c. done d. made
10. Prizes are ..... to those who make a difference.
    a. awarded b. achieved c. role-played d. done
11. Everyone hopes to ..... their career goals.
    a. give b. offer c. achieve d. make
12. The good impression Leen has ..... in the interview helped her get the job.
    a. moved b. offered c. done d. made

2 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a long-term goal هدف بعيد المدي	make/give a good impression on
basic training تدريب أساسى	organisational skills
clearly communicated ideas الأفكار التى يتم توصيلها بوضوح	professional profile
coronavirus pandemic جائحة كورونا	project management
impressed with مُنبهر بـ	project manager
look for an internship يبحث عن فرصة تدريب مهنى	protective boots
	travel expenses
	work on websites

3 Synonymous expressions تعبيرات مترادفة

help me to an international role = help me get an international role يساعدني في الحصول على دور دولي	team player = someone who does well at teamwork شخص يجيد العمل الجماعي
take part in = participate in يشارك في	

4 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

bring/take back	يعيد - يستعيد	move on to (phr.v)	ينتقل لـ
come up with (phr.v)	يبتكر - يأتى بـ	reward ... by	يكافئ ... بـ
divide ... into	يقسم ... إلى	succeed in	ينجح فى
graduate from	يتخرج من	take off	تقلع (الطائرة) - ينزع
impress ... with	يبهر ... بـ	work on	يعمل على
look for	يبحث عن		

Mini Test 2 Expressions, Prepositions & Idioms

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Creative thinkers ..... new ideas. *(LM)*
   a. go on b. take c. move on to d. come up with
2. We won't ..... the next task until we have done the task in hand. *(LM)*
   a. go on b. take c. move on to d. come up with
3. The plane ..... off at 5:35.
   a. takes b. sits c. gives d. lands

4. "I participate in all activities at school." We can replace the verb 'participate' with '.....'.
a. divide ... into b. work on c. take part d. take place

5. Rodayna succeeded ..... her set goal.
a. achieving b. to achieving c. to achieve d. in achieving

6. A job applicant has to prepare an impressive professional ..... .
a. goal b. profile c. suit d. video

7. My language skills helped me ..... a better position with a higher salary.
a. to get b. get c. a & b d. getting

8. He made a good impression ..... the interview.
a. on b. in c. of d. out

9. He made a good impression ..... the interviewer.
a. on b. in c. of d. out

10. I want you to ..... the book back to the library.
a. take b. bring c. go d. a & b

5 Clear the Confusion لاحظ الفرق

reward - award – a ward

• **reward (ed) (n/v)** مكافأة – يكافئ شخص

- I got a reward for coming first.
= I was rewarded for coming first.

• **award (n/v)** منحة – يمنح (جائزة أو شهادة)

- Dr Zewail got an award for his great discovery.
= Dr Zewail was awarded a prize for his great discovery.

• **a ward** عنبر (حجرة كبيرة)

- There is a ward on the first floor for patients with heart problems.

experience - experienced - expert

experience (n) الخبرة (اسم لا يُعد)

- I gained a lot of experience from my work abroad.

experience / experiences (n) تجربة أو مواقف حياتية (اسم يُعد)

- Difficult situations are experiences that are very helpful.

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

• **experienced (adj)** (صفة) مُتَمَرِّس
- Taha Hussein was an experienced writer.

• **expert (adj) (n)** (صفة / اسم) خبير
- Mr Ashraf is an expert writer.
- Moustafa is an expert in the field of press. الصحافة

graduate + (of / from – in – as)

• **a graduate / graduates (n) + of +** اسم جامعة / كلية / مدرسة (خريج من)
- I am a graduate of Minia University.
- Mr Ashraf and his wife are graduates of Ain Shams University.

• **graduate (d) (v) + from +** اسم جامعة / كلية / مدرسة (يخرج من)
- I graduated from Minia University.

• **graduate (v) + in +** التخصص (يخرج بشهادة في)
- My wife graduated in engineering in 2005.

• **graduate (v) + as +** مهنة (يخرج كـ)
- My wife graduated as an engineer in 2005.

Mini Test 3 Clear the Confusion

• ✪ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. He graduated ..... a teacher from Assuit University.
   a. from b. of c. in d. as
2. Esraa and her husband are graduates ..... Cairo University.
   a. from b. of c. in d. as
3. I expected Ali to get ..... for his great achievement.
   a. a reward b. an award c. a ward d. a & b
4. Mahfouz was ..... the Nobel Prize.
   a. rewarded b. awarded c. warded d. a & b
5. The team members were ..... after winning the league.
   a. rewarded b. awarded c. warded d. a & b
6. ..... is the knowledge or skill that you gain from doing a job or activity.
   a. Experience b. Experiences c. An experience d. Experi

7. Twenty five years of work in the field has made him really ..... .
a. experience b. experiences c. an experience d. experienced

8. Visiting Paris is ..... I will never forget.
a. experience b. experiences c. an experience d. experienced

9. Visiting Paris is one of the ..... I will never forget.
a. experience b. experiences c. an experience d. experienced

Part III Reading & Listening

1 Reading Texts

Youssef El Badawey (SB page 21)



I've recently graduated(1) from secondary school and I'm currently(2) looking for an internship at a multinational(3) company where I can learn more about international project management(4).

My long-term(5) goal is to have a successful career(6) as a project manager where I work on(7) projects with teams from many different countries. I've had some experience(8) of working on and managing(9) projects at school and I enjoyed the experience so much that I decided that this was the only career for me.

While I was at school, I was awarded(10) a prize for excellence(11) in foreign(12) languages. The fact that I'm able to speak several(13) different languages will help me to succeed in an international role(14). I also have very good organisational(15) skills and I'm a great team player(16), after spending seven years playing volleyball at school and playing for my school for five of those years.

Check Vocabulary

(1) يتخرج
(2) حاليًا
(3) متعدد الجنسيات
(4) إدارة
(5) بعيد المدى
(6) مهنة
(7) يعمل على
(8) خبرة
(9) يدير
(10) يمنح
(11) التميز
(12) أجنبى
(13) عديد/ كثير
(14) دور
(15) تنظيمى
(16) شخص يجيد العمل فى فريق

Azza Nakhla

07159125147

azzanakhla.day@gmail.com

(WB page



I've recently finished secondary school. I'm currently looking for an internship at a website where I can learn more about writing online news stories.

My long-term goal is to have a successful career as a journalist where I can work on websites covering(1) national(2) and international(3) news. The fact that I'm able to write well will help me to succeed in journalism.(4) I enjoyed the experience so much that I decided that this was the best career for me.

Check Vocabulary
(1) يغطي
(2) وطني / وطنى
(3) دولى
(4) الصحافة
(5) يتطوع
(6) جمعية خيرية

While I was at school, I was awarded a prize for a writing project. I have some experience of journalism after working on the school's online magazine. I also have very good communication skills and I'm a great team player, after spending five years as captain of the school basketball team. Finally, I also volunteer(5) at a local charity(6) which helps poor families in the area.

2 Listening Texts

An interview for an internship

(58 page 20)

Interviewer : Good morning ! You must be Nabeel El Gamal. Great to see you! My name is Katie Jones.

Candidate : Nice to meet you.

Interviewer : So, please take a seat(1), Nabeel. I have a few questions I wanted to ask you to find out a little bit more about you and then, of course, you can ask me any questions you might have.

Candidate : Sure.

Check Vocabulary
(1) تفضل بالجلوس

Interviewer : Great, so, as you know, the successful candidate will be offered an internship in the product team. That means that he or she will be involved[2] in communicating with customers to get feedback[3] from them about our products, helping to develop strategies[4] for marketing[5] new products, and generally sharing relevant information about our products with other departments[6]. Some of these tasks[7] could be done from home, but we'd expect you to come to the office at least 2 days a week. We've noticed that interns often have to be given quite a lot of attention[8] and support and we're very happy to give you that here in the office. I hope that all sounds[9] OK to you.

(2) ينشغل بـ
(3) تغذية راجعة
(4) خطة
(5) تسويق
(6) قسم
(7) مَهمَة
(8) اهتمام - انتباه
(9) يبدو
(10) يبدأ
(11) بصفة خاصة/تحديداً
(12) يشارك في
(13) ينشئ
(14) ناشئ - مُبتدئ
(15) يبتكر - يأتي بـ
(16) متأهل للأدوار النهائية

Candidate : Yes, of course. It sounds great!

Interviewer : OK. Let's get started[10] then. I see that you're still at school at the moment, which subjects are you particularly[11] interested in?

Candidate : Well, I really enjoy Business Studies at school. I've taken part in[12] a competition with other students to create[13] a small startup[14] company. My team came up with[15] an idea for an app that can be used to buy and sell second hand clothes.

Interviewer : Wow, that sounds very interesting. So, I suppose your team is hoping to be chosen as one of the finalists[16] for this competition, or maybe even to win it?

Candidate : Yes, that would be amazing!

Interviewer : Great. But would this internship be the first time you've worked in a company?

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

Candidate : Yes, it would. I've never done an internship or any kind of work experience in a company before, but I do work in a clothes shop at the weekend.

(17) مبيعات

Interviewer : That's interesting! So, you already have some sales(17) experience.

Candidate : Yes. I have learnt a lot about how to deal with customers and what needs to be done if a customer is unhappy with the product, for example.

Interviewer : OK. So, when you're working at your shop, what would you say are the things you can already do well, and what are areas where you need to improve?

Candidate : Hmm. Good question! I would say that I'm good at talking to the customers and making them feel comfortable in our shop. I can always answer any questions that they might have. But, on the other hand, I think I sometimes spend too much time talking to each customer and that means the other customers have to wait longer. So that's something which could be improved, I think.

Lara's interview for an internship

(WB page 10)

Interviewer : Good afternoon! You must be Lara Fawzi. My name is Amanda Blair.

Candidate : Pleased to meet you!

Interviewer : First, I'll tell you a bit about the internship, and of course you can ask me any questions you might have.

Candidate : Sure.

Interviewer : Great. so, as you know, the successful candidate will be offered an internship in the editorial(1) department of the publishers(2).

Candidate : What skills do I need?

Check Vocabulary

(1) تحريري
(2) ناشر

Interviewer : Well, your CV says that you have good computer skills and a good level of English, which is great. Basic(3) training will be given in some of the other skills you will need.

(3) أساسي
(4) يدفع (مال)
(5) تكاليف
(6) طبيعي/عادي
(7) تفاصيل
(8) ينتقل لـ

Candidate : Is the job based here in Cambridge?

Interviewer : No, the job is based in our London office, but some of your tasks can be done from home. But we expect you to go to the office at least three days a week.

Candidate : Do I need to have a computer for when I work at home?

Interviewer : Work laptops can be taken home for this, but must be brought back at the end of each week. Our laptops should not be used to play games or watch films, for example!

Candidate : Of course! I live in Cambridge, so will I have to pay(4) to travel to London?

Interviewer : Successful candidates will be offered expenses(5) for your travel to and from work, but I'm afraid you won't be paid otherwise. That is normal(6) for an internship. Now, do you have any more questions?

Candidate : Yes, if I am successful and get the internship, will there be a possibility of a full-time job at the end of it?

Interviewer : Details(7) will be kept of all interns that we are impressed with for possible future employment. Now, let's move on to(8) some questions about you …



3 Video Script

Tips for success in job interviews

Sometimes candidates(1) don't succeed in job interviews because they don't have the right skills or experience for the job that they've applied for.

However, a lot of the time, the reason why candidates don't succeed is because of the answers they gave to the questions they were asked or because they didn't make a positive impression(2) on their interviewer(3). These two things often count for more than the contents(4) of the candidate's résumé(5).

So what can you do to ensure(6) that you perform as well as you can in a job interview ? Before the interview, make sure that you do your research. And this isn't only research to find out more about the company you're applying to, it's also research about what your role within the company would be, what you would be expected to do, who you would be working with and how people in the company work. If you know what the company's expectations(7) are, you can show the interviewer that you can meet these expectations.

While you're in the interview, smile, feel confident(8) and show this in your body language. Interviewers respond(9) much better to positive candidates. You can also be positive in the answers you give to their questions. For example, if you have to talk about a weakness(10) of yours or you have to admit that you don't have experience in a particular area, show the interviewer that are trying to improve in that area. For example, if you don't have any experience of project management(11), you could say that you're interested in taking a project management course.

The end of the interview is your last change to make a good impression - so use it ! Ask questions which show that you understand the company and the role, that you're seriously interested in taking it on and that you're interested in developing as an employee(12) over the years to come.

(SB page)

Check Vocabulary

(1) وظيفة ما
(2) انطباع إيجابي
(3) المحاور
(4) محتويات
(5) سيرة ذاتية
(6) يؤكد
(7) أمل - توقعات
(8) واثق
(9) يستجيب
(10) ضعف
(11) إدارة
(12) موظف

Part IV Language

Past passive and present perfect passive forms
صيغة المبنى للمجهول فى أزمنة الماضى وفى زمن المضارع التام

1 Past Simple الماضى البسيط

Form	Active معلوم	Passive مجهول
Affirm. الإثبات	**Subj. فاعل + S.C. التصريف الثاني ...** - Ali bought a tablet. - I ironed my shirts.	**Obj. مفعول + was / were + p.p.. .** - A tablet was bought (by Ali). - My shirts were ironed (by me).
Neg. النفى	**Subj. + didn't + inf. المصدر ...** - Ali didn't buy a tablet. - I didn't iron my shirts.	**Obj. + wasn't / weren't + p.p.. .** - A tablet wasn't bought (by Ali). - My shirts weren't ironed (by me).
Yes / No Q. السؤال بـ (هل)	**Did + subj. + inf. ...?** - Did Ali buy a tablet? - Did you iron my shirts?	**Was / Were + obj. + p.p. ... ?** - Was a tablet bought (by Ali) ? - Were my shirts ironed (by you) ?
'Wh' Q. السؤال بأداة استفهام	**Q.W. + did + subj. + inf. ...?** - What did Ali buy ? - Who ironed your shirts ?	**Q.W. + was / were + obj. + P.P. + ...?** - What was bought (by Ali) ? - Who were your shirts ironed by ?

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

Mini Test 1 Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The housework ..... yesterday morning.
   a. does b. is done c. did d. was done
2. Mum ..... the housework yesterday.
   a. does b. is done c. did d. was done
3. Esraa, ... ?
   a. did the cooking do b. did you do the cooking
   c. was the cooking done d. b & c
4. **A:** Where ..... for holiday? **B:** To the countryside.
   a. did you take b. you took c. were you taken d. a & c

2 Past continuous

Form	Active معلوم	Passive مجهول
Affirmative الإثبات	**Subj. فاعل + was / were + (inf.+ing) ...** - He was reading a story. - We were watering the plants.	**Obj. مفعول + was / were + being + p.p. ...** - A story was being read (by him). - The plants were being watered (by us).
Negative النفى	**Subj. + wasn't / weren't + (inf. + ing) ...** - He wasn't reading a story. - We weren't watering the plants.	**Obj. + wasn't / weren't + being + p.p. ...** - A story wasn't being read (by him). - The plants weren't being watered (by us).
Yes / No questions السؤال بـ (هل)	**Was / Were + subj. + (inf. + ing) ...?** - Was he reading a story ? - Were you watering the plants?	**Was / Were + obj. + being + p.p. ... ?** - Was a story being read (by him) ? - Were the plants being watered (by you) ?
'Wh' questions السؤال بأداة استفهام	**Q. W.+ was / were + subj. + (inf.+ing) ...?** - What was he reading ? - Who were watering the plants ?	**Q. W.+ was / were + obj. + being + p.p. ... ?** - What was being read (by him) ? - Who were the plants being watered by ?

Mini Test 2 Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Mr Omar ..... in a medical centre at five yesterday.
   a. is examining
   b. is being examined
   c. was examining
   d. was being examined
2. A famous doctor ..... Mr Omar in a medical centre at five yesterday.
   a. is examining
   b. is being examined
   c. was examining
   d. was being examined

3. ..... for you when your plane landed?
   a. Was anyone waiting
   b. Were you being waited
   c. Were you waiting
   d. Did you wait

4. ..... for when your plane landed?
   a. Was anyone waiting
   b. Were you being waited
   c. Were you waiting
   d. Did you wait

5. What ..... in the office when I called? There was too much noise.
   a. were you doing
   b. were you done
   c. was being done
   d. a & c

3 Present perfect المضارع التام

Form	Active معلوم	Passive مجهول
Affirmative الإثبات	**Subj. + have / has + p.p.** - Leen has watered the flowers. - I have invited Omar.	**Obj. + have / has + been + p.p. ...** - The flowers have been watered (by Leen). - Omar has been invited (by me).
Negative النفى	**Subj. + haven't / hasn't + p.p. ...** - Leen hasn't watered the flowers. - I haven't invited Omar.	**Obj. + haven't / hasn't + been + p.p. ...** - The flowers haven't been watered (by Leen). - Omar hasn't been invited (by me).
Yes / No questions السؤال بـ (هل)	**Have / Has + subj. + p.p. .... ?** - Has Leen watered the flowers ? - Have you invited Omar ?	**Have / Has + obj. + been + p.p. ... ?** - Have the flowers been watered (by Leen) ? - Has Omar been invited (by you) ?
'Wh' questions السؤال بأداة استفهام	**Q. W.+ have / has + subj. + p.p. .... ?** -What has Leen watered ? - Who have you invited ?	**Q. W.+ have / has + obj. + been+ p.p. ... ?** -What has been watered (by Leen) ? - Who has been invited (by you) ?

Mini Test 3 ● Apply

✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. When the last patient ....., we are going to take him home.
   a. examine b. is examining
   c. has examined d. has been examined
2. When the doctor..... the last patient, we are going to take him hom
   a. examine b. is examining
   c. has examined d. has been examined
3. ..... collected yet?
   a. Has he been b. Has he
   c. Have the apples been d. a & c
4. What ..... happened at home since I left this morning?
   a. have you b. has c. has been d. did you

4 Past perfect الماضى التام

Form	Active معلوم	Passive مجهول
Affirm. الإثبات	**Subj. + had + p.p. ...** - He had checked his email before turning off the computer.	**Obj. + had + been+ p.p. ...** - His email had been checked before turning off the computer.
Neg. النفى	**Subj. + hadn't + p.p. ...** - He hadn't checked his email before turning off the computer.	**Obj. + hadn't + been+ p.p. ...** - His email hadn't been checked before turning off the computer.
Yes / No Q. السؤال بـ (هل)	**Had + subj. + p.p. .... ?** - Had he checked his email before turning off the computer ?	**Had + obj. + been+ p.p. ... ?** - Had his email been checked before turning off the computer ?
'Wh' Q. السؤال بأداة استفهام	**Q. W. + had + subj. + p.p. .... ?** - What had he checked before turning off the computer ?	**Q. W. + had + obj. + been + p.p. ... ?** - What had been checked before turning off the co...

Mini Test 4 — Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. When Ahmed ..... asked to do the shopping, he reluctantly agreed.
   a. had b. has c. had been d. has been
2. When mum ..... asked Ahmed to do the shopping, he reluctantly agreed.
   a. had b. has c. had been d. has been
3. ..... to the secretary before she left?
   a. Had the instructions reported
   b. Had you reported the instructions
   c. Had the instructions been reported
   d. b & c
4. How ..... to school before your father bought your private car?
   a. did you take b. had you been taken
   c. had you taken d. were you taking

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

١ يتحول ضمير المفعول إلي ضمير فاعل عندما يوضع في بداية جملة المبني للمجهول :

Subj. pron. ضمائر الفاعل	I – we - you– he – she - it - they
Obj. pron. ضمائر المفعول	me – us – you – him – her – it - them

- Omar helped me. (معلوم) - I was helped by Omar. (مجهول)

٢ يتحول ضمير الفاعل إلي ضمير مفعول بعد (by) في جملة المبني للمجهول :

- She was preparing the family lunch. (معلوم)
- The family lunch was being prepared by her. (مجهول)

Notes for advanced level ملاحظات للمتفوقين

١ لاحظ ما يلى :

- Obj. مفعول + who / which / that + فعل مبني للمجهول في زمن بسيط أو تام ...

= Obj. مفعول + p.p. .....

- The scientist who was awarded the Noble Prize had made great discoveries.
= The scientist awarded the Noble Prize had made great discoveries.
- The tower which was built at the corner cost millions of dollars.
- The tower built at the corner cost millions of dollars.

- Obj. مفعول + who / which / that + ... فعل مبني للمجهول في زمن مستمر

= Obj. مفعول + being + p.p. .....

- The patient who is being examined right now is 102 years old.
= The patient being examined right now is 102 years old.

لاحظ ما يلى :

-After + جملة رئيسية تبدأ بمفعول الجملة الثانوية + جملة ثانوية

= Having been + p.p. .....

= P.P. + ...

- After it had been serviced at the garage, my car worked very well.
= Having been serviced at the garage, my car worked well.
= Serviced at the garage, my car worked well.

لاحظ الصيغة التالية فى المبنى للمعلوم :

Subj. + → say / believe / think / expect / hope / fear/complain / claim → + (that) + جملة رئيسية

- People say that Nada earns a lot of money.
- We have expected that Tarik will buy a villa.
- They believed that I had broken the window.

يتم بناء الصيغة السابقة للمجهول بثلاث طرق هى :

1. It + be → said / believed / thought / expected / hoped / complained feared/ claimed → + (that) + جملة رئيسية

- It is said that Nada earns a lot of money.
- It has been expected that Tarik will buy a villa.
- It was believed that I had broken the window.

2. فاعل الجملة الرئيسية + be → said / believed / thought / expected / hoped / complained feared/ claimed → + to + inf. (مضارع / مستقبل) أو + to have + p.p. (ماضى)

- Nada is said to earn a lot of money.
- Tarik has been expected to buy a villa.
- I was believed to have broken the window.

3. مفعول الجملة الرئيسية + be → said / believed / thought / expected / hoped / complained / claimed → + to be + p.p. (مضارع / مستقبل)
→ + to have been + p.p. (ماضى)

- A lot of money is said to be earned by Nada.
- A villa has been expected to be bought by Tarik.
- The window was believed to have been broken by me.

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

Mini Test 5 — Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. ..... was awarded a prize.
   a. I b. me c. my d. mine
2. They awarded ..... a prize.
   a. I b. me c. my d. mine
3. The brave man was believed ..... .
   a. to honour b. to have honoured
   c. to be honouring d. to have been honoured
4. It..... that Sama will come first.
   a. believes b. has believed c. is believed d. is believing
5. Sama is believed ..... come first.
   a. to b. to be c. to have d. a & c

General Exercise — On Language — Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting Started

1. There has been a breakthrough in communication since the internet ..... . *(LM)*
   a. was invented b. invented
   c. has been invented d. is invented
2. After I returned home, I found that my clothes ..... by my sister. *(LM)*
   a. is being ironed b. was ironing
   c. had been ironed d. had ironed

3. What upsetting news! My friend's car ..... .
a. had damaged b. has damaged
c. had been damaged d. has been damaged

4. What the manager said in the meeting ..... .
a. hasn't been expected b. wasn't expecting
c. hadn't expected d. hadn't been expected

5. Unfortunately, the stolen money ....., yet.
a. hasn't been restored b. hasn't restored
c. hadn't been restored d. weren't restored

6. This nice story..... by Taha Hussein.
a. has written b. writes c. wrote d. was written (السودان ٢٠١١)

7. Noha phoned me while the dinner ..... .
a. was cooking b. cooked c. cooks d. was being cooked (دور أول قديم ٢٠١٥)

8. After the house ..... painted, we furnished it.
a. had b. had been c. has been d. is (السودان ٢٠١٥)

9. I don't know who the problem ..... by.
a. was solved b. solve c. solves d. was solving (دور ثان حديث ٢٠١٥)

10. The first heart transplant operation ..... in Britain 20 years ago.
a. was done b. was doing c. had been done d. had been doing (ا.ث. م. أولي ٢٠١٠)

11. It ..... that an accident took place on the Ring Road.
a. reported b. reports c. had reported d. has been reported (دور أول حديث ٢٠١٦)

12. It ..... that people have lived here for centuries.
a. know b. known c. is known d. had known (السودان. م. أولي ٢٠١١)

13. Before the rabbit ....., it had eaten half the carrots in the garden. (LM)
a. was caught b. had caught
c. was being caught d. caught

14. The Postman, by Yehia Haqqi, ... first prize in 1968. (LM)
a. awarded b. was awarded c. was awarding d. is being awarded

15. The ring ..... while she was washing the dishes.
a. was lost b. lost c. is lost d. was losing (LM)

16. Our broken chairs ..... to the workshop.
a. took b. were taken c. were taking d. had taken

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

Special Cases

17. Who ..... the radio invented by? (LM)
a. was b. had c. has d. is

18. I felt worried as soon as the plane ..... off. (LM)
a. took b. had been taken
c. has taken off d. was taken

19. Most of the novels ..... by Naguib Mahfouz are still read by thousands of people. (LM)
a. writing b. written
c. were written d. which written

20. Having ....., the car became ready for the journey. (LM)
a. repaired b. being repaired
c. been repaired d. to be repaired

21. Where ..... taken to? To prison. (نموذج الوزارة الأول ٢٠٢٠)
a. the thieves were b. were the thieves
c. the thieves have been d. have the thieves

22. My brother doesn't let himself ..... easily by his classmates. (نموذج الوزارة الثاني ٢٠٢٠)
a. tease b. to be teased c. being teased d. be teased

23. Having ..... coldly, he got upset. (نموذج الوزارة الثاني ٢٠١٩)
a. to being met b. being met c. met d. been met

24. Since the bridge ..... , it will help the traffic flow. (دور أول قديم ٢٠١٦)
a. completed b. is completing
c. has been completed d. completes

25. After the death of her husband, the poor woman was thought ..... from amnesia. (دور ثان حديث ٢٠١٥)
a. is suffered b. to have suffered
c. suffer d. to be suffered

26. I ..... about the accident before you mentioned it.
a. did not tell b. is not telling
c. have not been told d. had not been told

27. Our cat ..... over by a fast car.
a. ran b. runs c. was run d. was running

28. I didn't know what ..... on in the second room.
a. was being gone b. was going c. had been gone d. has been gone

29. While ..... , the interviewer asked me more than 50 questions.
a. was interviewing b. interviewing me
c. being interviewed d. I was interviewing

30. I waited impatiently as the road ..... .
a. was being reopened b. was being reopening
c. had been reopening d. had reopened

31. ..... before you were accepted for the job?
a. Had you interviewed b. Had you been interviewed
c. Were you interviewing d. Did you interview

32. Not all side effects .....of.
a. were thinking b. be thought c. was thought d. were thought

33. I didn't know that you ..... home.
a. have arrived b. have been arrived
c. had been arrived d. had arrived

34. ..... they will arrive in time for dinner.
a. They are expected b. It is expected that
c. They can't be expected d. It is expecting

35. He ..... to make a lot of money.
a. has known b. is known c. knows d. is knowing

36. ..... to have financial problems.
a. It is reporting b. It reported c. They are reported d. It is reports

3 Check your understanding

37. "I had fish for lunch yesterday." What does this mean?
a. Fish was had by me yesterday. b. Fish was eaten by me yesterday.
c. Fish ate me yesterday. d. Fish had me yesterday.

38. "Who welcomed you at the airport?" What does this mean?
a. Who you welcomed at the airport?
b. Who did you welcome at the airport?
c. Whom did you welcome at the airport?
d. By whom were you welcomed at the airport?

39. "Menna was visiting Esraa at nine." This means .....
a. Esraa was being visited by Menna at nine.
b. Esraa was visiting Menna at nine.
c. Esraa had been visited by Menna at nine.
d. Esraa has been visited by Menna at nine.

40. "I haven't been told my exam results yet." This means .....
a. I haven't told my exam results yet.
b. I have never told my exam results yet.
c. my exam results haven't been told to me yet.
d. my exam results have been told to me yet.

41. "He called me after finishing the report." What does this mean?
a. He had finished the report before he called me.
b. The report had been finished before he called me.
c. Having finished the report, he called me.
d. a, b & c

42. "Rokaya has given me some popcorn." This means .....
a. I was given some popcorn by Rokaya.
b. I have been given some popcorn by Rokaya.
c. Some popcorn has been given to me.
d. b & c

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

43. "The car that the mechanic repaired was mine." What does this mean?
a. The car repaired by the mechanic was mine.
b. The car repairing by the mechanic was mine.
c. The mechanic repaired the car was mine.
d. The mechanic repairing the car was mine.

44. "I believed that Hasnaa ate too much." This means that .....
a. it believed that Hasnaa ate too much.
b. Hasnaa was believed to have eaten too much.
c. Hasnaa believes that I ate too much.
d. I was believed by Hasnaa to have eaten too much.

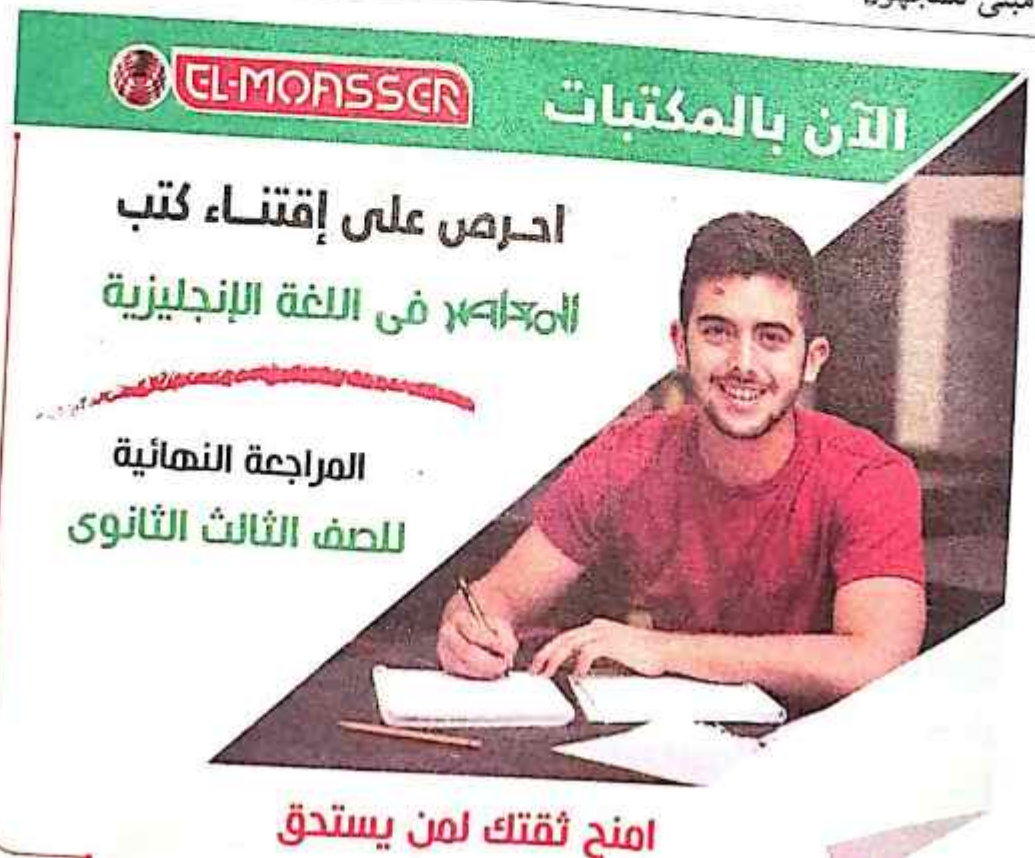
Advanced Exercise on Language

وجه : التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

*** Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. The man ..... right now has a severe headache.
   a. examines b. is examining
   c. being examined d. been examined
2. ..... in the arm by a scorpion, I felt great pain.
   a. Stung b. Stinging c. Having stung d. Been stung
3. ..... by most people, he was elected for a third time.
   a. Loved b. Being loved c. Loving d. a & b
4. My guests ..... a big lunch. They like my mother's food.
   a. have been made b. have made c. are making d. are to make

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	c	- السياق مبنى للمجهول فى المضارع المستمر
2.	a	- كلمة (stung) هنا هى اختصار لـ (When I was stung)
3.	d	- كلمة (loved) هنا هى اختصار لـ (Because he was loved) كما يمكن اعتبار (loved) صفة بعد (Being)
4.	a	- السياق مبنى للمجهول





LESSONS 5 & 6

SB pages 22 : 25 WB pages 12 & 13

Part I Key Vocabulary & Definitions

تنويه

• هذا الجزء خاص بالمفردات والتعبيرات الرئيسية للقصة، لقراءة نص القصة المقررة وللمزيد من المفردات اللغوية والتدريبات نهاية الكتاب.

1 Key Vocabulary, Idioms & Collocations

admirer(n)	مُعجَب - مُغرَم	extravagant(adj)	مُسرِف/مُبذِّر - مُغالى
apart from	باستثناء	fortune(n)	حظ - ثروة
arrogant(adj)	مغرور - متغطرس	gloomy(adj)	كئيب - متشائم
astonished(adj)	مَذهُول - شديد الاندهاش	pay off(phr.v)	يسد (دين)
benefactor(n)	فاعِل خَيْر - صاحب إحسان	rough(adj)	خشن/ غير مصقول
dark(adj)	مُظلِم - كئيب	sigh(ed) (v)	يتنهد
debts(n)	دِيون	uncertain(adj)	غير متأكد - غير مُؤكد
elegant(adj)	أنيق - ذكي	unpleasant(adj)	غير سار - غير ودود
except for	فيما عدا		

2 Definitions تعريفات

تنويه

لابد من قراءة التعريفات التالية جيدًا، فهى موضع امتحان.

admirer(n) مُعجَب - مُغرَم	someone who likes a particular مُعيَّن person
apart from باستثناء	except for
arrogant(adj) مغرور - متغطرس	describes someone who thinks they're better or more important than they really are
astonished(adj) مَذهُول - شديد الاندهاش	extremely surprised
dark(adj) مُظلِم - كئيب	- if it is dark, there is little or no light - if you have dark feelings or thoughts, you are very sad or worried
elegant(adj) ذكي	- pleasingly graceful and stylish in appearance or manner
extravagant(adj) مُسرِف/مُبذِّر - مُغالى	- it describes someone who spends too much money
funeral(n) جنازة	a religious ceremony مراسم for burying someone who has died

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

gloomy(adj) كئيب - متشائم	sad because you think the situation will not improve
pay off(phr.v) يسدد (الدين)	to give someone the money you owe them
rough(adj) خشن/ غير مصقول	something that has an uneven surface غير مستوٍ not smooth مصقول
sigh(ed) (v) يتنهد	to breathe in and out making a loud sound
unpleasant(adj) غير سار - غير ودود	- not pleasant or enjoyable - not kind or friendly

3 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

become a member of a club ينضم لنادي	offer someone a job يعرض وظيفة على شخص
fall in love with يُغرَم بـ - يَعشَق	
make a fortune يُكوِّن ثروة	pay debts يسدد ديون

Exercise On Vocabulary • Understand

• ✪ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. It would be ..... to buy that expensive mobile; the one you already have is very smart. You should be wise enough with your money. (LM)
   a. economical b. ordinary c. extravagant d. careful
2. He was imprisoned because he couldn't ..... off his debt on time. (LM)
   a. take b. go c. see d. pay
3. He is very .....; he behaves in an unpleasant way and thinks that he is better than everyone else. (LM)
   a. modest b. arrogant c. simple d. cruel
4. During their father's ....., the sisters sobbed uncontrollably. (LM)
   a. funeral b. festival c. party d. birth
5. He ..... a fortune out of his successful businesses.
   a. made b. did c. paid d. fell
6. He reached a/an ..... solution to the problem. That impressed us all.
   a. arrogant b. extravagant c. elegant d. gloomy
7. A generous ..... volunteered to pay for the treatment of the poor old woman.
   a. benefactor b. admirer c. funeral d. robb

8. To ..... is to breathe in and out making a loud sound.
a. make b. do c. pay off d. sigh

9. I am one of the ..... of Salah as a footballer.
a. benefactors b. admirers c. funerals d. robbers

10. Except ..... your parents, no one likes to see you better than them.
a. by b. with c. on d. for

Part II Skills

تنويه المهارات الخاصة بالوحدة تم شرحها متبوعة بالتدريبات فى ملحق (Master your skills) كل وحدة علي حدة.

Translation الترجمة

① Choose the best Arabic translation :

1. One's well-being is high priority to maintain health and social care. Therefore, we should pay more attention to our well-being, so we can have an influential role in life. *(Practice Ex. 2)*

أ. تُعدّ الرعاية الصحية أولوية قصوى في الحفاظ على الرعاية الاجتماعية، ومن ثَمّ يجب أن نولي ذلك العناية الواجبة ليكون لنا دور مُؤثِّر في الحياة.

ب. تُعدّ الرعاية الاجتماعية أولوية قصوى في الحفاظ على الناحية الصحية، ولهذا السبب يجب أن نولي ذلك العناية الواجبة ليكون لنا دور مُؤثِّر في الحياة.

ج. تُعدّ الرعاية الاجتماعية أولوية عالية في الحفاظ على الصحية والاجتماعية النفسية، ومن أجل هذا يجب أن نولي المزيد من للرفاهية ليكون لنا دور مُؤثِّر في الحياة.

د. يُعدّ الاهتمام بالنفس أولوية قصوى للحفاظ على الرعاية الصحية والاجتماعية، ولذلك يجب أن نولي المزيد من الاهتمام لأنفسنا ليكون لنا دور مُؤثِّر في الحياة.

2. Experience is not what happens to a man. It is what a man does with what happens to him.

أ. التجربة ليست ما يحدث للرجل، هذا ما يفعله الرجل مع ما يحدث له.

ب. التجربة ليست ما يحدث للإنسان، هذا ما يفعله الإنسان مع ما يحدث له.

ج. التجربة ليست ما يحدث للإنسان، بل هذا ما يفعله الإنسان مع ما يحدث له.

د. التجربة ليست ما يحدث للإنسان، بل ما يفعله الإنسان تجاه ما يحدث له.

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

3. Nothing in the world can take the place of persistence; nothing is more common than unsuccessful men with talent.

أ. في العالم يمكن أن يحل محل المحافظة، لا شيء أكثر شيوعًا من الرجال الفاشلين ذوي الموهبة.
ب. في العالم يمكن أن يحل محل المثابرة، فلا شيء أكثر شيوعًا من الرجال الفاشلين بلا الموهبة.
ج. في العالم يمكن أن يحل محل المثابرة، فليس هناك أكثر من الأشخاص الفاشلين من ذوي الموهبة.
د. في العالم يمكن أن يحل محل المثابرة، فليس هناك أكثر من الأشخاص الفاشلين من غير ذوي الموهبة.

4. Our greatest weakness lies in giving up. The most certain way to succe is always to try just one more time.

أ. ضعفنا ينام في التخلي. الطريقة الأكثر تأكيدًا للنجاح هي دائمًا المحاولة مرة أخرى.
ب. أكبر ضعفنا يكمن في العطاء، الطريقة الأكثر تأكيدًا للنجاح هي دائمًا المحاولة مرة أخرى.
ج. أكبر نقاط ضعفنا يكمن في التخلي، فالطريقة الأكثر تأكيدًا للنجاح هي دائمًا المحاولة أكثر وقت.
د. أكبر نقاط ضعفنا يكمن في الاستسلام، فأكثر طريقة مؤكدة للنجاح هي دائمًا المحاولة مرة أخرى.

② Choose the best English translation :

١. في سوق العمل لم تعد الخبرة وحدها هي العامل الأساسي الذي يضعه أصحاب الأعمال في الاعتبار، هناك مهارات العمل التي لا تقل أهمية عن الخبرة. *(LM)*

a. In the labour market, experiment alone is no longer the main factor that employers take into consideration; there are work skills that are more important than experience.

b. In the labour market, experience alone is no longer the main factor that employers take into consideration; there are work skills that are no less important than experience.

c. In the labour market, experience alone is still the main factor that employers take into consideration; it is more important than skills.

d. In the labour market, experience alone is no longer the main factor that employees take into consideration; there are work skills that are not as important as experience.

٢. يتطلب سوق العمل في عصرنا هذا العديد من المهارات أهمها إجادة التعامل مع التكنولوجيا الحديثة وإجادة اللغات الأجنبية.

a. The labour market in this time acquires many skills, the most important of which are proficiency in dealing with modern technology and proficiency in foreign languages.

b. The labour market in our time requires any skills, the most important of that are proficiency in dealing with modern technology and proficiency in foreign languages.

c. The labour market in our time requires many skills, the most important of which are deficiency in dealing with modern technology and proficiency in foreign languages.

d. The labour market in our time requires a lot of skills, the most important of which are proficiency in dealing with modern technology and proficiency in foreign languages.

---

٣. يجب أن تستعد جيداً للمقابلة الشخصية للحصول على وظيفة حتى تعطي أفضل انطباع مُمكن مما يساعدك على الحصول على وظيفة.

a. You should prepare well for the personal job interview in order to give the best possible impression, which will help you to get a job.

b. You should prepare will for the personal job interview to give the best possible impression, which will help you getting a job.

c. You should prepare well for the personal job interview in order to give the best impossible impression, which will help you to get a job.

d. You should prepare well for the personal job interview in order to give the best possible printing, which will help you to get a job.

---

٤. من أهم المهارات التي يجب أن يتمتع بها المتقدم للوظيفة هي القدرة على التحدث أمام جمهور أو ما يُعرف بعمل العروض التقديمية.

a. The most important skills that a job applicant must possess is the ability to speak in front of an audience, or what is known as making presentations.

b. One of the most important skills that a job applicant must possess is the ability to speak in front of an audience, or what is known as making presentations.

c. One of the most important skills that a job application must possess is the ability to speak in front of an audience or what is known as making presentations.

d. One of the most important skills that a job applicant must possess is the ability to speak in front of an audience or what is known as doing presentations.

Test on Unit 8

• Understand • Apply • Create

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. He has a/an ..... job as a secretary. He goes to the office six days a week.
   a. full-time b. part-time c. achievable d. digital
2. It helps the presenter if he/she speaks ..... .
   a. throughout b. basically c. personally d. fluently
3. To ..... means to make a formal request, usually written, for something such as a job, a place at a university, or permission to do something
   a. be charged b. trace c. be in charge d. apply
4. It is necessary to ..... links between cause and effect.
   a. work b. take c. make d. do
5. "Don't pay much attention to trifling details." The word 'trifling' here is a synonym of ..... .
   a. important b. valuable c. a & b d. valueless
6. It will be really ..... if it does not rain this year too.
   a. calamity b. calamitous c. colossus d. colossal
7. I find teaching a worthwhile ..... .
   a. team player b. interviewer c. career d. journalism
8. A/An ..... is a piece of writing in a newspaper that gives the editor's opinion about something, rather than reporting facts.
   a. follow-up b. start-up c. impression d. editorial
9. We ..... exactly what to do in these situations.
   a. tell b. are going to tell
   c. are telling d. are told
10. Homework ..... before you can watch TV.
    a. must be finish b. must be finished
    c. have to be finished d. have finished
11. The children ..... to the park today.
    a. are taking b. have taken c. take d. are being taken
12. A lot of cars and buildings ..... from our classroom window.
    a. can see b. can be seen c. are seeing d. are being seen
13. Could this maths problem ..... ?
    a. solve b. solving c. be solved d. have sold
14. Those toys ..... in many shops near here.
    a. are sold b. sells c. will have sold d. is being

15. He ..... where to park the car when he gets there.
a. was told b. will tell c. will be told d. told

16. The quantity of energy from the sun ..... on the time of day and the time of year.
a. is depended b. depends
c. is being depended d. needs to be depended

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

It's only thirty-six centimeters tall, but to fans throughout the world, it represents the highest achievement in football. Every four years, teams from all over the globe compete to take home the FIFA World Cup Trophy.

The original trophy was made by a French sculptor, Abel La Fleur, and was called the "Jules Rimet Cup," in honor of the founder of the World Cup tournament. After that, the name changed to the "World Cup." During World War II, the trophy was being kept hidden in a shoebox under the bed of Dr. Ottorino Barassi, the Italian vice-president of FIFA, to prevent it from falling into the hands of the Nazi army.

In 1966, the Cup was stolen during a public showing of the trophy prior to the World Cup tournament in England. Luckily, it was found a short time later. Four years later, Brazil earned permanent possession of the original trophy by winning its third World Cup title. Unfortunately, the trophy was stolen a second time in 1983 and was never recovered. The Brazilian Football Association had to have a duplicate trophy made.

After the first trophy became the possession of Brazil's football association, a new World Cup Trophy for FIFA was designed by an Italian artist, Silvio Gazzaniga, in 1974. This trophy cannot be won outright, but remains in the possession of FIFA. World Cup winners are awarded a replica of the trophy that is gold-plated, rather than solid gold like the real one which weighs almost five kilograms.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

17. Which of the following is the most suitable title for the passage?
a. The World Cup Tournament b. The World Cup Trophy
c. The World Cup Stars d. The World Cup Winners

18. It can be inferred from the passage that the World Cup winners have only a replica to ..... .
a. honour them b. protect them
c. protect the real one d. celebrate the real one

19. The World Cup was designed ..... during its long history.
a. once b. three times c. four times d. twice

20. Which of the following sentences summarizes the third paragraph?
a. The cup was gold-plated b. The cup was designed
c. The cup was made of gold d. The cup was stolen twice

21. ..... was the founder of the World Cup tournament.
a. Ottorino Barassi b. Jules Rimet c. Silvio Gazzaniga d. Abel La Fleur

22. By 2050, the trophy may be ..... .
a. wooden b. digital c. golden d. silver

23. The gold-plated trophy is ..... than the solid gold one.
a. heavier b. lighter c. taller d. shorter

24. The writer thinks that the World Cup trophy is ..... .
a. the interest of all people b. the product of football matches
c. the public wish in sport d. the highest achievement in football

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

Imagine swimming through refreshing ocean waves with a graceful prehistoric animal. Many people hope to do just this when they snorkel off the shores of the tropical islands where green sea turtles make their home.

The Hawaiian sea turtle is a symbol of peace and good luck to the Hawaiian people. Out of respect for this ancient creature, laws have been enacted to protect them. It is illegal to touch or harass يزعج them. Green sea turtles have smooth shells with shades of black, brown, gray, green, or yellow. The soft bottom shell is yellowish-white. So, why are they called green sea turtles? The largest of all hard-shelled sea turtles, green sea turtles feed exclusively on plants, such as seaweed and algae. Scientists believe their diet contributes to their green fat, for which they are named. They are the only herbivorous marine turtle.

Habitats of green sea turtles include nesting beaches, the open ocean, and coastal areas for feeding. Females return to the same beaches where they were born to lay their eggs. Hatchlings swim to offshore areas for feeding for several years. Once they reach a certain age, they return to coastal areas to live as adult sea turtles.

Green sea turtles are not overly fearful of people, although they can swim up to 35 miles per hour to escape perceived danger. They are endangered in many areas of the world due to the harvesting of eggs and adult turtles. Turtles also face the danger of becoming accidentally trapped in gillnets and other fishing gear. They are subject to a disease that causes tumors that interfere with the animals' swimming, vision,

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

feeding, and ability to escape from predators. Ongoing research and legislation تشريع seek to ensure that green sea turtles will remain part of the tropical ecosystem for many years to come.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

25. What is the main idea of the second paragraph?
   a. Treat green sea turtles with respect.
   b. Green sea turtles are endangered.
   c. Details about the turtles' habitat.
   d. The life cycle of a green sea turtle.

26. Which of the following is **NOT** an example of a threat to green sea turtles?
   a. They can swim up to 35 miles per hour to escape perceived danger.
   b. People harvest turtle eggs and adult turtles in many areas.
   c. They can become trapped in gillnets and other fishing gear.
   d. They are subject to a disease that causes tumors.

27. The green turtles were given their name as .....
   a. their main food is plants seaweed and algae which contribute to their green fat.
   b. they live in plants as seaweed and algae.
   c. their leather's colour is green.
   d. they have green colour around their habitat.

28. The disease the green turtles suffer from causes ..... .
   a. gillnets b. rumors c. predators d. tumors

29. The last paragraph of the passage is ..... .
   a. an invitation for search to protect turtles
   b. an attack against the turtles protection
   c. an achievement for turtles protection
   d. an entertainment for turtles

30. Which pair of words from the text best describes the author's opinion of green sea turtles?
   a. tropical, endangered b. harass, escape
   c. fearful, prehistoric d. graceful, respected

31. The green sea turtles are ..... .
   a. smaller than all hard shelled sea creatures
   b. the largest of all hard shelled sea creatures
   c. less herbivorous than other marine turtles
   d. as herbivorous as other marine turtles

32. How are green turtles protected?
   a. Laws have been made.
   b. Collecting them in special places.
   c. Stop people from snorkeling with them.
   d. Legislation isn't necessary.

Choose the best Arabic translation :

33. Foods that contain vitamins are often called protective foods because they protect us from many deadly diseases.

a. الأطعمة التى تحتوى على فيتامينات غالبًا ما تسمى أطعمة وقائية، لأنها تحمينا من كثير من الأمراض القاتلة.
b. الأطعمة التى تتكون من فيتامينات عادةً ما تسمى أطعمة وقائية، لأنها تقينا من كثير من الأمراض المزمنة.
c. الأطعمة التى قد تتضمن على فيتامينات أحيانًا ما تسمى أطعمة وقائية، لأنها تقينا من كثير من الأمراض القاتلة.
d. الأطعمة التى قد تحتوى على فيتامينات دائمًا تسمى أطعمة وقائية، لأنها تحمينا من كثيرًا من الأمراض المهلكة.

34. Choosing the right job is important for you because you need to enjoy your work and do it properly.

a. إن اختيار الوظيفة الصحيحة مهم لك، لأنك قد تحتاج أن تستمتع بعملك وتؤديه بشكل مناسب.
b. إن اختيار الوظيفة المناسبة مهم لك، لأنك تحتاج أن تستمتع بعملك وتؤديه بشكل مناسب.
c. إن اختيار الوظيفة المتوفرة مهم لك، لأنك إنما تحتاج أن تستمتع بعملك وتؤديه بشكل واضح.
d. إن اختيار الوظيفة الحقيقية مهم لك، لأنك تحتاج ألا تستمتع بعملك وتؤديه بشكل مناسب.

Choose the best English translation :

٣٥. قامت الحكومة فى الفترة الأخيرة ببنا ء العديد من المدن الجديدة كحل للكثير من المشكلات الاجتماعية.

a. The government has built a lot of new cities recently as a solution to many social problems.
b. The government was built a lot of new cities recently as a solution to many social problems.
c. The government is building a lot of new cities recently as a solution to many social problems.
d. The government was building a lot of new cities recently as a solution to many social problems.

٣٦. تعانى مجتمعاتنا من نقص وأحيانًا غياب لبعض القيم والمبادئ، التى لطالما كانت موجودة فى تعاملاتنا وتربينا عليها.

a. Our societies have suffered from the lack and sometimes the absence of some values and principles which have been used in our treatments and we were raised on them.
b. Our societies suffer from the leak and sometimes the absence of some values and principles which have been used in our treatments and we were raised on them.

c. Our societies suffer from a lack and sometimes the absence of some values and principles, which have been used in our treatments and we were raised on them.

d. Our societies had suffered from the leak and sometimes the absence of some values and principles which have been used in our treatments and we were raised on them.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

37. Which of the following sentences can complete this part of an essay about the merits and demerits of technology? *(LM)*

To keep pace with the recent changes all over the world, the use of modern technology in different fields of life is a must nowadays. However, we must take into consideration that technology has both positive and negative aspects. Technology is the outcome of scientists' efforts and research. On the one hand, it has improved the quality of our lives.

a. In short, we all agree that technology has no downsides to consider.

b. On the other hand, it has the potential to waste our time and make us lazy.

c. Moreover, it can save our time and effort.

d. In conclusion, I see we had better avoid using technology.

38. What mustn't be included in a CV? *(LM)*

a. Contact Information. b. Work Experience.

c. Education and skills. d. Personal information.

39. Which of the following is punctuated correctly? *(LM)*

a. You ve to improve your English it's a widely-spoken language.

b. You've to improve your English: it's a widely-spoken language.

c. you've to improve your English: it's a widely spoken language.

d. You've to improve your English: it's a widely spoken language

40. What goes into the "From" field in an email ?

a. your name

b. your email address

c. the name of the person that you are sending the email to

d. the email address of the person that you are writing to

Answers of Test on unit 8

... الطالب (رباعياً) :

... ظلل الدائرة المقابلة تمامًا للإجابة الصحيحة. إذا ظللت الدائرة أمام الإجابة الخطأ، اشطب عليها بشكل واضح ثم ظلل الدائرة المقابلة للإجابة الصحيحة.

1.	a	b	c	d	21.	a	b	c	d
2.	a	b	c	d	22.	a	b	c	d
3.	a	b	c	d	23.	a	b	c	d
4.	a	b	c	d	24.	a	b	c	d
5.	a	b	c	d	25.	a	b	c	d
6.	a	b	c	d	26.	a	b	c	d
7.	a	b	c	d	27.	a	b	c	d
8.	a	b	c	d	28.	a	b	c	d
9.	a	b	c	d	29.	a	b	c	d
10.	a	b	c	d	30.	a	b	c	d
11.	a	b	c	d	31.	a	b	c	d
12.	a	b	c	d	32.	a	b	c	d
13.	a	b	c	d	33.	د	ج	ب	i
14.	a	b	c	d	34.	د	ج	ب	j
15.	a	b	c	d	35.	a	b	c	d
16.	a	b	c	d	36.	a	b	c	d
17.	a	b	c	d	37.	a	b	c	d
18.	a	b	c	d	38.	a	b	c	d
19.	a	b	c	d	39.	a	b	c	d
20.	a	b	c	d	40.	a	b	c	d

General Exercises
for Al Azhar students on Unit 8



1. Finish the following dialogue :

Asmaa and Radwa are talking about social media websites.

Asmaa : Hi Radwa. Do you use social media websites ?

Radwa : Yes, I use social media websites.

Asmaa : Do you have a facebook account ?

Radwa : Yes, (1) ..... ?

Asmaa : Me. I don't like using them.

Radwa : (2) ..... ?

Asmaa : Because they make me lazy and separate me of the real world.

Radwa : So, how do you communicate with your friends ?

Asmaa : (3) ..... .

Radwa : You're right Asmaa, Reality is better than fiction, isn't it ?

Asmaa : (4) ..... .

2. Write a paragraph of one hundred and twenty (120) words on :

"Being in charge"

.....

3. Translate into Arabic :

- There is no reason and no way that a human mind can keep up with an artificial intelligence machine by 2035.

.....

4. Translate into English :

- هل تظن حقًا أن بمقدور الإنسان الحياة على كوكب آخر.

.....

5. Answer the following question : (Islamic Selections) :

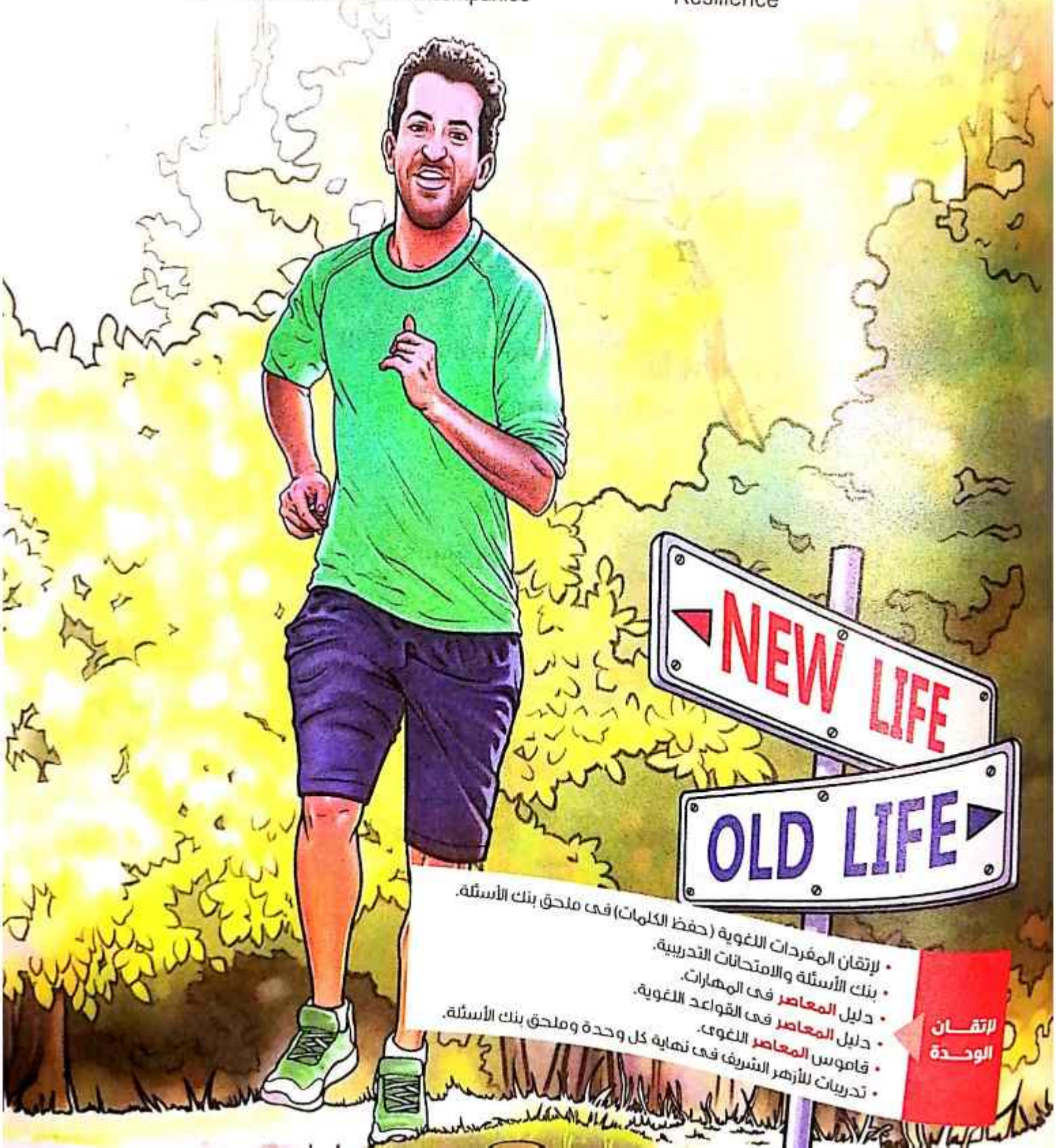
When did Lady Khadeeja die ?

.....

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

Learning Outcomes :

- **Reading :**
  Read three texts about people who have experienced a big change in their lives
- **Writing :**
  Write an opinion persuasive essay
- **Listening :**
  An interview with a businessman who helps entrepreneurs to start their own companies
- **Speaking :**
  Discussing the lessons that can be learn from other people
- **Language :**
  Quantifiers: a few, few, a little, little, more, each, every.
- **Life skills :**
  Resilience



لإتقان الوحدة

- لإتقان المفردات اللغوية (حفظ الكلمات) فى ملحق بنك الأسئلة.
- بنك الأسئلة والامتحانات التدريبية.
- دليل المعاصر فى المهارات.
- دليل المعاصر فى القواعد اللغوية.
- دليل المعاصر اللغوى.
- قاموس المعاصر الشريف فى نهاية كل وحدة وملحق بنك الأسئلة.
- تدريبات للأزهر الشريف فى نهاية كل وحدة وملحق بنك الأسئلة.

Part I Vocabulary

تنويه • اختبر مدى اتقانك للمفردات الرئيسية فى كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

banking procedures(n)	الإجراءات المصرفية	entrepreneurial(adj)	ريادي - ينطوي على مجازفة
(career)direction(n)	تَوَجُّه/تَحَوُّل (وظيفي) - هدف/غرض	entrepreneurship(n)	ريادة الأعمال -المجازفةالاقتصادية
common sense(n)	حُسْنُ تَدَبُّر - حُسْنُ تَمْييز- شعور عام	life experience(n)	خبرات وتجارب الحياة
contribution(n)	مُسَاهَمَة - مشاركة	life-changing(adj)	يؤدي لتغيير جذري في الحياة
employment(n)	وظيفة - التوظيف - التشغيل	reinvent(ed) (v)	يعيد تأهيل - يُشكِّل من جديد- يُصلِح
entrepreneur(n)	رائد أعمال	wisdom(n)	الحكمة
		working knowledge(n)	المعرفة العملية

تنويه • المفردات اللغوية باللون الأحمر هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية.

2 Important Vocabulary

artist(n)	فنان	gain(ed) (v)	يكتسب
banking(n)	الأعمال المصرفية	painting(n)	لوحة مرسومة - فن الرسم
bottled(adj)	مُعبأ في زجاجات	pandemic(n)	جائحة
break down (phr. v)	يتحلل	passion(n)	شَغَف - وَلَع
bubble(n)	فُقَّاعة	perfect(adj)	مثالي
chance(n)	حظ - فُرصة	potential(n)	قدرة إحتمالية
class(n)	دورة تدريبية	procedure(n)	إجراء
competition(n)	مسابقة	publish(ed) (v)	ينشر
contact(ed) (v)	يتصل بـ/يتواصل مع	quantifier(n)	تعبير كمية/محدد كمية
creative(adj)	إبداعي	question(ed) (v)	يسأل - يتشكك
develop(ed) (v)	يُطوِّر - يُنمِّي	recipe(n)	وصفة طهي
exist(ed) (v)	يوجد	recycle(d) (v)	يعيد تدوير
experience(d) (v)	يُجرِّب/يعايش	regret(ted) (v)	يندم
factors(n)	عوامل	remote (adj.)	ناء - بعيد جدًا
fashionable(adj)	علي الموضة	seaweed(n)	عُشَّب البحر

fountain(n)	نافورة
hold - held - held(v)	يحتوي على - يمسك - يُقيم
ingredients(n)	عناصر - مكونات
inspire(d) (v)	يُلهم
instructions(n)	تعليمات
inventor(n)	مخترع - مبتكر
knowledge(n)	المعرفة
metal(n)	المعدن
second hand(adj)	مُستَعمَل
sell-sold(v)	
sew-sewed-sewn(n)	
solar(adj)	
solar-powered(adj)	
sports science(n)	
stressed(adj)	
through(adv)	
vehicle(n)	
wheel(n)	
working life(n)	

3 Definitions تعريفات

banking procedures(n) الإجراءات المصرفية	steps that workers need to follow to complete a process in a bank
(career)direction(n) تَوَجُّه/تَحَوُّل (وظيفي)	the way that someone is changing or developing their working life
common sense(n) حُسْن الإدراك	a simple understanding of how something works
contribution(n) مُساهَمَة - مشاركة	doing something to make a difference to a situation
employment(n) التوظيف - التشغيل	when someone is paid to do a job
entrepreneur(n) رائد أعمال	someone who starts a new business or arranges business deals صفقات in order to make money, often in a way that involves financial risks مجازفات مالية
life experience(n) خبرات وتجارب الحياة	the knowledge you gain from life
life-changing يؤدي لتغيير جذري في الحياة	something so important that it results in your life being different
reinvent(ed) (v) يعيد تأهيل - يُشكل من جديد	to change who you are, e.g., by starting a different job
wisdom(n) الحكمة	the ability to use your knowledge of life to make good decisions
working knowledge(n) المعرفةالعملية	a basic level of practical عملية kno

fountain(n)	نافورة	sell-sold(v)	يحقق مبيعات
hold - held - held(v)	يحتوي على - يمسك - يُقيم	sew-sewed-sewn(n)	
ingredients(n)	عناصر - مكونات	solar(adj)	
inspire(d) (v)	يُلهِم	solar-powered(adj)	يعمل بالطاقة الشمسية
instructions(n)	تعليمات	sports science(n)	علوم الرياضة
inventor(n)	مخترع - مبتكر	stressed(adj)	متوتر/مضغوط
knowledge(n)	المعرفة	through(adv)	من - خلال
metal(n)	المعدن	vehicle(n)	مركبة
second hand(adj)	مُستَعمَل	wheel(n)	عجلة
		working life(n)	الحياة العملية

3 Definitions تعريفات

banking procedures(n) الإجراءات المصرفية	steps that workers need to follow to complete a process in a bank
(career)direction(n) تَوَجُّه/تَحَوُّل (وظيفي)	the way that someone is changing or developing their working life
common sense(n) حُسْن الإدراك	a simple understanding of how something works
contribution(n) مُساهَمَة - مشاركة	doing something to make a difference to a situation
employment(n) التوظيف - التشغيل	when someone is paid to do a job
entrepreneur(n) رائد أعمال	someone who starts a new business or arranges business deals صفقات in order to make money, often in a way that involves financial risks مجازفات مالية
life experience(n) خبرات وتجارب الحياة	the knowledge you gain from life
life-changing يؤدي لتغيير جذري في الحياة	something so important that it results in your life being different
reinvent(ed) (v) يعيد تأهيل - يُشكل من جديد	to change who you are, e.g., by starting a different job
wisdom(n) الحكمة	the ability to use your knowledge of life to make good decisions
working knowledge(n) المعرفةالعملية	a basic level of practical عملية knowledge

Exercise On Vocabulary • Understand

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

1. My brother started working in a factory and gained reasonable working ..... of safety procedures. *(LM)*
   a. ignorance b. suffering c. knowledge d. science
2. The entire job experience I've gained has been life- ..... . *(LM)*
   a. joining b. charging c. stealing d. changing
3. My grandfather has a lot of .....; we frequently seek his guidance. *(LM)*
   a. wisdom b. hatred c. jealousy d. health
4. The Ministry of Education is adopting plans to ..... the Egyptian educational system. *(LM)*
   a. reuse b. reinvent c. recycle d. refuse
5. My sister has decided to change ..... and go to university to get a higher degree. *(LM)*
   a. reaction b. infection c. collection d. direction
6. Mr Rami, our science teacher, has made significant .....,.. to his students' lives in order to motivate them to achieve their goals. *(LM)*
   a. ammunitions b. situations c. contributions d. constitutions
7. We were given no instructions, so we had to use our ..... to work it out.
   a. direction b. employment c. contribution d. common sense
8. I found my first ..... working in a café.
   a. direction b. employment c. contribution d. common sense
9. I worked in the USA for ten years, which was an amazing ..... I will never forget.
   a. experience b. changing c. knowledge d. ingredient
10. It is not easy to change ..... direction after twenty years of working in the same field.
    a. career b. employer c. contribution d. common sense

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

2 Important vocabulary

11. To better يُحسّن my skills, I chose to enroll in a ..... writing class.
a. creativity b. creative c. creation d. creator

12. A good employer makes full use of the ..... of each member of the staff.
a. procedure b. coaches c. entrepreneurs d. potentials

13. ..... are words like 'all', 'some', 'many' ...etc.
a. Seaweeds b. Quantifiers c. Recipes d. Procedures

14. He took my advice without ..... . He trusts me.
a. contacting b. inspiring c. questioning d. reinventing

15. I think this is a very high price for such a ..... car. This way, buying a new one is better.
a. solar-powered b. second-hand c. bottled d. creative

16. I think this is a fair price for such a ..... car. It runs on electricity from the sun.
a. solar-powered b. second-hand c. bottled d. creative

17. I think online ..... is safe. Your money is not in danger.
a. vehicle b. working c. knowledge d. banking

18. Planning is one of the basic ..... of success.
a. passions b. paintings c. factors d. transports

19. You can ..... the customer service for technical help.
a. contact b. inspire c. question d. reinvent

20. The security ..... in this factory are perfect.
a. seaweeds b. quantifiers c. recipes d. procedures

21. I found it difficult to ..... my first novel as I was unknown.
a. publish b. regret c. sew d. hold

22. Don't let your ..... life kill your happiness. Humans need some time for themselves.
a. vehicle b. working c. knowledge d. banking

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

23. The success of my cousin has ..... me. I felt I can be successful, too.
a. contacted b. inspired c. questioned d. invented

24. Each ..... sheet has a different code.
a. bubble b. chance c. ingredient d. pandemic

25. How much liquid does this container .....?
a. publish b. regret c. sew d. hold

26. This is a modern ..... which is environmentally friendly.
a. vehicle b. working c. knowledge d. banking

27. It is commonly believed that it is healthier to drink ..... water.
a. solar-powered b. second-hand c. bottled d. creative

28. The best thing about plastic is that it can be ..... .
a. recycled b. enveloped c. broken down d. existed

29. The worst thing about plastic is that it does not ..... .
a. recycle b. develop c. break down d. exist

30. Coronavirus is dangerous, but there have been much more dangerous ..... over the ages.
a. bubbles b. chances c. ingredients d. pandemics

31. I got the ..... for this dish from the internet.
a. seaweed b. quantifier c. recipe d. procedure

32. Never ..... the good you did to someone. Only the good do good.
a. publish b. regret c. sew d. hold

33. Extinct animals no longer ..... on earth.
a. recycle b. gain c. break down d. exist

34. This ..... is worth millions of dollars. It is a unique work of art.
a. passion b. painting c. factor d. transport

35. This injured man needs much health care in order to increase his ..... of survival.
a. bubble b. chance c. ingredient d. pandemic

36. It is nice to see coloured fish moving among ..... .
c. recipe d. procedure

37. I need to find a needle to ..... the button of the shirt.
a. publish b. regret c. sew d. hold

38. A young ..... has built a solar-powered tuk-tuk.
a. inventor b. coach
c. entrepreneurship d. potential

39. He is a good team player. However, he lacks ..... .
a. passion b. painting c. factor d. transport

40. A team of scientists have ..... a new vaccine for corona virus.
a. recycled b. developed c. broke down d. existed

3 Definitions

41. Something that is ..... is so important that it results in your life being different.
a. potential b. life-changing c. enabled d. up-to-date

42. ..... is the ability to use your knowledge of life to make good decisions.
a. Wisdom b. Experience c. Employment d. Common sense

43. To ..... is to change who you are, e.g., by starting a different job.
a. cycle b. recycle c. invent d. reinvent

44. ..... is a basic level of practical knowledge.
a. Working knowledge b. Contribution
c. Life experience d. Career direction

45. ..... is the simple understanding of how something works.
a. Wisdom b. Experience c. Employment d. Common sense

46. ..... means doing something to make a difference to a situation.
a. Working knowledge b. Contribution
c. Life experience d. Career direction

47. ..... is the knowledge you gain from life.
a. Working knowledge b. Contribution
c. Life experience d. Career direction

48. ..... is when someone is paid to do a job.
a. Wisdom b. Experience c. Employment d. Common sense

Part II Vocabulary Study

تلويه ساعد مُعلمك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مُسبقًا بشكل جيد.

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

build	a solar-powered car يصمم سيارة تعمل بالطاقة الشمسية	get	married يتزوج
			paid to يتقاضى أجراً لكي
change	(career)direction يُغير توجهه أو اتجاهه (مهنته)	have	a positive impact له أثر إيجابي
		increase	the chances يزيد من فُرَص
do	some writing يقوم ببعض التأليف	make	a difference to يُحدِث فرقاً في
	research into يجرى أبحاث على		good decisions يتخذ قرارات جيدة
face	challenges يواجه تحديات		
feel	stressed about يشعر بالتوتر من	sound	like يبدو وكأنه
gain	a working knowledge يكتسب خبرة في العمل	start	a company يبدأ شركة
	wisdom يكتسب الحكمة		

Mini Test 1 Collocations

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I don't like being a nurse, so I want to ..... direction.
   a. do b. face c. have d. change
2. Doing an internship helped me ..... work knowledge.
   a. gain b. make c. build d. do
3. Planning and hard work ..... the chances of your success.
   a. feel b. get c. increase d. sound
4. You can ..... some writing for our website.
   a. do b. face c. have d. start
5. She ..... married to a successful young engineer.
   a. gained b. made c. built d. got
6. ..... stressed about starting a new job in a new country is natural.
   a. Feeling b. Gaining c. Increasing d. Starting
7. Challenges are ..... by those who seek success.
   a. done b. faced c. had d. started

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

8. The smart car we are ..... will be ready for the market next year.
a. gaining b. doing c. building d. getting

9. I am a volunteer. I do not ..... paid for my work.
a. feel b. get c. increase d. sound

10. The positive impact Mr Ashraf ..... on his students is clear.
a. does b. faces c. has d. sounds

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
common sense(n)	حُسْن التدبُّر	wit / sound judgement / wisdom
employment(n)	وظيفة	job / post / position
employment(n)	التوظيف - التشغيل	hiring / taking on
employment(n)	استغلال/استخدام	use / implementation / utilization
reinvent(ed) (v)	يُصلِح	reform / modify
wisdom(n)	الحكمة - البصيرة	insight / common sense

3 Antonyms متضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)	
common sense(n)	حُسْن التدبُّر تَمْييز- شعور عام	folly	حماقة
employment(n)	التوظيف - التشغيل	unemployment	البطالة
wisdom(n)	الحكمة	stupidity / folly	الغباء/الحماقة

Mini Test 2 Synonyms & Antonyms

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. She was offered employment in the sales department. "Employment" here is similar in meaning to "....." . (LM)
a. career b. job c. profession d. idleness

2. "Use your common sense if something goes wrong." In this sentence, "common sense" is a synonym of ..... .
a. folly b. wit c. wisdom d. b & c

3. "The employment of children is against the law." The word 'employment' here can be replaced by ..... .
a. a job b. unemployment c. taking on d. a & c

4. "National employment has reached 92%." The word 'employment' here is an antonym of ..... .
   a. a job b. unemployment c. taking on d. a & c
5. "Egypt is reinventing the educational system." The verb "reinventing" here is synonymous with ..... .
   a. creating b. finding out c. inventing again d. reforming

4 Derivatives المشتقات

Verb	Noun	Adjective
contribute (to) يساهم/يشارك (في)	contribution مُسَاهَمَة/ مُشَارَكَة contributor مُسَاهِم/ مُشَارِك	contributory مُساهِم - مُشارِك
employ يُوَظِّف / يُشَغِّل	employee عامل / موظَّف employer صاحب العمل / موظِّف employment التوظيف / التشغيل - وظيفة - استخدام unemployment البطالة	employable مُؤَهَّل للعمل unemployed عاطل
	entrepreneur رائد أعمال entrepreneurship ريادة الأعمال -المجازفة الاقتصادية	entrepreneurial ريادي - ينطوي على مجازفة
	wisdom الحكمة	wise حكيم

Mini Test 3 Derivatives

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. A/An ..... is always concerned with making profit.
   a. contribution b. contributor
   c. entrepreneur d. entrepreneurial
2. His ideas, mostly ....., are always concerned with making profit.
   a. contribution b. contributor c. entrepreneur d. entrepreneurial
3. Naguib Mahfouz's ..... to Arabic literature are clear to everyone.
   a. contributed b. contributions c. contributors d. contributory
4. Naguib Mahfouz was one of the chief ..... to modern Arabic literature.
   a. contributed b. contributions c. contributors d. contributory
5. Naguib Mahfouz was ..... to modern Arabic literature.
   a. contributed b. contributions c. contributors d. contributory
6. Everyone likes working for him. They say he is a very kind ..... .
   a. employee b. employer c. employment d. employable

7. A company in my town closed last week, leaving 50 people .....
a. employment b. employer c. unemployed d. employ

8. Someone who is paid to work for another person is called a / an .....
a. employer b. employee c. employable d. employment

9. If you have a degree from a good university, you will be very .....
a. employ b. employment c. employable d. employee

10. She was not ..... . she shouldn't have decided while she was angry.
a. wise b. wisely c. a & b d. wisdom

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

at all	على الإطلاق	free time	وقت فراغ
banking procedures	الإجراءات المصرفية	life experience	خبرة الحياة
bottled water	مياه مُعبأة في زجاجات	life-changing experience	تجربة تؤدي لتغيير جذري في الحياة
computing systems	أنظمة الحواسيب	much to my surprise	مما أصابني بالدهشة
contribution to	مساهمة في	piece of	قطعة من
coronavirus pandemic	جائحة فيروس كورونا	second-hand	مُستعمَل
even though	مع أن	solar-powered	يعمل بالطاقة الشمسية
for fun	للمتعة	spare time	وقت فراغ
free drink	مشروب مجاني	sports science	علوم الرياضة

6 Synonymous expressions تعبيرات مترادفة

according to ... = as stated by طبقاً لرأي / حَسَب ما يقول ...	according to ... = in accordance with = in agreement with طبقاً لـ/ حَسَب / بما يتوافق مع...
as a result, = so = consequently لذلك	believe in = have a belief in يؤمن بـ
believe in = trust يثق بـ	ever since = continuously since منذ
15-year-old boy = a boy of 15 = a boy aged 15 = a boy who is 15 years old فتى عمره خمسة عشر عاما	have a positive impact on = have a positive influence on = have a positive effect on = affect ... positively له أثر إيجابي على
much to my surprise = I am very surprised مما يصيبني بدهشة كبيرة	result in = lead to = cause يؤدي إلى

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

7 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

break down	يتحلل - يتعطل	reinvent ... as	يعيد تأهيل ... كـ
end up as	ينتهي به الحال إلي	set up (phr. v)	يُنشئ - يُقيم
go out	يَخرُج	suffer from	يعاني من
grow up	يكبر	work ... out	يفهم - يستنتج

Mini Test 4 Expressions, Prepositions & Idioms

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. "I have a ten-year-old son." This means my son ..... .
   a. 10-year-old b. aged ten c. is a boy of ten d. ten years old
2. "Smoking will surely result in serious health problems." The phrasal verb 'results in' in this context is a synonym of ..... .
   a. happen b. cause c. lead to d. b & c
3. Being interested in politics and public interest all his life, he ..... a member of the parliament.
   a. ended up as b. resulted in c. led to d. resulted from
4. "Much to our surprise, she agreed to marry a man the age of her father." The expression "Much to our surprise" means that we are ..... surprised by her decision.
   a. not b. a bit c. very d. not very
5. Unlike wood, plastic products never ..... .
   a. suffer from b. break down c. go out d. burn
6. A/An .....-powered car runs on electricity generated from sunlight.
   a. oil b. petrol c. diesel d. solar
7. Sama worked hard all school year. ..... she came first.
   a. However, b. So, c. As a result, d. b & c
8. "Good company has a positive impact on us." This means good company affects us ..... .
   a. negative b. positive c. positively d. good
9. He was a professional teacher of English, however he has managed to reinvent himself ..... an engineer.
   a. as b. to c. in d. from
10. You pay ..... for a free drink.
    a. a little b. nothing c. much d. enough

8 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

entrepreneur - organisation man

• **entrepreneur (n)** رجل أعمال (شخص مجازف مبدع يأتي بأفكار جديدة وينفذها)
- The success of the company depends on entrepreneurs.

• **organisation man / woman (n)** شخص تنفيذي (مطيع وينفذ الأوامر والتكليفات فقط)
- The company is looking for an organisation man/woman.

employ - employer - employee - employment - unemployment - employable - employed

• **employ = give ... a job (v)** يُوظِّف / يُشغِّل
- The new company will employ about 3000 workers.
- The government employed some graduates to do surveys. يقوم بإجراء استطلاع

• **employer (n)** صاحب عمل (شخص / شركة / مؤسسة / حكومة)
- The sugar factory is the largest employer in Edfu.
- Ahmed works for a good employer. موظف / عامل

• **employee (n)**
- My father was a government employee. وظيفة / توظيف

• **employment (n)**
- My elder brother was offered employment in a car company. وظيفة
- Children employment is against the law. توظيف

• **unemployment (n)** البطالة
- The government tries hard to solve the problem of unemployment.

• **employable (adj)** مؤهَل للتوظيف ≠ **unemployable (adj)** غير مؤهَل للتوظيف
- Lifelong learning makes you more employable.
- If you stop improving your skills, you will be unemployable.

• **employed (adj)** مُوَظَّف / لديه وظيفة ≠ **unemployed (adj)** عاطل
- As he is employed and earns good money, he is planning to get married.
- The factory closed leaving 200 people unemployed.

result in/from

• **result in = lead to = cause (phr. v)** يؤدي إلى
- Doing exercise results in keeping fit.
= Doing exercise leads to keeping fit

• **result from = happen because of (phr. v)** يحدُث بسبب -يَنتُج عن

- Keeping fit results from doing exercise.
- Keeping fit happens because of doing exercise.

knowledge - wisdom

• **knowledge (n)** المَعرِفة (المعلومات والحقائق التي تعرفها والفهم الذي اكتسبته)

- My knowledge of English culture has increased.

• **wisdom (n)** الحِكمَة (حُسنُ الإدراك والحكم علي الأمور القائم علي المعرفة والخبرة)

- Common wisdom suggests that you do not believe all the news you read online.

Mini Test 5 Clear the Confusion

• **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. Success ..... hard work to a goal.
   a. results in b. leads to c. a & b d. results from
2. Hard work to a goal surely ..... success.
   a. results in b. leads to c. a & b d. results from
3. Don't expect him to decide. He is an ..... .
   a. organisational b. organisation man
   c. entrepreneurial d. entrepreneur
4. What an .....! He never stops taking business risk to make money.
   a. organisational b. organisation man
   c. entrepreneurial d. entrepreneur

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha.com

5. They work for a rich ..... .
   a. employee b. employment c. employer d. unemployment
6. ..... among young people is undoubtedly a serious economic and social problem.
   a. Employee b. Employment c. Employer d. Unemployment
7. I have been searching for a job for two months, but I am still ..... .
   a. employed b. unemployed c. employer d. employee

9 Master your Key Vocabulary كل ما يخص المفردات الرئيسية

common sense

• **common sense (n)** حُسْنُ إدراك - حُسْنُ تَمْيِيز - الذوق العام

- It's common sense to keep knives away from children.
- I hope that common sense will prevail.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- have common sense لديه حُسنُ إدراك أو تَصَرُّف
- show common sense يُبدي حُسنُ إدراك أو تَصَرُّف
- defy common sense ... يُسيئ التَصرُّف
- common sense tells you ... الذوق العام يفرض عليك
- common sense dictates ... الذوق العام يفرض
- common sense suggests that ... الذوق العام يتطلب أن

entrepreneur

• **entrepreneur (n)** رائد أعمال (شخص مجازف مبدع يأتي بأفكار اقتصادية جديدة وينفذها)

- He is a leading entrepreneur who has started seven companies.

• **entrepreneurship (n)** ريادة الأعمال/المجازفة الاقتصادية

- His entrepreneurship put him on top of leading businessmen in the country.

• **entrepreneurial (adj)** ريادي في الأعمال/مُجازِف اقتصادي

- His entrepreneurial skills put him on top of leading businessmen in the country.

• **know (v)** يعرف

- I know what you mean.

لاحظ أن الفعل **(know)** بمعني يعرف لا يُستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة:

- I am knowing the answer to this question. (✗)
- I know the answer to this question. (✓)

• **known** (صفة تأتي قبل الموصوف فقط) معروف ≠ **unknown** غير معروف

- This footballer is known. (✗)
- This is a known footballer. (✓)

• **... be known for** معروف بـ / يتميز بـ

- He is known for his kind heart.

• **... be known as** معروف كـ/مشهور بأنه

- He is known as a kind-hearted man.

• **... be known to** معروف لدي/مشهور عند

- Salah is known to football fans all over the world.

• **knowledge(of/about) (n)** المعرفة (بـ) (اسم غير معدود)

- He has got too much knowledge about football stars.

لاحظ أن:

- I learned knowledge. (✗)
- I gained knowledge. (✓)
- I acquired knowledge. (✓)

reinvent

• **reinvent (... as) (v)** يعيد تأهيل (... كـ) - يُشكِّل ... من جديد (كـ)

- She used to be a secretary. However, she reinvented herself as a teacher.
- I have reinvented my old flat as an office.

• **reinvent = reform (v)** يُصلِح

- There are plans to reinvent the current healthcare system.
- The president promised to reinvent Social Security.

• **reinvent the wheel** يُضيع وقته وجهده فيما لا يفيد (يخترع الذرة)

- It is no use reinventing the wheel.

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

تنويه : التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

• **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. Scientists have succeeded in the ..... of sunlight to generate electricity.
   a. procedure b. process c. employment d. experiment
2. When setting up new software, there's no need to ..... .
   a. find employment as b. reinvent the wheel
   c. reinvent yourself d. click on the set up extension
3. Keep it secret! ..... should tell you that people will find out sooner or later.
   a. Common sense b. Life-changing c. Career Direction d. Factors
4. This ..... .
   a. is a fact that is known b. is a fact which is known
   c. fact is known d. is a known fact

I ..... .

a. gained a knowledge
b. gained knowledge
c. acquired a knowledge
d. learned knowledge

	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
	c	الاسم (employment) هنا يعني (استغلال/استخدام)
	b	التعبير (reinvent the wheel) يعني (يضيع وقته فيما لا يفيد)
	a	التعبير (common sense) يعني (حُسنُ التصُّرف)
	d	الصفة (known) بمعني (معروف) في هذا السياق تُستخدم قبل الاسم فقط
	b	- الاسم (knowledge) غير معدود فلا يأخذ (a) قبله - لا يُستخدم الفعل (learn) قبل كلمة (knowledge)

Part III Reading & Listening

Tapescript
نصوص استماع الوحدة

Reading Texts

Nabila, 52 *(SB page 27)*



I've always loved writing stories, but I never thought that writing was something that I would get paid to do. In my twenties, I got married and had children, which kept me very busy. When my children grew up, I realised that I hadn't done any writing for years. I decided to take a creative(1) writing class(2) and a year later, at the age of 49, I won first prize in a short story competition(3).

Then I started writing my first novel and, much to my surprise(4), quickly found a company that wanted to publish(5) it. The whole experience has been life-changing(6) and I like to think that I can share some of the wisdom(7) I've gained(8) over my life through my books.

Check Vocabulary

(1) إبداعي
(2) دورة تدريبية
(3) مسابقة
(4) أصابني بالدهشة
(5) ينشر
(6) مُغيِّر للحياة
(7) الحكمة
(8) يكتسب

Amira, 39



A week after I left school, I started working in a bank and gained a good working knowledge(1) of banking(2) procedures(3). Although I enjoyed helping customers, I never felt that banking was the career for me.

I started thinking about what I really wanted to do and I realised it was teaching maths, so I decided to change direction(4) and go to university.

It was a huge(5) change in my life and I had to reinvent(6) myself several times, but after having completed my first year as a teacher, I don't regret(7) it at all.

Check Vocabulary

(1) المعرفة
(2) الأعمال المصرفية
(3) إجراء
(4) اتجاه
(5) هائل/ضخم
(6) يعيد تأهيل / يعيد بناء
(7) يندم

Sami, 28

Up until(1) I was sixteen, I didn't work very hard at school. My mum was always telling me to do my homework, but I just wanted to play football. Then a teacher told me that I can study sports science(2) at university and become a sports teacher or a football coach(3), both of which sounded like(4) perfect(5) jobs to me. After that, I tried a lot harder at school and I got into university to study sports science. Now I teach sports at a school and my contribution(6) to my students' lives is to inspire(7) them to enjoy sports. However, I use my life experience to show them that, even though(8) sport is amazing, you also need to work hard at school.

Check Vocabulary

(1) حتي/الغاية
(2) علوم الرياضة
(3) مُدرّب
(4) يبدو وكأنه
(5) مثالي
(6) مُساهَمَة
(7) يُلهِم
(8) مع أن

The young inventor(1)

(WB page 15)

Many people had a lot of time during the corona virus pandemic(2) of 2020 and 2021, but few of them had much time to invent something new!



Check Vocabulary

(1) المخترع الصغير
(2) جائحة

But that is what happened to Suntharalingam Piranawan, when he was unable[3] to go out[4] for many days because of the pandemic. The 15-year-old boy spent almost every day for eight months developing[5] a solar-powered[6] tuk-tuk. These are small vehicles[7] with three wheels[8] that some people use for transport[9] in Sri Lanka, where he is from.

Suntharalingam's family did not have any money to buy new parts for his tuk-tuk, so the boy's grandfather helped him to buy second hand[10] pieces of metal[11] from shops for little money. Now, the tuk-tuk works very well, using the energy[12] from the sun.

(3) غير قادر
(4) يخرج
(5) يُطوّر
(6) يعمل بالطاقة الشمسية
(7) مركبات
(8) عجلات
(9) مواصلات/النقل
(10) مُستعمَل
(11) المعدن
(12) الطاقة
(13) متوتر/مضغوط

The success of the tuk-tuk has not stopped Suntharalingam. Every day, Suntharalingam tries to think of new things that he can invent. He says that the work helps him not to feel stressed[13] about the corona virus or other problems. Next, he wants to build a solar-powered car, but this will need much more money. None of his family can help him with this, so he hopes the government will help him with his plans.

(WB page 15)

Fifty years ago, few people in the UK drank bottled water[1]. Some restaurants sold bottled water, but it was expensive. However, many public places had water fountains[2] where people could get a free drink if they were thirsty. Later, it became fashionable[3] for everyone to drink bottled water. Every shop and café sold bottled water for only a little money.

Check Vocabulary
(1) ... في زجاجات
(2) نافورات ماء
(3) ... على الموضة
(4) طحالب البحر

Some plastic water bottles could be recycled, but only a few of them were. As a result, many plastic water bottles ended up as pollution in the sea. Sadly, none of them will ever break down : they will stay in the sea forever. Fortunately, some new businesses are finding ways to replace some of our plastic water bottles. For example, you can now buy a water 'bubble' made of seaweed[4]. Although they are small, each bubble holds a little water and you can eat all of the seaweed !

2 Listening Texts

(SB page 28)

Interviewer : Welcome, Magdy El Geyoushi. You'll be talking about some interesting work you've been doing to help people reinvent(1) themselves by starting their own companies.

Magdy : That's right. I've been doing that for the last five years now.

Interviewer : Perhaps you could start by telling us how it all works.

Magdy : People have the option(2) of working with me and becoming an entrepreneur(3). Would be entrepreneurs contact me and we discuss their ideas. I give them as much advice as I can from my own experience and I often work with them to develop their ideas. Once their business is up and running(4), I still spend time talking to them every day.

Interviewer : What exactly is it that you enjoy doing which helps the people you work with to become successful entrepreneurs ?

Magdy : Well, one of the things I really enjoy about my job is that people come to me with such interesting and innovative(5) ideas and any of these ideas have the potential(6) to become a successful business. It's great to see people's enthusiasm(7). Some of these businesses have been really life-changing(8).

Interviewer : But I imagine that not every idea is going to work, is it ?

Magdy : That's true. There are always going to be a few people who think they've come up with(9) something brand new(10) and the idea has actually already been done or isn't going to work. Helping people to see possible problems with their ideas can be difficult. Sometimes you have to tell them that being an entrepreneur isn't right for them.

Check Vocabulary

(1) يعيد تأهيل - يصلح
(2) اختيار
(3) رائد أعمال
(4) قائم بالعمل/جاهز للعمل
(5) ابتكارى
(6) إمكانية - قدرة
(7) حماس
(8) يؤدى لتغيير جذرى فى الحياة
(9) يتوصل إلى - يبتكر
(10) جديد كليًا

Interviewer : Yes, of course. If there's little chance that the idea will succeed, you have to tell them that as soon as possible, don't you ?

Magdy : Sure, and what's difficult for me is that some great ideas don't succeed because the entrepreneur can't find enough money.

Interviewer : Are the people you work with unemployed(11) when you start working with them ?

Magdy : Sometimes, yes. But if people have worked in business before, that really helps them to start their own company. But this isn't the most important reason they succeed, it's usually how excited people are about the work they're doing and if they believe in it. People who have little passion(12) for their company tend(13) not to succeed.

(11) بدون عمل - عاطل
(12) شغف / ولع
(13) يميل إلى

Examples of life-changing experiences

(WB page 14)

In today's programme, we look at three people who experienced(1) interesting changes to their lives, and look at how these changes enable them to reinvent(2) themselves and become successful at the same time.

Let's start with Anna Mary Robertson Moses; also known as Grandma Moses. People have been buying her beautiful paintings(3) for years, but she almost did not become an artist(4) at all(5). She was born in New York in 1860 and worked on her husband's farm. In her spare time(6), she sewed(7) with her friends, often sewing pictures of farm life for fun(8). When she was 78, she had started to suffer from a disease which made it difficult for her to use her fingers to hold small things. So, she started painting instead. Her paintings showed farm life from her past and were so popular that they later sold(9) all over the world. She was still painting just before she died, aged 101.

Check Vocabulary

(1) يعايش - يمر بـ
(2) يعيد تأهيل
(3) لوحات
(4) فنان
(5) على الاطلاق
(6) وقت فراغ
(7) يُخيط - يحيك
(8) للمتعة
(9) يحقق مبيعات

Another amazing woman was Laura Ingalls Wilder. Born in 1867, Laura grew up in a remote(10) part of the USA. Her parents did not have much money, so Laura started to teach when she was just 15 to help the family earn some money. She later married, had children and worked on her husband's farm. Her daughter Rose became a journalist and encouraged her mother to reinvent herself as an author. She was not successful at first, but in 1932 her first book was published when she was 65. Children have enjoyed her Little House books ever since, and the television programme 'Little House on the Prairie' was also very successful.

(10) ناءٍ - بعيد جداً
(11) يجري أبحاث علي
(12) يُنشئ - يُقيم

Finally, you may not know Ivan Roitt but his work has been very important in helping to stop the disease cancer. Ivan was working at the university in London for 25 years when he thought about retiring. Then, a friend asked him if he would like to do research into(11) cancer at a different university. He then set up(12) a cancer research centre where he continues to work for two days a week although he is 87.

Part IV Language

تنويه

- نظراً لطول شرح هذه القاعدة قمنا بتقسيمها إلي أجزاء ووضعنا تدريبات شاملة علي كل جزء بعده مباشرة. وسنكتفي بعدد قليل من التدريبات العامة في نهاية الشرح

التعبيرات الكَمّية و العددية Quantifiers

1 all - all of كل

١ تُستخدم (all) كصفة قبل اسم لا يُعدّ ويأتي معها فعل مفرد:

- All Mona's money is at home.

٢ تُستخدم (all) كصفة قبل اسم مفرد يُعدّ وتُشير إلى المجموعة كوحدة واحدة ويأتي معها فعل مفرد:

- All the country is ready to face terrorism.

٣ تُستخدم (all / all of) مع اسم جمع ويأتي معها فعل جمع:

- All (of) my friends are helpful.

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

❶ يمكن أن تُستخدم (all / all of) قبل المحددات:

- All (of) those trees need to be watered at once.

❷ تُستخدم (all of) وليس (all) قبل الضمائر الشخصية بينما تستخدم (all) فقط بعد الضمائر الشخصية كما يلى :

all + ضمير شخصى (فاعل أو مفعول)	All of + ضمير مفعول
- Mr Omar advised them all.	- Mr Omar advised all of them.
= We all love Egypt.	- All of us love Egypt.
= I respect them all.	- I respect all of them.
= You all are clever.	- All of you are clever.
= The manager can't meet you all.	- The manager can't meet all of you.

❸ يمكن أن تُستخدم (all) كضمير ويأتى بعدها فعل مفرد أو جمع حسب الإسم الذى تشير إليه :

- There is no money on me. All has been spent.
- There are no employees in the office. All have left.

Mini Test 1 ○ Apply

✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. All my money ..... in the bank.
   a. is b. are c. have d. has
2. ..... students passed the exam.
   a. All b. All the c. All of the d. a, b & c
3. All people ..... homes to live in.
   a. needs b. need c. has needed d. is in need of
4. All of ..... are ready to help.
   a. me b. him c. them d. her
5. ..... must take part in the race.
   a. All you b. All of you c. You all d. b & c
6. He is ready to help ..... .
   a. all of us b. us all c. a & b d. we all

2 every - each

كل

١ تُستخدم (every /each) كصفة قبل إسم مفرد ويأتي بعدهما فعل مفرد:

- Each member of the team plays really well.
- Every car in the city causes some pollution.

---

٢ تشير (each) إلى اثنين أو أكثر، بينما تُشير (every) إلى ثلاثة أو أكثر:

- He carried a bag in each hand. (not every)
- She gave presents to every / each student in her class.

---

٣ يُمكن أن تُستخدم (each) فقط وليس (every) كضمير:

- She gives her two sons 100 pounds a day. Each gets fifty pounds.
(Not : every gets ....)

---

٤ يُمكن أن تُستخدم (every) فقط وليس (each) بعد الظروف:

- Nearly every student was examined. (not each)

---

٥ تُستخدم (each of) قبل اسم جمع ويأتي معها فعل مفرد (أو جمع فى اللغة العامية):

- Each of my parents was at the party.

---

٦ لابد أن تُستخدم المحددات بعد (each of) ولا يمكن حذف (of) في هذه الحالة:

- Each of my two brothers is successful doctors.
- Each of those women looks very poor.

---

٧ لاحظ أن:

- each + اسم أو ضمير جمع + فعل فى صيغة الجمع

- The boys each have a tablet computer.
- We each are very busy.

- every + عدد + اسم جمع

- In our company, we have a meeting every two weeks.

---

٨ لا يُستخدم حرف الجر (of) بعد (every) مباشرة:

- I have three sisters. Each of them is kind and helpful. (Not: Every of)

لاحظ كيفية استخدام (each / each of) مع الضمائر الشخصية فى الجدول التالى :

each of + ضمير مفعول	each + ضمير (فاعل / مفعول)
- Each of us went to bed early. - Mr Ayman likes each of them. - Each of them has important exams these days.	- We each went to bed early. - Mr Ayman likes them each. - They each have important exams these days.

Mini Test 2 ○ Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. ..... member of the group does their best.
   a. Each b. Every c. a & b d. All
2. ..... members of the group do their best.
   a. Each b. Every c. a & b d. All
3. People have five toes in ..... leg.
   a. each b. every c. a & b d. both
4. People have ten toes in ..... legs.
   a. each b. every c. a & b d. both
5. El-Moasser plays an important role in almost ..... student's education.
   a. each b. every c. a & b d. all
6. El-Moasser plays an important role in almost ..... students' education.
   a. each b. every c. a & b d. all
7. Each of my two sons ..... good at maths.
   a. is b. are c. do d. does
8. My two sons each ..... good at maths.
   a. is b. are c. do d. does
9. They ..... have mobile phones.
   a. both of b. all of c. each d. every
10. ..... of them needs urgent help.
    a. Each b. Every c. All d. Both

③ a lot of/lots of - many - much

a lot of / lots of

الكثير من

تُستَخدَم (a lot of/lots of) في الإثبات قبل اسم جمع أو اسم غير معدود:

a lot of / lots of كثير من + **plural** اسم جمع / **uncountable** اسم لا يُعد

- I have a lot / lots of tasks to do.
- He bought a lot / lots of bread.

Using (many/much) as pronouns

استخدام (many/much) كضمائر

١ تُستَخدَم (many) كضمير يعود على اسم معدود (مفرد/جمع):

- I don't need a pen. I have many in my pencil case. (= many pens)
- I have a lot of friends on Facebook, but my brother doesn't have many. (= many friends)

---

٢ عند استخدام (many) كضمير فاعل فإن الفعل بعدها يكون دائماً في صيغة الجمع:

- Don't buy more apples. Many are in the kitchen.

---

٣ تُستَخدَم (much) كضمير يعود على اسم غير معدود:

- Don't offer me more food. I have already eaten much. (= much food)
- Amir has enough time before exams, but I don't have much. (= much time)

---

٤ يُمكِن استخدام صيغتي المقارنة والتفضيل (more/most) أيضاً كضمائر:

- I have a lot of friends on Facebook, but my brother has more. (= more friends)
- Amir has enough time before exams, but I have more. (= more time)

Using (many/much) as adjectives

استخدام (many/much) كصفات

١ تُستخدم (many) كصفة بمعني (كثير من) قبل اسم جمع في الجمل المنفية:

many + اسم جمع

- I don't have many friends at my new school.
- Rodayna doesn't have many tasks to do today.

١ تُستخدم (much) كصفة بمعني (كثير من) قبل اسم غير معدود في الجمل المنفية:

much + اسم غير معدود

- We didn't have much time before the exams.
- Omar hasn't got much money left.

٢ الصفتان (many/much) لهما نفس صفة المقارنة (more) ونفس صفة التفضيل (most):

Adjective الصفة	Comparative صفة المقارنة	Superlative صفة التفضيل
many (كثير(العدد	more أكثر	most الأكثر
much (كثير(الكمية	more أكثر	most الأكثر

- I have got so many friends. Ayman has more friends than me, but Ashraf has the most friends.
- Sama adds so much sugar to her juice. Leen adds more sugar than Sama, but Rokaya adds the most sugar.

Using (many/much) in questions استخدام (many/much) في الأسئلة

١ تُستخدَم (many) قبل اسم جمع في الأسئلة التي تبدأ بـ (How):

- How many books have you got?

٢ تُستخدَم (much) قبل اسم غير معدود في الأسئلة التي تبدأ بـ (How):

- How much salt did you add to the soup?

٣ في الأسئلة التي لا تبدأ بـ (how) يمكن استخدام (many/much/ a lot of)

- Do you have much money? (✓)
- Do you have a lot of money? (✓)
- Are there many visitors today? (✓)
- Are there a lot of visitors today? (✓)

Using (many/much) in affirmatives استخدام (many/much) في الجمل المُثبَتة

يُمكن أن تُستخدم كل من (many- much) في الجملة المُثبتة في الحالات التالية:

أ. إذا جاء قبل أيّ منهما ما يلي:

so - very - as - too + much

- I have so much homework to do.
- There's too much water on the floor.

so - as - too - a good - a great + many

- There are too many guests in the party.
- Aya has so many jobs to do.

ب.إذا كانت أي منهما تصف فاعل الجملة:

- Many applicants have sent their CVs. (= A lot of applicants ...)
- Much electricity is used to heat water. (= A lot of electricity ...)

جـ.إذا كانت أي منهما ضمير فاعل:

- Some members didn't support me, but many voted for me. (= many members ...)
- We need to save water. Much is wasted unnecessarily. (= Much water ...)

Mini Test 3 Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. My father has a lot of ..... .
   a. friend b. friends c. friendship d. b & c
2. My father has a lot of ..... .
   a. friend b. friends c. friendships d. b & c
3. There's ..... water on the floor.
   a. a lot of b. much c. many d. a few
4. There's too ..... water on the floor.
   a. a lot of b. much c. many d. a few
5. There're ..... drops of water on the windscreen.
   a. a lot of b. much c. a few d. a & c
6. There're so ..... drops of water on the windscreen.
   a. a lot of b. much c. many d. a few
7. I have a lot of friends. ..... are in my school.
   a. A lot of b. Many c. None d. b & c
8. The Egyptians use a lot of water from the Nile. ..... is used in farming.
   a. Many b. Much c. A few d. A lot of

9. The Egyptians use a lot of water from the Nile. ..... it is used in farming.
a. Many b. Much c. A few d. A lot of

10. Although some people have voted against the new law, many still ..... it.
a. support b. supports c. has supported d. b & c

11. He earns a lot of money, much of which ..... spent on his children's education.
a. has b. have c. is d. are

12. Many people have taken the coronavirus vaccine; more ..... still waiting for their turn.
a. is b. are c. have d. has

13. The government spends a lot of money on the coronavirus vaccine; much ..... spent on buying the vaccine itself.
a. is b. are c. have d. has

14. How ..... bread have you bought?
a. a few b. a little c. many d. much

15. How ..... loaves of bread have you bought?
a. a few b. a little c. many d. much

16. Have you got ..... knowledge in this field?
a. many b. much c. a lot d. b & c

17. Have you got ..... pieces of knowledge in this field?
a. many b. much c. lots d. a & c

18. ..... students want to join the faculty of medicine.
a. A lot of b. Many c. a & b d. Much

19. ..... work should be done before I can leave the office.
a. A lot b. Many c. a & b d. Much

4 a little, little, a few, few

a little, little, a few & few as adverbs

(a little, little, a few, few) استخدام كضمائر

1 تُستخدم كل من (a little/ little) كضمير بمعني (كمية قليلة) يعود على اسم غير معلود:

- A: Would you like some orange juice?
B: A little, please. (= A little orange juice)

❷ تُستخدم كل من (a few/ few) كضمير بمعني (عدد قليل) يعود على اسم جمع:

- I invited all my friends to my birthday, but only a few attended it.
(=A few friends)

a little, little, a few & few + noun

استخدام (a little, little, a few, few) كصفات (أي قبل اسم)

❶ تُستخدم كل من (a little/ little) كصفة بمعني (قليل الكمية) قبل اسم غير معدود:

a little/little + اسم غير معدود

- We have a little time before the match starts.

❷ تُستخدم كل من (a few/ few) كصفة بمعني (قليل العدد) قبل اسم جمع:

a few / few + اسم جمع

- I have met a few friends today.

❸ تُستخدم (a little) كصفة بمعني (صغير) قبل اسم مفرد معدود:

a little + اسم مفرد معدود

- I have a little child called Sama.

❹ تُستخدم (little) كصفة بمعني (صغير) قبل اسم جمع:

little + اسم جمع

- I let Sama play with other little girls.

Using a little & a few

استخدام (a little, a few)

❶ تُستخدم كل من (a few/ a little) بمعني (عدد قليل/كمية قليلة) من وجهة نظر المتكلم:

a few/ a little

- A few of my cousins have tablets.
- I take a little sugar in my tea.

❷ تُستخدم (only) قبل كل من (a few/ a little) للتأكيد على أن (العدد قليل/الكمية قليلة) من وجهة نظر المتكلم:

only + a few/ a little

- Only a few of my cousins have tablets.
- I take only a little sugar in my teas

● نُستخدم (quite) قبل كل من (a few/ a little) للتأكيد على أن (العدد قليل/الكمية قليلة) بدرجة ليست كبيرة:

quite + a few/ a little

- Quite a few of my cousins have tablets.
- I take quite a little sugar in my tea.

Using little & few (little, few) استخدام

● نُستخدم كل من (few/ little) بدون (a) للدلالة على النُدرة أو النقص (عدم الكفاية) وتُعطي معني يقترب من النفي:

- There is little time for discussion.
- Little is known about coronavirus.
- Few countries in the third world have enough food for their citizens.
- I asked all my friends for help. Sadly, few gave a positive reply.

● لاحظ أن:

- فعل مُثبَت + little/few = فعل مُثبَت + hardly any = فعل منفي + much/many

- I have little money left.
  = I have hardly any money left. = I don't have much money left.
- I have received few calls today.
  = I have received hardly any calls today.
  = I haven't received many calls today.

● تذكَّر أن:

so - very - as - too ... + little

- I have so little work to do. (Not: so a little)
- She has put too little salt in the soup. (Not: too a little)

so - as - too - very ... + few

- I saw too few people in the street. (Not: too a few)
- He has so few friends on Facebook. (Not: so a few)

Using (a little) as an adverb استخدام (a little) كظرف

أ. تُستخدم (a little) كظرف في الحالات التالية: مع الأفعال:

- He walked a little by himself by the river.
- Little is known about coronavirus.

ب. مع الصفات والظروف التي تعطي معني سلبي مثل:

... بتعجُّل impatiently - مضغوط stressed - منزعج annoyed - متوتر anxious

- I was a little annoyed when my team lost the match. (= rather annoyed)
- She talks a little loudly. (= rather loudly)

ج. مع صفات وظروف المقارنة وتعطى نفس معنى (a bit):

- The black horse runs a little faster than the brown one.
- Sama is a little taller than me.

Using (little) as an adverb

استخدام (little) كظرف

تُستخدم (little) كظرف في الحالات التالية:

أ. قبل (better/more) في اللغة الرسمية:

- He was little more than a teenager when he got married. (= not much)
- Your opinion is little better than mine. (= not much)

ب. قبل بعض الأفعال مثل:

... يشك في know - think - believe - hope - expect - suspect

- The police little suspect him for the crime.
- I little expected to find a job that fast. بهذه السرعة

ج. قبل الصفتين:

... قليل الاستخدام little-used - غير مشهور little-known

- He is no longer a little-known player.

Mini Test 4 Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I had ..... orange juice.
   a. a little b. little c. a few d. a & b
2. I had ..... drops of orange juice.
   a. a little b. little c. a few d. a & b
3. Ahmed has a few ..... .
   a. friends b. time c. a & b d. son
4. Ahmed has a little ..... for reading.
   a. friends b. time c. a & b d. son
5. Ahmed has a little ..... of four.
   a. friends b. time c. a & b d. son

6. Ahmed has little ..... of his own age.
a. friends b. time c. a & b d. son

7. I add ..... salt to my soup. Most people wouldn't like it.
a. a little b. little c. few d. a & b

8. I add ..... salt to my soup, just enough to make it tasty.
a. a little b. little c. much d. a lot of

9. Mr Ayman wrote down ..... a few notes; nothing very important.
a. quite b. only c. too d. so

10. Mr Ayman has got ..... a little time; just enough to do the job in hand.
a. quite b. only c. too d. so

11. I have ..... money left. I can't buy the underground ticket.
a. a little b. little c. a few d. few

12. I have ..... pounds left. I can't buy the underground ticket.
a. a little b. little c. a few d. few

13. Mum has so ..... work to do before she goes to bed.
a. little b. few c. a & b d. a little

14. How ..... people attended the rich man's funeral ! I wonder where his so-called friends were.
a. many b. much c. few d. a few

15. My uncle has very few ..... on the farm.
a. soil b. cattle c. water d. animal

16. I have trained ..... today.
a. few b. a few c. little d. a little

17. ..... was said at the press conference. المؤتمر الصحفي
a. Little b. Few c. A few d. Many

18. I was ..... annoyed by what she had said.
a. a few b. few c. a little d. little

19. We ..... expected her to win the gold.
a. a little b. little c. a few d. few

20. Well-known is antonymous with .....-known.
a. good b. a little c. little d. few

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

5 Some - any

Using (some/any) as pronouns استخدام (some/any) كضمائر

١ تُستَخدَم (some/any) كضمير يعود على اسم معدود جمع أو اسم غير معدود:

- I don't need any pens. I have some in my pencil case. (= some pens)
- I have a lot of friends, but my brother doesn't have any. (= any friends)
- I am going to drink tea. Would you like some?

٢ عند استخدام (some/any) كضمير فاعل فإن الفعل بعدها يكون في صيغة المفرد أو الجمع حسب الاسم الذي تشير إليه:

- I have invited all my friends; some haven't arrived yet.
- I have got a lot of information; some is about marine life.

Some بعض (as an adjective)

١ تُستَخدَم (some) كصفة قبل اسم جمع أو اسم غير معدود غالباً في الجمل الخبرية المُثبتة:

- some بعض + plural اسم جمع / Uncountable noun اسم غير معدود

- I have some jobs to do.(+ Plural)
- I have some work to do.(+ uncountable)

٢ يُمكن أن تُستَخدَم (some) كصفة قبل اسم جمع أو اسم غير معدود فى الأسئلة التي يكون الغرض منها العرض أو الطلب:

- Would you like some sandwiches and some juice? (عَرْض)
- Can you give me some paper and some pens? (طلب)

any أيّ (as an adjective)

١ تُستَخدَم (any) كصفة قبل اسم جمع أو اسم غير معدود غالباً في الجمل المنفية أو الاستفهامية:

- any أيّ + plural اسم جمع / Uncountable noun اسم غير معدود

- I don't have any jobs to do. (نفي)
- Do you have any work to do? (استفهام)

٢ تُستخدم (any) قبل اسم جمع أو اسم لا يُعد بعد بعض التراكيب مثل:

- hardly /scarcely/barely... any = almost no
- There is hardly any milk left. = There's almost no milk left.
- any ... at all= almost no
- I don't have any money at all. = I almost have no money.

- **without any ... = with no ...**
- I drink tea without any sugar. = I drink tea without no sugar.
- **if ... any / whether ... any** (للتعبير عن الشك أو عدم التأكد)
- If you need anything, call me.
- I want to know whether you have said anything about our plan to anybody.

some / any + singular noun

يمكن أن تُستخدَم (some) كصفة قبل اسم مفرد معدود بمعني (ما) لتشير الي شخص أو شيء غير محدد أو غير معروف للمتحدث:

- **some** بعض + **singular noun** اسم مفرد معدود

- Some child broke the shop window and ran away. (بعض ما ....)
- I went to the library to find some dictionary I can use. (بعض ما ....)

يمكن أن تُستخدَم (any) كصفة قبل اسم مفرد معدود بمعني (أيّ) لتشير الي شخص أو شيء غير محدد أو غير معروف للمتحدث:

- **any** أي + **singular noun** اسم مفرد معدود

- Do you have any friend you can depend on?
- Any child breaking the law will be punished.

some of/ any of

يُمكِن أن تُستخدم (some/any + of) قبل أداة التعريف (the) وصفات الإشارة وصفات الملكية وضمائر المفعول:

Some / any of +

the
- Some of the students are absent.
- I haven't found any of the keys.

this / that / these / those
- Some of these dishes are healthy food.
- I haven't eaten any of this pasta.

my / his / her / its / your / our / their
- Any of my cousins won't do that.
- He has visited some of his relatives.

it / you / us / them
- Some of them are ready to help.
- I haven't called any of you.

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

Mini Test 5 — Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Leen wanted to buy ..... notebooks.
   a. some b. much c. any d. every
2. Leen didn't want to buy ..... notebooks.
   a. some b. much c. any d. no
3. Leen didn't want to buy notebooks because she had already had ..... .
   a. some b. much c. any d. no
4. Leen wanted to buy notebooks because she didn't have ..... .
   a. some b. much c. any d. no
5. Leen bought ..... notebooks because she had already had some .
   a. many b. much c. any d. no
6. There's a lot of juice in the fridge. I'll get you ..... .
   a. many b. some c. any d. much
7. There's a lot of juice in the fridge. Would you like ..... ?
   a. many b. some c. any d. much
8. There's no more juice in the fridge. I can't get you ..... .
   a. many b. some c. any d. much
9. Most of my friends are here in the wedding hall, but some ..... apologized for different reasons.
   a. are b. is c. has d. have
10. Most of the information you need is available, but some ..... still being collected.
    a. are b. is c. has d. have
11. Some ..... cries next door. I wonder if his or her parents are out.
    a. a child b. children c. child d. b & c
12. Any ..... that has a problem with their tablet can consult Mr Mohammed Omar or Mr Sobhi.
    a. student b. a student c. students d. a & c
13. My students have sent me some great ..... taken during the school trip.
    a. a photo b. photos c. photo d. b & c
14. Do you mind lending me ..... money?
    a. any b. some c. many d. few

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

15. Sorry! I can't lend you ..... money.
a. any b. some c. many d. few

16. She ..... has no time for hobbies.
a. barely b. doesn't c. not d. almost

17. She ..... has any time for hobbies.
a. barely b. doesn't c. not d. almost

18. She ..... have any time for hobbies.
a. barely b. doesn't c. not d. almost

19. I drink tea without ..... sugar.
a. no b. some c. any d. a & b

20. I drink tea with ..... sugar. I am diabetic.
a. no b. some c. any d. a & b

21. I drink tea with only ..... sugar. I don't like it too sweet.
a. no b. some c. any d. a & b

22. I drink tea with ..... sugar.
a. no b. some c. any d. a & b

23. You can call me at any time if ..... goes wrong
a. anything b. any c. some d. nothing

24. Mai doesn't have ..... time at all.
a. much b. some c. any d. a lot of

25. ..... the boys in my class are toppers.
a. Some b. Some of c. Any d. None

26. These are your close friends. Some of ..... can help you.
a. they b. theirs c. their d. them

6 No - None - No one

No

● تُستخدم (no) مباشرة قبل اسم غير معدود أو اسم جمع:

- I have no time for hobbies. (no + uncountable noun)
- She has no friends at her new school. (no + plural noun)

● يمكن أن تُستخدم (no) مباشرة قبل اسم مفرد معدود بدون (a/an) عندما يكون المفرد هو الأنسب:

- I have no wife. (It is common that a man has one wife)
- Hossam has no car. (A person is expected to have one car)

- I have no idea where Ahmed is. (The place where Ahmed is represents one idea)
- No swimmer has broken this record before. (Swimming is an individual sport)

لاحظ أن:

no + فعل مثبت = any + فعل منفي

- He hasn't got any friends. = He has got no friends.

no + فعل مثبت = a / an + فعل منفي

- I am not a teacher. = I am no teacher.

None

١ كلمة **(none)** هي الضمير من **(no)** وتعني **(not one - not any)** أي (لا أحد من) أو (لا شيء من) وهي تعود على اسم معدود أو اسم غير معدود:

- I waited for my friends, but none arrived. (none of my friends)
- Sama has one sister, but Ali has none. (no sisters)
- I searched my pockets for money, but there was none. (no money)

لاحظ أن **(none)** لا تحل محل ولا تستخدم مثل **(no one - nobody)** فى حالات مثل :

- There was a terrible accident, however no one was injured. (Not: none was)
- This old man looks very poor and weak, but nobody has offered to help. (Not: none have)

٢ عندما يكون الضمير **(none)** فاعل الجملة نستخدم بعده فعل مفرد أو جمع حسب الاسم الذي يشير إليه:

- I looked for milk in the fridge. None was there.
- Don't depend on false friends. None help in need. (Not: helps)

٣ لاحظ استخدام **(none of)** قبل أداة التعريف **(the)** وصفات الإشارة وصفات الملكية وضمائر المفعول:

none of +

- **the**
  - None of the students in my school is impolite.
- **this / that / these / those ...**
  - None of these dishes is healthy food.
- **my / his / her / its / your / our / their**
  - None of my uncles works in a bank.
- **it / you / us / them**
  - They work hard. None of them is lazy.

● تُستخدم (any) وليس (none) إذا كانت الجملة منفية بالفعل بـ (not - n't):

- I didn't see any of them. (Not: none of them)

● عند الإشارة إلى شخصين أو شيئين نستخدم (neither of) وليس (none of):

- Rodayna and Malak were busy studying their lessons. Neither of them talked to the other. (Not: None of them)

● في اللغة الرسمية يتم استخدام فعل مفرد بعد (none of):

- None of the boys has arrived yet. (Not: ... have arrived)
- None of the little girls helps with the housework. (Not: ... help with ...)

● في اللغة الدارجة يتم استخدام فعل جمع أو مفرد بعد (none of):

- None of the boys have arrived yet. (Or: ... has arrived)
- None of the little girls help with the housework. (Or: ... helps with ...)

ملاحظة: في الامتحانات الرسمية يُعتد بقواعد اللغة الرسمية وليس الدارجة:

- None of the children ..... awake when you called.

a. was b. is c. were d. are

● لا تُستخدم (none) قبل الاسم مباشرة:

- I saw none children in the park. (✗)
- I saw none of the children in the park. (✓)
- I saw no children in the park. (✓)

No one

● يُستخدم الضمير (no one) بمعني (لا أحد) كفاعل او مفعول:

- No one has called me today.
- I found no one at home when I arrived.

● يُستخدم فعل مفرد بعد (no one) ويعود عليه ضمير جمع (they/them/their):

- No one is at home. Where have they gone?
- No one has supported her. She won't trust them anymore.
- No one is to use their personal network. The school network is open.

Mini Test 6 ● Apply

✪ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. I have ..... food ready for the baby.

a. no b. none c. no one d. a & c

2. There're no ..... in the school playground.
a. student b. a student c. students' d. students

3. I ate ..... rice.
a. not b. no c. none d. any

4. I didn't eat ..... rice.
a. not b. no c. none d. any

5. He lost his left arm in the accident. Now, he has no left ..... .
a. an arm b. arms c. arm d. the arm

6. I called three of my cousins, but ..... replied.
a. no b. none c. anyone d. not

7. Sama offered me different cold drinks, but I didn't like ..... .
a. any b. no c. not d. none

8. Sama offered me different cold drinks, but I liked ..... .
a. any b. no c. not d. none

9. The meeting was held, but ..... from our company attended it.
a. no b. none c. no one d. not any

10. The meeting was held, but ..... of us attended it.
a. no b. none c. no one d. any

11. No one in our family ..... the last decision.
a. have supported b. are supporting c. support d. supports

12. Thirty students are taking the exam right now. I expect none of them ..... going to get the full mark.
a. is b. have c. was d. were

13. Are those your close friends? None ..... agreed to help you!
a. has b. have c. is d. are

14. Haven't you said that the food is enough? None ..... left and your sister hasn't eaten anything.!
a. has b. have c. is d. are

15. None of ..... was asleep.
a. a passenger b. passenger c. passengers d. the passengers

16. None of ..... neighbours is noisy or nosy.
a. our b. ours c. us d. we

17. My friends were in a difficult situation. None of ..... was in a good mood.
a. they b. them c. their d. theirs

18. I can't give you ..... more time.
a. no b. none c. any d. no one

19. Rokaya and Leen are both busy. ..... of them will be able to help.
a. Not b. Any c. None d. Neither

20. ..... in our family will support that evil person.
a. No one b. None c. No d. Neither

21. No one has come to check ..... homework yet.
a. his b. her c. their d. its

General Exercise On Language Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting Started

1. He is very sad because ..... his money has been lost.
a. neither b. all c. each d. every

2. In exams, ... student is given a question paper.
a. every b. all c. a few d. each of

3. I have hardly..... money left; I spent all of it on clothes.
a. no b. some c. any d. many

4. I have read ..... of your ideas and I like them all.
a. none b. some c. any d. much

5. ..... young people prefer to work in nearby places to their homes.
a. A lot of b. Lots c. A lot d. Every

6. ..... of the students failed; all of them passed.
a. Each b. None c. Every d. All

7. I'm so sorry, I don't have ..... time to help you.
a. some b. a lot c. many d. any

8. There isn't ..... work to do today, so I can go out with you.
a. much b. a little c. many d. some

9. We have ..... of petrol in the car, so it is enough to reach our destination.
a. a little b. lot c. plenty d. many

10. A ..... workers gathered outside the company to complain about the mistreatment of the manager. *(LM)*
a. many b. lots c. lot d. lot of

11. The majority of students got ready for the final exam, but ..... them lagged behind as they didn't revise well. *(LM)*
a. a few b. a lot c. a few of d. lots

12. ..... students wear their school uniform.
a. None b. All c. All of d. b & c

13. ..... the students wear their school uniform.
a. None b. All c. All of d. b & c

14. ..... Egyptian citizens have roles in society.
a. All b. Both c. Half an d. Every

15. ..... Egyptian citizen has a role in society.
a. All b. Both c. Half an d. Every

16. My school is ..... kilometers from my house.
a. a little b. a few c. none of d. any

17. ..... of the houses was slightly different.
a. Every b. A little c. Some d. Each

18. ..... of the houses were slightly different.
a. Every b. A little c. Some d. Each

19. ..... you have to help me with the housework.
a. Some b. Some of c. A few d. None

20. ..... you has to help me with the housework.
a. Some b. Some of c. A few of d. None of

21. ..... your books are on the desk.
a. Each b. Each of c. No d. All

22. ..... your books is on the desk.
a. Each b. Each of c. No d. All

23. ..... books are on the desk.
a. Each b. Each of c. No d. None of

24. We ..... need to work hard.
a. every b. all of c. all d. neither

25. No member of my family ..... ever travelled abroad.
a. were b. haven't c. has d. hasn't

26. ..... want to go home right now.
a. Them both b. They each c. Both of they d. Both they

27. Don't forget to feed the children. Make sure you have fed .....
a. all them b. all of them c. all they d. them of all

2 Special Cases

28. Take care! The little child carried a glass bottle in ..... hand.
a. neither b. all c. every d. each

29. **Ahmed :** Have you bought much bread ?
Yasser : No, I bought only .....
a. few b. a few c. a little d. any

30. We need to book a bigger hall; this one can hold ..... guests only.
a. a few b. a lot of c. many d. no

31. There is ..... equipment in the new office, so we need to buy some more.
a. many b. few c. little d. much

32. Would you like to have ..... fresh fruit juice?- Yes, only ..... please?
a. some / a few b. some / a little
c. many / a little d. much / little

33. I have almost ..... sugar in the apartment. I need to buy .....
a. much / some b. no / some c. many / a little d. any / some

34. There is ..... meat left; we only have enough for three, and we've invited 12 people!
a. little b. a little c. more d. much

35. I have no money left. ..... the money I had was lent to my friend Kamal.
a. All b. A few of c. None of d. A little

36. ..... of my parents is at home today because they are at work.
a. Neither b. None c. Either d. All

37. We had to stand on the bus because ..... seat was taken.
a. all b. both c. either d. every

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

38. We had to stand on the bus because ..... seats were taken.
a. all b. both c. either d. every

39. Maysa has asked Mona and me to the park this afternoon, but ..... of us can go. We are shopping.
a. both b. none c. neither d. all

40. Maysa has asked Mona, Mai and me to the park this afternoon, but ..... of us can go. We are shopping.
a. both b. none c. neither d. all

41. Not all the secretaries in this office ..... hard.
a. work b. works c. doesn't work d. hasn't worked

42. None of my brothers ..... at home.
a. had b. weren't c. was d. wasn't

43. ..... student wears their school uniform.
a. Both b. All c. Each d. All of

44. Neither of ..... has broken the window with the ball.
a. a boy b. the boy c. the boys d. one boy

45. Neither of the two girls ..... swim. They have never tried it.
a. don't b. doesn't c. can't d. can

46. ..... charger worked, so I had to use my sister's charger.
a. Both b. No c. Either d. All

47. Two of my cousins visited us today. ..... had a nice time.
a. They each b. Each they c. They every d. Every they

48. Every ..... in this class has received his or her books.
a. a student b. the student c. student d. students

49. ..... of the twenty applicants for the job has studied abroad.
a. Every b. Either c. Both d. Each

3 Check your understanding

50. Which of the following is structurally correct? (LM)
a. All your answers is wrong.
b. Not of your answers are wrong.
c. A lot your answers are not correct.
d. You haven't given any correct answers.

51. Which of the following is structurally correct? (1 M)
a. I need little sugar so as not to put on many weight.
b. I need a little sugar so as not to put on more weight.
c. I don't want a lot sugar so as not to put on more weight.
d. I don't want lots sugar so as not to put on weight.

52. "They're very young children." This means they are ..... .
a. adults
b. a little children
c. a little child
d. little children

53. "I have a little money on me." This means .....
a. I have no money on me.
b. I don't have much money on me.
c. I don't have any money on me.
d. I have a lot of money on me.

54. "She has got few pounds." This means ..... .
a. she has got no pounds
b. she has got hardly any pounds
c. she hasn't got many pounds
d. b & c

55. "He is carrying two bags, ...". Complete with the correct form.
a. one bag in every hand
b. one bag in each hand
c. one bag in both hands
d. one bag in half hands

56. "Every one of us loves Egypt". What does this mean?
a. All of we love Egypt.
b. All we love Egypt.
c. None of us hates Egypt.
d. Egypt loves all of us.

57. "Each of the two cars has different advantages". This means .....
a. every of the two cars has different advantages.
b. the two cars each have different advantages.
c. the two cars each has different advantages.
d. the two cars either have different advantages.

58. "All students have mobile phones". I want to say that .....
a. every student has a mobile phone.
b. each student has a mobile phone.
c. all students have a mobile phone.
d. a & b

Advanced Exercise on Language

تنويه : التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Ahmed has little ..... .
   a. friends b. time c. a & b d. son
2. ..... them speaks some English, but my mother is the best!
   a. Each of b. Every c. Neither d. Every of
3. Mum has so ..... jobs to do before she goes to bed.
   a. little b. few c. a & b d. a little
4. ..... my parents has a good job.
   a. Every of b. Each of c. All of d. Both of
5. I don't want ..... money! I want a lot.
   a. much b. many c. some d. any
6. Sama likes ..... the photos.
   a. no b. none c. none of d. neither

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	c	- الاختيار (a) صحيح لأنه يمكن استخدام (little) بمعني (صغير) قبل اسم معدود جمع - الاختيار (b) صحيح لأنه يمكن استخدام (little) بمعني (قليل) قبل اسم غير معدود - الاختيار (d) غير صحيح لأنه لا يمكن استخدام (little) بمعني (صغير) قبل اسم معدود مفرد
2.	a	- قبل ضمير المفعول (them) لابد من استخدام (of) وهي تأتي بعد (each) فقط وليس (every)، كما أن (Neither) لا تتوافق مع المعني
3.	c	- الاختيار (a) صحيح لأنه يمكن استخدام (little) بمعني (صغير) قبل اسم معدود جمع - الاختيار (b) صحيح لأنه يمكن استخدام (few) بمعني (قليل) قبل اسم معدود جمع - الاختيار (d) غير صحيح لأنه لا يمكن استخدام (a little) بمعني (قليل) قبل اسم معدود جمع
4.	b	- الفعل المفرد (has) يستلزم استخدام (each/every) ولا يمكن استخدام (of) بعد (every) في هذا السياق
5.	c	- برغم أن الجملة منفية، إلّا أن السياق يفرض استخدام (some) لأن المتحدث يريد (a lot of money) وليس (any money)
6.	c	- قبل أداة التعريف (the) لا يمكن استخدام تعبيرات الكمية بدون (of)

LESSONS 3 & 4

SB pages 30 & 31 WB pages 16 & 17



Part I Vocabulary

تنويه
- اختبر مدى اتقانك للمفردات الرئيسية فى كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.
- المفردات اللغوية باللون الأحمر هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية.

Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

adventure(n)	مغامرة	manage (d)(v)	يتحكم فى - يدير
argument (n)	تبرير/حُجَّة - جدال	mentally(adv)	عقليا/ذهنيا
builder(n)	عامل بناء	motivation(n)	دافع - حافز
care(d) (v/n)	يرعي - رعاية	necessarily(adv)	بالضرورة
celebrate(d) (v)	يحتفل بـ	optimistic(adj)	متفائل - تفاؤلي
challenge(n)	تَحَدِّي	passionate(adj)	ولوع - مُوْلَع
conclude(d) (v)	يستنتج - يَخْلُص إلي	physical(adj)	بدني/جسدي
consider(ed) (v)	يضع في الاعتبار - يفكر في	physically(adv)	بدنيا
contact(ed) (n/v)	تواصل/اتصال - يتصل بـ	pointless(adj)	لا طائل منه
debate(n)	مناظرة - نقاش	refreshing(adj)	مُنعش - مُبشِّر
elderly(adj)	كبير السن	rely(ied) (v)	يعتمد
exception(n)	استثناء	remain(ed) (v)	يبقي/يظل
exceptional(adj)	إستثنائى	respect(ed) (n/v)	احترام - يحترم
further(adj)	إضافي/آخر/أبعد	retire(d) (v)	يتقاعد - يعتزل
generation(n)	جيل	solution(n)	حل
grandchildren(n)	أحفاد	struggle (d)(v)	يكافح - يناضل
grandparents(n)	أجداد	tough(adj)	صارم - شديد - عصيب
ignore(d) (v)	يتجاهل	translate as	تُرجم إلي
introduce(d) (v)	يُصدِر - يُقدِّم	typical (adj)	نَمطِيّ - نَمُوذَجِيّ
lead - led (v)	يقود - يحيا - يؤدي	videocall (ed)(v)	يجرى مكالمة فيديو

Exercise On Vocabulary • Understand

• ✪ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. My neighbour is very old and likes to help young people. I don't think he is typical of most people of his age. "Typical" could be the opposite of the meaning of ".....".

a. common b. familiar c. weak d. exceptional

2. After retirement, a lot of old people like to spend their time on hobbies that they are ..... about in order to enjoy their lives. *(I.M)*
a. worried b. passionate c. angry d. keen

3. A child doesn't like it when you ..... their requests.
a. ignore b. consider c. celebrate d. retire

4. Your ..... are your father's or mother's parents.
a. grandchildren b. grandparents c. debate d. argument

5. Most young people are ..... about football. They're crazy about it.
a. typical b. tough c. pointless d. passionate

6. All students must wear the school uniform. You are no ..... .
a. motivation b. generation c. exception d. contribution

7. The last paragraph of an essay ..... what has been written in it.
a. cares b. concludes c. contributes d. introduces

8. He can't remember anything. He is ..... disabled.
a. elderly b. necessarily c. mentally d. physically

9. Being ....., he always looks at the positive side of everything.
a. optimistic b. refreshing c. stressed d. overworked

10. Your ..... are the children of your children.
a. grandchildren b. grandpas c. grandmas d. grandparents

11. I find this argument ..... . We'll never reach an agreement.
a. typical b. flexible c. pointless d. passionate

12. The younger ..... find it easy to deal with modern technology.
a. motivations b. generations c. exceptions d. contributions

13. The new law of education hasn't been ..... yet.
a. cared b. concluded c. contributed d. introduced

14. It is the right thing to respect ..... people.
a. elderly b. necessarily c. mentally d. physically

15. There was a/an ..... about combating air pollution held in our school yesterday.
a. grandchildren b. respect c. debate d. argument

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

16. We are ..... Sama's birthday on July 7th. We are giving a big party.
a. ignoring b. considering c. celebrating d. retiring

17. This hot weather is not ..... of January which is a cold winter month.
a. typical b. tough c. pointless d. passionate

18. My parents have made great ..... to my personal and work life.
a. motivations b. generations c. exceptions d. contributions

19. It is common in Upper Egypt that the young ..... for their grandparents.
a. care b. conclude c. contribute d. introduce

20. Being over 60 does not ..... mean you cannot work.
a. elderly b. necessarily c. physical d. mental

21. The ..... I had made did not persuade them to agree to my suggestion.
a. grandchildren b. respects c. debates d. arguments

22. The first thing to ..... is to raise the staff's salaries. It is an urgent demand.
a. ignore b. consider c. celebrate d. retire

23. Times are being ..... for me. I've lost my job and my father is very ill.
a. typical b. tough c. pointless d. passionate

24. Nearly everyone needs ..... . It encourages them to go on facing difficulties.
a. motivation b. generation c. exception d. contribution

25. Volunteers ..... their time and effort to charity work.
a. care b. conclude c. contribute d. introduce

26. He can't use one of his hands. He is ..... disabled.
a. elderly b. personally c. mentally d. physically

27. Showing ..... to others is good behaviour.
a. grandchildren b. respect c. debate d. argument

28. I think one should not ..... as long as they are mentally and physically able to work.
a. ignore b. consider c. celebrate d. retire

29. The cool wind felt ..... .
a. optimistic b. refreshing c. stressed d. overworked

Part II Vocabulary Study

تنويه ساعد مُعلمك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مُسبقًا بشكل جيد.

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

celebrate	the contributions	يحتفل بإسهامات	keep	active	يظل نشيطاً
do	physical work	يقوم بعمل بدني	lead	a ..... life	يعيش حياة .....
	volunteer work	يقوم بعمل تطوعي	make	a contribution to	يُقدِّم إسهام لـ
get	older	يكبر في السن		an argument	يُقدم تبريراً
give	reasons for	يعطي مبررات لـ	miss	friends	يفتقد الأصدقاء
have	a tough time	يمر بوقت عصيب	show	respect	يُظهِر الاحترام
	contact	لديه تواصل	take	a look	يلقي نظرة
introduce	laws	يُصدِر قوانين			

Mini Test 1 Collocations

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. My grandmother can still ..... volunteer work; she enjoys helping others. *(LM)*
   a. make b. do c. refuse d. abuse
2. My brother ..... the first prize in a short story competition. *(LM)*
   a. beat b. earned c. won d. gained
3. It is the authority of the parliament to ..... new laws or modify old ones.
   a. take b. introduce c. get d. show
4. We all value the so many contributions you've ..... to our society.
   a. done b. made c. had d. missed
5. My father has ..... older and weaker.
   a. taken b. introduced c. got d. shown
6. A party is being given to ..... the contributions of Mr Nasser on the occasion of his retirement.
   a. give b. lead c. make d. celebrate
7. When I am away, I ..... my family and friends very much.
   a. do b. make c. have d. miss

8. I want to ..... another look at the car before I decide on buying it.
a. take b. introduce c. get d. show

9. Pardon me! I can't ..... any reasons for my decision.
a. give b. lead c. make d. celebrate

10. I will never forget the tough time I ..... when I was infected by corona virus.
a. did b. made c. had d. missed

11. It is good behaviour to ..... respect to the elderly.
a. take b. introduce c. get d. show

12. Homeless children ..... a life of misery.
a. give b. lead c. make d. celebrate

13. ..... physical work helps you keep fit.
a. Doing b. Making c. Introducing d. Missing

2 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a long-distance runner عَدَّاء، مسافاتٍ طويلة	in other ways
after all, برغم كل ذلك - في النِّهَايَة	keep you healthy
aged over 65 عمره أكثر من ٦٥ عام	life experiences
care homes دور الرعاية	make it harder
continue working into يستمر في العمل حتى يصل إلي	of her age
do whatever they want يفعلون ما يريدون	post on social media وسائل التواصل
elderly people كبار السن	see … in a more positive light منظور أكثر إيجابية
have very little contact with لديه تواصل قليل مع	show respect for
International Day for Older Persons اليوم العالمي لكبار السن	typical of
if this was the case لو الأمر هكذا	United Nations (UN)

3 Synonymous Expressions تعبيرات مترادفة

from my point of view = in my opinion من وجهة نظري	take it easy = take things easy = relax لا تبالغ - هوّن عليك
	the first thing to consider of all الشيء في الاعتبار

8. I want to ..... another look at the car before I decide on buying it.
a. take b. introduce c. get d. show

9. Pardon me! I can't ..... any reasons for my decision.
a. give b. lead c. make d. celebrate

10. I will never forget the tough time I ..... when I was infected with corona virus.
a. did b. made c. had d. missed

11. It is good behaviour to ..... respect to the elderly.
a. take b. introduce c. get d. show

12. Homeless children ..... a life of misery.
a. give b. lead c. make d. celebrate

13. ..... physical work helps you keep fit.
a. Doing b. Making c. Introducing d. Missing

2 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a long-distance runner عَدَّاء مسافاتٍ طويلة	in other ways بطرق أخرى
after all, برغم كل ذلك – في النِّهَايَة	keep you healthy يبقيك بصحة جيدة
aged over 65 عمره أكثر من ٦٥ عام	life experiences تجارب الحياة
care homes دور الرعاية	make it harder يجعل ... أصعب
continue working into يستمر في العمل حتى يصل إلي	of her age من نفس عمرها
do whatever they want يفعلون ما يريدون	post on social media ينشر علي وسائل التواصل
elderly people كبار السن	see … in a more positive light يري ... بمنظور أكثر إيجابية
have very little contact with لديه تواصل قليل مع	show respect for يُظهر الاحترام لـ
International Day for Older Persons اليوم العالمي لكبار السن	typical of مثال نموذجي لـ
if this was the case لو الأمر هكذا	United Nations (UN) الأمم المتحدة

3 Synonymous Expressions تعبيرات مترادفة

from my point of view = in my opinion من وجهة نظري	take it easy = take things easy = relax يأخذ الأمور ببساطة – هَوِّن عليك
further reason = In addition وهناك سبب إضافي وهو	the first thing to consider = First of all أول شيء يوضع في الاعتبار

get to = reach = fulfil = achieve يحقق	the over 70s = the people who are over 70 years old الأشخاص الذين تتجاوز أعمارهم ٧٠ عاماً
owing to = because of بسبب	To conclude = In conclusion والخلاصة هي - نستنتج أن
passionate about = very keen on = very enthusiastic about = addicted to لديه شغف بـ	to some extent = partly إلي حد ما
rely on = depend on = count on يعتمد علي - يُعوّل علي	we cannot ignore = Don't forget that لا يمكن أن نتجاهل ان

4 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

agree with	يتفق مع	learn from	يتعلم من
contribute to / towards + n / (inf.+ing)	يُساهِم في	look back on	يسترجع/ يستذكر
		see ... as	يري ... ك/ يعتبر ... ك
disagree with	يختلف مع	speak to	يتحدث إلي
help ... with	يساعد ... في	translate as	يمكن ترجمته ك

Mini Test 2 Expressions, Prepositions & Idioms

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Although most people retire from work at the age of sixty, they can contribute ..... other ways to their society.
   a. to b. in c. of d. from
2. Which of the following give a meaning near to "A further reason"?
   a. Don't forget that b. In addition
   c. First of all d. In conclusion
3. Ayman is very ..... about football. He adores it.
   a. proud b. popular c. positive d. enthusiastic
4. 'Care .....' means nearly the same as 'look after'.
   a. of b. off c. for d. after
5. It is a great success to ..... your goals.
   a. get to b. reach c. achieve d. a, b & c
6. "My flight was cancelled owing to bad weather." In this context, 'owing to' can be replaced by ..... .
   a. because of that b. because of c. a & b d. as a result

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

7. If you want to express an opinion, you can start with "……".
   a. From my point of view, … c. Owing to the fact that …
   b. As a matter of fact, … d. It is an unquestioned truth that …

8. When you trust someone or something to do what you need or expect them to do, this means you …… them.
   a. help with b. rely on c. distrust d. see as

9. Coronavirus vaccine is seen …… a sort of protective measures.
   a. about b. in c. by d. as

10. The closing paragraph of an essay can start with …… .
   a. To conclude b. In conclusion c. a & b d. In addition

11. Which of the following gives the meaning of 'We cannot ignore …"?
   a. Don't forget that b. In addition c. First of all d. In conclusion

12. These exercises are typical …… Mr Mohammed's work.
   a. for b. at c. of d. by

13. Some elderly people continue working …… their 70s.
   a. with b. of c. in d. into

14. All my teachers have contributed …… my success.
   a. from b. towards c. with d. onto

5 Clear the Confusion لاحظ الفرق

The + adj

عند استخدام (the) قبل صفة ليس بعدها الاسم الموصوف فإن هذه الصفة تتحول تعمل عمل الاسم الجمع:

- We should show respect to elderly people.
= We should show respect to the elderly.

إذا تم استخدام هذه الصيغة كفاعل فإن الفعل بعدها يكون في صيغة الجمع:

- The elderly are looked after by their grandchildren. (Not: The elderly is ...)
- The over 70 have an important role to play. (Not: The over 70 has ...)

Whether or not

نستخدم (whether or not) بمعني (سواء … أم لا) لربط عبارتين، وهي أقرب في بناء جملتها للجمل الشرطية التي تبدأ بـ (if):

• Whether or not + جملة سواء … أم لا

- Whether or not you like it, I'm going to drive to Alexandria.
- Whether he agrees or not, he'll clean his room

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

Translate

• **translate from ... into ...**
- Rodayna can translate from Arabic into English. ... يُترجم من ... إلي

• **translate into ... from ...**
- Rodayna can translate into English from Arabic. ... يُترجم إلي ... من

• **translate as...**
- 'Sham El-Nassim' translates as something like 'Spring Festival'. ... تُعطي معني .../ يمكن ترجمتها

Collective Nouns

الأسماء التالية تُسمي الأسماء الكُلية، أي أنها في صيغة المفرد تدل على جمع ويمكن أن تأخذ فعل مفرد أو جمع:

team / group / staff هيئة /union اتحاد / population سكان / the government / family / company / committee اللجنة / the majority الأغلبية / The minority الأقلية / the public الجمهور أو العامة / the youth / army جيش/ class فصل / couple زوج /crew طاقم سفينة أو طائرة /crowd حشد /gang عصابة / navy القوات البحرية / council هيئة مستشارين / audience جمهور /university

- My team has won the cup.
- My team have won the cup.

وتأخذ الكلمات السابقة فعل جمع إذا أُستُخدمنا معها (who / whom) أو أي ضمير جمع، أما إذا استخدمنا معها (which/it) فهي تأخذ فعل مفرد:

- The group who did the research were honoured yesterday.
- The group which did the research was honoured yesterday.

Mini Test 3 Clear the Confusion

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The group ..... set its goal.
   a. have b. has c. is d. are
2. The group ..... set their goal.
   a. have b. has c. is d. are
3. The Arabic 'Hekma' translates ..... 'wisdom'.
   a. on b. to c. from d. as
4. Whether or not ..... my decision, I will never change it.
   a. you liking b. liking c. you like d. likes
5. The disabled ..... special talents.
   a. have b. has c. was d. were

Part III Reading & Listening

1 Reading Texts

How different societies around the world view older people (WB page ...)



You probably see your grandparents(1) every week, or maybe(2) they live with you and your parents. However, in some countries, young people see their grandparents less often, even though this is not something they enjoy. Let's take a look(3) at why this is, and how older people are seen around the world.

The United Nations has the International Day for Older Persons each October, which celebrates(4) the contributions(5) that older people make to society. In fact, many countries already show their respect(6) for older people in the way they speak to them. For example, many African languages use the word mzee before an older person's name to show them respect. In Japan, the suffix -san is used in the same way. In Hawaiian, older people are called kupuna, which translates as(7) something like wisdom.

Check Vocabulary

(1) أجداد
(2) ربما
(3) يلقي نظرة
(4) يحتفل بـ
(5) مساهمات
(6) احترام
(7) تترجم إلى
(8) اهتم
(9) كبير السن
(10) يرعي
(11) يكبر في السن

In Egypt, many elderly people are cared(8) for by their children or other family members. This is the same in countries such as China, Japan and Korea, where around 75% of elderly(9) people live with their adult children. However, this situation has changed in recent years. In some countries, many people have migrated to the cities to find work, which means they don't live near their family home. Consequently, some people are not able to look after(10) their parents when they get older(11) the way they would like to.

Fortunately, technology has helped younger people who live far away

to contact their elderly parents on a regular basis. They can now chat with them through video calls or communicate daily through social media. This is a good way of communication, especially during the coronavirus pandemic, when it was better to take care of the elderly without actually visiting and coming into physical contact with them.

People who are over seventy can still make a contribution to society.

(SB page 31)

A@raufb: It's great that the writer's grandma is still able to do volunteer work(1) and learn new things, but I don't think she's typical of(2) most people of her age(3), who just want to stay at home and take it easy(4). Our society is organised(5) in such a way that the over - 70s are asked to stay inactive and not to do much work. They retire(6) and try to enjoy life. So, I think the discussion(7) about whether or not this group contributes(8) to society is a bit pointless(9).

Check Vocabulary

(1) يقوم بعمل تطوعي
(2) نموذج لـ
(3) من نفس العُمر
(4) يأخذ الأمور ببساطة
(5) يُنظِّم
(6) يتقاعد
(7) نقاش
(8) يُساهم
(9) لا طائل منه

B @silvo: I really enjoyed this article. It was so refreshing(1) to hear an optimistic(2) story about a member of the older generation(3) who's keeping active and still looking for new challenges(4) and adventures(5). 🙂 Maybe in the past, people thought that you were old when you were over 70, but now it isn't seen as being very old any more and most people have to work until they're 67 or even older anyway.

Check Vocabulary

(1) مُنعِش - مُبشِّر
(2) متفائل - تفاؤلي
(3) جيل
(4) تَحَدِّيات
(5) مغامرات

C @thomato: I think it's an interesting debate(1) whether or not people can still make a contribution to society when they're older. One big advantage that many over-70s have is that they don't have to work any more so they can spend their time on things that they're passionate(2) about and many of them help to look after their grandchildren(3) too. Of course, most people aren't as physically(4) active as they used to be at that age, but they can still contribute(5) in other ways.

Check Vocabulary

(1) مُناظرة - نقاش
(2) شغوف - مُوْلَع
(3) أحفاد
(4) بدنياً
(5) يُساهِم

Why people over 65 should continue to work

(WB page 17)



From my point of view, some people aged over 65 should continue to work if they want to - but not all of them. I'll explain why I think this.

The first thing to consider[1] is the job that people do. Many people enjoy their work, so why should they stop when they get to[2] 65? For example, in Scotland, 79-year-old Tom Swan has worked in a shop for 60 years. He enjoys meeting the people who come in.

A further[3] reason is that work can keep you healthy.[4] Brian Denney from England helps older people with their money, although he is 82! He thinks that he would be less healthy mentally[5] and physically if he stayed at home all day.

However, we cannot ignore[6] the fact that it is not possible for all people to continue working, for example, builders[7]. Owing to[8] the physical[9] work they do every day, they would not be able to continue working into their 70s or older.

To conclude[10], I believe people should be able to continue working if they are able to and want to, but I also realise that this is not possible in some jobs and for some people.

Check Vocabulary

(1) يضع في الاعتبار
(2) يصل إلى
(3) إضافي/آخر
(4) يبقيك بصحة جيدة
(5) عقلياً/ذهنياً
(6) يتجاهل
(7) عمال البناء
(8) بسبب
(9) بدني/جسدي
(10) وللخلاصة هي

2 Listening Texts

What younger people can learn from older people

(SB page 3)

Magda: So, the teacher said we have to have a discussion[1] about what younger people can learn from older people. Hmm ... what do you think?

Check Vocabulary

(1) مناقشة

Heba : I'm sure see what we can learn from them, but not many older people know how to use the internet! How can they help us in the field of technology?

Magda: I'm not sure if that's really the case(2). I know three or four older people who are always online. They video call(3) their grandchildren(4) and buy things online, for example.

(2) الحالة/القضية
(3) يجري مكالمة فيديو
(4) احفاد
(5) يكافح - يناضل
(6) يتحكم في - يدير
(7) يسترجع - يتذكر

Heba : Yes, you have a point. Maybe they aren't experts in technology, but they can give us advice on how to be safe online on other issues.

Magda: Yes, my grandmother has really helped me a lot. She gave me some really good advice last year when I was struggling(5) to manage(6) my time. She told me to think about how I would feel when I'm 80 years old and I look back on(7) my life. What would I want to have spent my time doing? She said that then you just have to focus your energy on those things and that's what I did. It really helped.

Heba : Hmm, but don't you think a younger person could give you good advice too? Every time that I'm in a difficult situation, my big brother always helps me.

Magda: I'm sure other people can do, too. But maybe older people can do it better because they have more life experience. They've been alive for much longer than your brother !

Heba : But some people's lives are not always exciting, don't you think? I can understand how you can learn something from the life experiences of people who've had an interesting life, but what about others who haven't?

Magda: I don't know. I think all older people can help us a lot just because they've been alive a long time. They've met so many people, done so many things- had life experience.

3 Videoscript

The benefits[1] of friendships[2] with older people

(SB page 31)

It's quite rare[3] for older people and young people to be friends with each other, but these kinds of friendships can actually have many benefits for both of the people involved[4]. Each of the friends has something that can help the other to enjoy their lives more.

For example, older might appear to be out of touch with[5] today's world and, therefore, unable to[6] offer younger people advice about the things that are happening in it. However, you shouldn't forget that older people have decades[7] of life experiences, so they may be able to help younger people with the types of problems that people have had for thousands for years. Questions like : How do I decide what to do with my life ?

What's more, younger people shouldn't assume[8] that older people never do anything interesting or exciting. There are plenty of older people who are very active - some even run marathons[9], for examples - and many also have interesting hobbies. In fact, when they retire, people usually have more time to do free time activities than they had done during their working lives. An older friend might be able to introduce you to do a new hobby that you'd never considered trying before.

So, in general[10], younger people should try not to see older people as being very different to them. Being friends with an older person can be just as fun as being friends with someone your own age. Some of your other friends might find the friendship strange at first but just ignore them. There's no reason why older people and younger people can't be good friends.

Check Vocabulary

(1) فوائد
(2) صداقات
(3) نادر
(4) معنى / مشارك
(5) بعيد عن الاتصال مع
(6) غير قادر على
(7) عقود /عشرات السنوات/
(8) يفترض
(9) سباق ماراثون
(10) عامةً

Part IV Language

Narrative Tenses الأزمنة السَردِيَّة (الروائية)

الأزمنة السردية (الروائية) - أو بعبارة أخري أزمنة الماضي - هي الأزمنة التي تُستخدم في سرد القصص أو الأحداث الخاصة بالماضي، وهذه الأزمنة هي:

1. **Past Simple** الماضي البسيط
   - I bought a tablet last month. I paid 9,000 in cash for it ....
2. **Past continuous** الماضي المستمر
   - I was waiting for the bus when my mobile rang.
3. **Past perfect** الماضي التام
   - By midnight, everyone at home had gone to bed.
4. **Past perfect continuous** المستمر الماضي التام
   - Mum had been helping my sister with her homework, so she didn't have time to call you to bed.

هنا وقد تم شرح جميع هذه الأزمنة واستخداماتها في الوحدتين الأولي والثانية وسنكتفي هنا بالتدريبات العامة:

تنويه المضارع البسيط يمكن إستخدامه كأحد الأزمنة السردية وسيتم شرح ذلك فى الوحدة (١٢)

General Exercise On Language Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting Started (LM)

1. I went to the company and ..... the sales manager.
   a. met b. had met c. have met d. will meet

2. I haven't seen Mr. Ahmed ..... the last time we met at the club. (LM)
   a. for b. when c. since d. ago

3. I ..... the house until the doctor had come and examined my friend's father. (LM)
   a. haven't left b. wasn't leaving c. didn't leave d. hadn't left

4. Did you finish reading the novel I ..... you?
   a. will lend b. have lent c. will be lending d. had lent

5. While my mother ..... our lunch, I was doing my homework, so I couldn't help her. (LM)
a. made b. has made c. was making d. is making

6. We ..... research on the effect of global warming on daily activities; we are still working on it. (LM)
a. had been doing b. have been doing
c. will be doing d. were doing

7. ..... I had heard the good news, I immediately congratulated my friend. (Practice Ex. 2)
a. Then b. So c. Once d. Before

8. The team ..... training together for months before they were given the chance to compete. (Practice Ex. 3)
a. have been b. had been
c. has been d. will have been

9. My uncle ..... as a sales manager for twenty years, but now he has his own business. (Practice Ex. 3)
a. worked b. is working c. has worked d. was worked

10. The village streets are muddy because it ..... . (Practice Ex. 4)
a. had rained b. had been raining all night
c. has been raining d. will be raining

11. He is still doing the exercise. He ..... it for two hours now. (Practice Ex.
a. has done b. has been doing
c. had been doing d. was doing

12. Food ..... by mum; what delicious meals she makes! (Practice Ex.
a. is never made b. is always made
c. was never made d. is always making

13. When we arrived, the manager ..... an urgent task. We had to wa for a few minutes to meet him. (Practice E
a. had done b. is doing c. was doing d. have done

14. Unfortunately, the car ..... checked well before we left our villag it broke down again. (Practice E
a. had b. hadn't c. had been d. hadn't bee

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

15. Scientists ..... the side effects of COVID- 19 for years; they are still doing this task. *(Practice Ex. 6)*
a. had been researching b. have been researching
c. have researching d. were researching

16. Do you know that the first mobile phone call ..... 40 Years ago? *(Practice Ex. 6)*
a. is made b. had been made
c. was made d. was making

2 Special Cases

17. As soon as she returned home, she realised that she ..... her watch in her office. *(LM)*
a. had been left b. will leave c. has left d. had left

18. He couldn't join the online meeting because he ..... a hard time connecting to the internet. *(LM)*
a. is having b. have had c. was having d. had had

19. I ..... for thirty minutes when my friend reached the company. *(LM)*
a. have waited b. had waited
c. have been waiting d. had been waiting

20. She ..... three lessons before she went to bed. *(LM)*
a. has revised b. had revised
c. has been revising d. had been revising

21. Have you received a reply to your complaint ? *(LM)*
- Yes, I ..... it yesterday.
a. received b. had received
c. was receiving d. have received

22. I was exhausted because I ..... been working all day long. *(LM)*
a. had been working b. have been working
c. have worked d. had worked

23. Salma ..... to leave the house as soon as she feeds her cat because she has an urgent meeting. *(LM)*
a. has got b. will have c. got d. get

24. I will wait till my friend ..... before I order food. *(LM)*
a. had arrived b. arrived c. has arrived d. was arriving

25. Unfortunately, I got low marks; I wish I ..... harder when I had had the time. *(LM)*
a. had studied b. studied c. would study d. have studied

26. The novelist ..... an award for his last collection of short stories a week ago. *(Practice Ex. 4)*
a. had offered
b. offered
c. has been offered
d. was offered

27. Most of the plays ..... by Shakespeare were translated to different languages. *(Practice Ex. 4)*
a. which written
b. were written
c. written
d. writing

3 Check your understanding

28. I missed the start of the movie. This means that: ..... *(LM)*
a. When I reached the cinema, the film had started.
b. When I reached the cinema, the film hadn't started.
c. When I reach the cinema, the film will start.
d. The film won't start till I reach the cinema.

29. Which of the following is structurally correct ? *(LM)*
a. The naughty boy was punished because he has made many mistakes.
b. The naughty boy was punished because he had been made many mistakes.
c. The naughty boy was punished because he had made many mistakes.
d. The naughty boy has been punished because he had made many mistakes.

30. Which of the following sentences is structurally INCORRECT ? *(LM)*
a. Scarcely had I gone to the club when I met my friends.
b. Hardly had I gone to the club when I met my friends.
c. I had scarcely gone to the club when I met my friends.
d. No sooner had I gone to the club, then I met my friends.

31. Which of the following is structurally correct ?
a. I won't go home until I had finished all my work.
b. I won't go home until I finished all my work.
c. I didn't go home until I have finished all my work.
d. I didn't go home until I had finished all my work.

32. Which of the following is correctly structured? *(Practice Ex. 3)*
a. I met Eissa last week. I haven't met him since 2018.
b. I met Eissa last week. I hadn't met him since 2018.
c. I will meet Eissa next week. I hadn't met him since 2018.
d. I have met Eissa last week. I hadn't met since 2018.

33. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct? *(Practice Ex. 3)*
a. No sooner I had typed the report, than I emailed the manager.
b. No sooner had I typed the report than I emailed the manager.
c. I had no sooner typed the report when I emailed the manager.
d. No sooner I had typed the report when I emailed the manager.

4 Feedback Grammar

34. She is very punctual; she rarely comes late, ...? *(LM)*
a. is she b. she doesn't c. doesn't she d. does she

35. Taher, my new colleague, is a 32-.....-old gentleman. *(LM)*
a. years' b. year's c. year d. years

36. I took a ten-.....break to refresh my energy. *(LM)*
a. minutes b. minutes' c. minute's d. minute

37. Which of the following can be used to show reason? *(Practice Ex. 6)*
a. As a result b. Regardless of
c. Due to d. Moreover

38. Which of the following can't express contrast? *(Practice Ex. 5)*
a. although b. but
c. despite the fact that d. in addition to

Advanced Exercise on Language

تنويه : التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I didn't know I was lost since I ..... at the fashionable clothes shops.
a. was looking b. had looked c. have looked d. was looked

2. ..... by him, every song sounds just wonderful.
a. To sing b. Having sung c. Having been sung d. Singing

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

3. I ..... a cake, that's why the kitchen was such a mess.
   a. 've been making b. 've made
   c. 'd been making d. 'd made

4. Ramy came home yesterday evening. He hasn't gone out ..... .
   a. for b. since c. already d. ago

5. Not ..... a shower for two days, I was desperate to get to the bathroom.
   a. had b. having had c. have had d. have had

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	a	- كلمة (since) تساوي (because) في المعني مما يبرر استخدام الماضي المستمر
2.	c	- السياق مبني للمجهول
3.	c	- الماضي التام المستمر هو الأفضل من الماضي التام البسيط نظراً لأن السياق هنا يركز على استمرارية الحدث وليس اكتماله
4.	b	- يمكن استخدام (since) مثل (since then) بمعني منذ ذلك الحين
5.	b	- لابد من استخدام صيغة الـ (gerund) قبل التصريف الثالث لتكوين العبارة السببية كصيغة مختصرة من: - Because he hadn't taken a shower for two days, ...



Lessons 5 & 6

SB pages 32 - 35 WB pages 18 & 19



Part I Vocabulary & Definitions

تنويه

• هذا الجزء خاص بالمفردات والتعبيرات الرئيسية للقصة. لقراءة نص القصة المقررة وللمزيد من المفردات اللغوية والتدريبات نهاية الكتاب.

1 Key Vocabulary, Idioms & Collocations

boast(ed) (v)	يتباهى/يتفاخر بـ	desert(ed) (v)	يهجر - يترك
catch - caught (v)	يقبض علي	fear for	يخشى علي
commit(ted) (v)	يرتكب/يقترف - يقوم بـ	my heart sinks	ينتابني اليأس
confirm(ed) (v)	يؤكّد أن	night watchman	حارس ليليّ
criminal(n/adj)	مُجرِم - إجرامي	permanently(adv)	علي الدوام
crouch(ed) (v)	يجلس القرفصاء		

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

2 Definitions تعريفات

تنويه لابد من قراءة التعريفات التالية جيدًا، فهي موضع امتحان.

boast (v) يتباهى/يتفاخر بـ	to talk too proudly about your abilities, achievements, or possessions ممتلكات
catch (v) يقبض علي	to find a criminal or enemy and stop them from escaping
commit (v) يرتكب/يقترف - يقوم بـ	to do something wrong or illegal غير قانوني
confirm (v) يؤكّد أن	to show that something is definitely true, especially by providing more proof
criminal(n) مُجرِم	someone who is involved متورط in illegal activities or has been proved guilty of a crime
crouch(down) (v) يجلس القرفصاء	to lower your body close to the ground by bending your knees completely
desert (v) يهجر - يترك	to leave someone or something and no longer help or support them
fear for يخشى علي	to feel afraid or worried that something bad is going to happen to someone or something

my heart sinks ينتابني اليأس	I lose hope or confidence
night watchman(n) حارس ليليّ	someone whose job is to guard a building at night

Exercise On Vocabulary • Understand

• ✪ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. When I received the dreadful news, my heart ..... ; I was upset and disappointed. (LM)
   a. sank b. cheered c. thought d. flew
2. We ..... live in Alexandria; this is our constant place of residence. (LM)
   a. temporary b. temporarily c. permanently d. permanent
3. When I heard about the road accident, I ..... for my friend's safety because he was driving that car. (LM)
   a. considered b. feared c. blamed d. criticised
4. No one has declared the final result yet, so I can't ..... that I have got the gold medal. (LM)
   a. accept b. seem c. appear d. confirm
5. There is a night ..... who goes round the building to keep us safe at night. (LM)
   a. thief b. watchman c. burglar d. dustman
6. He wasn't faithful; he ..... his friend when he was in trouble and refused to help him! (LM)
   a. deserted b. desired c. disappeared d. remained
7. A..... is someone who is involved in illegal activities or has been proved guilty of a crime.
   a. criminal b. night watchman c. heart d. contribution
8. To ..... is to find a criminal or enemy and stop them from escaping.
   a. crouch b. catch c. desert d. confirm
9. To ..... is to do something wrong or illegal.
   a. boast b. catch c. commit d. fear
10. To ..... is to lower your body close to the ground by bending your knees completely.
    a. crouch b. catch c. desert d. confirm

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

Part II Skills

تنويه المهارات الخاصة بالوحدة تم شرحها متبوعة بالتدريبات فى ملحق (Master your skills) كل وحدة علي حدة.

Translation الترجمة

① Choose the best Arabic translation :

1. If you want to achieve more success in life, you'll need a lot of determination. So, if you fail at the beginning, never lose hope or give up. *(LM)*

أ. إذا كنت تحاول تحقيق المزيد من النجاح في الحياة، أنت في حاجة إلى الكثير من التصميم. لذا، إذا فشلت في البداية، لا تفقد الأمل واطلب نصيحة الأخرين.

ب. إذا كنت ترغب في تحقيق بعض النجاح في الحياة، فستحتاج إلى الكثير من المجهود. لذا، إذا فشلت في البداية، لا تفقد الأمل أو تستسلم أبداً.

جـ. إذا كنت ترغب في تحقيق المزيد من النجاح في الحياة، أنت في حاجة إلى الكثير من التصميم. لذا، إذا فشلت في البداية، لا تفقد الأمل أو تستسلم أبداً.

د. إذا كنت ترغب في تحقيق المزيد والمزيد من النجاح في الحياة، فستحتاج إلى بعض التصميم. لذا، إذا فشلت في الحياة، لا تفقد الأمل أو تستسلم أبداً.

2. One big advantage that many over-70s have is that they don't have to work any more so they can spend their time on things that they're passionate about.

أ. إحدى الميزات الكبيرة التي يتمتع بها العديد من الأشخاص الذين تزيد أعمارهم عن ٧٠ عامًا هي أنهم غير مضطرين إلى العمل حتى يتمكنوا من قضاء وقتهم في الأشياء التي يحبونها.

ب. إحدى الميزات الكبيرة التي يتمتع بها العديد من الأشخاص الذين تزيد أعمارهم عن ٧٠ عامًا هي أنهم غير مضطرين إلى العمل، لذلك فهم يستطيعون قضاء وقتهم في الأشياء التي يحبونها.

جـ. إحدى الميزات الكبيرة التي يتمتع بها العديد من الأشخاص الذين تزيد أعمارهم عن ٧٠ عامًا هي أنهم مضطرين إلى العمل، لذلك فهم يستطيعون قضاء وقتهم في الأشياء التي يحبونها.

د. إحدى الميزات الكبيرة التي يتمتع بها العديد من الأشخاص الذين تزيد أعمارهم عن ٧٠ عامًا هي أنهم لم يعدوا مضطرين إلى العمل، لذلك فهم يستطيعون قضاء وقتهم في الأشياء التي يحبون عنها.

3. According to experts, people who have business experience are always more successful as entrepreneurs than people who do not have it.

أ. وفقًا للخبراء، فإن الأشخاص الذين لديهم خبرة في الأعمال يكونون أحياناً أكثر نجاحًا كرواد أعمال من الأشخاص الذين ليس لديهم خبرة.

ب. وفقًا للخبراء، فإن الأشخاص الذين لديهم خبرة في الأعمال يكونون دائمًا أكثر نجاحًا كرواد أعمال من الأشخاص الذين لديهم خبرة.

ج. وفقًا للخبراء، فإن الأشخاص الذين ليس لديهم خبرة في الأعمال يكونون دائمًا أكثر نجاحًا كرواد أعمال من الأشخاص الذين ليس لديهم خبرة.

د. وفقًا للخبراء، فإن الأشخاص الذين لديهم خبرة في الأعمال يكونون دائمًا أكثر نجاحًا كرواد أعمال من الأشخاص الذين ليس لديهم خبرة.

4. We cannot ignore the fact that some people who are over seventy are not as healthy and, therefore, not as active as younger people.

أ. لا يمكننا تجاهل حقيقة أن بعض الأشخاص الذين تزيد أعمارهم عن السبعين ليسوا بنفس صحة الأشخاص الأصغر سنًا ؟ وبالتالي فهم ليسوا نشيطين مثلهم.

ب. ألا يمكننا تجاهل حقيقة أن بعض الأشخاص الذين تزيد أعمارهم عن السبعين ليسوا بصحة جيدة، وبالتالي ليسوا نشيطين مثل الشباب.

ج. لا يمكننا تجاهل حقيقة أن الأشخاص الذين تزيد أعمارهم عن السبعين ليسوا بصحة جيدة، وبالتالي ليسوا نشيطين مثل الشباب.

د. لا يمكننا تجاهل حقيقة أن بعض الأشخاص الذين تزيد أعمارهم عن السبعين ليسوا بصحة جيدة، وبالتالي فهم نشيطين مثل الشباب.

② Choose the best English translation :

١. تُشير ظاهرة تشغيل الأطفال إلى استغلالهم في اشكالٍ مختلفة من العمل بما يحرمهم من طفولتهم، ويمنعهم من الذهاب إلى المدرسة ويؤثر عليهم جسدياً واجتماعياً ومعنوياً. *(LM)*

a. Child labour refers to the exploitation of children in different forms of crime that deprives them of their childhood, prevents them from going to school and affects them psychologically, physically, socially and morally.

b. Child labour aims at the exploitation of children in different forms of work that frightens them of their childhood, prevents them from going to school and affects them physically, socially and morally.

c. The phenomenon of child labour refers to the exploitation of children in different forms of work that deprives them of their childhood, prevents them from going to gardens and affects them physically, socially, and economically.

d. The phenomenon of child labour refers to exploiting children in various forms of work that deprives them of their childhood, prevents them from going to school and affects them physically, socially, and morally.

٢. في أي نظام جديد يتم تطبيقه لابد من الوقوع في بعض الأخطاء التي يتم تصويبها وصولاً إلى الشكل الأمثل.

a. In any new system that is folded, there must be some errors that are corrected in order to reach the optimal form.

b. In any new system that is applied, there must be some errors that correct in order to reach the optimal form.

c. In any new system that is applied, there must be some errors that are corrected in order to reach the optimal form.

d. In any new system that is appealed, there must be some errors that are corrected in order to reach the optimal form.

٣. إذا أخطأت فلا تيأس وتستسلم، بل عليك أن تتعلم من أخطائك وأن تحاول مراراً وتكراراً وستصل لهدفك في النهاية.

a. If you make a mistake, do not despair and give up. You should learn from your mistakes and try again and again, and you will reach your goal in the end.

b. If you do a mistake, do not despair and give up. You should learn from your mistakes and try again and again, and you will reach your goal in the end.

c. If you make a mistake, do not despair and give in. You should learn from your mistakes and try again and again, and you won't reach your goal in the end.

d. If you make a mistake, do not despair and get up. You should learn from your mistakes and try again and again, and you will teach your goal in the end.

٤. علي الشباب حديثي التخرج الانخراط في الحياة العملية في أسرع وقت ممكن، فذلك سيساعدهم على اكتساب خبرات العمل مبكراً.

a. New graduates should engage in working life as long as possible, as this will help them gain work experience early.

b. Fresh graduates should engage in working life as soon as impossible, as this will help them gain work experience early.

c. New graduates should engage in working life as soon as possible, as this will help them gain work experience early.

d. Fresh graduates should engage in working life as soon as possible, as this will help them do work experience early.

Test on Unit 9

• Understand ○ Apply • Create

تنويه
للتدريب على أسئلة اختيارى MRQ بنك الأسئلة

✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Omar found that working as a volunteer was a life-..... experience. Now, he started a new charity in his neighbourhood.
   a. wisdom b. changing c. knowledge d. ingredient
2. So many modern ..... make money from the internet of things.
   a. quantifiers b. banking c. entrepreneurs d. potentials
3. Setting achievable goals is an important ..... of success.
   a. bubble b. chance c. ingredient d. pandemic
4. This ..... pays specific attention to the physical fitness of the members of his team.
   a. inventor b. coach c. entrepreneur d. potential
5. ..... is the way that someone is changing or developing their working life.
   a. Working knowledge b. Contribution
   c. Life experience d. Career direction
6. Not all members of the staff liked the latest decisions their employer has ..... .
   a. gained b. made c. built d. done
7. "Use your common sense if something goes wrong." In this sentence, "common sense" is an antonym of ..... .
   a. folly b. wit c. wisdom d. b & c
8. She did not have enough ..... . She shouldn't have decided while she was angry.
   a. wise b. wisely c. a & b d. wisdom
9. The eleven players are doing badly in today's match since ..... of them has trained well.
   a. both b. all c. none d. neither
10. ..... sport has something special. I don't think I have a favourite.
    a. All b. Half c. Either d. Every (نموذج أول ٢٠٢٠)
11. I enjoy ..... the moments I spend with you. (نموذج الوزارة الثاني ٢٠١٩)
    a. each b. each of c. all d. every of

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

12. ..... Egyptian citizens have roles in society.
a. All b. Both c. Half an d. Every

13. I invited my friend to the party, but later I realised that I ..... to give him the address.
a. forgot b. had forgotten c. has forgotten d. was forgotten

14. I got up thinking I was at my wedding with my beautiful bride. I then realised that it ..... just a dream.
a. all was being b. has all been c. all been d. had all been

15. ..... Arabic before you moved to Egypt, Ivanka?
a. You studied b. Do you study
c. Have you studied d. Had you ever studied

16. ..... to the party by the Prince himself, we could hardly refuse to go.
a. Having been invited b. Having invited
c. Inviting d. Invitation

Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Dear: Lee,

As I told you, I'll be gone until Wednesday morning. Thank you so much for taking on my "pets" while I'm away. Remember that Regina, my puppy, is teething. If you don't watch her, she'll chew anything, including the cat. There are plenty of chew toys around the house. Whenever she starts to bite on anything illegal, just divert her with one of those. She generally settles right down to a good hour-long chew. Then, you'll see her wandering around whimpering ينن with the remains of the toy in her mouth. I usually show her the laundry basket, moving a few clothes so she can bury her toy beneath them.

I do sound like a parent, don't I?

Regina's food is in the utility room, where the other pet food is stored. Give her a bowl once in the morning and once in the evening. No more than that, no matter how much she begs. Beagles كلاب الصيد are known as overeaters, according to her breeder, and I don't want her to lose her girlish figure. She can share Rex (the King's) water, but be sure it's changed daily.

She needs to go out several times a day, especially last thing at night and first thing in the morning. Let her stay out for about ten minutes each time, so she can do all her business. She also needs a walk in the afternoon, after which it's important to romp with her for a while in the yard. The game she loves most is fetch, but be sure to make her drop the ball. Tell her, "Sit!" Then, when she does, say, "Drop it!" Be sure to tell her "good girl," and then throw the ball for her. I hope you'll enjoy these sessions as much as I do.

Now, for the other two, Rex and Paws. *(letter continues)*

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

17. The main idea of the passage is ..... .
   a. How to deal with Regina.
   b. Where can Lee romp with Regina?
   c. Regina is the writer's favourite pet?
   d. Regina is teething nowadays.

18. Regina's breeder asked her owner to feed her ..... .
   a. much food b. a certain meal c. little food d. a big meal

19. It can be inferred from the passage that it is ..... to keep a dog.
   a. easy b. simple c. exhausting d. relaxing

20. If the sitter is to follow the owner's directions in playing fetch with Regina, at what point will he or she tell Regina "good girl"?
   a. Every time Regina goes after the ball.
   b. After Regina finds the ball.
   c. When Regina brings the ball back.
   d. After Regina drops the ball.

21. After reading the passage, we notice that the writer has ..... pets.
   a. one b. four c. three d. two

22. The last paragraph represents ..... .
   a. what Regina eats b. how Regina eats
   c. what Regina needs d. where Regina sleeps

23. Domestic pets are ..... .
   a. safer than street animals
   b. more dangerous than street animals
   c. more dangerous than zoo animals
   d. a bit safer than forest animals

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

24. To follow Lee's orders, Regina needs ..... .
a. punishment b. encouragement c. isolation d. separation

Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

There was once a man called Ali who was travelling home with his friends through a hot, dry land. It was the hottest month of the summer. On their way, they met a poor stranger, dressed in rags. He was hungry and thirsty and had no money. He asked if he could join them. The travellers felt sorry for him. They welcomed him, gave him a drink and continued their journey through the desert.

It was not long before they lost their way. The sun beat down even harder. The ground became more sandy and dusty. There were no rivers or springs in sight. There were no water wells nearby. Soon, their water began to run out. The situation was bad. They decided that the only way to survive was to ration the water that was left between them. Each day, each person drank just one small cupful when they stopped for the night. One evening, when it was Ali's turn to drink, he noticed the stranger staring at him. He immediately turned to the water-carrier and said to him, 'Give my water to my brother, the stranger.' The stranger drank Ali's share of the water, for he was very thirsty. Ali had nothing to drink. The next day the same thing happened again. Each day Ali became weaker and weaker.

One morning, the stranger called Ali to tell him it was time to get up and get on his camel. 'Get up, Ali. We are not far from water now. Soon you will be able to drink as much water as you like,' he said. Ali's friends looked at the stranger curiously. 'How do you know we are not far from water?' they asked. The stranger smiled. He picked Ali up and put him on a camel. 'Follow me, he told Ali's friends. They walked for a few kilometres. Then they stopped in astonishment. The stranger had repaid Ali's kindness.

He had led them to an oasis!

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

25. What is the moral of this story?
a. It's a necessity to drink much water in hot weather.
b. We should always do the good even if it is unpaid.
c. When you go into the desert, take more food and water with you.
d. Give them to other people.

24. To follow Lee's orders, Regina needs ..... .
a. punishment b. encouragement c. isolation d. separation

Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

There was once a man called Ali who was travelling home with his friends through a hot, dry land. It was the hottest month of the summer. On their way, they met a poor stranger, dressed in rags. He was hungry and thirsty and had no money. He asked if he could join them. The travellers felt sorry for him. They welcomed him, gave him a drink and continued their journey through the desert.

It was not long before they lost their way. The sun beat down even harder. The ground became more sandy and dusty. There were no rivers or springs in sight. There were no water wells nearby. Soon, their water began to run out. The situation was bad. They decided that the only way to survive was to ration the water that was left between them. Each day, each person drank just one small cupful when they stopped for the night. One evening, when it was Ali's turn to drink, he noticed the stranger staring at him. He immediately turned to the water-carrier and said to him, 'Give my water to my brother, the stranger.' The stranger drank Ali's share of the water, for he was very thirsty. Ali had nothing to drink. The next day the same thing happened again. Each day Ali became weaker and weaker.

One morning, the stranger called Ali to tell him it was time to get up and get on his camel. 'Get up, Ali. We are not far from water now. Soon you will be able to drink as much water as you like,' he said. Ali's friends looked at the stranger curiously. 'How do you know we are not far from water?' they asked. The stranger smiled. He picked Ali up and put him on a camel. 'Follow me, he told Ali's friends. They walked for a few kilometres. Then they stopped in astonishment. The stranger had repaid Ali's kindness.

He had led them to an oasis!

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

25. What is the moral of this story?
a. It's a necessity to drink much water in hot weather.
b. We should always do the good even if it is unpaid.
c. When you go into the desert, take more food and water with you.
d. We should keep our things and don't give them to other people.

26. This text is ..... .
a. narrative b. experimental c. descriptive d. historical

27. It can be inferred from the passage that ..... .
a. the stranger had little water
b. Ali was thirsty and hungry
c. the stranger knew the desert well
d. the travellers were cruel to the stranger

28. We can infer from the passage that the stranger was wearing ..... clothes.
a. fashionable b. modern c. old-fashioned d. old

29. Each person drank just one small cupful when they stopped for the night. This means that everyone drank ..... .
a. no water b. a lot of water
c. as much water as they like d. little water

30. At the end of the story, the stranger was ..... to Ali.
a. grateful b. dislikable c. hateful d. unthankful

31. Some people sacrifice for others, so they get ..... at the end.
a. water b. happiness c. money d. hatred

32. Which of the following sentences can summarise the last paragraph?
a. Ali had been left no water to drink.
b. The stranger paid back Ali's favour.
c. Ali became more exhausted.
d. The travellers repaid the stranger's kindness.

Choose the best Arabic translation :

33. Recently, Egypt tries hard to be one of the countries that have several tourist attractions.

أ. لقد سعت مصر بقسوة فى الفترة الأخيرة أن تكون واحدة من الدول التى لديها العديد من أسباب الانجذاب السياحى.

ب. تسعى مصر بشدة مؤخرًا ألا تكون أحد من الدول التى توفر العديد من نتائج الجذب السياحية.

ج. تحاول مصر بقوة فى الفترة الأخيرة أن تكون أحد من الدول التى لديها العديد من عوامل الانجذاب السياحى.

د. تحاول مصر بشدة فى الفترة الأخيرة أن تكون واحدة من الدول التى لديها العديد من عوامل الجذب السياحى.

34. It is clear that transplantation of human body organs has developed greatly through the recent years.

أ. أصبح من المسلم به أن عمليات نقل أعضاء الجسم البشرى قد تطورت كثيرًا خلال السنوات الأخيرة.

ب. من الواضح أن عمليات نقل أعضاء الجسم البشرى قد تطورت كثيرًا خلال السنوات الأخيرة.

جـ. أصبح من المؤكد أن عمليات نقل أعضاء الجسم البشرى قد تطورت كثيرًا عبر السنوات الأخيرة.

د. من الواضح أن عمليات نقل الجسم البشرى قد تتطور كثيرًا عبر السنوات الحديثة.

Choose the best English translation :

٣٥. أصبحت الطبيعة أحد أكبر أعداء الإنسان فى الفترة الأخيرة، فهل تعتقد أن الطبيعة تثأر مما فعله الإنسان بها؟

a. Recently, nature has became one of man's biggest enemies. Do you think nature revenge what man has done with it?

b. Nature is becoming one of the biggest enemies that man had lately. Do you think that nature revenges what man has done with it?

c. Recently, nature has become one of man's biggest enemies. Do you think that nature revenges what man has done with it?

d. Nature becomes one of the biggest enemies that man has lately. Do you think that nature revenge what man has done with it?

٣٦. نعلم جميعًا بأن أطفالنا هم من سيقوموا بتولى المسئولية فيما بعد ، وهذه هى سنة الحياة.

a. We all know that our children will take their responsibility afterwards and this is life normal.

b. We all know that our children will leave the responsibility afterwards and this is life norm.

c. We all know that our children will take the responsibility afterwards and this is life norm.

d. We all know that our children will take the responsibility forwards and this is life normal.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

37. We use "Consequently," in a paragraph or an essay to ..... *(LM)*

a. introduce the result of something.

b. give a reason for something.

c. give contrasting information.

d. introduce a summary of the main points.

38. A narrative essay's goal is to ..... (LM)
   a. convey an intense description of a particular place, object, or concept.
   b. adopt a specific position on an issue with the intention of persuading readers.
   c. tell readers a story, often about an experience that resulted in a powerful life-changing moment.
   d. advise you to research a theory, analyse evidence, elaborate on the idea, and present a clear and concise argument about the notion.

39. What is the main idea of this paragraph? (LM)

In our daily lives, technology plays a vital part. We use it in a variety of situations. However, I am a firm believer in wisely using technology in a manner that does not cause harm or addiction. It's important to remember that technology is a double-edged sword. That is why we must use technology in a way that is beneficial to all of us. I oppose those who advocate for widespread technological use at the price of human security and safety. Also, I am opposed to employing it in place of humans; in many sectors, technology cannot replace people. For example, teaching necessitates direct touch between students and teachers.

   a. The writer is in favour of the wise use of technology, bearing in mind not to let it harm or replace humankind in all fields.
   b. The writer is a believer in wisely using technology in a manner that does not cause harm or addiction, regardless of the possible unemployment of some people.
   c. The writer is a firm believer in the mass use of technology at the expense of man as long as we make profits.
   d. The writer is against the wise use of technology although it makes people's lives easier and more comfortable.

40. Which of the following is punctuated correctly? (LM)
   a. Rami it will be nice to see you again at my sister's wedding party next Thursday.
   b. Rami, it will be nice to see you again at my sister s wedding party next Thursday.
   c. Rami, it will be nice to see you again at my sister's wedding party next Thursday
   d. Rami, it will be nice to see you again at my sister's wedding party next thursday.

Answers of Te

ب عليها بشكل واضح ثم ظلل الدائرة

1.	(a)	(b)
2.	(a)	(b)
3.	(a)	(b)
4.	(a)	(b)
5.	(a)	(b)
6.	(a)	(b)
7.	(a)	(b)
8.	(a)	(b)
9.	(a)	(b)
10.	(a)	(b)
11.	(a)	(b)
12.	(a)	(b)
13.	(a)	
14.	(a)	
15.	(a)	
16.	(a)	
17.	(a)	
18.	(a)	
19.	(a)	
20.	(a)	

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

Answers

اسم الطالب (رباعيا) :

تعليمات: ظلل الدائرة المقابلة تمامًا للإجابة الصحيحة. إذا ظللت الدائرة أمام الإجابة الخطأ، اشطب عليها بشكل واضح ثم ظلل الدائرة المقابلة للإجابة الصحيحة.

1.	a	b	c	d	21.	a	b	c	d
2.	a	b	c	d	22.	a	b	c	d
3.	a	b	c	d	23.	a	b	c	d
4.	a	b	c	d	24.	a	b	c	d
5.	a	b	c	d	25.	a	b	c	d
6.	a	b	c	d	26.	a	b	c	d
7.	a	b	c	d	27.	a	b	c	d
8.	a	b	c	d	28.	a	b	c	d
9.	a	b	c	d	29.	a	b	c	d
10.	a	b	c	d	30.	a	b	c	d
11.	a	b	c	d	31.	a	b	c	d
12.	a	b	c	d	32.	a	b	c	d
13.	a	b	c	d	33.	د	ج	ب	أ
14.	a	b	c	d	34.	د	ج	ب	أ
15.	a	b	c	d	35.	a	b	c	d
16.	a	b	c	d	36.	a	b	c	d
17.	a	b	c	d	37.	a	b	c	d
18.	a	b	c	d	38.	a	b	c	d
19.	a	b	c	d	39.	a	b	c	d
20.	a	b	c	d	40.	a	b	c	d

General Exercises
for Al Azhar students on Unit 9

تنويه
للمزيد من التدريبات الأزهر الشريف - بنك الأسئلة

1. Finish the following dialogue :

Ahmed and Saeed are discussing a film shown called "The Gang" on TV.

Ahmed : What a strange film ! Did you watch it ?
Saeed : (1) ..... . How long did it last ?
Ahmed : (2) ..... .
Saeed : What's special about it ?
Ahmed : The actors performed well.
Saeed : (3) ..... ?
Ahmed : There was much violence that I didn't like.
Saeed : Which lesson did it teach you ?
Ahmed : (4) ..... .

2. Write a paragraph of one hundred and twenty (120) words on :

"The importance of inventors in our life"

.....

3. Translate into Arabic :

- My cell phone is my best friend. It's my lifetime to the outside world.

.....

4. Translate into English :

- ندين بالكثير للعلماء العظماء الذين غيّروا حياتنا باكتشافتهم.

.....

5. Answer the following question : (Islamic Selections) :

Which leading part did Khalid play after prophet Muhammed's death ?

.....

.....

.....

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

Part I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary & Derivatives المفردات الرئيسية والمشتقات

account (n)	حساب
agenda(n)	جدول أعمال - مصلحة
assume(d) (v)	يفترض
candidate(n)	مُرشَّح لوظيفة
career direction(n)	التَوَجُّه المهني
career(n)	مهنة
choice(n)	اختيار
common sense(n)	حُسنَ التَدَبُّر
consequences(n)	نتائج
consequently(adv)	لذلك/بالتالي
contribution(n)	مساهمة
cycling(n)	قيادة الدراجة
define(d) (v)	يُعرِّف
definition(n)	تعريف
effort(n)	جهد
extent(n)	مدي
feedback(n)	تغذية راجعة/تعقيب
follow(ed) (v)	يتبع
furthermore(adv)	بالإضافة إلي
helpfulness(n)	العَون - الاستعداد للمساعدة
hobby(n)	هواية
independently(adv)	بشكل مستقل
influence(d) (n/v)	تأثير
life experience(n)	خبرات الحياة
limit(n)	حدّ
mention(ed) (v)	يَذْكُر
mistake(n)	خطأ
occasion(n)	مناسبة
opportunity(n)	فُرَصة
overtime(n)	مع مرور الوقت
particular(adj)	خاص
passion(n)	شَغَف
presenter(n)	مُقدِّم
purpose(n)	غرض
pursue(d) (v)	يتحيَّن - يتعقَّب - يسعي إلي
regard(ed) (v)	يعتبر
reinvent	يُعيد تأهيل
responsibility(n)	مسئولية
retire(d) (v)	يتقاعد
specific(adj)	محدد - مُعيَّن
success(n)	النجاح
team player(n)	يجيد العمل ضمن فريق
therefore(adv)	لذلك
valuable(adj)	قيِّم
wisdom(n)	حكمة

Revision 3

Part II Language Study

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

avoid	prejudice يتجنب التحيُّز	make	a better impression on يترك انطباعاً أفضل عن
be	a success يكون ناجحاً		a career in يتخذ ... كمهنة
choose	a career direction يختار توجهاً وظيفياً		a mistake يُخطئ
do	a good job يُبلي بلاء حسناً		decisions يتخذ قرارات
	a training course يأخذ دورة تدريبية		a contribution in يقدم إسهاماً في
	an internship يقضي فترة تدريب مهني	miss	opportunities يُضيِّع الفُرَص
follow	your passion اتبع حدسك	pay	attention to يولي اهتمام بـ
gain	life experience يكتسب خبرات حياتية	play	a greater role يلعب دوراً أكبر
have	a passion for لديه شغف بـ	support	each other يدعم بعضهم البعض
	an influence on لديه تأثير علي	take	a day off يحصل على يوم إجازة
	little interest in لديه اهتمام قليل بـ	waste	time and energy يهدر الوقت والجهد
	their own agenda لديهم مصالح خاصة		

2 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a day off	يوم إجازة	in other words	بعبارة أخري
a part-time job	وظيفة بدوام جزئي	job title	المُسمَّى الوظيفي
allow ... to do	يُمكن ... أن يفعل ...	jobs connected to	وظائف مرتبطة بـ
apply for	يتقدم بطلب لـ	lead to people not doing	تؤدي إلى عدم قيام الناس بـ
as I mentioned earlier	كما ذكرت من قبل	limit to	حدود لـ
at a young age	في سن صغير	miss out on	يُفوِّت - يُضيِّع
be there for each other	يدعمون بعضهم البعض	on my own	دون مساعدة / بمفردي
care about	يهتم بـ	on this occasion	بهذه المناسبة
change overtime	يتغير مع مرور الوقت	piece of wisdom	قول أو فعل حكيم
come through	يظهر - يبدو	put a lot of effort into	يبذل مجهوداً كبيراً في
decide for themselves	يقررون بأنفسهم		

each other	بعضنا البعض	respond to	رد على
feel like	يرغب في/يريد	senior manager	مدير أول
focus on	يُركز على	take … into account	يضع … في الاعتبار
for me	بالنسبة لي	the area I work in	نطاق عملي
go on	يحدُث	the reason why	السبب في أن
hear … in online talks	يسمع … في نقاشات على الإنترنت	what is going on	ما يحدُث
in general	بصفة عامة	work-life balance	التوازن بين الحياة العملية والحياة الشخصية

Reading & Listening Texts

1 Reading Texts

Is 'follow your passion' good advice ?

(SB page 36)

We see it on social media, hear it in online talks and some teachers say it to their students: 'Follow (1) your passion'(2) In other words, decide what you really like doing and then find a job where you can do it. Is this a helpful piece of wisdom (3) that helps people choose a career (4) direction(5), or something which common sense (6) shows to be bad advice ?

The reason why we're told to follow our passion is the belief that if you do a job you enjoy, you'll be happy. However, few people today do the same job until they retire (7). Most will have to reinvent (8) themselves, so one passion isn't enough.

Also, if you focus on just one passion and only apply for jobs connected to it, you could miss out on (9) other opportunities(10). These may be more interesting than the ones you're pursuing (11) or help you to gain valuable (12) life experience.

We assume (13) young people all have a passion, but many don't. While they're worrying that they don't have a passion, many people miss opportunities to make a contribution (14) in other areas. Most of us need time and experience to realise what we love doing and this can change over time (15).

Check Vocabulary

(1)	يتبع
(2)	شغف
(3)	حكمة
(4)	مهنة
(5)	توجه
(6)	حسن التدبر
(7)	يتقاعد
(8)	يعيد تأهيل
(9)	يُفوت / يُضيع
(10)	فرص
(11)	يتحين / يتعقب / يسعى إلى
(12)	قيم
(13)	يفترض
(14)	مساهمة
(15)	مع مرور الوقت

Revision 3

An opinion essay

The purpose(1) of this essay is to discuss the extent(2) to which parents should have an influence(3) on young people's career choices(4). In my opinion, young people should listen carefully to their parents' opinions and take these views into account, but they should also use their own ideas to make their final decisions.

An important reason why young people should listen to their parents is that their parents have more life experience than they do. They have usually seen the consequences(5) of doing a specific(6) training course or taking a particular(7) job so they can use their wisdom to give their children helpful advice.

Furthermore(8), young people should listen to their parents because these are the people who are most interested in helping them and really want them to succeed in life. Consequently(9), they will put a lot of effort(10) into advising their children.

However, as I mentioned(11) earlier, there are limits(12) to the helpfulness(13) of parents' career advice. Each young person has to decide for themselves which career to choose because they will have to work in this area for years. Therefore(14), they need to find a career direction which allows them to do work they enjoy and they are good at. Parents may also have their own hopes and dreams regarding(15) their children's careers and sing them to do a specific job because they had wanted to do or because they see a particular job as a good one to have.

In conclusion, I would state that although young people should pay attention(16) to their parents' advice, they should make the final decision independently(17).

(SB page 39)

Check Vocabulary

(1) غرض
(2) مدى
(3) تأثير
(4) اختيار
(5) نتائج
(6) محدد - معين
(7) خاص
(8) بالإضافة إلى
(9) لذلك/ بالتالى
(10) جهد
(11) ذكرت
(12) حدود
(13) الإفادة
(14) لذلك - ومن
(15) فيما يخص
(16) يولى اهتمام
(17) بشكل مستقل

Definitions of success

(SB page 38)

Nehal : When I think of success, I think of being successful in the area I work in. I'm a news presenter(1), so for me, it's reporting the news and writing good news stories which tell people what is going on(2) in the world.

Hassan: Success is something that's difficult to define(3), but for me, it's about having a good work-life balance(4). I need to work, but I also want to have enough time for my friends and family.

Zeinab : A lot of people think that success is working as hard as you can, but, in my opinion, it is about being able to take a day off(5) to relax or to do your favourite hobby(6).

Omar : I feel like(7) I am a success when I look at my wife and my children. We're all healthy and happy and we have a nice home to live in. We make each other(8) laugh and support each other.

Tarek : For me, success is about my job title(9). So, if you have a job title that shows you have a lot of responsibility(10), like 'Senior manager'(11), that shows people that you're a success.

Eman : I think you know that you are successful when you have a lot of money in your bank account(12). Then you can buy and do anything you want.

Check Vocabulary
(1) مقدم
(2) يحدث
(3) يعرف
(4) التوازن بين الحياة العملية والحياة الشخصية
(5) يوم أجازة
(6) هواية
(7) يرغب أن
(8) بعضنا البعض
(9) المسمى الوظيفي
(10) مسئوليات
(11) مدير أول
(12) حساب

2 Listening Texts

Fatima's internship interview

(SB page 37)

Interviewer: Hello Fatima! Nice to meet you!

Fatima : Yeah, you too!

Interviewer: So, let me start by asking why you'd like to do internship at our library.

Fatima : Well, it is quite near to where I live. My mum has thought it would be a good idea, too.

Interviewer: Have you visited the library regularly then?

Fatima : Well, no. I like to read but I usually read e-books(1) now.

Interviewer: OK. Well, let's take a look at(2) your CV. I see you are going to leave school soon. What subjects do you enjoy doing?

Fatima : My favourite subject is sport. I like to be out in the fresh air. But I like reading too.

Interviewer: So if you enjoy sports, I imagine you have experience of working in a team.

Fatima : Yes, I do. I'd say I'm quite good at that. I'm head(3) of the basketball team.

Interviewer: Great. We need team players here. And have you been doing a weekend job while you've been at school?

Fatima : No, I haven't. I found it hard to fit in with(4) school work and sports practice.

Interviewer: OK, Fatima. We will leave it there(5). I'll email you next week to inform you about whether we've chosen you to do the internship we're offering from the start of October.

Fatima : Thank you for seeing me.

Check Vocabulary

(1) كتاب الكتروني
(2) يلقي نظرة علي
(3) قائد/رئيس
(4) يتأقلم مع
(5) نكتفي بهذا القدر



LESSONS 1 & 2

SB pages 42 - 45 WB pages 24 & 25

Part I Vocabulary & Definitions

تنويه • اختبر مدى اتقانك للمفردات الرئيسية فى كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

bargain (n)	صفقة	monument(n)	أثر (مفرد آثار)
column(n)	عمود	myth(n)	أسطورة/ خُرَافَة
come across(phr. v)	يجد بالصدفة	pick up (phr. v)	يشتري (بسعر جيد)
dedicated(adj)	مُخصَّص/مُكرَّس - متفاني	picturesque(adj)	خلاب - بديع المنظر
devoted(adj)	مُخصَّص/مُكرَّس	port(n)	ميناء
dig up (phr. v)	يقتلع - يعثر على - يستخرج	remains(n)	بقايا/أطلال
hand in (phr. v)	يُسلِّم (شئ لشخص مسئول)	temple(n)	مَعبَد
heritage site(n)	موقع تراث	tourist attraction	عامل جذب سياحي
landmark(n)	مَعلَم بارز/ حدث هام		

تنويه • المفردات اللغوية باللون الأحمر هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية.

2 Important Vocabulary

appreciate(d) (v)	يُقدِّر/يُثمِّن	location(n)	موقع
archaeological(adj)	أثريّ	mark(ed) (v)	يُميِّز - يُحدِّد
archaeologist(n)	عالم أثار	Mediterranean(n)	البحر المتوسط
archaeology(n)	علم الأثار	mummy(n)	مومياء
arts(n)	الفنون/العلوم	mural(n)	لوحة جدارية
associated(adj)	مصحوب – مُصاحب	Muse(n)	ربّة الإلهام
authority(n)	السُلطة	observatory(n)	مَرْصَد
belong(ed) (v)	يخص/ينتمي	official(adj)	رسمي
bury(ied) (v)	يدفن	original(adj)	أصلي
carve(d) (v)	ينحت	owner(n)	مالك/صاحب
cellar(n)	دهليز/ سرداب/ قَبو	painting(n)	لوحة - الرسم بالألوان
chance(n)	حَظ/ مصادفة - فُرصة	palace(n)	قصر
civilisation(n)	حضارة	pillar(n)	عمود
classify(ied) (v)	يُصنِّف	position(n)	وظيفة - مكانة - مكان
contemporary(adj)	مُعاصر	powerful(adj)	قوي
cultural(adj)	ثقافي	preserved(adj)	مُحنَّط - محفوظ
destroy(ed) (v)	يُدمِّر	pretty(adj)	جميل

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

destruction (n)	الدمار
discovery (n)	اكتشاف
diversity (n)	التنوع – التعددية
document (n)	وثيقة
downwards (adv)	لأسفل
earthquake (n)	زلزال
elaborate (adj)	مُتقَن / مشغول بعناية – مُعقَّد
entrance (n)	مَدخَل
evidence (n)	دليل
expedition (n)	بعثة استكشافية
explore (d) (v)	يستكشف
extinct (adj)	مُنقرِض
farmhouse (n)	منزل ريفي
fort (n)	حصن / قلعة
god (n)	إله / رب
goddess (n)	إلهة – ربّة
guard (ed) (v/n)	يحرُس – حارس
heritage (n)	تُراث
hilltop (n)	قمة تَل
home (n)	موطن / مَقَرّ
honour (ed) (n/v)	شرف – يُكرِّم
impressive (adj)	مُبهِر – رائع
inhabit (ed) (v)	يسكن / يقطن
interest (ed) (n/v)	اهتمام – يُثير اهتمام
interpret (ed) (v)	يُفسِّر / يُحلِّل – يترجم
lighthouse (n)	منارة
ramp (n)	مُنحدَر
recognise (d) (v)	يتعرَّف على
region (n)	منطقة
reign (n)	حُكم – فترة قيادة
rocky (adj)	صخر / صخري
royal (n)	مَلَكيّ
ruins (n)	حُطام / أطلال
sacred (adj)	مُقدَّس
sculpture (n)	تمثال – فن النحت
single (n)	منفرد
statue (n)	تمثال
structure (n)	مبنَى / بِناء
surround (ed) (v)	يُحيط بـ
tongue (n)	لسان
tour (n)	جولة
traditions (n)	التقاليد
unclear (adj)	غير واضح
uncover (ed) (v)	يكتشف – يكشف عن
underneath (adv)	أسفل من – تحت
unearth (ed) (v)	يستخرج بالحفر في التربة
UNESCO (n)	منظمة اليونسكو
union (n)	اتحاد
well (n)	بئر
well-paid (adj)	مُجزٍي
wonders (n)	عجائب
worth (adj)	يساوي / يستحق

3 Definitions تعريفات

bargain (n) صفقة	something on sale معروض للبيع cheaper than its real value
column (n) عمود	a tall solid صلب upright رأسي stone post عمود used to support a building or as a decoration
come across (phr. v) يجد بالصدفة	to find something by chance بالصدفة
dedicated (adj) مُخصَّص / مُكرَّس	made for or used for only one particular purpose غرض مُعيَّن

dig up (phr. v) يعثر علي/يستخرج	to remove يزيل something from the ground
hand in (phr. v) يُسلِّم	to give something to someone in authority
heritage site(n) موقع تراث عالمي	a place which has a historic importance
landmark(n) مَعلَم بارز	an important building or object شئ
myth(n) أُسطُورَة/ خُرَافَة	an ancient story that may or may not be true
pick up (phr. v) يشتري	to buy something cheaply
picturesque(adj) خلّاب - بديع المنظر	a word to describe something beautiful and possibly old
port(n) ميناء	a town or city with a harbour مَرسي or docks رصيف شحن where ships can be loaded يشحن or unloaded يُفرّغ
remains(n) بقايا/أطلال	the parts of something that are left after the rest has been destroyed or has disappeared
temple(n) مَعبَد	a building used for a religious ديني reason
tourist attraction عامل / مكان جذب سياحي	a place that many tourists visit

Exercise On Vocabulary • Understand

• ✪ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

I Key vocabulary

1. The Eiffel Tower is probably the most famous ..... in Paris. (LM)
   a. land tenancy b. landfall c. landmark d. landfill
2. The Karnak ..... dates back from around 2055 BC to around 100 AD. (LM)
   a. temple b. oasis c. mountain d. river
3. I live in a quiet fishing village with a/an ..... harbour which is really fantastic. (LM)
   a. picturesque b. ugly c. ordinary d. dull
4. The ancient tomb contained the fossilised ..... of extinct animals. (LM)
   a. pillars b. remains c. temples d. forts

5. Mohamed Mashally was known as the doctor of the poor; he ..... his life to treating them for free. (LM)
a. prevented b. appeared c. dedicated d. educated

6. El-Karnak is Luxor's best-known ..... .
a. port b. remain c. landmark d. column

7. I ..... the documents to the manager in person.
a. pick up b. hand in c. come across d. dig up

8. This is just a .....; nothing like that did happen.
a. myth b. heritage site c. tourist attraction d. remain

9. Anees Mansour used to write a daily ..... in Al-Ahram.
a. port b. temple c. landmark d. column

10. This is an original spare part قطعة غيار. Where have you ..... it up?
a. picked b. handed c. come d. dug

11. The Great Pyramid is Egypt's best-known ..... .
a. myth b. bargain c. tourist attraction d. remains

12. Port Said is one of Egypt's important ..... .
a. ports b. temples c. banks d. columns

13. These temples were ..... to ancient Egyptian gods.
a. picturesque b. dictated c. devoted d. b & c

14. While I was searching for the contract عقد of the house, I ..... a 90-year-old photo of my grandfather.
a. picked on b. handed in c. came across d. buried up

15. According to the UNESCO, Saint Catherine is a World ..... .
a. Myth b. Heritage Site
c. Tourist Attraction d. Remains

16. I ..... the small tree to move it. It had deep roots.
a. picked of b. handed in c. came across d. dug up

2 Important Vocabulary

17. Do you know where the..... of Qaitbey lies? (LM)
a. fort b. lighthouse c. ferry d. temple

18. The impressive modern Bibliotheca Alexandrina is one of the most important..... landmarks in the city. (LM)
a. ancient b. unknown c. contemporary d. temporary

19. Human life is ..... . All religions prohibits تُحرّم any aggression اعتداء against it.
a. sacred b. elaborate c. dedicated d. picturesque

20. This area of the forest hasn't ever been ..... . No one has gone there ever.
a. appreciated b. carved c. classified d. explored

21. A civilized citizen respects the ..... of opinions. People do not agree on everything.
a. chance b. diversity c. bank d. evidence

22. When an employee gets a good salary, then they have a/an ..... job.
a. original b. preserved c. royal d. well-paid

23. The ancient Egyptians .....the Nile Valley and the Delta thousands of years ago.
a. surrounded b. unearthed c. marked d. inhabited

24. An old night watchman ..... this villa.
a. interprets b. guards c. uncovers d. honours

25. The Egyptian Football National Team made great achievements in the ..... of Captain Hassan Shehata.
a. reign b. wonder c. ruins d. observatory

26. A/An ..... is a painting that is painted on a wall, either inside or outside a building.
a. lighthouse b. mummy c. mural d. archaeology

27. There're dangerous side effects ..... with taking this medicine.
a. associated b. extinct c. royal d. well-paid

28. Massive concrete ..... support the roof of the building.
a. cellars b. traditions c. ramps d. pillars

29. In ancient Greek myths, ... were goddesses of science and art who inspired creative people.
a. honours b. interests c. Muses d. sculptures

30. The internet is based on ..... digital networking. It is nothing simple.
a. sacred b. elaborate c. dedicated d. picturesque

31. Most teachers and students ..... the role El-Moasser plays in teaching English in Egypt.
a. appreciate b. carve c. classify d. explore

32. I haven't planned to score the goal this way, it all happened by ..... .
a. chance b. diversity c. bank d. evidence

33. Ancient Egyptian mummies were ..... in a special process.
a. original b. preserved c. royal d. well-paid

34. These monuments are part of our national ..... .
a. document b. expedition c. fort d. heritage

35. This tower ..... the city centre.
a. surrounds b. unearths c. marks d. inhabits

36. There are ..... differences between the Europeans and the Arabs.
a. archaeological b. cultural c. well-paid d. official

37. The lighthouse of Alexandria no longer exists. Its ..... were found under water.
a. reigns b. wonders c. ruins d. observatories

38. In the past, ... were used mainly to guide ships.
a. lighthouses b. mummies c. murals d. archeologies

39. Wearing a white dress for the wedding is a worldwide ..... .
a. structure b. tradition c. ramp d. pillar

40. There're so many places of ..... to visit in Aswan.
a. structure b. interest c. Muse d. sculpture

41. Tomatoes are ..... as fruit, not vegetables.
a. appreciated b. carved c. classified d. explored

42. There's no ..... against him, so he has been set free.
a. chance b. diversity c. bank d. evidence

43. Prince Harry is a member of the ..... family.
a. original b. preserved c. royal d. well-paid

44. This ..... proves that you have sold the villa to me. It has your signature.
a. document b. expedition c. fort d. heritage

45. A team of archaeologists have ..... a royal tomb full of golden antiquities.
a. surrounded b. unearthed c. marked d. inhabited

46. The prime minister declared tomorrow as a/an ..... holiday on the occasion of 23rd July Revolution anniversary. ذكري سنوية
a. archaeological b. contemporary c. cultural d. official

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

47. A team of scientists are..... the research to draw conclusions.
a. interpreting b. guarding c. covering d. honouring

48. The building on top of the mountain is a/an ..... from which scientists watch the moon, stars, planets etc.
a. reign b. wonder c. ruins d. observatory

49. A/An ..... is the dead body of a human preserved in a special process.
a. lighthouse b. mummy c. mural d. archaeology

50. Modern buildings have ..... for wheelchairs.
a. forts b. traditions c. ramps d. pillars

51. A big party was given in the ..... of the visiting King.
a. honour b. interest c. Muse d. sculpture

52. This temple is ..... into a rocky cliff.
a. appreciated b. carved c. classified d. explored

53. The Valley of the Kings is on the west ..... of the Nile.
a. chance b. diversity c. bank d. evidence

54. This is a fake copy of the painting. The ..... one is kept in the museum.
a. original b. cultural c. contemporary d. well-paid

55. The team of scientists have gone on a/an ..... to the western desert.
a. document b. expedition c. fort d. heritage

56. A high fence ..... the farm.
a. surrounds b. unearths c. grows d. inhabits

57. The police secure the ..... excavations التنقيب near the pyramids and the scientists working there.
a. archaeological b. contemporary c. cultural d. official

58. The investigator succeeded in ..... the trick of the gang.
a. inhabiting b. guarding c. uncovering d. honouring

59. The Lighthouse of Alexandria was one of the ..... of the ancient world.
a. reigns b. wonders c. ruins d. mummies

60. ..... is the study of ancient societies by examining what remains of their buildings, graves, tools etc.
a. Lighthouse b. Mummy c. Mural d. Archaeology

61. This volcano is ..... . It has not erupted since 1129.
a. associated b. extinct c. royal d. well-paid

62. The Great Pyramid is the tallest ..... the ancient Egyptians built.
a. structure b. tradition c. fort d. pillar

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

3 Definitions

63. A ..... is a place which has a historic importance.
a. myth b. heritage site
c. tourist attraction d. remains

64. To ..... is to buy something cheaply.
a. pick up b. hand in c. come across d. dig up

65. A ..... is an important building or object.
a. port b. temple c. landmark d. column

66. To ..... is to give something to someone in authority.
a. pick up b. hand in c. come across d. dig up

67. ..... are the parts of something that are left after the rest has been destroyed or has disappeared.
a. Myth b. Heritage site c. Tourist attraction d. Remains

68. To ..... is to find something by chance.
a. pick up b. hand in c. come across d. dig up

69. A ..... is a town or city with a harbour or docks where ships can be loaded or unloaded.
a. port b. temple c. landmark d. column

70. A ..... is a place that many tourists visit.
a. myth b. heritage sight c. tourist attraction d. remains

71. A ..... is a building used for a religious reason.
a. port b. temple c. landmark d. column

72. ..... means made for or used for only one particular purpose.
a. Sacred b. Elaborate c. Dedicated d. Picturesque

73. A ..... is a tall solid upright stone post used to support a building or as a decoration.
a. port b. temple c. landmark d. column

74. A ..... is something on sale cheaper than its real value.
a. myth b. bargain c. tourist attraction d. remains

75. The adjective ..... describes something beautiful and possibly old.
a. sacred b. elaborate c. dedicated d. picturesque

76. A .....is an ancient story that may or may not be true.
a. myth b. heritage site
c. tourist attraction d. remain

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

UNIT 10

Part II Vocabulary Study

تنويه ساعد مُعلمك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مُسبقًا بشكل جيد.

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

celebrate	traditions	يحتفل بالتقاليد	lead	downwards	يؤدي لأسفل
interpret	research	يُفسِّر/يُحلِّل البحث	make	a conclusion	يتخذ

Mini Test 1 Collocations

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. This passage ..... downwards under the pyramid.
   a. leads b. makes c. interprets d. celebrates
2. The conclusion you have ..... is not persuasive. مُقنع
   a. led b. made c. interpreted d. celebrated
3. Experts will ..... the research to make use of its findings.
   a. lead b. make c. interpret d. celebrate

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
chance(n)	حظ/ مصادفة	luck
come across (phr. v)	يجد بالصدفة	run into / find by chance / meet by chance
contemporary(adj)	مُعاصر	modern / present-day
dedicated(adj)	متفاني	committed / devoted
dig up (phr. v)	يكتشف	uncover
dig up (phr. v)	يستخرج بالحفر	unearth
elaborate(adj)	مُتقَن/مشغول بعناية	intricate / detailed
elaborate(adj)	مُعقَّد	complex / complicated
myth(n)	أُسطورة/ خُرافة	fallacy
picturesque(adj)	خلّاب-بديع المنظر	attractive

3 Antonyms متضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)	
contemporary(adj)	مُعاصر	old-fashioned / out of date	عفا عليه الزمن
elaborate(adj)	مُعقَّد	simple	بسيط
picturesque(adj)	خلَّاب – بديع المنظر	ugly	قبيح
dedicated(adj)	متفاني	apathetic / indifferent / unresponsive	غير مبالي

Mini Test 2 Synonyms & Antonyms

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. "This is an elaborate system." The adjective 'elaborate' here is a synonym of ..... .
   a. simple b. complicated c. complex d. b & c
2. A place that is picturesque is .....
   a. attracted b. attractive c. ugly d. ugliness
3. "He dug up some secret news." This means he ..... some secret news.
   a. told b. covered c. uncovered d. unearthed
4. Which of the following is an antonym of "contemporary"?
   a. old-fashioned b. fashioned c. fashionable d. modern
5. When you are dedicated, you are not ..... .
   a. devoted b. committed c. a & b d. apathetic
6. When you are dedicated, you are ..... .
   a. devoted b. committed c. a & b d. apathetic

4 Derivatives المشتقات

Verb	Noun	Adjective
attract يجذب/يشد انتباه	attraction جذب -جاذبية – عامل جذب	attractive جذاب
bargain يتفاوض (على صفقة)	bargain صفقة	
dedicate يُكرِّس/يُخصِّص – يتفانى	dedication تفاني – تكريس	dedicated مُخصَّص/مُكرَّس – متفاني

		myth mythology	خرافة/ أسطورة خرافة	mythological	أساطيري
remain	يبقي/يظل	remains remainder	بقايا المتبقي - بقية	remaining	

Mini Test 3 Derivatives

• **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. Although I shouted at him, he ..... silent.
   a. remaining b. remains c. remained d. the remainde
2. Most students got off the bus. The ..... students sat in silence.
   a. remaining b. remains c. remained d. the remainde
3. Ten divided by three gives you 3 with ..... of one.
   a. remaining b. remains c. remained d. remainder
4. The ..... of our lunch were still on the table.
   a. remaining b. remains c. remained d. the remainde
5. Egyptian monuments ..... tourists from all over the world.
   a. attract b. attraction c. attractions d. attractive
6. Egyptian monuments are ..... to tourists from all over the world.
   a. attract b. attraction c. attractions d. attractive
7. Egyptian monuments are a source of ..... to tourists from all over the world.
   a. attract b. attraction c. attractions d. attractive
8. Egypt's so many tourist ..... make it one of the leading countries in this field.
   a. attract b. attraction c. attractions d. attractive
9. My wife ..... all her time to our family.
   a. dedicate b. dedicates c. dedication d. a & c
10. To be perfect needs a great deal of ..... .
    a. dedicate b. dedicates c. dedication d. a & c

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

archaeological remains	بقايا أثرية
associated with	مصحوب بـ
BCE	قبل الميلاد
(be) dedicated to	مُكرَّس لـ/ مُخصَّص لـ
(be) home to	يكون موطناً لـ
(be) worth around	يُقدَّر بما يقرب من
Bibliotheca Alexandrina	مكتبة الإسكندرية
cruise ships	سفن الرحلات البحرية
cultural interest	أهمية ثقافية
fact file	ملف حقائق
Fort Qaitbey	قلعة قايتباي
Hellenistic period	الحقبة الهلنستية
historical site	موقع تاريخي
in authority	في السُلطة
in future years	في سنوات تالية
known as	معروف كـ
Mediterranean port	ميناء على البحر المتوسط
official document	وثيقة رسمية
on the banks of	على ضفاف
painted in pretty colours	مُلوَّن بألوان جميلة
Pompey's Pillar	عمود السواري
port city	مدينة ساحلية
real value	القيمة الحقيقية
rocky hilltop	قمة تل صخري
Royal Observatory	المَرْصَد المَلَكيّ
Seven Wonders of the Ancient World	عجائب العالم القديم السبعة
the nine goddesses of the arts	آلهة الفنون التسعة
top tourist sites	أهم المواقع السياحية
water well	بئر مياه
welcome to	أهلاً بـ ... في
World Heritage Site	موقع تراث عالمي

6 Synonymous Expressions تعبيرات مترادفة

by chance = by luck = unintentionally بالمصادفة	**on sale** = available to be bought at a lower price than usual عليه عرض/عليه خصم- معروض بسعر مُخفَّض
offer to = make an offer to يعرض أن	**That's a good point** = That's a good fact, idea, opinion هذه نقطة (فكرة/حقيقة/وجهة نظر) جيدة
for sale = available to be bought in a shop معروض للبيع	

7 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

belong to	يخص – ينتمي لـ
classify ... as	يُصنِّف ... كـ
come across	يصادف – يجد بالصدفة
dedicate ... to	يُخصِّص ... لـ – يُكرِّس ... لـ
dig up	يستخرج – يُنقِّب عن
end up in	ينتهي ... في
get off	ينزل من
get on	يركب / يستقل وسيلة مواصلات
go up	يصعد – يرتفع
hand in	يُسلِّم
pick up	يشتري – يلتقط

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

Mini Test 4 Expressions, Prepositions & Idioms

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Which of the following is used when we want to say that something happened unintentionally?
   a. By oneself b. On purpose c. By chance d. Intentionally
2. Salah is classified ..... one of the best players in the world.
   a. as b. to c. into d. by
3. The police arrested some people digging ..... some very valuable golden sculptures.
   a. down b. up c. into d. a & b
4. The statue ended ..... a museum in Cairo.
   a. up in b. on c. into d. up
5. "There's a good sweater on sale." This means that you can .....
   a. buy it in a shop b. sell it
   c. buy it at a lower price than usual d. a & c
6. Mosques, churches and temples are mainly dedicated ..... religious rituals. طقوس
   a. as b. to c. into d. by
7. I can't leave the report to the secretary. It is to be handed ..... to the manager in person.
   a. in b. of c. about d. from
8. Welcome ..... Aswan.
   a. on b. to c. off d. about
9. In this area, there are some villages on the banks of the ..... .
   a. sea b. ocean c. river d. a, b & c
10. When you say "success depends on hard work"; that's a good .....
    a. point b. fact c. opinion d. a, b & c
11. When I come ..... someone, this means I meet them by chance.
    a. into b. cross c. across d. to
12. I have picked this camera ..... at an online store.
    a. of b. off c. in d. up

8 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

column - pillar

يُمكن استخدام كل من (column/pillar) بمعني عمود (كمَبنَي أو جزء من مَبنَي):
عمود (مبني/ جزء من مَبنَي)

• column = pillar (n)
- Twelve columns support the roof.
= Twelve pillars support the roof.

يُمكن استخدام (column) بمعني عمود (في جدول/في صحيفة):
عمود (في جدول/في صحيفة)

• column (n)
- The vocabulary table in El-Moasser has four columns. (Not: four pillars)
- The article was written in one column. (Not: one pillar)

يُمكن استخدام (column) بمعني (مقال صحفي):
مقال صحفي

• column (n)
- I write a weekly science column in this magazine. (Not: science pillar)

يُمكن استخدام (column) بمعني (طابور متحرك):
طابور متحرك/صف متحرك

• column (n)
- The soldiers were organised in columns. (Not: in pillars)

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية الخاصة بـ (column) بـ:

- a newspaper column عمود أو مقال صحفي
- an editorial column مقال افتتاحي لرئيس التحرير
- a smoke column عمود دخان
- write/have a column يكتب مقال/عمود

يُمكن استخدام (pillar) بمعني (شخص هام):
شخص هام/رُكن هام

• pillar (n)
- A parliament member is supposed to be an important pillar of their community. (Not: an important column)

يُمكن استخدام (pillar) بمعني (عنصر/رُكن هام):
عنصر/ رُكن هام

• pillar (n)
- Responsible freedom الحرية المسئولة is a necessary pillar of a modern society. (Not: a necessary column)

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية الخاصة بـ (pillar) بـ:

- a pillar of society شخص هام او بارز في المجتمع
- a pillar strength شخص داعم (سَنَد)
- a pillar of dust / smoke / flame عمود من الغبار/ الدخان / اللهب

in order/on order

• **put .... in order**
- Put your ideas in order when you prepare a talk. رتّب / يُسلسل

• **(be) in order** بالترتيب الصحيح / حسب التسلسل الصحيح
- Everything is in order.

• **(be) in order**
- My passport is still in order. قانوني/ساري

• **(be) on order** مطلوب للشراء، لكن لم يتم تسليمه للمشتري بعد
- My new laptop is still on order. It is being delivered next Monday.

in honour of

• **in honour of + someone** تشريفاً لـ - علي شرف (+شخص)
= to show admiration and respect for
- The company gave a big party in honour of the former manager.

• **in honour of + an event** احتفالاً بـ (+مناسبة/حَدَث)
= in celebration of
- The company gave a big party in honour of the opening a new branch.

in authority / in power

• **in authority = in the position of authority**
في موقع المسئولية (مسئولية بحكم الوظيفة)
- My father hasn't retired yet. He is still in authority as the manager of the bank.

• **in power = in the position of political power** في السُلطة (ذو وضع ونفوذ سياسي)
- After being elected by the majority of people, the president is now in authority.

BC – BCE – CE - AD

- BC = Before Christ قبل الميلاد
- BCE = Before the Common Era. قبل الحقبة العامة (قبل بداية التقويم الميلادي)
- CE = Common Era / the Christian Era / Current Era العصر المسيحي
- AD = Anno Domini بعد الميلاد

لاحظ أن BC غالبا تكتب بعد التاريخ لكن (AD) غالبا تكتب قبله :
- This mummy dates back to 3500 BC.
- The Roman invasion took place in AD 340.

structure - construction

• **structure**
. The structure of the human brain is complex. بناء - تركيب

• **structure**
. The High Dam is a massive structure. بناء - مَبْنَى

• **construction**
. The construction of the new hotel will probably take three years. بناء - تشييد

explore - invent - find out - discover

• **explore**
- I want to explore that old desert area around my village. يستكشف (شيء / مكان غريب)

• **invent**
. The Chinese invented paper. يخترع شيء جديد لم يكن موجود من قبل

• **find out**
- I found out that she keeps a cat in her bedroom. يكتشف (مصادفة) / يعرف

• **discover**
- Isaac Newton discovered gravity. يكتشف شيء كان موجود ولكنة غير معروف

- لكن لاحظ أن :

• **discover (a medicine / the femtosecond)**
- I hope scientists will discover a medicine for cancer.

Mini Test 5 Clear the Confusion

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The ..... of the High Dam took about ten years.
   a. structure b. construction c. a & b d. instruction
2. The High Dam is a massive ..... .
   a. structure b. construction c. a & b d. instruction
3. Mr Ashraf is an important ..... of El-Moasser team.
   a. pillar b. line c. column d. a & c

4. Most readers like your newspaper ..... .
   a. pillar b. line c. column d. a & c

5. The roof is supported with strong ..... .
   a. pillars b. lines c. columns d. a & c

6. He ..... the names of his students in alphabetical order.
   a. went b. did c. was d. put

7. When a document ..... in order, it is still legal and correct.
   a. goes b. does c. is d. put

8. **A :** Has your new tablet been delivered ?
   B : Not yet. It is still ..... order.
   a. in b. on c. of d. from

9. My salary visa is still ..... order. I can use it to pay for my new tablet.
   a. in b. on c. of d. from

10. Do you know who ..... the internet?
    a. explored b. found out c. discovered d. invented

11. I'd like very much to ..... the area behind the mountain.
    a. explore b. find out c. discover d. invent

12. I don't know how he could ..... about our new design.
    a. explore b. find out c. discover d. invent

13. Dr Zewail's team were able to ..... the femtosecond.
    a. explore b. find out c. discover d. invent

9 Master your Key Vocabulary كل ما يخص المفردات الرئيسية

come across

- **come across = meet ... by chance (phr. v)** يقابل بالصدفة
  - On my way home, I came across my cousin Eman.
- **come across = find ... by chance (phr. v)** يجد بالصدفة
  - I came across my lost keys while I was cleaning my room.
- **come across (as) = come over (as) (phr. v)** يوحي بأنه / يعطي انطباعاً بأنه
  - He comes across as a young gentleman when he talks to strangers.

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

dig up

dig up (phr. v) يقتلع/يستخرج
- Omar dug up two trees and planted them next to the gate.

dig up (phr. v) يعثر على/يجد
- Archaeologists have dug up a huge statue near Luxor.
- The police have dug up some evidence against them.

heritage

heritage (n) تُراث
- Heritage is the traditional beliefs, values, customs etc. of a family, country, or society.

- التراث هو المُتعارَف عليه من المعتقدات والقيم والعادات وما إلى ذلك، سواء بالنسبة للأسرة أو البلد أو المجتمع، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

- We are proud of our Arab heritage.
- It is our responsibility to protect our heritage.
- These monuments all belong to the cultural heritage of Egypt.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:
- cultural heritage التراث الثقافي
- architectural heritage التراث المعماري
- literary heritage التراث الأدبي
- archaeological heritage التراث الأثري

landmark - mark

landmark (n) مَعْلَم هام
- Cairo Tower is one of Cairo's important landmarks.
- The Lighthouse of Alexandria was the city's most valuable landmark.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:
- historic landmark مَعْلَم تاريخي
- prominent landmark مَعْلَم بارز
- famous/familiar/well-known landmark مَعْلَم معروف

landmark (n) حَدَث هام
- The discovery of a vaccine مصل for coronavirus was the most important landmark of 2021.
- The end of war was a landmark decision.

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- **landmark decision** قرار مرجعي (تاريخي)
- **landmark case** قضية مرجعية (يُقاس عليها)

• **mark (v)** يُصحح/يضع علامات
- Mr Baleegh is marking our quizzes.

• **mark (v)** يُحدِّد/يُميِّز
- This week marks the 21st anniversary of my parents' marriage.

• **mark = characterize (v)** يُميِّز
- Aswan is marked by the High Dam.

myth

• **myth = fallacy (n)** خُرافة/أسطورة
- The myth that children do not catch coronavirus was dispelled when thousands of children caught the disease. ثبت خطأها

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- create a myth يؤلِّف أسطورة
- dispel/explode a myth يدحض أسطورة
- a bit of a myth غير حقيقي
- the myths surrounding something الأساطير المرتبطة بشيء ما

• **mythic/mythical (adj)** عظيم/أسطوري
- Messi has been a mythic footballer for years.

pick up

• **pick ... up = lift ... up (phr. v)** يلتقط/يتناول ... بيده
- I picked up the letter and read it.
= I picked the letter up and read it.
= I lifted the letter up and read it.

• **pick ... up = (make ...) tidy (phr. v)** يُرتِّب
- I pick up my room before I leave for school.
= I pick my room up before I leave for school.
= I tidy my room before I leave for school.
= I make my room tidy before I leave for school.

• **pick ... up = get/win ... (phr. v)** يحصل علي/ يفوز بـ

- He has picked up two gold medals so far.
= He has picked two gold medals up so far.
= He has won two gold medals so far.

• **pick ... up = get/buy ... (phr. v)** يحصل علي/ يشتري (بسعر رخيص أو دون ترتيب مسبق)

- She picked up a pair of sunglasses yesterday.
= She picked a pair of sunglasses up yesterday.
= She bought a pair of sunglasses yesterday.

• **pick ... up (phr. v)** يوصّل/ يُقِلّ (في سيارة/مركب...)

- I picked up my daughter from her school.
= I picked my daughter up from her school.

• **pick up = get better/improve (phr. v)** يتحسن

- Prices pick up in the tourist season.
= Prices improve in the tourist season.

remains

• **remain = stay (v)** يَبقَي/يظل

- I repeated my question, but she remained silent.

• **remain as (v)** يَبقَي/يظل كـ

- Although he caused so many problems, he remained as a manager because there was no substitute.بديل

• **remain (in/at/with...) = stay (in/at/with...) (v)** يمكث/ يَبقَي

- Aya was ill, so she remained at home.

• **remains (n)** بقايا (دائماً جمع)

- The remains of the food are still on the table.

• **remains (n)** رُفات المتوفي (دائماً جمع)

- The remains of my grandfather were buried here.

• **remainder (n)** بقية/متبقي (من عملية طرح أو قسمة)

- Ten taken away from twelve gives you a remainder of two.

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

- **the remainder = the rest (n)** الباقي/المتبقي
  - Here is 25,000 pounds. The remainder will be paid within a week.
- **remaining (n)** (صفة تُستخدَم قبل الاسم فقط)
  - There's only one remaining question

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

- **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. When your parents are old, you must be a ..... of strength to them.
   a. column b. pillar c. mast d. a & b
2. Rodayna ..... very well in the interview.
   a. handed in b. picked up c. came across d. dug up
3. Those who hate you will always ..... your past searching for something against you.
   a. dig up b. devote to c. appreciate d. honour
4. I do not believe the ..... surrounding darkness and ghosts.
   a. heritages b. myths c. pillars d. sculptures
5. A ..... of smoke was going up from the chimney. المدخنة
   a. mast b. column c. pillar d. b & c

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	b	(column) يعني (سَنَد/عَون) ولا يمكن استخدام (a pillar of strength) التعبير في هكذا سياق.
2.	c	(come across) هنا يعني (يُعطي انطباعاً بأنه) الفعل الاصطلاحي
3.	a	(dig up your past) يعني (يفتش في ماضيك) التعبير
4.	b	(... the myths surrounding) يعني (الأساطير المتعلقة بـ ...) التعبير
5.	d	(a column of smoke) و (a pillar of smoke) كلاهما صحيح. التعبيران

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

Part III Reading & Listening

1 Reading Texts

Tapescript
نصوص
استماع الوحدة

London
Fact file

(SB page 42)

Visiting London ? Here are ten interesting facts you might not know ...



1. The most popular tourist attraction (1) in London is the British Museum.
2. Notting Hill in London has some very picturesque (2) streets with houses painted in pretty (3) colours.
3. The clock called Big Ben is perhaps the most famous landmark (4) in London and is known around the world!
4. The Queen's House is one of many heritage (5) sites in Greenwich, south London, which includes the Royal Observatory. (6)
5. A statue (7) of a famous sailor, Admiral Nelson, stands on a column (8) in Trafalgar Square that is 52 metres high.
6. The London Mithraeum, an ancient Roman temple of Mithras, was discovered in 1954.
7. The Port of London on the River Thames is the third largest port (9) in the UK.
8. A popular myth (10) is that when the Union (11) Flag is flying over Buckingham Palace, (12) the Queen is at home. (This is not actually (13) true; it means she is not at the Palace.)
9. The most impressive (14) remains (15) of London's Roman city wall can be found just outside the entrance (16) to Tower Hill Underground Station.
10. You can go up (17) the 62-metre-high tower in Fish Street, which is a monument (18) marking (19) the place where the Great Fire of London started in 1666.

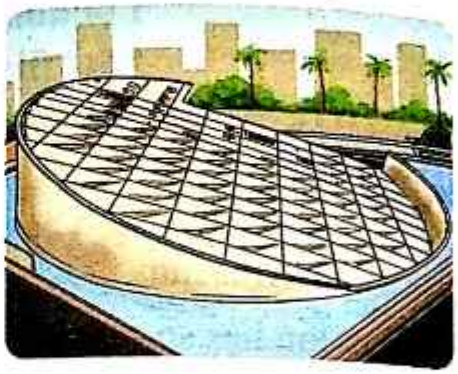
Check Vocabulary

(1) منطقة جذب سياحي
(2) خلّاب - بديع المنظر
(3) جميل
(4) مَعلَم
(5) تُراث
(6) المَرْصَد المَلَكيّ
(7) تمثال
(8) عمود
(9) ميناء
(10) أُسطُورَة/ خُرَافَة
(11) اتحاد
(12) قَصْر
(13) في الواقع
(14) مُبهِر - رائع
(15) بقايا / أطلال
(16) مَدخَل
(17) يصعد
(18) أثر
(19) يُميّز

Top tourist sites in Alexandria

1 Bibliotheca Alexandrina(1)

Alexandria is a Mediterranean(2) port city in Egypt. During the Hellenistic period(3) (between 323 BCE(4) and 31 BCE), it was home(5) to the Great Library of Alexandria, which was dedicated(6) to the Muses(7) (the nine goddesses(8) of the arts(9)) and it was one of the largest and most important libraries of the Ancient World.



Because of the Great Library, Alexandria became known as a centre(10) for knowledge(11) and learning(12). Built in around(13) 300 BCE, there are many myths surrounding(14) the destruction(15) of the library, but unfortunately there are no archaeological(16) remains. In its place today is the impressive modern Bibliotheca Alexandrina, built between 1995 and 2002. It is one of Egypt's most important contemporary(17) landmarks and the cultural(18) heart of the city. Apart from(19) its huge library and reading room, containing(20) more than eight million books, there are many museums where you can explore(21) Alexandria's history and heritage(22).

(SB page 4

Check Vocabulary

(1) مكتبة الإسكندرية
(2) البحر المتوسط
(3) الحقبة الهلنستية
(4) قبل الميلاد
(5) موطن/مقرّ
(6) متخصص/مكرّس
(7) ربات الإلهام
(8) الإلهات
(9) الفنون/العلوم
(10) مركز
(11) المعرفة
(12) التعلّم
(13) حوالي
(14) يُحيط بـ
(15) الدمار
(16) أثري
(17) مُعاصر
(18) ثقافي
(19) بخلاف/غير
(20) يحتوي على
(21) يستكشف
(22) تُراث

2 Lighthouse of Alexandria

The Lighthouse(1) of Alexandria was known as one of the Seven Wonders(2) of the Ancient World. It was the tallest structure(3) in the world until the Eiffel Tower was built in 1889. Built in 280 BCE, the lighthouse stood until hundreds of years later, when a powerful(4) earthquake(5) destroyed(6) it. In 1968, the remains of the lighthouse were discovered under water.



Check Vocabulary

(1) منارة
(2) عجائب
(3) مبني/بناء
(4) قوي
(5) زلزال
(6) يُدمّر

Other expeditions[7] in future years uncovered[8] more ruins[9] of the lighthouse. Today, on the site of the lighthouse stands Fort[10] Qaitbey which has guarded[11] the port of Alexandria since 1480. It's a very popular and picturesque tourist attraction.

(7) بعثة استكشافية
(8) يكتشف
(9) حُطام/أطلال
(10) حِصن/قلعة
(11) يحرُس

3 El Sawari Column : "Pompey's Pillar"

This single[1] stone[2] pillar[3], which is more than 20 metres tall, stands on a rocky[4] hilltop[5], in the middle of Alexandria. Built in 292 CE, it marks[6] the site of what was once a huge and elaborate[7] temple, the Temple of Serapeum, built during the reign[8] of Ptolemy[9] III Euergetes (246-221 BCE). It is one of the best-known ancient monuments[10] still standing in Alexandria today. Underneath[11] the column, steps lead[12] downwards[13] to the ruins of the Temple.



Check Vocabulary

(1) منفرد
(2) حجر/حجري
(3) عمود
(4) صخر/صخري
(5) قمة تل
(6) يُميّز - يُحدّد
(7) مُتقن / مشغول بعناية / مُعقّد
(8) حُكم
(9) بطليموس
(10) أثار
(11) أسفل
(12) يؤدّي
(13) لأسفل

Archaeology [1] news round the world

(SB page 44)

Virù, Peru

Ancient wall painting discovered in Peru

Archaeologists[2] in northern Peru have found a 3,200-year-old mural[3] - wall painting[4] - painted on the side of an ancient temple that is thought to show a Spider god, associated[5] with rain. Experts[6] say that because of the location[7] of the temple near the river, it must have been a temple built in honour[8] of the water gods[9]. It is thought that it might have belonged[10] to the extinct[11] Cupisnique people, who inhabited[12] the northern coast[13] of Peru between 2,000 and 1,000 BCE.



Check Vocabulary

(1) علم الآثار
(2) علماء الآثار
(3) لوحة جدارية
(4) لوحة
(5) مصحوب
(6) خبراء
(7) موقع
(8) شرف
(9) آلهة
(10) يخص/ينتمي
(11) مُنقرض
(12) يسكن/يقطن
(13) ساحل

Alexandria, Egypt

Mummies with gold tongues unearthed

Archaeologists have dug up(1) ancient mummies(2) bodies preserved(3) by a special process-(4) with gold(5) tongues(6) left in their mouths. These mummies, found in a temple in the port city(7) of Alexandria, are believed to be 2,000 years old. It is thought that the Ancient Egyptians might have given the mummies gold tongues, so they could speak to the god Osiris.

Check Vocabulary
(1) يكتشف/يستخرج
(2) مومياء
(3) محنط-محفوظ
(4) عملية
(5) ذهبي
(6) ألسنة
(7) مدينة ساحلية

Saxony-Anhalt, Germany

The police have found ancient treasures(1) in a farmhouse(2), after the owner(3) offered to hand in(4) two old guns from the Second World War (1939-45). They came across(5) 13 sculptures(6), dishes and cups which are 1,500 years old and are worth(7) around €100,000 in a plastic bag with the guns. They are from the Mayan Civilisation(8) of Mexico and Guatemala. The owner of the farmhouse had picked up(9) the treasures cheaply(10) in a market. It's unclear(11) why he buried(12) them in the cellar(13) of his farmhouse, but he can't have known their real value(14). It is thought that the original(15) owner may have bought them while travelling in South America.

Check Vocabulary
(1) كنوز
(2) منزل ريفي
(3) مالك/صاحب
(4) يُسلِّم
(5) يجد بالصدفة
(6) تماثيل
(7) يساوي/يستحق
(8) حضارة
(9) اشتري
(10) بثمن رخيص
(11) غير واضح
(12) يدفن
(13) طابق سرداب/ قبو
(14) قيمة
(15) أصلي

2 Listening Texts

(WB page 26)

Welcome to this picturesque location on the banks (1) of the River Nile. We are now at a very important landmark called Kom Ombo. What is Kom Ombo? Well, it is a temple dedicated to Sobek and Horus. You can see images of them on these stone columns.



Check Vocabulary
(1) ضفاف النهر

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

Not far away we can see how the remains of the nearby(2) town are mostly buried in sand.

Now, here you can see a small water well(3). Some believe sacred(4) crocodiles(5) were kept in the water here but others think it is just a myth. This is a very popular tourist attraction especially(6) for cruise ships sailing along the Nile between Luxor and Aswan. Although there is no large port for ships to stop at, you can still get on and off them nearby. UNESCO(7) has classified(8) this monument as a World heritage site(9) and I hope you appreciate(10) why.

(2) قريب
(3) بئر
(4) مُقدّس
(5) تمساح
(6) خاصة
(7) منظمة اليونسكو
(8) يُصنِّف
(9) موقع تراث عالمي
(10) يُقدِّر/يُثمِّن

Egypt's most important landmark

(WB page 26)

Taha : Hi Imad. So, are you ready to start with the homework ?

Imad: Hello Taha. Yes, but I really can't decide what the most important landmark(1) in Egypt is.

Taha : What about the Valley of the Kings(2) ?

Imad: Yes, that's a good suggestion. It's an important heritage site with so much to teach us, but let's not forget about The Egyptian Museum.

Taha : I'm not so sure about that. The museum isn't as picturesque as the Necropolis(3) in Giza, for example.

Imad: That's a good point. Perhaps we should choose the most beautiful monument(4).

Taha : I don't agree. Cultural heritage is more important because this is something that defines a culture.

Imad: That's true. Then what about the Pyramids at Giza ?

Taha : Yes, I agree. The Pyramids are probably the best option(5), I think.

Check Vocabulary

(1) مَعْلَم بارز
(2) وادي الملوك
(3) مقبرة كبيرة
(4) أثر
(5) اختيار

3 Video Script

(SB page 6

What is Stonehenge ? It's a man-made(1) prehistoric(2) monument in Wiltshire in the south of England. The ring of stones was first set up(3) 5,000 years ago. Researchers believe it might have been related to a religious(4) festival because the stones are lined up(5) with the Sun on the summer and winter solstices(6), which are the longest and shortest days of the year, when there is most and fewest hours of sunlight.

According to recent evidence(7) published on 12th February 2021, researchers say that the first stage of the building at Stonehenge was done by people from Wales, who moved the stones around 150 miles from an ancient stone circle in Pembrokeshire, in West Wales. Historians already know that some of the Stonehenge stones - called blue stones - came from Wales.

In 2017, archaeologists from University College in London began digging at the site in Wales, where four large stones remain. They discovered the remains(8) of an ancient stone circle with holes where between 30 and 50 other stones would have stood. The team worked out that the stones at the circle would have been the same type, size and shape as some of the stones at Stonehenge. The circle was made in the same way as Stonehenge and its stones lined up with the Sun.

It is not known why the stones were moved. Experts believe they must have been of great cultural(9) importance. Researchers are really excited by the new discovery.

Check Vocabulary

(1) صنع الإنسان
(2) ما قبل التاريخ
(3) بنيا - يؤسس
(4) ديني
(5) مُصطف
(6) انقلاب الشمس
(7) دليل حالي
(8) أطلال / بقايا
(9) ثقافي

Part IV Language

Modal verbs of deduction, advice and regret
الأفعال الناقصة الدالة على الاستنتاج والنصيحة والندم

Get ready استعد

١ الأفعال الناقصة المُستخدمة لعمل الاستنتاج – معانيها واستخداماتها كالتالى :

M.V. الفعل الناقص		Notes ملاحظات
must	لابد	– تستخدم للتعبير عن استنتاج مُثبَت مبنى على دليل قوى (شعور بالتأكد) : - He has eaten nothing all day. He must be hungry.
can't	لا يمكن	– تستخدم للتعبير عن استنتاج منفى مبنى على دليل قوى (شعور بالتأكد) : - He has eaten nothing all day. He can't be full.
might / may / could	ربما / من المحتمل / قد	– تستخدم للتعبير عن استنتاج مبنى على دليل ضعيف (عدم تأكد) : - I don't know why Sama isn't at the party. She might be ill. She may have a problem. She could be in a bad mood.

٢ الاستنتاج معلومة قائمة على دليل وليست معلومة يقينية – لاحظ الفرق فى المعنى :

- Bassem is an officer. (يقين – أعلم تماماً أنه ضابط)
- Bassem must be an officer. He wears a uniform and has a gun. (استنتاج قوى)
- Bassem might be an officer. He has a gun. (استنتاج ضعيف)

٣ تذكر أن نفى (must) فى الاستنتاج هو (can't) وليس (mustn't) :

- He must be ill. He (mustn't – can't) be well.

٤ تدل التعبيرات التالية على استنتاج قوي، ونستخدم معها (must) فى الإثبات و (can't/couldn't) فى النفى :

..... من المؤكد certainly / surely / definitely

- I feel sure / certain أشعر بالتأكد

- impossible مستحيل

- We feel sure Aya isn't out. She must be in her house. She can't be at school.

❶ حل التعبيرات التالية على عدم التأكد ونستخدم معها (may – might – could) :

- Perhaps / maybe ربما
- I'm not sure/ certain لست متأكد
- I don't think / believe لا أظن
- It is probable / likely / possible من المحتمل
- I don't know لست أدري

- I don't know why Rodayna is crying. She may / might / could have a problem at school.

❷ أحياناً لا يوجد أى تعبير صريح مما سبق يدل على درجة التأكد ، لكن يكون هناك ما يوحى منطقيا بقوة الدليل أو ضعفه :

- Omar has a good memory. He can't have forgotten. (الدليل هنا منطقيا قوي)
- This man always gets up early. He might sell milk. (الدليل هنا منطقيا ضعيف)

Mini Test 1 Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. He ..... be a doctor. I feel sure.
   a. must b. can't c. might d. a & b
2. He ..... be a doctor. I have no idea.
   a. must b. can't c. might d. a & b
3. He ..... be a doctor. He is examining a patient.
   a. must b. can't c. might d. a & b
4. He ..... be a doctor. He welcomes patients in the reception and makes reserves. حجز
   a. must b. can't c. might d. a & b
5. He ..... an old officer. He is a marshal.
   a. is b. must be c. can't be d. might be
6. He ..... an old officer. All other officers salute him. يُحيي تحية عسكرية
   a. is b. must be c. can't be d. might be
7. I don't think she is in the library. She ..... be in the canteen.
   a. may b. might c. could d. a, b & c

2 Present deduction

الاستنتاج فى المضارع

لعمل استنتاج قائم على دليل قوى فى المضارع نستخدم :

معلوم ➡ Subj. الفاعل + must لابد / can't لا يمكن + inf. ... .

مجهول ➡ obj. مفعول + must / can't + be + P.P. ... .

- Mohammed Salah is healthy and fit. He must care about his health and fitness. He must do a lot of exercises. He can't eat much food. (معلوم)
- Mohammed Salah is healthy and fit. His health and fitness must be cared about. A lot of exercises must be done by him. Much food can't be eaten by him. (مجهول)

لعمل استنتاج قائم على دليل ضعيف فى المضارع نستخدم :

معلوم ➡ Subj. + might / may / could ربما + inf. ... .

مجهول ➡ Obj. + might / may / could + be + P.P. ... .

- I've no idea when the new equipment will be delivered. It may / might / could arrive tomorrow. (معلوم)
- I've no idea when the new equipment will be delivered. It may / might / could be delivered tomorrow. (مجهول)

لعمل استنتاج فى المضارع المستمر نستخدم :

Subj. + must / can't / might / may / could + be + (inf. + ing) ...

- Ayman hasn't answered my call. He must be interviewing some applicants.
- Reem hasn't told me why she doesn't go out these days. She might be studying for the final exams.

UNIT 10

Mini Test 2 — Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Rodayna always comes first. She ..... be clever.
   a. must b. can't c. could d. might
2. Rodayna always comes first. She ..... be lazy.
   a. must b. can't c. could d. might
3. It is possible that he is out. He ..... be at home.
   a. could b. might c. must d. a& b
4. It is impossible that he is out. He ..... be at home.
   a. could b. might c. must d. a& b
5. I can smell my mother's delicious food. She must ..... lunch.
   a. be preparing b. prepares c. to prepare d. prepare
6. He has a large villa. He ..... a lot of money.
   a. can't earn b. mustn't earn c. must earn d. might earn

3 Past deduction — الاستنتاج فى الماضى

لعمل استنتاج قائم على دليل قوى فى الماضى نستخدم :

معلوم ➡ Subj. + must/can't/couldn't + have + P.P. ...

مجهول ➡ Obj. + must/can't/couldn't + have + been + P.P. ...

- Zidan was healthy and fit. He must have cared about his health and fitness. He must have done a lot of exercises. He can't have eaten much food.
- Zidan was healthy and fit. His health and fitness must have been cared about. A lot of exercises must have been done by him. Much food can't have been eaten by him.

٢ لعمل استنتاج قائم على دليل ضعيف فى الماضى نستخدم :

معلوم ← Subj. + might / may / could + have + P.P. ... .

مجهول ← Obj. + might / may / could + have + been + P.P. ... .

Nadia may / might / could have prepared a big lunch. I'm not sure.

A big lunch may / might / could have been prepared by Nadia. I'm not sure.

٣ لعمل استنتاج عن حدث كان مستمراً فى الماضى نستخدم :

Subj. فاعل + must / can't / might / may / could + have + been + (inf. + ing) ...

I'm not sure what made Yara not attend my birthday. She might have been helping her mother at home.

٤ يمكن أن تعبر (could have + P.P.) عن استنتاج ضعيف أو عن شيء كان من الممكن حدوثه ولكنه لم يحدث :

He hasn't visited us for a long time. He could have been busy. (استنتاج ضعيف)

He was able to fix the computer but he didn't. He could have fixed it.

(كان يستطيع ولم يفعل)

Mini Test 3 ○ Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Leen looked happy. She ..... some good news.
   a. must hear b. must have heard c. can't hear d. can't have heard
2. Leen looked annoyed. She ..... any good news.
   a. must hear b. must have heard c. can't hear d. can't have heard
3. The car no longer breaks down. My father ..... taken it to the mechanic.
   a. must have b. can't have c. must have been d. can't have been

4. The car no longer breaks down. It ..... taken to the mechanic.
a. must have b. can't have c. must have been d. can't have been

5. The car still breaks down so often. My father ..... taken it to the mechanic.
a. must have b. can't have c. must have been d. can't have been

6. The car still breaks down so often. It ..... taken to the mechanic.
a. must have b. can't have c. must have been d. can't have been

7. I don't think that Rokaya did the shopping. She ..... it.
a. might do b. can't do c. could have done d. can't have done

4 should / ought to — ينبغي / يجب

1 تُستخدم (should – ought to) لإعطاء النصيحة :

Subj. + should / shouldn't + inf. ... .

Subj. + ought to / ought not (oughtn't) to + inf. ... .

- You should work hard to achieve your goal. You shouldn't waste your time.
- One ought to keep fit. He or she ought not to eat unhealthy food.

2 كما تُستخدم (should – ought to + have + p.p) لتوجيه اللوم أو التعبير عن الندم لعدم القيام بشئ كان من المفترض القيام به فى الماضى :

Subj. + should / ought to + have + p.p. ...

- I should have taken my medicine on time. (ندم - كان يجب أن أفعل ذلك)
- You ought to have arrived early. (لوم- كان يجب القيام بذلك)

3 وتُستخدم (shouldn't – ought not to + have + p.p.) لتوجيه اللوم أو التعبير عن الندم للقيام بشىء فى الماضى كان من المفترض عدم القيام به :

Subj. + shouldn't / ought not to (oughtn't) + have + p.p. ...

- I oughtn't (to) have shouted at my sister. (ندم - كان يجب ألّا أفعل ذلك)
- You shouldn't have added too much salt. (لوم - كان من المفترض عدم القيام بذلك)

Mini Test 4 — Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. You ..... do what is right and fair.
   a. should b. shouldn't c. ought to d. a & c
2. You ..... do what upsets me.
   a. should b. shouldn't c. ought to d. a & c
3. He missed the train. He ..... up earlier.
   a. should get b. shouldn't get
   c. should have got d. oughtn't have got
4. He missed the train. He ..... up so late.
   a. should get b. shouldn't get
   c. should have got d. oughtn't have got

General Exercise — On Language — Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting Started

1. She ..... be happy; she has just passed her final exam. *(LM)*
   a. must b. had to c. can't d. ought not to
2. Kamal ..... by train yesterday. I'm uncertain. *(LM)*
   a. might travel b. might have travelled
   c. should travel d. must have travelled
3. I regret making that silly mistake; I ..... have quarreled with my friend. *(LM)*
   a. should b. must c. shouldn't d. can't
4. She ..... the map. She found herself in a completely different town. *(LM)*
   a. had to follow b. can't have followed
   c. may have followed d. mustn't have followed
5. This temple ..... be important; it's visited by hundreds of people every day. *(LM)*
   a. shouldn't b. can't c. mustn't d. must
6. Everyone is putting their umbrellas up; it ..... raining. *(LM)*
   a. had to start b. must have started
   c. shouldn't have started d. mustn't have started

7. Your answer is full of mistakes. You ..... it well.
   a. needn't have checked
   b. must have checked
   c. can't have checked
   d. had to check

8. Look for your pencil in the drawer. It ..... be there next to the ruler.
   a. can't
   b. must
   c. have to
   d. shouldn't

9. Maha will wait for her husband. She has forgotten her key. She ..... have brought it.
   a. must
   b. may
   c. might
   d. should

10. She ..... be talented. She plays the piano, the violin and the lute well.
    a. can't
    b. mustn't
    c. must
    d. has to

11. It ..... have been cold there. There is snow on the ground in the photo.
    a. can't
    b. might
    c. must
    d. may not

12. Her watch ..... have cost a lot of money. It's made of gold.
    a. must
    b. might
    c. could
    d. can't

13. That watch ..... have cost a lot of money. It is made of plastic.
    a. must
    b. might
    c. can't
    d. can

14. I have seen her car outside. She ..... .
    a. can't arrive
    b. can't have arrived
    c. might arrive
    d. must have arrived

15. We don't know when earthquakes happen. They ..... predicted.
    a. can't
    b. have been
    c. had been
    d. can't be

16. He can hardly walk. He ..... be very ill.
    a. must
    b. mustn't
    c. shouldn't
    d. should

17. No one is sure where Ali is, but we think he ..... have gone to see his uncle.
    a. needn't
    b. can't
    c. might
    d. must

18. I can't remember where I had left my mobile phone. I'm not sure. I ..... it at home.
    a. must have left
    b. might have left
    c. can leave

19. It ..... very windy during the night. There are leaves all over the ground.
a. must have been b. must be c. can't have been d. can't be (دور اول ٢٠١٢)

20. Ramy has a broken arm; he ..... off his bicycle in the race. (دور ثان ٢٠١٢)
a. can't fall b. might fall
c. must have fallen d. can't have fallen

21. She didn't see her brother this morning. He ..... the flat very early. (دور ثان ٢٠١٣)
a. must have left b. can't have left
c. must leave d. can't leave

22. There's water all over the floor. You ..... to turn off the shower.
a. must forget b. must have forgotten
c. can't have forgotten d. can't forget (السودان ٢٠١٤)

23. You ..... the door. It was open when I got home. (دور اول ٢٠١٤ نظام حديث)
a. can lock b. can't have locked
c. can have locked d. can't lock

24. That's the second new car they have bought this year. They ..... be poor!
a. can't b. must c. might d. could

25. It is such a large modern house. It ..... cost a lot of money.
a. could have been b. must have
c. must be d. must have been

Special Cases

26. My father left for work and he ..... to take his mobile phone. I found it in the living room. (LM)
a. mustn't have remembered b. had to remember
c. couldn't have remembered d. must have remembered

27. Ann hasn't arrived yet. She ..... the train. Who knows? (LM)
a. should have missed d b. might have missed
c. had to miss d. must have missed

28. Amin travelled to work by bus. He ..... by train as usual. (LM)
a. must have travelled b. had to travel
c. could have travelled d. might have travelled

29. Tamer did not attend the party. He ..... invited. He'd just had a heart attack and is in hospital.
a. can't have b. can't have been d. shouldn't have
c. mustn't have been

30. He ..... on time because he missed his usual early train.
a. had to arrive b. must have arrived d. couldn't have arrived
c. won't have arrived

31. The police knew everything about the murderer. They ..... have undertaken their investigations.
a. should b. can't c. must d. might

32. Dina ..... have been at school yesterday. The list of the absentees didn't include her name.
a. must b. can't c. needn't d. mustn't

33. They left two hours ago, so they ..... arrived by now. It's not far.
a. must b. must have c. can't have d. have

34. She ..... have caught her bus because she would have been here by now.
a. can't b. might c. could d. must

35. She ..... have gone far. I just saw her car leave a minute ago.
a. must b. should c. can't d. can

36. John has forgotten about the meeting. We ..... have reminded him about it yesterday.
a. might b. ought not to c. ought to d. must

37. He ..... have told you yesterday, but he forgot.
a. might b. can c. must d. should

38. You ..... have shouted at him. He'll never forgive you.
a. ought not to b. must c. might d. can't

39. I'm glad you survived. You risked your life and ..... killed.
a. may have b. must have been
c. could have been d. might have

40. I ..... revised more for my exams. I think I'll fail!
a. could have b. might have c. must have d. ought to have

41. The concert was fantastic. You really ..... have come.
a. might b. can't c. must d. ought to

42. We agreed to meet yesterday but when I got there I didn't see him. He ..... waiting elsewhere.
a. couldn't have b. can't have
c. could have been d. must not have

43. You ..... have tried to fix the roof yourself. You might have fallen off and been badly injured.
a. can't b. ought not to c. might d. must

III Check your understanding

44. "I know Ahmed is at school today. I have seen him enter the laboratory a moment ago." What does this mean?
a. Ahmed must be at school. b. Ahmed can't be at school.
c. Ahmed may be at school. d. Ahmed is at school.

45. "I'm sure Ahmed is at school today. It is a school day and Ahmed is a clever student." What does this mean?
a. Ahmed must be at school. b. Ahmed can't be at school.
c. Ahmed may be at school. d. Ahmed is at school.

46. "I don't know why he is late. .....".
a. He must have missed the school bus.
b. He must be asleep.
c. He may have forgotten the time of the meeting.
d. I must have forgotten to remind him.

47. "Hoda can't have been ill."; this means .....
a. I'm sure Hoda is ill. b. I'm sure Hoda was ill.
c. I'm sure Hoda isn't ill. d. I'm sure Hoda wasn't ill.

48. **A:** What is Ahmed doing in the garden? **B:** I have no idea. ..... .
a. He must be watering the trees.
b. He might be looking after the flowers.
c. He can't be playing there.
d. He might have planted a tree.

49. "....., but I preferred watching the match on TV.
a. I could have gone to the stadium.
b. I might have gone to the stadium.
c. I may have gone to the stadium.
d. I must have gone to the stadium.

50. "He failed the driving test. ..... .
a. He should have trained well.
b. He can't have trained well.
c. He must have trained well.
d. a & b

51. "You made your sister upset again! ..... .
a. You may have shouted at her.
b. You will have shouted at her.
c. You should have shouted at her.
d. You shouldn't have shouted at her.

Advanced Exercise on Language

تنويه: التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

*** Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. A : It can't have been easy tunnelling under the Nile.
B : Of course it ..... .
a. didn't b. wasn't c. isn't d. doesn't

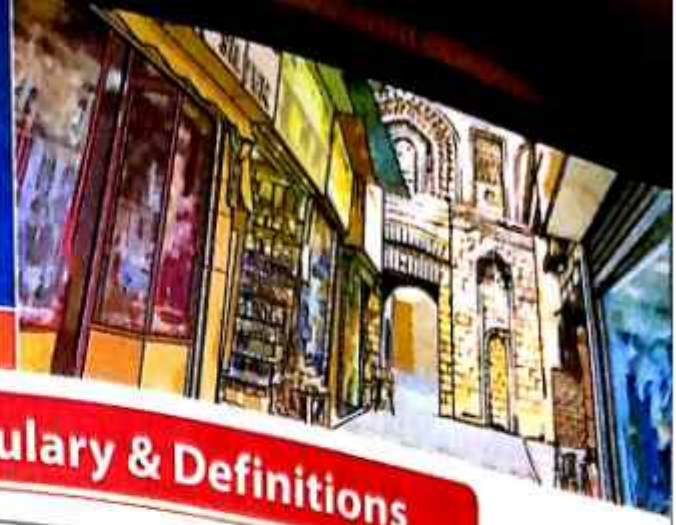
2. The Metro must have made travelling around Cairo easier.
- It ..... .
a. does b. doesn't c. was d. did

3. The police are convinced the paintings..... taken out of the country already.
a. might have been b. must have been
c. may have d. must have

4. I don't know why I am so tired these days. I ..... be sleeping well.
a. might not b. couldn't c. can't d. mustn't

5. It ..... have been Magdi I saw at the party. He didn't recognise me at all.
a. must b. should c. shouldn't d. can't

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	b	- الفعل الرئيسي لجملة الاستنتاج في الماضي هو (been) لذلك نختار (wasn't) وليس (didn't)
2.	d	- الفعل الرئيسي لجملة الاستنتاج في الماضي هو (made) وهو ما ينوب عنه في الصيغة المختصرة (did) وليس (was)
3.	b	السياق استنتاج ماضي قوي مبني للمجهول
4.	a	السياق استنتاج مضارع (مستمر) ضعيف
5.	d	السياق استنتاج ماضي قوي منفي



3&4

SB pages 46:47 WB pages 26 & 27

Part I Vocabulary & Definitions

تنويه • اختبر مدى اتقانك للمفردات الرئيسية فى كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

artefacts(n)	تحف – مقتنيات فنية	highlight(ed) (n/v)	الجزء الأبرز – يُبرز
aware(adj)	علي علم بـ/مُدرك لـ	mausoleum(n)	ضريح
beneficial(adj)	مفيد	moving(adj)	مُؤثِّر/مُحرِّك للمشاعر
dam(med) (n/v)	سد – يبني سد	must-see(n)	شئ لابد من رؤيته
dedicated (to) (adj)	مُخصَّص (لـ) – متفانى	not to be missed	لا يُفوَّت
elaborate(adj)	مُركَّب– مُتقَن – مُعقَّد	preserve(d) (v)	يُحنِّط – يحفظ
emotional(adj)	عاطفي	preserved(adj)	مُحنَّط – محفوظ
essential(adj)	جوهري/ضروري	well-preserved(adj)	مُحنَّط جيداً
gateway(n)	بوابة/ مَعبَر	well worth	يستحق – جدير بـ
healing(n)	الالتئام – إبراء– شفاء– التئام		

تنويه • المفردات اللغوية باللون الأحمر هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية.

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

2 Important Vocabulary

absolute(adj)	مُطْلَق/ كامل/ تام	locate(d) (v)	يضع – يحدد موقع
accessible(adj)	متاح/ يمكن الوصول إليه	maintain(ed) (v)	يحافظ علي
alleyway(n)	زقاق/ حَارة	maze(n)	متاهة
approximately(adv)	تقريباً	medieval(adj)	من العصور الوسطي
arrow(n)	سهم	mysterious(adj)	غامض
artefacts(n)	تُحَف	negotiate(d) (v)	يتفاوض
aspects(n)	مجالات – مناحي	one-third(adj)	ثُلُث
association(n)	جمعية – اتحاد	open-air(adj)	الهواء الطلق
attend(ed) (v)	يحضُر	parade(n)	اِستِعْراض – مَسيرَة
authentic(adj)	حقيقي	passage(n)	ممر/دهليز
attraction(n)	نقطة/ مكان جذب	passionate(adj)	شغوف/مولَع

beneath(adv/prep)	أسفل - تحت	
captivate(d) (v)	يأسر - يخلب لب	
carved into(adj)	منحوت في	
categorise(d) (v)	يُصنِّف - يضع في تصنيف	
championship(n)	بطولة	
civilisation(n)	حضارة	
coffin(n)	تابوت	
collection(n)	مجموعة	
craft(n)	مهنة يدوية	
decipher(ed) (v)	يفك شفرة	
display(ed) (v)	عَرْض - يَعرِض	
entire(adj)	كامل	
entry(n)	دخول	
essential(adj)	جوهري/أساسي	
establish(ed) (v)	يُنشئ - يُوطِّد	
facilities(n)	امتيازات - تسهيلات - مرافق	
Fatimid(adj)	فاطميّ	
feel(n)	شعور	
fiction(n)	أعمال أدبية - خيال	
finals(n)	النهائيات	
front(n)	واجِهة	
golden(adj)	ذهبي	
grand(adj)	مَهيب/كبير	
hidden(adj)	مَخْفِي/مُخبأ	
hieroglyphics(n)	اللغة الهيروغليفية	
initial(adj)	مبدئي - أولى	
intricate (adj)	متشابك - متداخل	
locally(adv)	محلياً	
prehistoric(adj)	ما قبل التاريخ	
priest(n)	كاهن - قديس	
procession(n)	مَوكِب	
promote(d) (v)	يُروِّج لـ/يدعم - يُرقِي	
rebuild - rebuilt (v)	يُعيد بناء	
refreshing(adj)	مُنعِش	
reviewer(n)	ناقد - مُراجع	
royal(adj)	مَلَكي	
rule(d) (v)	يحكُم	
ruler(n)	حاكم	
scary(adj)	مُخيف	
scene(n)	مَشْهَد	
section(n)	قسم	
shopkeeper(n)	صاحب محل	
shy(adj)	خجول	
sight(n)	نَشهَد/ مَعلَم - البصر	
site(n)	مَوْقع	
spectacular(adj)	باهِر/ مُذهِل	
spices(n)	توابل	
survey(ed) (n/v)	بحث استطلاعي - يُجري بحث استطلاعي	
	ثُوثار	
talkative(adj)	ينجول في - جولة	
tour(ed) (v/n)	ينقل - يُحوِّل	
transfer(red)	ينقل - النقل/المواصلات	
transport(ed) (v/n)	التنوع - التعددية	
variety(n)	مُستعد/راغب في	
willing(adj)	ملفوف - مُغلق	
wrapped(adj)		

3 Definitions تعريفات

dam(n) سد	a special wall built across a river or stream مجري مائي to stop the water from flowing, التدفق especially in order to make a lake or produce electricity
dedicated (to) (adj) (مُخصَّص ال	made for or used for only one particular purpose غرض
elaborate(adj) مُركَّب- مُتقَن - مُعقَّد	very complicated and detailed; carefully prepared and organized
gateway(n) بوابة/ مَعبَر	a place through which you can go to reach another larger place
highlight(n) الجزء الأبرز	the most important, interesting, or enjoyable part of something such as a holiday, performance, or sports competition
mausoleum(n) ضريح	a large stone building made specially to contain the body of a dead person, or the dead bodies of an important family
moving(adj) مُؤثِّر/مُحرِّك للمشاعر	making you feel strong emotions, especially sadness or sympathy التعاطف
must-see(n) جدير بالرؤية	- something that is so good, exciting, or interesting that you think people should see it - highly recommended as worth seeing

Exercise On Vocabulary • Understand

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

1. The High ..... helps to store and provide water for agriculture all year. *(LM)*
   a. Dam b. Ferry c. Bridge d. Way
2. The museum is well ..... visiting; it contains rare artefacts. *(LM)*
   a. believed b. worth c. done d. made
3. In 1899, two archaeologists found many well- ..... crocodile mummies in Umm El- Baragat. *(LM)*
   a. reversed b. preserved c. cooked d. killed
4. The film was really .....; the girls believed the incident and started weeping. *(LM)*
   a. removable b. comic c. funny d. moving

5. When I visited Khan El-Khalili, the ..... for me was getting some souvenirs for my friends. (LM)
a. highlight b. light year c. light sleep d. high noon

6. The archaeologists have found wonderful ..... inside the royal tomb. (LM)
a. trees b. landfalls c. artefacts d. museums

7. As a student, all my time is ..... to my study.
a. aware b. authentic c. intricate d. dedicated

8. The Ancient Egyptians used a special way to ..... the dead bodies.
a. preserve b. captivate c. display d. highlight

9. Planning is ..... to achieving one's goal.
a. practical b. entire c. preserved d. essential

10. The final match is an absolute ..... . Don't miss it.
a. parade b. must-see c. mausoleum d. coffin

11. This is a/an ..... digital system that needs an expert to deal with.
a. elaborate b. practical c. medieval d. moving

12. The Suez Canal is a major ..... to world trade.
a. aspect b. healing c. gateway d. procession

13. It is not the kind of event to be ..... . Everybody is careful to take part in it.
a. well worth b. mysterious c. prehistoric d. missed

14. A good citizen is ..... of the challenges that face their society.
a. aware b. authentic c. intricate d. dedicated

15. I think coronavirus has ..... the need to reorganize the healthcare sector in the whole world.
a. preserved b. captivated c. toured d. highlighted

16. Following a good diet is surely ..... to your health.
a. beneficial b. emotional c. absolute d. royal

17. The royal ..... was ready for the dead queen's funeral.
a. parade b. must-see c. mausoleum d. coffin

18. The mother's tears were so ..... that I myself started to cry.
a. elaborate b. initial c. medieval d. moving

19. Taking a complete rest is an important part of the ..... process.
a. aspect b. healing c. gateway d. procession

20. The British museum is the most popular tourist ..... in London. (LM)
a. destruction b. obstruction c. attraction d. distraction

21. Who ..... the ancient Egyptian hieroglyphics? – Champollion decoded them.
a. deciphered b. hid c. disappeared d. wrote (LM)

22. We were ..... by the beauty of nature when we visited our village.
a. disgusted b. distracted c. educated d. captivated (LM)

23. What ..... me to visit the museum is my desire to see the wonderful mummies of kings and queens.
a. inspires b. conspired c. respired d. realised (LM)

24. "The Tragedy" is one of the most famous authentic works by Picasso. Authentic is similar in meaning to "....."
a. fake b. genuine c. false d. ordinary (LM)

25. Thousands of people joined the ..... to celebrate the National Day.
a. parade b. must-see c. mausoleum d. coffin

26. Scientists have found out some ..... pots that are thousands of years old.
a. one-third b. open-air c. prehistoric d. absolute

27. I have no doubt that the document is a/an ..... copy of the original one.
a. aware b. authentic c. intricate d. dedicated

28. I go lost into the ..... of narrow streets of old Cairo.
a. alleyway b. dam c. highlight d. maze

29. I got a/an ..... promise from him to join our team, but he said he needed to take his time.
a. elaborate b. initial c. medieval d. moving

30. We hope Egypt will soon achieve progress in all ..... of science and technology.
a. aspects b. healings c. transports d. processions

31. It is known that death is a/an ..... fact. Everybody will die sooner or later.
a. beneficial b. emotional c. absolute d. royal

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

32. This party of explorers have ..... all over Africa.
a. transported b. inspired c. toured d. survived

33. Customers' attitudes have been ..... .
a. done b. made c. toured d. surveyed

34. This shop ..... customers according to their age.
a. categorises b. deciphers c. establishes d. rules

35. Cairo has a/an ..... network of railways.
a. aware b. talkative c. intricate d. shy

36. He was apprenticed to a ..... maker. He first trained how to cut wood.
a. parade b. must-see c. mausoleum d. coffin

37. He sold the ..... farm to his neighbour and moved to the city.
a. practical b. entire c. preserved d. essential

38. Don't let day dreams ..... you to a world of unreal success.
a. transport b. inspire c. tour d. survey

39. President Sadat ..... Egypt for about ten years.
a. categorised b. deciphered c. established d. ruled

40. The Arabic 'Ziqaq' translates as something like ..... .
a. alleyway b. dam c. highlight d. maze

41. This is a valuable palace that belongs to ..... architecture.
a. hidden b. initial c. medieval d. moving

42. There's a ..... secret that no one of us is able to find out about. Why are things unclear?
a. well worth b. mysterious c. prehistoric d. missed

43. He is the throne prince. He is ..... .
a. beneficial b. emotional c. absolute d. royal

44. Intership gives you ..... experience.
a. practical b. well-preserved c. preserved d. talkative

45. In addition to the Egyptian flag, a group of football fans raised the Palestinian flag to ..... their support of the Palestinian issue.
a. miss b. captivate c. display d. negotiate

46. The ..... of the King moved towards the airport.
a. aspect b. healing c. gateway d. procession

47. After long years of hard work, Mr Ayman ..... himself as a good manager.
a. categorised b. deciphered c. established d. ruled

3 Definitions

48. A ..... is something that is so good, exciting, or interesting that you think people should see it.
a. highlight b. must-see c. mausoleum d. gateway

49. ..... means making you feel strong emotions, especially sadness or sympathy.
a. Selfish b. Dedicated c. Elaborate d. Moving

50. A ..... is a large stone building made specially to contain the body of a dead person, or the dead bodies of an important family.
a. highlight b. must-see c. mausoleum d. gateway

51. A ..... is the most important, interesting, or enjoyable part of something such as a holiday, performance, or sports competition.
a. highlight b. dam c. mausoleum d. gateway

52. ..... means very complicated and detailed; carefully prepared and organized.
a. Selfish b. Dedicated c. Elaborate d. Moving

53. A ..... is a place through which you can go to reach another larger place.
a. highlight b. dam c. mausoleum d. gateway

54. ..... means made for or used for only one particular purpose.
a. Selfish b. Dedicated c. Elaborate d. Moving

55. A ..... is a special wall built across a river or stream to stop the water from flowing, especially in order to make a lake or produce electricity.
a. highlight b. dam c. mausoleum d. gateway

Part II Vocabulary Study

تنويه ساعد مُعلمك على الإرتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مُسبقاً بشكل جيد.

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

be	aware يكون حذراً	hold	sporting events يُقيم أحداث رياضية
conduct/do	a survey يُجري بحث استطلاعي		conference يعقد مؤتمر
follow	the direction arrows يتتبع سهام التوجيه	negotiate	the price يتفاوض حول السعر
get	lost يتوه	show	respect to يُظهر الاحترام لـ

UNIT 10

Mini Test 1 Collocations

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. A useful survey has been ..... by a team of researchers.
   a. done b. got c. conducted d. a & c
2. One should ..... aware of the dangers that threatens their society.
   a. be b. follow c. negotiate d. hold
3. In open-air markets, sellers expect their price to be ..... .
   a. shown b. got c. negotiated d. held
4. Our organisation is ..... an educational conference next summer.
   a. being b. getting c. doing d. holding
5. ..... respect to other people is good behaviour.
   a. Showing b. Getting c. Negotiating d. Holding
6. Mariam ..... lost in the city centre.
   a. did b. got c. negotiated d. held
7. Just ..... the directions step by step and everything will be OK.
   a. be b. follow c. negotiate d. hold

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
aware(adj)	علي علم بـ	conscious of, acquainted with, informed about/of, familiar with, alert to
highlight (n)	الجزء الأبرز	best part
highlight (v)	يُبرز	focus on, focus attention on, spotlight
moving(adj)	مُؤثِّر/مُحرِّك للمشاعر	emotional, affecting, touching
not to be missed	لا يُفَوَّت	essential
worth (n)	قيمة – جدارة	value
(well) worth (adj)	يستحق – جدير بـ	beneficial, valuable, useful

3 Antonyms متضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)	
aware(adj)	علي علم بـ	unaware, ignorant	غير واع – جاهل
moving(adj)	مُؤثِّر/مُحرِّك للمشاعر	unemotional	غير عاطفي
(well) worth (adj)	يستحق – جدير بـ	worthless, valueless	عديم القيمة

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

Mini Test 2 Synonyms & Antonyms

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. "This film has a moving end." In this context, the word 'moving' is a synonym of ..... .
   a. emotional b. unemotional c. changing d. practical
2. "I am aware of your problem." The word 'aware' here is an antonym of ..... .
   a. ignorant b. familiar c. alert d. informed
3. "I am aware of your problem." The word 'aware' here can be replaced by ..... .
   a. ignorant b. familiar c. alert d. informed
4. "I watched only the highlights of the game." The word 'highlights' here is a synonym of ..... .
   a. focus on b. concentrate on c. best part d. a & b
5. ..... means the opposite of well worth.
   a. Valuable b. Valueless c. Worthwhile d. Worthy

Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

real feel for	إحساس حقيقي بـ
itry tickets	تذاكر الدخول
el as though	يشعر كما لو أن
el free to	لا يتردد في أن
om prehistoric times	من عصور ما قبل التاريخ
t ... for one-third of the initial price	يشتري ... بثُلُث السعر المبدئي
on holiday	يسافر في إجازة
honour of	مخصص لـ
large numbers	بأعداد كبيرة
dies and gentleman	سيداتي وسادتي
ize of alleyways	متاهة الأزقة
edieval Egypt	مصر في العصور الوسطى

Pharaoh's Golden Parade	العرض الفرعوني الذهبي
powerful smells of spices	روائح التوابل النفاذة
practical information	معلومات عملية
refreshing coffee	قهوة منعشة
royal family	الأسرة الملكية
sporting events	أحداث رياضية
the hidden treasures of	الكنوز المخفية
The National Museum of Egyptian Civilisation	المتحف القومي للحضارة المصرية
to the present day	حتى الوقت الحاضر
transport you to another world	تأخذك إلى عالَم آخر
well worth visiting	يستحق الزيارة فعلاً

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

UNIT 10

5 Synonymous Expressions تعبيرات مترادفة

a moving sight = an emotional sight منظر مؤثر	all in all = on the whole, taking everything into account/consideration في المجمل/بصفة عامة
absolute must-see = be worth seeing لابد من مشاهدته	open-air market = outdoor market سوق مفتوح
Give or take = plus or minus زائد أو ناقص	

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

look for	يبحث عن	sell ... for	يبيع ... في مقابل
make out (phr.v)	يلمح - يحدد	transport (...) from /to	ينقل ... من/إلى
move over to	ينتقل لـ / إلى		
make over to	ينقل لـ / إلى		
provide ... for	يوفر ... لـ		

Mini Test 3 Expressions, Prepositions & Idioms

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. We use "....." when we want to introduce the summary. (LM)
   a. first of all b. not at all c. above all d. all in all
2. It's about a one-hour drive to the factory, give or take a few minutes. "Give or take" means "....." (LM)
   a. plus b. minus c. plus or minus d. exactly
3. I got the tablet ..... half the initial price.
   a. from b. to c. on d. for
4. Something that is an absolute must-see is ..... .
   a. unavailable to see b. unseen by nature
   c. worth seeing d. worth not seeing
5. Children like it when we go ..... holiday.
   a. to b. on c. from d. by
6. A/An ..... sight is one that is emotional.
   a. beautiful b. essential c. beneficial d. moving
7. This farmer raises sheep ..... large numbers.
   a. up b. out c. in d. on
8. This romantic poem will transport you ..... another world.
   a. to b. from c. by d. of

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

1 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

moving – movable - unmoved

• **moving (adj)** مؤثر / مُحرِّك للمشاعر (خاصة مشاعر الحزن أو التعاطف)
. The final scene of the film is deeply moving. The heroine (البطلة) loses her son.

• **movable (adj)** متحرك / غير ثابت / يمكن نقله
. I bought a toy with movable parts for my daughter.

• **unmoved (adj)** غير متأثر / متحجر المشاعر
. We all were affected by losing the match, but Ali seemed unmoved.

worth - worthwhile

تُستخدم كلمة (worth) كصفة بمعني (ذو قيمة/يستحق قيمة) بعد الأفعال التقريبة فقط:

• **be / seem / look ... + worth = having a particular value**
. This villa is worth half a million pounds.

لاحظ أن:

• **be + worth + inf. + ing = useful or important enough to do**
. Joining the faculty of medicine is worth studying hard.

تُستخدم كلمة (worthwhile) كصفة بمعني (مفيد/هام/مُجزِي) قبل اسم أو بعد الأفعال التقريبة:

• **worthwhile + noun**
. Working as a doctor is a worthwhile career.

• **be / seem / look ... + worthwhile**
. For a newly married couple, having a big car is not worthwhile.

Mini Test 4 Clear the confusion

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. This camera ..... 15,000 dollars.
   a. worth b. is worth c. worthwhile d. is worthwhile

2. I think teaching is ..... career.
   a. worth b. a worth c. worthwhile d. a worthwhile

3. The scene of the mother finding her little daughter at the end of the film ..... me to tears. دموع
   a. moved b. moving c. movement d. movable

4. The scene of the mother finding her little daughter at the end of the film was so ..... that I burst into tears.
   a. moved b. moving c. movement d. movable

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

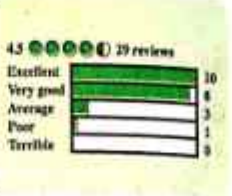
UNIT 10

Part III Reading & Listening

1 Reading Texts

A new modern museum in Old Cairo







I decided to visit The National Museum for Egyptian Civilisation(1) after watching a YouTube video or the spectacular(2) Pharaoh's Golden(3) Parade(4). This was a grand(5) procession(6) in which 22 mummies of Ancient Egyptian rulers(7) were transported(8) from the old Egyptian Museum to the new National Museum or Egyptian Civilisation in the ancient(9) city of Fustat.

It was one of the most moving(10) sights(11) I have ever experienced(12); so much heritage(13) and culture(14) in one single parade! The museum, which opened after the parade in May 2021 is very beautiful and impressive. The mummy section(15), located(16) in the Royal(17) Mummies Hall(18) beneath(19) the main hall, is not to be missed(20). For me, it was definitely the highlight(21).

The displays(22) contain 18 kings and four queens that ruled(23) Ancient Egypt over 3,000 years ago. Visitors can follow the direction arrows(24) on the floor to go through the passages(25), tour(26) the entire(27) hall and see all the mummies, which are displayed next to the coffins(28) they were found in. In the main museum you can see more than 50,000 artefacts(29) showing Egyptian Civilisation from prehistoric(30) times to the present day.

The museum is an absolute(31) must-see(32) for anyone travelling to Egypt. It's open from 9 am to 5 pm, but it's well worth(33) visiting early in the morning, so you can appreciate(34) the museum best when it's quiet.

(SB page 47)

Check Vocabulary

(1) حضارة
(2) رائع / مُذهل
(3) ذهبي
(4) استعراض - تَسيرة
(5) مهيب/كبير
(6) مَوكب
(7) حكام
(8) ينقل
(9) قديم
(10) مؤثر/محرك للمشاعر
(11) مناظر / مَشاهد
(12) يعايش / يمر بـ
(13) التراث
(14) الثقافة
(15) قسم
(16) يقع / يُوجَد
(17) مَلَكي
(18) ديوان / قاعة
(19) أسفل
(20) يُفوت
(21) الجزء الأبرز
(22) عَرْض
(23) يحكم
(24) سهم
(25) ممر / دهليز
(26) يتجول في
(27) كامل
(28) تابوت
(29) تُحَف
(30) ما قبل التاريخ
(31) مُطلق
(32) لابد من رؤيته
(33) يستحق
(34) يقدر / يثمن

Entry[35] tickets cost 60 LE for Egyptians and 200 LE for non-Egyptians. There's a small café that sells tea, coffee and sandwiches. Make sure you go early since traffic can become difficult after 12 noon.

(35) دخول

The wonderful[1] hidden[2] treasures of Khan el-Khalili (WB page 29)



I have always loved looking for wonderful souvenirs in markets and small shops, so when I was in Cairo, the Khan el-Khalili bazaar was a must-see for me!

Today, it is an open-air[3] market where you can find local crafts[4] and souvenirs[5] but it has a long history and used to be a mausoleum[6] for the Fatimid[7] royal family before being rebuilt[8] in 1511. As you enter the narrow streets you feel as though[9] you have been transported[10] to medieval[11] Egypt. The colourful products[12] displayed[13] in shop fronts[14], the sellers and powerful smells[15] of spices[16] and traditional food captivate[17] you and transport you to another world.

The bazaar opens at 9.00 am and most shops close quite late. Nobody seems to know just how many shops there are and it's quite easy to get lost[18] in the maze[19] of alleyways[20] so you should wear comfortable shoes. If you need a rest, a refreshing[21] coffee or sweet tea at the historic El-Fishawi café (established[22] in the 1770s) is well worth it.

All in all, I loved the variety[23] of local products and the chance[24] to get a real feel[25] for the authentic[26] Egyptian experience. The highlight for me was getting some wonderful souvenirs for my friends and family back home. The only thing I didn't like was that I had too many souvenirs to carry ! My advice to you is to make sure you buy a large backpack to put all your gifts in and carry them easily !

Check Vocabulary

(1) رائع
(2) مَخْفِي/مُخبا
(3) الهواء الطلق
(4) مهن يدوية
(5) هدايا تذكارية
(6) ضريح
(7) فاطميّ
(8) يُعيد بناء
(9) كما لو أن
(10) ينتقل/ينقل
(11) من العصور الوسطي
(12) مُنتَجات
(13) يُعرض
(14) واجهة
(15) رائحة
(16) توابل
(17) ياسر - يخلب
(18) يتوه
(19) متاهة
(20) زقاق
(21) مُنعِش
(22) يُنشئ
(23) التنوع
(24) الفُرصة
(25) شعور
(26) حقيقي

2 Listening Texts

(SB page 46)

Tour Guide: Welcome everyone to the Philae Temple Complex. This is one of the most important sites[1] in the region[2] and one of the most popular tourist sites near Aswan. In Greek and Roman times, visitors would come in large numbers[3] to see the mysterious[4] Isis, the goddess[5] of healing[6].

Of course, the original[7] location[8] for the temples was Philae Island, but during the building of the High Dam, the temples disappeared under water. To save the temple, the blocks were transferred[9] block by block here to Agilika Island.

OK, so let's go. Follow me, and please feel free to[10] ask any questions as we go.

So, we start our tour at the Entrance[11] to the Main temple ... this beautiful gate, or First Pylon, is around 18 metres high. Many visitors pass through it quickly, but it's well worth[12] taking your time to admire the elaborate[13] details carved into[14] the stone.

Moving through the Gateway, we come to the Temple's East Court Yard. On either side, you 'll see structures[15] supported by beautiful columns.[16] The building ahead, on the western side of the court yard, is the Birth House - or mammisi - dedicated to[17] Hathor, in honour of[18] the birth of her son, Horus. If you look carefully on the walls over here you'll see scenes[19] from Horus' childhood.

Let's continue into the Temple of Isis. You can make out[20] on the wall just here the famous scene showing the God of the Nile, with a snake wrapped[21] around his body.

Let's move over to[22] the west side ... we're going to go through the door there which leads out of the temple to arrive at Hadrian's Gate. On the right here are the remains[23] of the rooms where the temple priests[24] and guards would live.

OK, follow me ... we're moving now to the east of the Temple of Isis to the little temple of Hathor, which has some of the best-preserved parts of the temple.

Next, we're going to walk south-east of the Temple of Hathor, on the bank of the river is the picturesque[25] little Kiosk of Trajan, which was a favourite subject of painters and photographers in the nineteenth century, but let's stop and take a coffee break...

Check Vocabulary
(1) مَوْقِع
(2) منطقة
(3) بأعداد كبيرة
(4) غامض
(5) آلهة
(6) الشفاء
(7) أصلي
(8) موقِع
(9) ينقل
(10) لا يتردد في أن
(11) مَدخَل
(12) جدير بـ - يستحق
(13) دقيق
(14) منحوت في
(15) مَبْنَي
(16) عمود
(17) مخصص لـ
(18) تشريفاً لـ
(19) مَشْهَد
(20) يَلْمَح - يُحدِّد
(21) ملفوف
(22) ينتقل لـ/إلي
(23) بقايا
(24) كاهن - قديس
(25) رائع - بديع المنظر

Something which has great cultural importance in Ireland : *(WB page 28)*

Tour guide : Now, we are on what is locally[1] known as The Green. It was not far from this very place here in Carrick-on. Suir in the south of Ireland that one man created[2] something that has become an essential[3] part of the Irish[4] culture ever since.

Maurice Davin, who was born in this beautiful small town of Carrick-on-Suir in June 1842, quickly became an internationally famous athlete and held world records for running, jumping and other events. He was passionate[5] about sports and his culture and wanted to preserve[6] the national sports played in Ireland. On November 1st 1884 Michael Davin and a group of other men created[7] the Gaelic Athletics Association or G-A-A to promote[8] the traditional games played in Ireland and make them more accessible[9] to everyone. The GAA now has 2,200 clubs in Ireland and 400 clubs around the world. The Championships[10] in Ireland take place between May and September and approximately[11] 1.5 million people attend them[12] each year. The finals[13] of the Championships do not happen On The Green here in Carrick. They are played in a big stadium in the capital which can hold up to 82,300 spectators.

So, as you can see because of the passion of one man from this small town to maintain[14] and share his culture with everyone, Ireland now has a sports association which benefits hundreds and thousands of people around the world. So, ladies and gentlemen[15], you could say we are standing in the birthplace[16] of Ireland's sporting cultural heritage.

Check Vocabulary
(1) محليًا
(2) يبدع
(3) جوهرى/ أساسى
(4) أيرلندى (الجنسية)
(5) شغوف/مولع
(6) يحفظ/يصون
(7) ينشئ
(8) يُروج لـ/يدعم
(9) متاح
(10) بطولة
(11) تقريبًا
(12) يحضُر
(13) النهائيات
(14) يحافظ على
(15) سيداتى وسادتى
(16) مسقط رأس

Part IV Language

Past Habits (would + inf.) Vs (used to + inf.)

1 used to اعتاد أن + inf.

تذكر أهم النقاط الخاصة باستخدام (used to):

1 تُستَخدم (used to + inf.) كفعل شبه ناقص للتعبير عن عادات وأحوال الماضي التي لم تعد موجودة في الحاضر كالتالي:

- Rodayna used to eat cheese for breakfast. (إثبات مبني للمعلوم)
- Rodayna didn't use to eat cheese for breakfast. (نفي)
- Did Rodayna use to eat cheese for breakfast? (سؤال بـ «هل»)
- What did Rodayna use to eat for breakfast? (سؤال بـ «أداة استفهام»)
- Cheese used to be eaten for breakfast (by Rodayna). (مبني للمجهول)

---

2 لاحظ أن الصيغ التالية لا تعطي نفس المعني السابق:

1. be + used to + noun / (inf. + ing) …

تُستَخدم (used to) في هذه الصيغة كصفة بمعني (معتاد علي) لوصف حالة أو وضع:

- Omar was used to getting up early. (كان معتاداً)

2. get / become / grow … + used to + noun / (inf. + ing) …

تُستَخدم (used to) في هذه الصيغة كصفة بمعني (يصبح معتاداً علي) للدلالة على التعود (الانتقال من حالة عدم التعود إلى حالة التعود):

- Mr Abdulrahman got used to living in Tanta. (تعوَّد على)

---

3 لاحظ التساوي في المعني بين الصيغ الثلاثة التالية:

- **subj. + used to + inf.**
- **subj. + no longer** لم يعد **+ inf. / (inf. +s/es/ies)**
- **subj. + don't/doesn't + inf. … any more / any longer**

- Leen used to ride a bike.
  = Leen no longer rides a bike.
  = Leen doesn't ride a bike any more.
- I used to smoke.
  = I no longer smoke.
  = I don't smoke any longer.

2 would + inf. Vs used to + inf.

١ تُستخدَم (would + inf.) بمعني (اعتاد أن) مثل (used to + inf.) للتعبير عن الأحداث والعادات المتكررة في الماضي والتي لم تعد موجودة في الحاضر:

. When she was young, she would go to bed early.

= When she was young, she used to go to bed early.

في المثال السابق استخدام (used to go /would go) صحيح وذلك لأن الذهاب إلى الفراش مبكراً كان حدثاً متكرراً يحدُث مرات ومرات.

---

٢ تُستخدَم (used to + inf.) وليس (would + inf.) مع الأفعال التقريرية - لاحظ المثال التالي:

. Mr Mohammed used to live in Assuit. Now he lives in Aswan. (✓)

. Mr Mohammed would live in Assuit. Now he lives in Aswan. (✗)

في المثال السابق لا يمكن استخدام (would live) وذلك لأن الحياة في مكان ما (أسيوط هنا) ليست حدثاً كان متكرراً يحدُث مرات ومرات، بل إنها حالة كانت موجودة في الماضي ولم تعد موجودة الآن.

والجدول التالى يحتوى على أهم الأفعال التقريرية التى لا تستخدم بعد (would) للتعبير عن الماضى:

be	يكون/يوجد	hear	يسمع
cost	يتكلف	like	يحب
deserve	يستحق	love	يحب
dislike	يكره	own	يمتلك
enjoy	يستمتع بـ	possess	يمتلك
exist	يُوجَد	understand	يفهم
feel	يشعر بـ	want	يريد
hate	يكره	weigh	يَزِن
have	يمتلك	wish	يتمني

- I would have a red bike when I was a little child. (✗)
- I used to have a red bike when I was a little child. (✓)

في المثال السابق لا يمكن استخدام (would have) وذلك لأن امتلاك شيء ما (دراجة حمراء هنا) ليست حدثاً كان متكرراً يحدُث مرات ومرات، بل إنها حالة كانت موجودة في الماضي ولم تعد موجودة الآن.

- When he was a child, he used to be naughty. (✓)
- When he was a child, he would be naughty. (✗)

في المثال السابق لا يمكن استخدام (would be) وذلك لأن كَوْن الشخص يتصف بصفة ما (المشاغبة هنا) ليست حدثاً كان متكرراً يحدُث مرات ومرات، بل إنها حالة كانت موجودة في الماضي ولم تعد موجودة الآن.

٤ تُستخدَم (used to + inf.) وليس (would + inf.) لوصف العادات المنتظمة أو العادات الهامة في الماضي:

- When Omar was a young man, he would work as a fisherman. (✗)
- When Omar was a young man, he used to work as a fisherman. (✓)

٥ تشير (used to + inf.) بشكل واضح إلى عادات الماضي، لكن (would + inf.) لا تشير بالضرورة إلى الماضي، لذلك من الضروري أن يسبقها ظرف زمان أو تعبير يدل على الماضي:

- Rodayna used to wear colourful clothes. (✓)
- Rodayna would wear colourful clothes. (✗)
- When Rodayna was a student, she would wear colourful clothes. (✓)

٦ يمكن أن تُستخدم ظروف التكرار مثل (always, usually, sometimes ...) قبل أو بعد (used):

- When I was in primary school, I always used to come first.
- When I was in primary school, I used always to come first.

٦ تُستخدم ظروف التكرار مثل (always, usually, sometimes ...) بعد (would):

- When I was in primary school, I would always come first.

٧ يُستخدم الماضي البسيط وليس (used to/would + inf.) مع الأحداث التي حدثت مرة واحدة فقط:

- I would travel to Paris in 2012. (✗)
- I used to travel to Paris in 2012. (✗)
- I travelled to Paris in 2012. (✓)

٨ يُستخدم الماضي البسيط وليس (used to + inf.) مع الأحداث التي حدثت في فترة زمنية قصيرة تجعل من الصعب أن يكون الحدث عادة:

- I used to live with my aunt last month. (✗)
- I lived with my aunt last month. (✓)

٩ تُستخدَم (used to + inf.) فقط وليس (would + inf.) في النفي والاستفهام:

- When she was young, she wouldn't go to bed late. (✗)
- When she was young, she didn't use to go to bed late. (✓)
- Would you swim in the sea when you were younger? (✗)
- Did you use to swim in the sea when you were younger? (✓)

لكن في حالة وجود ظرف تكرار مثل (always, often, never, ...) فيمكن استخدام (would) لنفي عادات الماضي:

- When she was young, she wouldn't always go to bed late. (✓)
- When she was young, she would never go to bed late. (✓)

General Exercise On Language

Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Getting Started

1. I ..... in a small village, but I moved to live in Alexandria when I joined university.
a. am living b. used to live c. would live d. will live (LM)

2. I .....up early on Fridays, but now I like to get up early every day.
a. got b. won't get
c. used to get d. didn't use to get (LM)

3. My father..... to work when he was young, but nowadays he uses his car.
a. would always walk b. didn't use to walk
c. is used to walking d. always walks (LM)

4. When I was a little child, I ..... watch cartoons.
a. used to b. used c. would d. a & c

5. My mother ..... get me presents very often.
a. uses b. used c. would d. b & c

6. My mother ..... to get me presents very often when I was young.
a. uses b. used c. would d. b & c

7. My mother ..... get me presents very often.
a. uses b. used to c. would d. b & c

8. When he was a young man, my grandpa ..... very smart.
a. looked b. used to look c. a & b d. would look

9. While on holidays, I used ..... swimming every day.
a. go b. going c. to go d. to going

10. While on holidays, I grew used ..... swimming every day.
a. go b. going c. to go d. to going

11. While on holidays, I would ..... swimming every day.
a. go b. going c. to go d. to going

12. When she was younger, my grandma ..... do the housework on her own.
a. would b. used to c. a & b d. was used to

13. When she was younger, my grandma ..... doing the housework on her own.
a. would b. used to c. a & b d. was used to

14. Sama ..... help mum with the cooking when she was little.
a. no longer b. used to c. was used to d. is used to

15. Sama ..... helping mum with the cooking when she was little.
a. no longer b. used to c. was used to d. is used to

16. Sama ..... helps mum with the cooking as she has travelled abroad.
a. no longer b. used to c. was used to d. is used to

17. Sama ..... helping mum with the cooking whenever she has time.
a. no longer b. used to c. was used to d. is used to

18. She used to go shopping when she ..... young .
a. were b. has been c. is d. was

19. What did she ..... to read when she was free?
a. uses b. using c. use d. a & c

20. I ..... used to my current job after only one week.
a. get b. is c. became d. become

2 Special Cases

21. ..... football when he was a child? (LM)
a. Does he play b. Would he play
c. Is he used to playing d. Did he use to play

22. He no longer smokes as he ..... . (LM)
a. would do b. used to do
c. is used to doing d. never used to do

23. ..... do anything else in addition to his study?
a. Did Omar use to b. Was Omar used to
c. Would Omar d. a & c

24. ..... doing anything else in addition to his study?
a. Did Omar use to b. Was Omar used to
c. Would Omar d. a & c

25. When I was a little child, I ..... look skinny and weak.
a. used to b. used c. would d. a & c

26. While on holiday last month, I ..... swimming every day.
a. used to go b. get used to going
c. was used to going d. went

27. In his early youth, my uncle ..... smoke.
a. was used to b. used c. would d. used to

28. When I was younger, I ..... swimming, but now I really love it!
a. hadn't used to enjoyed b. wasn't enjoying
c. wouldn't enjoy d. didn't use to enjoy

29. In the past, more people ..... do manual work.
a. didn't use b. were used to c. would d. used

30. ..... to go to bed early when you were on holiday?
a. Would you use b. Were you used c. Did you use to d. Did you use

31. ..... to going to bed early when you were on holiday?
a. Would you use b. Were you used c. Did you use to d. Did you use

32. Last week, I ..... two conferences.
a. used to attend b. got used to attending
c. would attend d. attended

33. This knife is used ..... food.
a. to cut b. cut c. cutting d. to cutting

34. ..... used to be a big tree here. Now there's a plot of flowers.
a. Those b. These c. There's d. There

35. Rokaya ..... for a walk every day last week.
a. used to go b. didn't use to go c. went d. had gone

36. This chemical is used ..... insecticides.
a. to make b. to making c. making d. being made

37. I don't smoke ..... more.
a. too b. any c. no d. not

38. Buying a flat ..... cost far less money in the past.
a. would b. would to c. used to d. used to have

39. Whenever I saw that my mum was OK, I ..... be over the moon.
a. used to b. was used to c. would d. would always

3 Check your understanding

40. Yasser would always go to the cinema on Thursdays. This means .....
    a. he is used to going to the cinema on Thursdays. (LM)
    b. he used to go to the cinema on Thursdays.
    c. he always goes to the cinema on Thursdays.
    d. he never went to the cinema on Thursdays.
41. I no longer live in Assuit. To me, living in Assuit ..... .
    a. is a fact
    b. is a present habit
    c. was a past state
    d. was a past repeated action
42. Which of the following is a correctly structured sentence about a past state?
    a. I used to be a fitness trainer.
    b. I would be a fitness trainer.
    c. a & b
    d. I wouldn't be a fitness trainer.
43. Which of the following is a correctly structured sentence about a past habit?
    a. I used to do fitness training.
    b. I would do fitness training.
    c. a & b
    d. I wouldn't do fitness training.
44. There used to be a cinema in our street. Now, ...
    a. there's a cinema in our street.
    b. we have a cinema in our street.
    c. we never had a cinema in our street.
    d. we don't have a cinema in our street.
45. I used to like salty food. This means ..... .
    a. I still like salty food.
    b. I don't like salty food any more.
    c. I would like salty food.
    d. I never liked salty food.
46. Sama is no longer a baby. She ..... .
    a. used to be a baby.
    b. got used to being a baby.
    c. would be a baby.
    d. is still a baby.
47. There used to be a bookshop here. This means ..... .
    a. there was no bookshop here.
    b. there is a bookshop here.
    c. a bookshop used to be here.
    d. a bookshop is still here.
48. I don't stay up late any longer. This means ..... .
    a. I used to stay up late.
    b. I didn't stay up late.
    c. I wouldn't stay up late.
    d. I still stay up late.

49. "Did she use to be a secretary?" Which of the following gives the same meaning?
a. Was she used to being a secretary?
b. Would she be a secretary?
c. Was she a secretary?
d. b & c

• راجع افكارك مع معلمك.

4 Feedback grammar

50. ..... has arrived on time, haven't they? *(LM)*
a. Everyone b. No one c. Neither of them d. All of them

51. No one has invited her to the wedding party, ... ? *(LM)*
a. have they b. has he c. hasn't she d. haven't they

52. Children need to be taught not to talk back to their parents. This means that children ..... *(LM)*
a. weren't allowed to discuss issues.
b. shouldn't be allowed to reply rudely.
c. were asked to stop making noise.
d. weren't allowed to say anything.

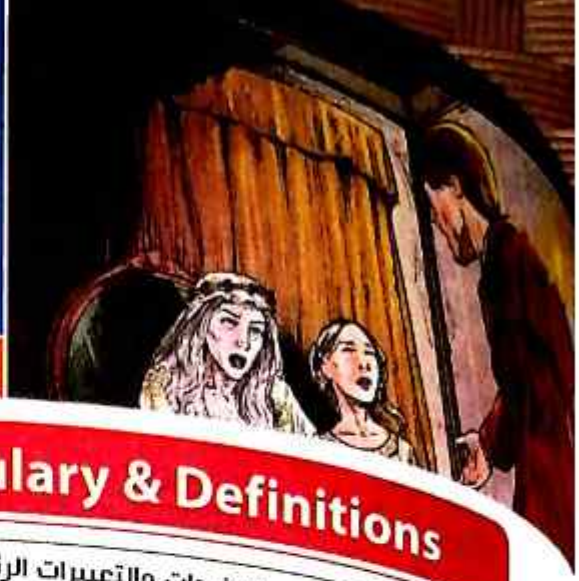
53. I recommend you ..... late anymore. *(LM)*
a. aren't late b. don't be c. not be d. not to be

54. By the end of next year, the road to my town ..... . *(LM)*
a. will have paved b. will have been paved
c. will pave d. will be paved

55. If you don't hit the books this week, you won't pass the exam. This means ..... *(LM)*
a. You should throw away the books.
b. You should study hard.
c. You should buy the needful books.
d. You should postpone your exam.

LESSONS **5 & 6**

SB pages 48 & 51 WB pages 28 & 29



Part I Vocabulary & Definitions

تنويه
- هذا الجزء خاص بالمفردات والتعبيرات الرئيسية للقصة، لقراءة نص القصة المقررة وللمزيد من المفردات اللغوية والتدريبات نهاية الكتاب.

1 Key Vocabulary, Idioms & Collocations

acquit(ted) (v)	يُبَرِّئ - يُخلي سبيل	murder(ed) (v-n)	يقتل - جريمة قتل
coincidence (n)	مصادفة	related(adj)	ذو قرابة
commit a crime	يرتكب جريمة	relation (n)	أحد الأقارب - علاقة
criminal (n)	مُجرِم	rowing (n)	التجديف
knit(ted) (v)	ينسج - يحيك	take my mind off	أحاول أن أنسى - أصرف ذهني عن
lawyer (n)	محامي		
legal(adj)	قانوني	tears (n)	الدموع
mislead - misled (v)	يضلل - يخدع		

2 Definitions التعريفات

تنويه
- لابد من قراءة التعريفات التالية جيدًا، فهي موضع امتحان.

acquit(ted)(v) يُبَرِّئ - يُخلي سبيل	when a person is told officially بشكل رسمي they did not commit a crime
coincidence (n) مصادفة	when things happen at the same time in a way that seems surprising or unusual
criminal(n) مُجرِم	someone who commits a crime
lawyer(n) محامي	a person who can help you with legal problems
murder(ed) (v) يقتل	to kill a person
related (adj) ذو قرابة	an adjective to describe that you are part of the same family as another person
rowing (n) التجديف	the action of moving a boat on water using long sticks
take my mind off أحاول أن أنسى - أصرف ذهني عن	to stop thinking about something which is negative
tears (n) الدموع	the drops of water which fall from your eyes when

LESSONS **5 & 6**

SB pages 48 & 51 WB pages 28 & 29



Part I Vocabulary & Definitions

تنويه • هذا الجزء خاص بالمفردات والتعبيرات الرئيسية للقصة، لقراءة نص القصة المقررة وللمزيد من المفردات اللغوية والتدريبات نهاية الكتاب.

1 Key Vocabulary, Idioms & Collocations

acquit(ted) (v)	يُبرِّئ - يُخلي سبيل	murder(ed) (v-n)	يقتل - جريمة قتل
coincidence (n)	مصادفة	related(adj)	ذو قرابة
commit a crime	يرتكب جريمة	relation (n)	صلة الأقارب - علاقة
criminal (n)	مُجرِم	rowing (n)	التجديف
knit(ted) (v)	ينسج - يحيك	take my mind off	أحاول أن أنسي - أصرف ذهني عن
lawyer (n)	محامي		
legal(adj)	قانوني	tears (n)	الدموع
mislead - misled (v)	يضلل - يخدع		

2 Definitions التعريفات

تنويه لابد من قراءة التعريفات التالية جيدًا، فهي موضع امتحان.

acquit(ted)(v) يُبرِّئ - يُخلي سبيل	when a person is told officially بشكل رسمي they did not commit a crime
coincidence (n) مصادفة	when things happen at the same time in a way that seems surprising or unusual
criminal(n) مُجرِم	someone who commits a crime
lawyer(n) محامي	a person who can help you with legal problems
murder(ed) (v) يقتل	to kill a person
related (adj) ذو قرابة	an adjective to describe that you are part of the same family as another person
rowing (n) التجديف	the action of moving a boat on water using long sticks
take my mind off أحاول أن أنسي - أصرف ذهني عن	to stop thinking about something which is negative
tears (n) الدموع	the drops of water which fall from your eyes when you are sad

Exercise On Vocabulary • Understand

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. He isn't a kind man; don't be ..... by his tricky behaviour. *(LM)*
   a. misled b. believed c. appeared d. helped
2. My sister likes to make clothes out of wool; she is currently ..... a sweater for my brother. *(LM)*
   a. letting b. knitting c. hitting d. sitting
3. My aunt asked a famous ..... to help her with a legal problem. He defended her well in the law court *(LM)*
   a. farmer b. judge c. criminal d. lawyer
4. When one ..... a crime, they are punished by law.
   a. makes b. murders c. kills d. commits
5. If someone is ..... of a crime, they are formally declared not to have committed the crime.
   a. acquitted b. acquired c. accused d. counted
6. He bought his own boat because he liked ..... so much.
   a. rowing b. deciphering c. acquitting d. taking off
7. We hadn't planned to go to the theatre on the same night as my sister; it was just a ..... .
   a. relations b. coincidence c. purse d. tears
8. No one guessed they were ..... because they looked so different.
   a. relations b. coincidence c. purse d. tears
9. The ..... was told he would go to prison for twenty years.
   a. lawyer b. investigator c. criminal d. owner
10. I couldn't stop my ..... from falling when it was time to say good-bye for the last time.
    a. relations b. coincidence c. purse d. tears

Part II Skills

تنويه: المهارات الخاصة بالوحدة تم شرحها متبوعة بالتدريبات فى ملحق (Master your skills) كل وحدة على حدة.

Translation الترجمة

① Choose the best Arabic translation :

1. The government adopts a sustainable development strategy, which represents a roadmap for achieving the dreams and aspirations of Egyptians in a dignified life.

أ. تتبنى الوزارة استراتيجية تنمية مؤقتة تُمثل خارطة طريق لتحقيق أحلام وتطلعات الموظفين المصريين في حياة كريمة.

ب. تتبنى الحكومة استراتيجية تنمية مستدامة تمهد الطريق لتحقيق أحلام وتطلعات المصريين في حياة كريمة في كل أنحاء البلد.

جـ. لقد تبنت الحكومة استراتيجية تنمية مستدامة تُمثل خارطة طريق لتحقيق أحلام وتطلعات المصريين في حياة كريمة في كل أنحاء الريف.

د. تتبنى الحكومة استراتيجية تنمية مستدامة تُمثل خارطة طريق لتحقيق أحلام وتطلعات المصريين في حياة كريمة.

2. If we give our deserts due care, we can increase our national income and solve many of our problems.

أ. إذا أعطينا صحارينا العناية السببية، يمكننا زيادة دخلنا القومي وحل العديد من مشاكلنا.

ب. إذا أعطينا صحارينا العناية الواجبة، يمكننا زيادة دخلنا القومي وحل القليل من مشاكلنا.

جـ. إذا أعطينا صحارينا العناية الواجبة، يمكننا زيادة دخلنا القومي وحل العديد من مشاكلنا.

د. إذا لم نعط صحارينا العناية الواجبة، يمكننا زيادة دخلنا القومي وحل العديد من مشاكلنا.

3. Big dams are built across rivers and their tributaries to control high floods in the rainy season.

أ. تقام السدود الكبيرة بطول الأنهار وروافدها للسيطرة على الفيضانات العالية في الموسم المطير.

ب. تقام السدود الكبيرة عبر الأنهار وروافدها للسيطرة على الفيضانات العالية الموسم المطير.

جـ. تقام السدود عبر الأنهار وروافدها للسيطرة على الفيضانات المنخفضة الموسم المطير.

د. تقام السدود الكبيرة عبر الأنهار للسيطرة على الفيضانات الطويلة الموسم المطير.

4. Many people feel motivated to move and they may seek new and better living conditions. People travel to foreign countries because they believe they would be different from home.

أ. يشعر الكثير من الناس بالحافز للسفر، وقد يسعون إلى ظروف معيشية جديدة أفضل، ويسافر الناس إلى دول أجنبية لأنهم يعتقدون أنها ستكون مختلفة عن الوطن.

ب. يشعر الكثير من الناس بالحافز للتحرك وقد يسعون إلى ظروف معيشية جيدة وأفضل. يسافر الناس إلى دول أجنبية لأنهم يعتقدون أنهم سيكونون مختلفين عن الوطن.

جـ. يشعر الكثير من الناس بالحافز للتحرك وقد يسعون إلى ظروف معيشية جديدة أفضل. يسافر الناس إلى دول أجنبية لأنهم يعتقدون أنهم سيكونون مختلفين عن الوطن.

د. يشعر الكثير من الناس بالحافز للحركة وقد يسعون إلى ظروف معيشية جديدة وأكبر. كما يسافر الناس إلى دول أجنبية لأنهم يعتقدون أنهم سيكونون مختلفين عن الوطن.

② Choose the best English translation :

١. تحظى مصر بتراث ثقافى هائل، والذى يُعد مصدر فخر للمصريين، بالإضافة إلى كونه مصدر إلهام للأجيال القادمة لتحقيق المزيد من التنمية والنجاح فى شتى المجالات. (LM)

a. Egypt has a marvellous social heritage, which is a source of pride for the Arabs, in addition to being a source of inspiration for future generations to achieve more development and success in various fields.

b. Egypt has a marvellous cultural heritage, which is a source of pride for the Egyptians, in addition to being a source of inspiration for future generations to achieve more development and success in various fields.

c. Egypt has a tremendous cultural heritage, which is a source of wealth for the Egyptians, in addition to being a source of inspiration for the present generations to achieve more development and success in various fields.

d. Egypt has a tremendous cultural heritage, which is a source of pride for the Egyptians, in addition to being a source of power for future generations to keep this heritage and achieve success in various fields.

---

٢. كنت أشاهد فيلماً وثائقياً عن الملك رمسيس الثاني عندما تلقيت اتصالاً من أخي في المملكة العربية السعودية

a. I have been watching a documentary about King Ramses II when I got a call from my brother in Saudi Arabia.

b. I had watched a documentary about King Ramses II when I got a call from my brother in Saudi Arabia.

c. I was watching a documentary about King Ramses II when I got a call from my brother in Saudi Arabia.

d. I have been watching a documentary about King Ramses II when I got a call from my brother in Saudi Arabia.

٣. إن منظر غروب الشمس فوق سطح البحر يبدو رائعاً، ويجعلك سكون الليل تشعر بالسكينة.

a. The view of the sunset over the sea looks wonderfully, and the silence of the night makes you fall peaceful.

b. The view of the sunset over the sea is wonderful, and the silence of the night makes you feel peaceful.

c. The view of the sunset over the sea is wonderful, and the silence of the night makes you fill peacefully.

d. The view of the sunset over the sea is wonderfully, and the silence of the night makes you feel peacefully.

٤. إن القيام بواجباتك تجاه مجتمعك كمواطن صالح لابد أن يسبق قيامك بالمطالبة بحقوقك المشروعة.

a. Carrying out your duties towards your community as a good citizen must precede asking for your legitimate rights.

b. As a good citizen, carrying out your duties towards your community must precede asking for your legitimate rights.

c. Carrying out your duties towards your community as a valid citizen must precede asking for your legitimate rights.

d. a & b



موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

Test on Unit 10

• Understand ○ Apply • Create

تنويه
للتدريب على أسئلة اختيارى MRQ
بنك الأسئلة

a Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. This film has a moving end." In this context, the word 'moving' is an antonym of ..... .
a. emotional b. unemotional c. changing d. practical

2. Mummies are well- ..... human bodies.
a. practical b. entire c. preserved d. essential

3. There are huge ..... of Ramses II in the temple.
a. honours b. interests c. Muses d. sculptures

4. I bought this car for a good price, it is really a ..... .
a. myth b. heritage site c. bargain d. remain

5. To ..... is to remove something from the ground.
a. pick up b. hand in c. come across d. dig up

6. This is an elaborate system." The adjective 'elaborate' here is an antonym of ..... .
a. simple b. complicated c. complex d. b & c

7. Don't ..... up your sadness. Cry it out.
a. display b. decipher c. categorize d. dam

8. I sold my car ..... more money than I had bought it for.
a. with b. for c. by d. at

9. Let's try to find them. They ..... gone very far. (النموذج الوزارة الثاني ٢٠١٤)
a. must b mustn't have c. can't have d. could have

10. Climbing Mount Everest ..... very difficult. The oxygen is very thin at the top. (LM)
a. must have be b. must been c. mustn't been d. must have been

11. Those shoes are gorgeous! They ..... cheap. (LM)
a. can't have been b. can't have c. mustn't have d. mustn't been

12. She ..... have remembered our phone number because she called us today. (LM)
a. must b. can't c. mustn't d. might

13. The test ..... have been very difficult. You got an A. (LM)
a. can't b. could c. might d. must

14. Mariam might h... when she was eating the fish. (LM)
...llows

Test on Unit 10

• Understand • Apply • Create

تنويه
للتدريب على أسئلة اختيارى MRQ بنك الأسئلة

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. This film has a moving end." In this context, the word 'moving' is an antonym of ..... .
   a. emotional b. unemotional c. changing d. practical
2. Mummies are well- ..... human bodies.
   a. practical b. entire c. preserved d. essential
3. There are huge ..... of Ramses II in the temple.
   a. honours b. interests c. Muses d. sculptures
4. I bought this car for a good price, it is really a ..... .
   a. myth b. heritage site c. bargain d. remain
5. To ..... is to remove something from the ground.
   a. pick up b. hand in c. come across d. dig up
6. This is an elaborate system." The adjective 'elaborate' here is an antonym of ..... .
   a. simple b. complicated c. complex d. b & c
7. Don't ..... up your sadness. Cry it out.
   a. display b. decipher c. categorize d. dam
8. I sold my car ..... more money than I had bought it for.
   a. with b. for c. by d. at
9. Let's try to find them. They ..... gone very far. (نموذج الوزارة الثاني ٢٠١٤)
   a. must b. mustn't have c. can't have d. could have
10. Climbing Mount Everest ..... very difficult. The oxygen is very thin at the top. (LM)
    a. must have be b. must been c. mustn't been d. must have been
11. Those shoes are gorgeous! They ..... cheap. (LM)
    a. can't have been b. can't have c. mustn't have d. mustn't been
12. She ..... have remembered our phone number because she called us today. (LM)
    a. must b. can't c. mustn't d. might
13. The test ..... have been very difficult. You got an A. (LM)
    a. can't b. could c. might d. must
14. Mariam might have ..... a bone when she was eating the fish. (LM)
    a. swallow b. swallowing c. swallowed d. swallows

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

15. I used to play basketball, but I ..... do so.
a. any longer b. any more c. not more d. no longer

16. Before being employed, she ..... have a lot of spare time.
a. got used to b. used to c. would d. b & c

Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Which job do you want to do when you leave school? 150 years ago, there were not many choices. Some people took academic jobs such as becoming a lawyer or an accountant. Others took jobs that needed vocational skills, such as being a farmer. Today, however, there are hundreds of new kinds of jobs which we did not have just ten years ago. This is good news for young people today because there are many new and exciting jobs that they can do.

An example is computer programming for mobile phone companies. Mobile phones are developing every year, and the phone companies need people to help to develop them even more. Another new job is something called library science. This is knowing how to understand information on the internet. This is very important for business which have a lot of information about their **customers** and want to know how to use it, so they can sell them things. So, there are a lot of opportunities for work in the future, but they may not be the jobs that you have heard of before.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

17. The best title for this passage is ..... .
a. Vocational jobs b. Academic jobs
c. Unwanted jobs d. Ever-changing jobs

18. Which of the following sentences is CORRECT ?
a. Jobs today are similar to those in the past.
b. Jobs in the future will be more traditional.
c. Jobs in the past were only vocational.
d. Jobs in the future will be different from those in these days.

19. The main idea of the passage is that jobs in the future ..... .
a. might not exist today b. will be vocational jobs
c. will be the same as 10 years ago d. will be the same as 150 years ago

20. Which of the following jobs couldn't people do 150 years ago?
a. Academic jobs b. Computer programming
c. Vocational jobs d. Farming

15. I used to play basketball, but I ..... do so.
a. any longer b. any more c. not more d. no longer

16. Before being employed, she ..... have a lot of spare time.
a. got used to b. used to c. would d. b & c

Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Which job do you want to do when you leave school? 150 years ago there were not many choices. Some people took academic jobs such as becoming a lawyer or an accountant. Others took jobs that needed vocational skills, such as being a farmer. Today, however, there are hundreds of new kinds of jobs which we did not have just ten years ago. This is good news for young people today because there are many new and exciting jobs that they can do.

An example is computer programming for mobile phone companies. Mobile phones are developing every year, and the phone companies need people to help to develop them even more. Another new job is something called library science. This is knowing how to understand information on the internet. This is very important for business which have a lot of information about their **customers** and want to know how to use it, so they can sell them things. So, there are a lot of opportunities for work in the future, but they may not be the jobs that you have heard of before.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

17. The best title for this passage is ..... .
a. Vocational jobs b. Academic jobs
c. Unwanted jobs d. Ever-changing jobs

18. Which of the following sentences is CORRECT ?
a. Jobs today are similar to those in the past.
b. Jobs in the future will be more traditional.
c. Jobs in the past were only vocational.
d. Jobs in the future will be different from those in these days.

19. The main idea of the passage is that jobs in the future ..... .
a. might not exist today b. will be vocational jobs
c. will be the same as 10 years ago d. will be the same as 150 years ago

20. Which of the following jobs couldn't people do 150 years ago?
a. Academic jobs b. Computer programming
c. Vocational jobs d. Farming

21. According to the passage, "**customers**" are people who ..... .
a. repair b. manufacture c. analyse d. buy

22. The best sentence which summarises the passage is ..... .
a. Academic jobs will prevail in the future.
b. Pilots and astronauts will be the most needed jobs in the future.
c. Jobs in the future will be connected with computer and technology.
d. Vocational jobs will not exist in the future.

23. The writer thinks that we should ..... .
a. change our jobs b. prepare children for future jobs
c. search for new jobs d. refuse our recent jobs

24. According to the passage, who can benefit well from new jobs?
a. old people b. youth c. retired people d. infants

Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Sometimes, people may be punished for things they didn't do. Do you think that we should stop doing good things in case we feel danger or we should continue doing it? On the night of April 14, 1865 President Abraham Lincoln was attending the theater in Washington. In the middle of the performance, an actor named John Wilkes Booth, seeking to avenge the defeat of the South, slipped into the presidential box and shot the president. Booth escaped the theater, but broke his leg when he leaped from the president's box seat to the stage.

Five hours later, Booth and his companion arrived at the home of a doctor called Samuel Mudd. He knew nothing about the assassination of the president. He set the leg and persuaded the two travelers to stay in his house for the rest of the night. The next morning, Booth and his friend, using false names, paid the bill and departed, but Dr. Mudd was arrested, taken to Washington, and tried on the charge that he was a friend of Booth's and therefore helped plan the assassination. He insisted that he knew nothing of the plot, but the court sentenced the unfortunate doctor to life imprisonment.

He was imprisoned at Fort Jefferson. The warm, humid climate at the fort was a perfect breeding ground for mosquitoes. Again and again, these pests spread yellow fever germs to prisoners and guards alike. Dr. Mudd volunteered his services, because he was the only doctor on the island. He had to fight the disease, even after he was infected himself. In spite of the fact that the guards and other inmates called him "that Lincoln murderer," and treated him very badly, he worked hard to fight

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

the disease. Meanwhile, his wife was working heroically back in Washington for her husband's cause. After a four-year struggle, she secured a pardon for him for a crime he never committed.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

25. The best title for this passage is ..... .
    a. The reasons for Lincoln's Assassination
    b. Lincoln's efforts to free the Americans
    c. A fair trial for an unfair man
    d. An unfair trial for a fair man

26. What was the unfair cause of Dr Mudd's conviction إدانة ?
    a. He helped Booth get away.
    b. He helped Booth assassinate Lincoln.
    c. He didn't like the President.
    d. He lied to Booth and his fellow.

27. According to the passage, Booth killed Lincoln because ..... .
    a. He was one of Lincoln's supporters
    b. He supported the defeated south
    c. Lincoln helped the south a lot
    d. Lincoln defeated the north a lot

28. The last paragraph represents ..... .
    a. the crime of the husband
    b. the life of the prisoners
    c. the suffering of the prisoners
    d. the end of the diseases

29. Why do you think Dr Mudd fought the yellow fever outbreak at Fort Jefferson?
    a. Because the prisoners and the guards were his friends.
    b. There was no one else to treat the sick prisoners.
    c. He thought it would help get him a pardon.
    d. He didn't want to get sick himself.

30. After reading the story of Dr Mudd, we can see that he was a ..... person.
    a. reliable and kind
    b. selfish and greedy
    c. dependent and careless
    d. violent and intelligent

31. Which of the following sentences is CORRECT ?
    a. Prisons in poor areas are full of diseases.
    b. Prisons in the developed areas have no care.
    c. Prisoners don't suffer in their cells.
    d. Prisoners lead a healthy life in their cells.

32. The main reason for the spread of fever is .....
a. The large number of people at the fort
b. The bad food and water at the fort
c. The warm and humid climate there
d. The wildlife around the fort

Choose the best Arabic translation :

33. The housing problem has forced many young people to reject marriage. This is because it is difficult for a young man to buy or rent a flat.

أ. مشكلة الإسكان أجبرت العديد من الشباب على العزوف عن الزواج. وهذا بسبب أنه من الصعب لشاب أن يشترى أو يستأجر شقة.

ب. إن مشكلة الإسكان أجبرت العديد من الشباب على الإضراب عن الزواج. ويرجع ذلك لأن الشاب لن يشترى أو يستأجر شقة.

جـ. مشكلة الإسكان تدعو العديد من الشباب على الإضراب عن الزواج. ولهذا السبب من الصعب لشاب أن يستأجر أو يشترى شقة.

د. تعتبر مشكلة الإسكان من أجبرت العديد من الشباب على الإضراب عن الزواج. وهذا بسبب أنه ليس من الصعب لشاب أن يشترى أو يستأجر شقة.

34. Most of the working women in Egypt shoulder many responsibilities, dividing their time between their work and bringing up their children.

أ. غالبية السيدات العاملات فى مصر تأخذن مسئوليات عديدة موحدة ما بين عملهن وتعليم أطفالهن.

ب. كثيرًا من السيدات العاملات فى مصر تحملن مسئوليات عديدة فأوقاتهم منقسمة ما بين عملهم وتربية أطفالهن.

جـ. معظم السيدات العاملات فى مصر تتحملن مسئوليات عديدة فيقسّمن وقتهن ما بين عملهن وتربية أطفالهن.

د. عددًا من العاملات فى مصر قد تتحملن مسئوليات فأوقاتهم محددة ما بين عملهن وتربية أطفالهن.

Choose the best English translation :

٣٥. رغم التقدم الذى حققه الإنسان فى جميع المجالات، إلا أنه ما يزال يقف عاجزًا أمام بعض الكوارث الطبيعية

a. Despite of the progress man had achieved in all fields, they still stand helpless in front of some natural disasters.

b. Despite the progress man has achieved in all fields, they still stand helpless in front of some natural disasters.

c. In spite the progress man achieved in all fields, they still stand helpless in front of some nature disasters.

d. In spite of the progress man has achieved in all fields, they steal stand helpless in front of some nature disasters.

٣٦. تعتبر الشائعات أحد العوامل التى تؤدى لعدم إستقرار المجتمع ، وخاصة إذا كانت تؤذى جميع أفراد المجتمع.

a. Rumours are one of the main elements that lead to the society's stability, especially if they hurt all the society's members.

b. Roars are one of the main elements that lead to the society's instability, particularly if they hurt all the society's organs.

c. Roars are one of the main elements that lead to the society's instability, secretly if they hurt all the social members.

d. Rumours are one of the main elements that lead to the society's instability, especially if they hurt all the society's members.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

37. A colon (:) can be used to ..... . (LM)
   a. end a sentence
   b. show explanation
   c. express a result
   d. express exclamation

38. Which of the following is punctuated correctly?
   a. Her son, Jack Jones Jr., was born on nov. 6, 2010.
   b. Her son, Jack Jones Jr , was born on Nov. 6, 2010.
   c. Her son Jack Jones Jr., was born on Nov. 6, 2010.
   d. Her son, Jack Jones Jr., was born on Nov. 6, 2010.

39. We write a descriptive essay when we ..... . (LM)
   a. narrate a story or a personal / someone's event or experience.
   b. persuade someone of a certain point of view, adopting our own opinion, which is rather based on emotions.
   c. focus on the details or description of something, like a place or a monument, for example.
   d. try to make someone accept our opinion, which is mainly based on logic.

40. In this part of the essay, the author ..... . (LM)

The Great Pyramid of Giza, located north of Cairo, Egypt on the west bank of the Nile River, is the only ancient world wonder that has survived to the present day. It is one of three royal pyramids built between 2700 and 2500 B.C., including Khufu, Khafra and Menkaura. Khufu, also known as "The Great Pyramid," is the largest and most impressive, covering 13 acres and containing over 2 million stone blocks weighing between two and 30 tons each.

   a. spoke about the seven wonders of the world.
   b. showed the reason why The Great Pyramid of Giza was built.
   c. explained the merits and demerits of The Great Pyramid of Giza.
   d. introduced a descriptive style for The Great Pyramid of Giza.

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha.com

Answers of Test on unit 10

اسم الطالب (رباعياً) : .....

تعليمات: ظلل الدائرة المقابلة تمامًا للإجابة الصحيحة. إذا ظللت الدائرة أمام الإجابة الخطأ، اشطب عليها بشكل واضح ثم ظلل الدائرة المقابلة للإجابة الصحيحة.

1. a	b	c	d	21. a	b	c	d
2. a	b	c	d	22. a	b	c	d
3. a	b	c	d	23. a	b	c	d
4. a	b	c	d	24. a	b	c	d
5. a	b	c	d	25. a	b	c	d
6. a	b	c	d	26. a	b	c	d
7. a	b	c	d	27. a	b	c	d
8. a	b	c	d	28. a	b	c	d
9. a	b	c	d	29. a	b	c	d
10. a	b	c	d	30. a	b	c	d
11. a	b	c	d	31. a	b	c	d
12. a	b	c	d	32. a	b	c	d
13. a	b	c	d	33. د	جـ	ب	أ
14. a	b	c	d	34. د	جـ	ب	أ
15. a	b	c	d	35. a	b	c	d
16. a	b	c	d	36. a	b	c	d
17. a	b	c	d	37. a	b	c	d
18. a	b	c	d	38. a	b	c	d
19. a	b	c	d	39. a	b	c	d
20. a	b	c	d	40. a	b	c	d

General Exercises
for Al Azhar students on Unit 10



1. Finish the following dialogue :

A teacher is talking to his student.

Teacher : Adam, you don't show me your homework.

Adam : I'm sorry, sir (1) ..... .

Teacher : Oh, Why ?

Adam : I wasn't well yesterday.

Teacher : (2) ..... ?

Adam : I had a headache.

Teacher : (3) ..... ?

Adam : No, I didn't see a doctor. I think it is not serious.

Teacher : Do you watch too much television ?

Adam : (4) ..... . I like watching films and sports programmes

Teacher : I advise you not to watch too much T.V.

2. Write a paragraph of one hundred and twenty (120) words on :

"The importance of the Egyptian monuments"

.....

3. Translate into Arabic :

- Everyone should play a positive role in developing our country and achieving progress.

.....

4. Translate into English :

-لم يعد القضاء غامضًا بفضل المجهودات العظيمة للعلماء.

.....

5. Answer the following question : (Islamic Selections) :

What were Muslims fully aware of in the Battle of Badr ?

.....

UNIT 11

Finding your culture

SB pages 52 : 61 WB pages 32 : 37

Learning Outcomes :

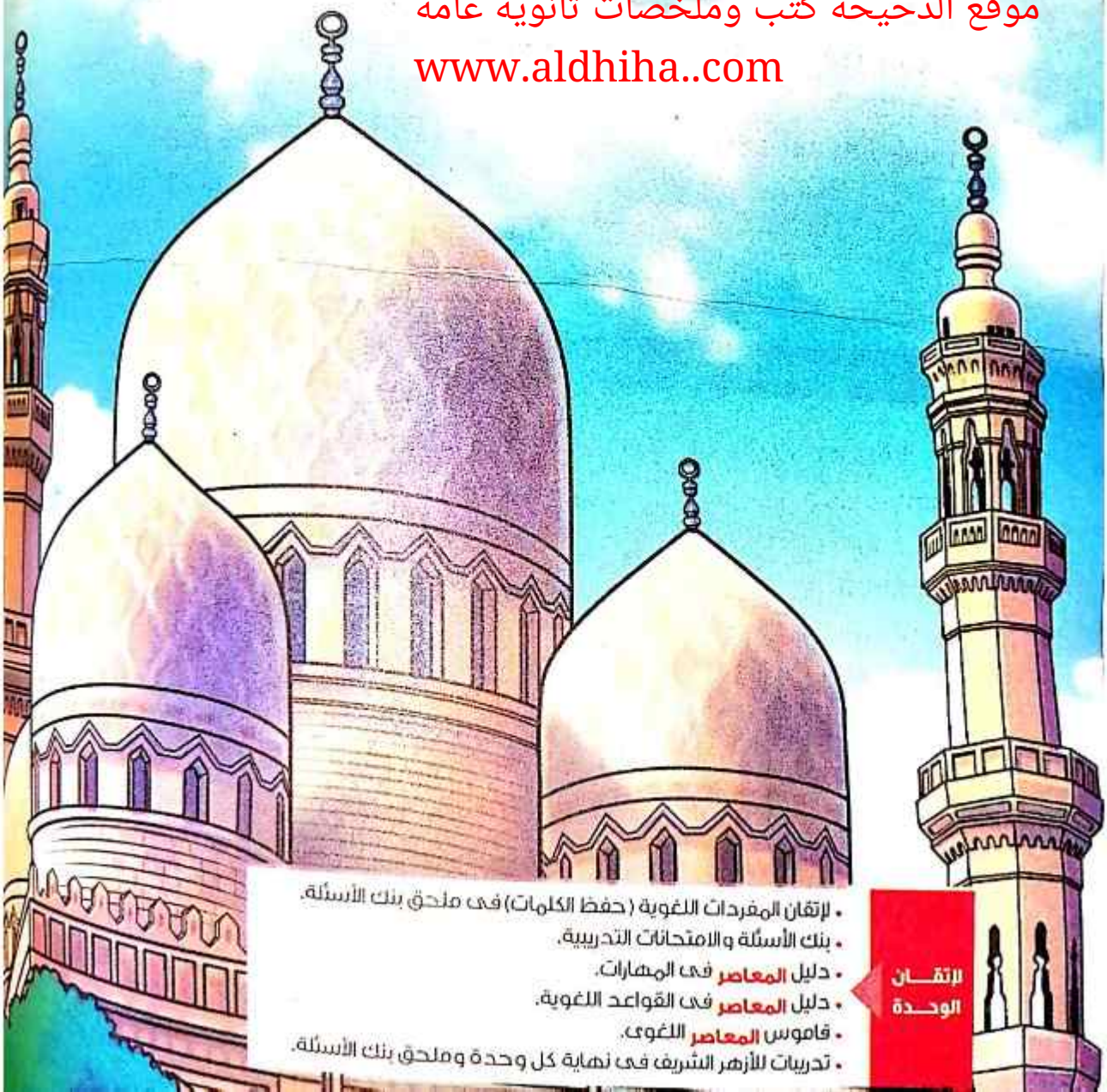
Reading :
The benefits of being multilingual; an Egyptian dialect; a classroom forum

Writing :
Write an opinion essay; a post on a class forum; introduce reasons

Listening :
Talk about cultural heritage

- **Speaking :** Plan a multicultural festival
- **Language :** Compound adjectives; Defining and nondefining relative clauses
- **Life skills :** Value your own culture and respect other cultures

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com



لإتقان الوحدة

- لإتقان المفردات اللغوية (حفظ الكلمات) فى ملحق بنك الأسئلة.
- بنك الأسئلة والامتحانات التدريبية.
- دليل **المعاصر** فى المهارات.
- دليل **المعاصر** فى القواعد اللغوية.
- قاموس **المعاصر** اللغوى.
- تدريبات للأزهر الشريف فى نهاية كل وحدة وملحق بنك الأسئلة.

LESSONS 1 & 2

SB pages 52 : 55 WB pages 30 & 31



Part I Vocabulary

تنويه • اختبر مدى اتقانك للمفردات الرئيسية فى كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

bilingual(adj)	ثنائي اللغة/مُجيد للُغتين	mother tongue(n)	لغة المنشأ
bilingual(n)	شخص يجيد التحدث بلغتين	multicultural(adj)	مُتعددُ الثقافات
clear-cut(adj)	بَيِّن/ مُحَدَّد - واضح	multiculturalism(n)	تعدُّد الثقافات
deep-seated(adj)	مُتَأصِّل/ مُتَجذِّر	multilingual(adj)	متعدد اللغات
dominant(adj)	سائد - مُنتَشِر - مُسَيطِر	raise(d) (v)	يرفع - يرفع - يزيد
identify(ied) (v)	يُحدِّد هويَّة	well-balanced (adj)	مُتَّزِن عاطفيًا ونفسيًا
identity(n)	هويَّة	well-known(adj)	معروف/مشهور
monolingual(adj)	أحادي اللغة	widely spoken (adv)	يتم التَحَدُّث بها على نطاق واسع

تنويه • المفردات اللغوية باللون الأحمر هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية.

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

2 Important Vocabulary

Alzheimer's(n)	الزهايمر	inhabitant(n)	ساكن - أحد سكان
approach(n)	منهج - تَوَجُّه	initiative(n)	مُبادَرَة - مُبادَأة
attend(ed) (v)	يَحْضُر	isolated(adj)	مُنعزِل
attention(n)	انتباه	kindness(n)	عطف/طِيبة
beneficial(adj)	مفيد	last(ed) (v)	يستمر - يدوم
benefit(n)	فائدة/منفعة	limited(adj)	محدود/مقصور
celebrate(d) (v)	يحتفل بـ	locate(d) (v)	يضع - يحدد موقع
celebration(n)	احتفال	majority(n)	أغلبية
characterize(d) (v)	يُميِّز	mayor(n)	حاكم ولاية - عُمْدَة البَلْدَة
characteristics(n)	خصائص	mental(adj)	ذهني/عقلي
classify(ied) (v)	يُصنِّف	minority(n)	أقلية
commemorate(d) (v)	يخلد ذكرى	mix(n)	مزيج/خليط
community(n)	المجتمع	oasis(n)	واحة
confusing(adj)	مُحيِّر/مُربِك	obelisk(n)	مسلة/نُصُب عَمُودِيّ
consider(ed) (v)	يَعتَبِر - يُفكِّر في	obviously(adv)	بوضوح

official(adj)	رسمي
parade(n)	عَرْض - استعراض
peer(n)	قرين - شريك
perform(ed) (v)	يؤدى - يمثل
performance(n)	أداء
PhD(n)	الدكتوراه
population(n)	(عدد) السكان
precious(adj)	ثمين/نفيس
preserve(d) (v)	يصون/يحافظ علي
prince(n)	أمير
represent(ed) (v)	يُمثِّل/ينوب عن
Siwi(n)	اللهجة السِيوية
sociolinguist(n)	عالم لغويات اجتماعية
stall(n)	كُشك
survive(d) (v)	يبقي حياً - ينجو
temporary(adj)	مُؤقَّت
tomb(n)	مقبرة
tour(ed) (v)	يطوف - يتجول في
unique(adj)	فريد/مُمَيَّز
various(adj)	متنوع

convinced(adj)	مُقتنع
cultural heritage(n)	الموروث الثقافي
definitely(adv)	بالتأكيد
dialect(n)	لهجة/لَكْنَة
displays(n)	عروض
diversity(n)	التعددية - التنوع
easternmost(adj)	أقصي الشرق
endanger(ed) (v)	يُعرِّض للخطر
endangered(adj)	مُعرَّض للخطر
entertainment(n)	ترفيه - تسلية
estimate(d) (v)	يُقدِّر (قيمة)
event(n)	مُناسَبَة - حَدَث هام
exhibition(n)	معرض
experience(d) (v)	يُجرِّب - يعايش
festival(n)	احتفال - مهرجان
figure(n)	رقم
forum(n)	منتدى
function(n)	وظيفة - استخدام
funeral(n)	جنازة
glossy(adj)	لامع - براق

3 Languages and nationalities

Gaelic(n)	اللغةالغيلية (لغة أيرلندية قديمة)
Mandarin(n)	اللغة الصينية
Nobiin(n)	اللغة النوبية
Nubian(n/adj)	شخص نُوبِيّ - نوبي
Portuguese(n/adj)	اللغةالبرتغالية - شخص برتغالي
Rosetta Stone(n)	حجر رشيد
Tamazight(n)	اللغة الأمازيغية

Amazigh(adj)	أمازيغيّ
Armenian(adj/n)	أرميني
Bedawi(n)	اللغة البدوية
Bedouin(n)	شخص بدوى
Berber(n)	شخص بربري - أحد لغات البربر
Berbers(n)	البَرْبَر
Catalan(n)	لغة كتلانية

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

UNIT 11

4 Definitions تعريفات

bilingual(adj) ثنائي اللغة/مُجيد للُغتين	able to speak two languages well
clear-cut(adj) بَيِّن/ مُحَدَّد، مُعَيَّن/ وَاضح	easy to understand or be certain about
deep-seated(adj) مُتأصِّل/ مُتجذِّر	strong and is very difficult to change
dominant(adj) سائد - مُنتشِر - مُسيطِر	more important or noticeable ملحوظ
identity(n) هويَّة	who you are as a person
monolingual(adj) أحادي اللغة	able to speak only one language
mother tongue(n) لغة المَنشأ	the first language you learn as a baby
multicultural(adj) مُتعدِّد الثقافات	including people with many different customs عادات and beliefs معتقدات
multilingual(adj) متعدد اللغات	able to speak a number of languages
raise(d) (v) يُربِّي - يرفع	to help a child grow up
well-balanced(adj) مُتَّزِن عاطفيًا ونفسيًا	sensible حكيم and does not allow strong emotions مشاعر to control their behaviour
well-known(adj) معروف/مشهور	known by a lot of people

Exercise On Vocabulary • Understand

• ✪ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1 Key vocabulary

1. My brother is bilingual; he speaks ..... . (LM)
   a. one language b. two languages
   c. three languages d. no language
2. In some countries, there may be one ..... language, which is usually the one used by the government. (LM)
   a. silent b. temporary c. dominant d. second
3. The first language you learn as a baby is your ..... . (LM)
   a. unknown language b. mother tongue
   c. foreign language d. second language
4. He is ..... ; he is able to speak a number of languages. (LM)
   a. dumb b. mute c. bilingual d. multilingual

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

5. Knowing about your family's roots helps build a sense of ..... and brings you closer to older relatives. (LM)
a. horror b. humour c. identity d. quality

6. ..... is the way in which a society deals with cultural diversity, both at the national and community level. (LM)
a. Multilingualism b. Multiculturalism
c. Multimedia d. Multicourse

7. Liverpool is a ..... team. It has players from several nationalities.
a. monolingual b. bilingual c. linguistic d. multicultural

8. To ..... your kids well, you need enough money.
a. attend b. raise c. last d. consider

9. As a writer, Mahfouz is ..... to readers all over the world.
a. isolated b. widely spoken c. well-known d. well-balanced

10. I have a/an ..... belief in Allah.
a. convinced b. easternmost c. deep-seated d. beneficial

11. If you are ....., you'll find it difficult to get a good job.
a. monolingual b. bilingual c. multilingual d. multicultural

12. Arabic is a/an ..... language. It is the official language of most Arab countries.
a. isolated b. widely spoken c. well-read d. well-balanced

13. There's a ..... difference in meaning between 'learn' and 'teach'.
a. convinced b. clear-cut c. deep-seated d. beneficial

14. A/An ..... diet keeps you healthy and energetic.
a. isolated b. widely spoken c. well-known d. well-balanced

2 Important vocabulary

15. What are the ..... that give the Egyptians a unique identity? (LM)
a. demerits b. characteristics c. characters d. quantities

16. There are sixteen other ..... spoken round the country, for example in Nubia, people speak Nobiin. (LM)
a. symbols b. dialects c. accents d. codes

17. In Nubia and the Nile Valley, you will see monuments that ..... famous Pharaohs like Khufu, Djoser, Amenhotep III and Khafre. (LM)
a. cultivate b. eradicate c. commemorate d. communicate

18. Using credit cards is of great ..... to both customers and sellers.
a. multiculturalism b. benefit c. majority d. identity

19. The queen has a golden crown covered with ..... jewels.
a. dominant b. limited c. official d. precious

20. The police are responsible for the security of all the ..... of the city.
a. dialects b. sociolinguists c. inhabitants d. tongues

21. The course I have ..... has helped me listen to and speak English well.
a. attended b. raised c. lasted d. considered

22. Egypt regularly holds an international ..... for youth.
a. function b. forum c. minority d. funeral

23. This statue is ..... to be about 3,500 years old.
a. benefited b. endangered c. estimated d. represented

24. A sociable person finds it difficult to be ..... from others.
a. temporary b. unique c. endangered d. isolated

25. To ..... the environment, it is a must to stop cutting down rainforests.
a. tour b. preserve c. locate d. survive

26. We are not ..... by what you say. It is not logical.
a. convinced b. clear-cut c. deep-seated d. beneficial

27. Arabic is the ..... language of Egypt. It is the language of the government and all organisations.
a. dominant b. limited c. official d. precious

28. As a/an ....., I study the way language is affected by difference in class, origin, work, etc.
a. dialect b. sociolinguist c. inhabitant d. tongue

29. I haven't decided yet. I am still ..... my options.
a. attending b. raising c. lasting d. considering

30. Sadly, only a small ..... of students are interested in education these days.
a. function b. forum c. minority d. funeral

31. El-Moasser is ..... as a high-quality educational book.
a. classified b. endangered c. toured d. represented

32. Egypt's ..... to solve the problem was successful.
a. figure b. event c. initiative d. oasis

33. Luckily, everyone on the bus ..... the accident.
a. toured b. preserved c. located d. survived

34. I can't help you as I have very ..... time.
a. dominant b. limited c. official d. precious

35. After kindergarten, primary stage ..... for six years.
a. attends b. raises c. lasts d. considers

36. Everyone in the ..... was dressed in black.
a. function b. forum c. minority d. funeral

37. When sales ..... rise, traders make a lot of money.
a. figures b. events c. initiatives d. oases

38. Egypt has a/an ..... location. That's why it plays an important strategic role.
a. temporary b. unique c. endangered d. isolated

39. I am ..... Luxor and Aswan with my family this winter.
a. touring b. preserving c. locating d. surviving

40. Cycling is highly ..... to both our health and the environment.
a. convinced b. clear-cut c. deep-seated d. beneficial

41. Despite the long years he spent in Cairo, Abdulrahman Al-Abnody always used to speak in his broad Upper Egyptian ..... .
a. dialect b. sociolinguist c. inhabitant d. mouth

42. Slow down, Hussein. Don't ..... the lives of your passengers.
a. classify b. endanger c. estimate d. represent

43. My parents live in a remote ..... in the western desert.
a. figure b. event c. initiative d. oasis

44. This problem is only ..... . It will be solved and soon everything will be OK.
a. temporary b. unique c. endangered d. isolated

45. We are trying to ..... the source of the gas smell.
a. tour b. represent c. locate d. survive

46. Would you kindly tell me what the ..... of this button is ?
a. function b. forum c. minority d. funeral

47. I do not speak for anybody. I ..... only myself.
a. classify b. endanger c. estimate d. represent

48. The World Cup Finals was the most important sporting ..... in 2022.
a. figure b. event c. initiative d. oasis

3 Definitions

49. When something is ....., it is familiar to a lot of people.
a. well-known b. deep-seated c. clear-cut d. unknown

50. To ..... is to help a child grow up.
a. rise b. arise c. arouse d. raise

51. Your ..... is who you are as a person.
a. second language b. identity c. mother tongue d. ability

52. Someone who is ..... is able to speak a number of languages.
a. monolingual b. bilingual c. multilingual d. multicultural

53. A person who is ..... is sensible and does not allow strong emotions to control their behaviour.
a. well-balanced b. bilingual c. multilingual d. multicultural

54. ..... means including people with many different customs and beliefs.
a. Monolingual b. Bilingual c. Multilingual d. Multicultural

55. The adjective ..... means strong and is very difficult to change.
a. well-known b. deep-seated c. clear-cut d. elaborate

56. Your ..... is the first language you learn as a baby.
a. second language b. identity c. mother tongue d. ability

57. Something that is ..... is more important or noticeable.
a. well-known b. deep-seated c. clear-cut d. dominant

58. Someone who is ..... is able to speak two languages well.
a. monolingual b. bilingual c. multilingual d. multicultural

59. When a piece of information is ....., it is easy to understand or be certain about.
a. well-known b. deep-seated c. clear-cut d. dominant

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

Part II Vocabulary Study

تنويه ساعد مُعلمك على الإرتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مُسبقًا بشكل جيد.

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

bring	benefits	يجلب منافع	plan	a multicultural festival	يُعِدّ لمهرجان مُتعدِّد الثقافات
do	business	يزاول نشاط اقتصادي	play	music	يُشغِّل موسيقي/يعزف موسيقي
focus	attention	يُركِّز انتباه	raise	a child	يُربّي طفلًا
hold	a cultural festival	يُقيم مهرجان ثقافي	take	a bit more time	يستغرق وقت أطول قليلًا
introduce	reasons	يُقدِّم أسباب		place	يَحدُث
perform	mental tasks	يؤدي مهام عقلية	tour	the world	يطوف العالم

Mini Test 1 Collocations

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. You need to ..... your attention on what your teacher says.
   a. perform b. raise c. bring d. focus
2. You can earn more money by ..... business.
   a. touring b. taking c. doing d. playing
3. We're ..... a multicultural festival.
   a. planning b. holding c. taking d. a & b
4. You can leave now, Miss Sara. The tasks you've ..... are enough for today.
   a. performed b. raised c. brought d. focused
5. It will ..... a bit more time if you take this narrow road.
   a. tour b. take c. do d. introduce
6. That terrible accident ..... place at about midnight.
   a. planned b. held c. took d. a & b
7. It is not an easy task to ..... a child.
   a. perform b. raise c. bring d. do
8. Give her the time to ..... the reasons for her sudden decision.
   a. tour b. take c. do d. introduce

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

9. The benefits technology ..... are greater than its drawbacks.
a. performs b. raises c. brings d. focuses

10. I look forward to ..... the whole world one day.
a. touring b. taking c. doing d. introducing

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
clear-cut(adj) بَيِّن/ مُحَدَّد ، مُعَيَّن/ وَاضِح	definite / clear
deep-seated(adj) مُتَأَصِّل/ مُتَجَذِّر	deep-rooted / permanent
dominant(adj) سائد – مُنتَشِر – مُسَيطِر	ruling / governing / controlling
mother tongue(n) لغة المَنشأ	native language / native tongue
raise(d) (v) يُربِّي	bring up
well-balanced (adj) جيد التوازن – مُتَّزِن عاطفيًا ونفسيًا	sensible / rational
well-known(adj) معروف/مشهور	famous / familiar / popular

3 Antonyms متضادات

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
clear-cut(adj) بَيِّن/ مُحَدَّد ، مُعَيَّن/ وَاضِح	indefinite / vague غير مُحدَّد/غامض
deep-seated(adj) مُتَأَصِّل/ مُتَجَذِّر	temporary مُؤقت/عارض
dominant(adj) سائد – مُنتَشِر – مُسَيطِر	secondary ثانوي
mother tongue(n) لغة المَنشأ	foreign language لغة أجنبية
well-balanced (adj) جيد التوازن – مُتَّزِن عاطفيًا ونفسيًا	unbalanced / silly غير متوازن
well-known(adj) معروف/مشهور	unknown / obscure غير معروف/نَكِرة

Mini Test 2 Synonyms & Antonyms

• ✪ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. "My mother raised three children on her own." The 'verb' raised' in this context is a synonym of ..... .
a. collected b. brought up c. lifted d. rose

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

2. "This device is well-known to farmers." The compound adjective 'well-known' here is synonymous with ..... .
a. popular b. unknown c. obscure d. b & c

3. "This is a deep-seated situation." In this sentence, the adjective 'deep-seated' is an antonym of ..... .
a. permanent b. deep-rooted c. a & b d. temporary

4. "The dominant male protects its herd قطيع." The word 'dominant' here can be replaced by ..... .
a. secondary b. controlled c. controlling d. b & c

5. Your mother tongue is your ..... language.
a. native b. second c. foreign d. unspoken

4 Derivatives المشتقات

Verb	Noun	Adjective
	bilingual شخص يجيد التحدث بلغتين بنفس الكفاءة	bilingual ثنائي اللغة/مُجيد للُغتين
dominate يَسُود - يُهيمن على	domination سيادة - سطوة - نفوذ dominance سيادة - انتشار	dominant/dominating سائد - مُنتشِر - مُسَيطِر
identify يُحدِّد هويّة	identity(ID) هويّة identification (ID) إثبات شخصية identification تحديد هوية	identifiable مميّز - القابلية للتمييز
	multiculturalism تَعَدُّد الثقافات	multicultural مُتعدِّد الثقافات

Mini Test 3 Derivatives

I Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The officer asked me to show him my ..... .
a. identification b. identity c. ID d. a, b & c

2. I am trying to ..... who has hacked into my tablet.
a. identify b. identity c. ID d. identifiable

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

3. I am trying to know the ..... of the person who has hacked into my tablet.
a. identify b. identity c. identifiable d. b & c

4. Mr Ayman's ideas have ..... the whole team.
a. dominating b. dominance c. dominate d. dominated

5. As a company, we are aiming for world-market ..... .
a. dominates b. domination c. dominate d. dominated

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a window to another culture	نافذة على ثقافة أخرى	linguistic minorities	الأقليات اللغوية
almost definitely	بشكل مؤكد تقريبًا	melting pot (n)	بوتقة انصهار
be limited to	مقصور على	local Berber dialect	اللهجة البربرية المحلية
be widely spoken	يتم التحدث بها على نطاق واسع	mental illnesses	أمراض عقلية
brain functions	وظائف المخ	Portuguese-speaking nation	دولة ناطقة باللغة البرتغالية
cultural identity	هوية ثقافية	responsible for	مسئول عن
date back as far as	يعود تاريخها إلي	speak to ..... in the first language	يتحدث مع ... بلغته الأولي
ever since	منذ	Tamazight language	اللغة الأمازيغية

6 Synonymous idioms تعبيرات مترادفة

from birth = from the time ... was born من وقت الميلاد	in danger = endangered = in a dangerous situation = at risk في خطر
in particular = particularly = especially بصفة خاصة	most important of all = most importantly أهم شيء
mother tongue = first language = native tongue اللغة الأولي	

7 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

classify ... as	يُصَنِّف ... كـ	protect ... from	يحمي ... من
come together	يلتقي	slow down	يبطئ - يقلل سرعة
grow up	يكبر - يترعرع - يَشِبّ	stick to	يلتزم بـ ...
learn ... as	يتعلم ... كـ ...	suffer from	يعاني من
make .... up of	يُكوِّن ..... من	teach ... to	يعلم ... لـ

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

Test 4 Expressions, Prepositions & Idioms

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Egypt has a rich history which ..... back thousands of years. (LM)
   a. pretends b. happens c. dates d. writes
2. If Arabic is your mother tongue, then English is not your ..... .
   a. first language b. native tongue c. a & b d. second language
3. This device is made ..... three main parts.
   a. up b. up of c. out d. out of
4. Stick ..... your diet if you do not want to put on weight again.
   a. into b. on c. in d. to
5. When something is at risk, this means it is ..... .
   a. in danger b. endangered c. a & b d. dangerous
6. I learn English ..... a second language.
   a. from b. about c. to d. as
7. The Great Pyramid dates back as ..... as 26th century BCE.
   a. far b. well c. soon d. age
8. Entrance is limited ..... the members of the club only.
   a. with b. to c. by d. on
9. Egypt is an Arabic- ..... nation.
   a. speak b. spoke c. speaking d. spoken
10. Tourists like it if you speak to them ..... their first language.
    a. in b. on c. from d. out

Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

mono - bi - tri - multi

لاحظ معاني استخدام المقاطع البادئة (mono/bi/tri/multi):

• mono- أحادي = one, single	monolingual monosyllabic monorail	أحادي اللغة أحادي المقطع أحادي الخط
• bi- ثنائي = two, twice, double	bilingual bicycle	مُجيد للغتين دراجة (ثنائية الإطار)

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

UNIT 11

mono - bi - tri - multi

اكمل معاني استخدام المقاطع البادئة (mono/bi/tri/multi):

• tri- ثلاثي = three; having three	tricycle	ترسيكل (دراجة بثلاث عجلات)
	triangle	مثلث (ثلاثي الزوايا)
	trilingual	يتحدث ثلاث لغات
• multi- مُتعدِّد = more than one; many	multilingual	مُتعدِّد اللغات
	multicultural	مُتعدِّد الثقافات
	multinational	مُتعدِّد الجنسيات

rise – raise

• **rise (v)** (بدون مفعول)
- The sun rises in the east. شرق

• **rise (v)** (بدون مفعول)
- I rise at 6.00 in the morning. يستيقظ

• **rise (v)** (بدون مفعول)
- When the visitor entered, all students rose. ينهض / يقف (من الجلوس)

• **rise (v)** (بدون مفعول)
- Prices of cars have risen. يرتفع / يزداد

• **raise (d)** + مفعول
- Raise your hand if you want to answer. يرفع

• **raise (d)** + مفعول
- We raised a lot of money for the charity. يجمع مال

• **raise (d)** + مفعول
- My uncle raises cattle and sheep. يربي

Mini Test 5 Clear the Confusion

• ✪ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. When a person is 'bilingual', they speak ..... languages.
   a. one b. two c. three d. more than one
2. The word 'health' is monosyllabic. This means it has ..... syllable.
   a. one b. two c. three d. more than one

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

When a society is 'multicultural', it has ..... culture.
a. one b. two c. three d. more than one

I wonder how they could ..... three children on such a low income. دَخْل
a. raise b. rise c. fall d. drop

I haven't expected him to ..... so early because he went to bed very late.
a. raise b. rise c. fall d. drop

Master your Key Vocabulary كل ما يخص المفردات الرئيسية

monolingual - bilingual - trilingual - multilingual

monolingual (adj) أحاديّ اللّغة/صَاحِبُ لُغَة وَاحِدَة
- My father is monolingual. Except for Arabic, he speaks no other language.
- I use an English-English dictionary. It is monolingual.

bilingual (adj) ثنائي اللغة - ذو لغتين (منطوق أو مقروء بلغتين)
- A bilingual dictionary has two languages.

bilingual (in) (adj) يتحدث لغتين
- Most of my friends are bilingual.

bilingual (n) شخص يجيد التحدث بلغتين بنفس الكفاءة
- A lot of university graduates are bilinguals.

trilingual (adj) ثلاثي اللغة
- He speaks Arabic, English and French. He is trilingual.
- This medicine has a trilingual leaflet نشرة.

multilingual (adj) متعدد اللغة
- He speaks Arabic, English, French, Italian and Spanish. He is multilingual.

multilingualism (n) تعدُّدية لغوية
- Multilingualism in the same society is sometimes a big problem.

dominate

dominate(d) (v) يَسُود/يُهيمن على/يسيطر على
- This company dominates the educational book market.
- He dominated his children, so they grew up with weak personalities.
- The Egyptian football team dominated the second half of the match.

• **dominate(d) (v)** يكون الأبرز في (أي الأكبر أو ملحوظ بشكل أكبر)
- The skyscraper dominates the town.
- The plane crash dominated the news.

• **dominance (n)** النفوذ / الهيمنة/ سيادة
- The Chinese economic dominance is increasing.
- Some genes have dominance over other genes.

• **domination (n)** السيطرة/فرض النفوذ
- Some people misuse political domination.
- The Egyptian football team's complete domination over the second half of the match was clear.

• **dominant (adj)** ذو نفوذ أو سيادة/ مُسيطِر – هام
- She is a very dominant character in her family.
- Japan became dominant in the mass market during the 1980s.

• **dominating (adj)**
- Being kind is his most dominating quality.

identity

• **identify(ied) (v)** يُحدِّد هَويَّة /يتعرَّف علي/يُمَيز
- It was dark, so I couldn't identify the face of the thief.
- Scientists have identified the gene that causes cancer.

• **Identity = identification (ID) (n)** الهَويَّة (اسم الشخص أو من يكون)
- The identity of the body hasn't been recognized yet.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:
- real/true identity حقيقة الشخص/ الشخصية الحقيقية
- false identity هَويَّة غير حقيقية
- assume an identity يُغيِّر هويَّته
- identity card بطاقة تحقيق الشخصية
- identity papers/documents أوراق/وثائق ثبوتية
- identity theft/fraud انتحال شخصية الغير

• **identity (n)** التطابق (التشابه الشديد) / التناغم
- It is clear that the coach feels a strong sense of identity with his players.

• **identification (n)** تحديد الهَويَّة (التعَرُّف علي اسم الشخص أو من يكون)
- The identification of the two bodies will take time.
- The identification of customers' needs is very important.

• **identification (with) (n)** التعاطُف مع
- She showed identification with this poor child .

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

Guided Exercise on Vocabulary

تلويه : التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

Answer the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. His nose ..... his face.
   a. considers b. locates c. raises d. dominates
2. The government offers incentives امتيازات for giant businesses to .....
   in the new area.
   a. locate b. classify c. estimate d. isolate
3. The President opened and ..... the new factory.
   a. raised b. toured c. identified d. located
4. Mr Mohammed's dialect ..... him as an Upper Egyptian.
   a. raised b. toured c. identified d. located
5. I appreciate your ..... with me during the hard times I passed.
   a. identification b. identity c. ID d. a, b & c

	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	d	- الفعل (dominates) هنا يعني (يكون الجزء الأبرز في)
2.	a	- الفعل (locate) هنا يعني (يزاول نشاطه فى / يتواجد)
3.	b	- الفعل (toured) هنا يعني (قام بجولة في)
4.	c	- الفعل (identified) هنا يعني (مَيَّز/حدد هوية)
5.	a	- الاسم (identification) هنا يعني (تعاطُف)، وبهذا المعني هو لا يساوي (identity) ولا يمكن اختصاره لـ (ID)

Part III Reading & Listening

Tapescript نصوص استماع الوحدة

Reading Texts

Learning to speak in a multilingual(1) home (SB page 53)

In some countries, it's common to learn two or more languages at home. In fact, some people grow up in places where four or more languages are widely(2) spoken. Switzerland and Belgium are examples.

Check Vocabulary

(1) متعدد اللغات
(2) علي نطاق واسع

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

UNIT 11

In some countries, there may be one dominant[3] language - the one used by the government, schools and the community[4] - and it's obviously[5] important to learn this language. However, for many parents in multicultural families, it's also important that their kids[6] learn their mother tongue[7], the language of their parents. Mohamed Hassan, who left Egypt to live in the UK in the 1970s, loves his first language, Arabic. 'Languages are precious[8] and being Arab and Egyptian is so deep-seated[9] in me that I couldn't imagine[10] not teaching the language to my children,' he says.

The benefits[11] of being bilingual[12] are clear-cut;[13] it is a well-known[14] fact that being bilingual can improve some brain functions[15], like the ability to focus attention[16] and perform[17] mental[18] tasks,[19] as well as provide a window to another culture and a second cultural identity[20].

Whether you want your child to speak Italian, French or Arabic, here are some tips for raising a well-balanced[21] bilingual child:

1. Start speaking to your child in two languages from birth. Some researchers say that children learn languages best under the age of three.
2. Don't worry if they mix their two languages, it will almost definitely[22] be a temporary[23] thing.
3. Play music in your child's other language, read them books in it and buy games in that language too.
4. Speak to them in your first language. If you speak English as a first language, and the other parent speaks Spanish, stick to those languages when you each speak to them at home.
5. Most important of all, don't worry if your bilingual child starts speaking a little later than other children. They are learning two languages, so bilingual children often take a bit more time before they can speak.

(3) سائد
(4) المجتمع
(5) بوضوح
(6) أطفال
(7) لغة المنشأ
(8) ثمين/نفيس
(9) متأصل/ مُتجذِّر
(10) يتخيل
(11) فائدة
(12) في اللغة/مُجيد للغتين
(13) واضح/ مُحدَّد مُعيَّن/ وَاضِح
(14) معروف/مشهور
(15) وظائف
(16) انتباه
(17) يؤدي
(18) ذهنيّ/عقلي
(19) مهام
(20) هوية
(21) جيد التوازن
(22) بالتأكيد
(23) مُؤقت

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

832 spoken languages on one island !

(WB page 32)

The benefits(1) of learning another language are well-known, but I was surprised to hear just how common it is to be bilingual or multilingual. I recently(2) interviewed(3) a language expert called Bill Shannon who explained the advantages of being bilingual and gave me some interesting facts too. He told me that research has shown that over 40 - 43% of the world's population are bilingual. He also told me that one of the places which speaks the most languages in the world is Papua New Guinea which is reported to use an amazing 832 languages on the island!

The most widely-spoken mother tongue is Mandarin(4), Chinese, followed by Spanish, English and Arabic in the fifth place. But there is no need to learn only these languages to get the benefits of a bilingual brain(5). Learning any second language is beneficial(6) and will also make learning a third language even easier!

However, the benefits are not only limited(7) to learning. Elderly(8) bilingual patients(9) have been shown to suffer(10) from certain(11) mental illnesses(12), such as Alzheimer's disease(13), less than their monolingual(14) peers(15). All in all, I think the conclusions(16) are clear-cut. Being bilingual brings benefits!

Check Vocabulary
(1) فوائد
(2) مؤخرًا
(3) يُجري حوار
(4) اللغة الصينية
(5) المخ
(6) مفيد
(7) محدود/مقصور
(8) كبير السن
(9) مرضى
(10) يعاني
(11) مُعيّن
(12) أمراض
(13) الزهايمر
(14) أحادي اللغة
(15) الأقران
(16) استنتاج

The unique cultures of Egypt

(SB page 54)

If you are visiting Egypt for the first time, what can you expect ? English journalist(1) Ben Crosby, who lives in Luxor, explains that tourists will experience hospitality(2), great food and an amazing history !

Egypt has a rich history which dates back(3) thousands of years. The Egyptian culture, which is one of the oldest in the world, benefited from its strategic position(4) on the Nile whose soi

Check Vocabulary
(1) صحفي
(2) كرم الضيافة
(3) رجع تاريخه إلى
(4) وضع استراتيجي

is so rich that it was ideal for[5] farming. Over the years, Egypt was able to blend all the many cultures that lived on its lands to create a unique[6] Egyptian identity[7].

Egyptians are such friendly people that they are famous for their kindness and hospitality. They are so friendly that you will probably be invited to their homes, too. Here you find that they have such a good sense of humour[8] that you will laugh a lot !

Traditional Egyptian food, too, is so delicious ! There is a distinctive[9] way of cooking food, which often includes special spices. So many of the desserts which you find use traditional recipes dating back hundreds of years, for example Umm Ali, Zalabia and Basbousa. Egyptians often have traditional food at celebrations, and they love to gather at this time to share special meals prepared for the occasion[10].

Of course, tourists hear so much information about Egypt's amazing monuments that they want to visit. Many of these are found in Nubia and the Nile Valley, where you will see monuments to commemorate such famous Pharaohs as Khufu, Djoser, Amenhotep III and Khafre.

Egypt has so many amazing natural, historical and cultural attractions[11] which tourists find breathtaking[12]. Tourists leave the country fascinated by[13] the places they visited and the hospitable[14] people they met.

(5) مثالى لـ
(6) فريد / لا مثيل له
(7) هوية / شخصية
(8) حس الفكاهة
(9) مميز
(10) مناسبة
(11) عوامل جذب
(12) مثير / فاتنة
(13) متأثر بـ
(14) كريم / سخى

Fact File

(SB page 55)

What languages do they speak in Egypt ?

1. Egypt, whose population is around one hundred million, has more Arabic speakers than any other country.
2. There are sixteen other dialects[1] spoken round the country, for example in Nubia[2] whose people speak Nobiin[3].
3. Some people also speak Siwi[4]. Which is spoken in parts of the north of the country.
4. People who speak Bedawi[5] are often from the Sinai Peninsula[6] or the Eastern Desert.

Check Vocabulary

(1) لهجات
(2) النوبة
(3) اللغة النوبية
(4) اللغة السيوية
(5) اللغة البدوية
(6) اسم جزيرة سيناء

832 spoken languages on one island !

(WB page 32)

The benefits(1) of learning another language are well-known, but I was surprised to hear just how common it is to be bilingual or multilingual. I recently(2) interviewed(3) a language expert called Bill Shannon who explained the advantages of being bilingual and gave me some interesting facts too. He told me that research has shown that over 40 - 43% of the world's population are bilingual. He also told me that one of the places which speaks the most languages in the world is Papua New Guinea which is reported to use an amazing 832 languages on the island!

The most widely-spoken mother tongue is Mandarin(4), Chinese, followed by Spanish, English and Arabic in the fifth place. But there is no need to learn only these languages to get the benefits of a bilingual brain(5). Learning any second language is beneficial(6) and will also make learning a third language even easier!

However, the benefits are not only limited(7) to learning. Elderly(8) bilingual patients(9) have been shown to suffer(10) from certain(11) mental illnesses(12), such as Alzheimer's disease(13), less than their monolingual(14) peers(15). All in all, I think the conclusions(16) are clear-cut. Being bilingual brings benefits!

Check Vocabulary
(1) فوائد
(2) مؤخرًا
(3) يُجري حوار
(4) اللغة الصينية
(5) المخ
(6) مفيد
(7) محدود/مقصور
(8) كبير السن
(9) مرضى
(10) يعاني
(11) مُعيّن
(12) أمراض
(13) الزهايمر
(14) أحادي اللغة
(15) الأقران
(16) استنتاج

(SB page 54)

The unique cultures of Egypt

If you are visiting Egypt for the first time, what can you expect ? English journalist(1) Ben Crosby, who lives in Luxor, explains that tourists will experience hospitality(2), great food and an amazing history !

Egypt has a rich history which dates back(3) thousands of years. The Egyptian culture, which is one of the oldest ...fited from its strategic position(4) on the Nile whose soil

Check Vocabulary
(1) صحفي
(2) كرم الضيافة
(3) يرجع تاريخه إلى
(4) وضع استراتيجي

Cultural Mix

(SB page 55)

Australian teen :

I'm from Canberra in Australia. Every year in February, the National Multicultural Festival takes place.(1) It's really a celebration of the city's cultural mix.(2) Australia is a melting pot(3) of different cultures. We have a very open-minded approach(4) here to multiculturalism,(5) and everyone loves the festival.(6) It attracts around 26,000 people.

The festival starts with a parade,(7) including dancers and musicians from many different cultural traditions.(8) During the festival, which lasts all day, there are theatre(9) performances,(10) dances, activities, exhibitions(11) and lots of international food stalls.(12) It's great. It makes you want to learn more about the different cultures. You can experience(13) lots of different cultures all in one place. It's different from reading about them. I find it educational and a lot more fun and interesting than watching TV or reading a book.

Check Vocabulary
(1) يَحدُث
(2) مزيج/خليط
(3) بوتقة انصهار
(4) منهج - تَوَجُّه
(5) التعددية الثقافية
(6) احتفال - مهرجان
(7) عَرْض - استعراض
(8) تقاليد
(9) مسرح
(10) عروض
(11) معارض
(12) كُشك
(13) يُجرِّب - يعايش

The Festival of Nations

(WB page 33)

Reporter : If you visit a small grassy(1) square in the heart of Dublin in Ireland every August, you might just discover a large part of the rest of the world. Mountjoy Square Park is a place where, for the past several years, an event called the Festival of Nations has been held to celebrate(2) the multicultural nature that has characterised(3) the city of Dublin for centuries. It is a chance for all the different nationalities who live in Dublin to come together(4) and share their culture. Paul McAuliffe, who is the mayor, responsible for this initiative(5) says that, ever since(6) the Vikings, the people of Dublin have welcomed visitors to the island and enjoyed the differences they have brought.

Check Vocabulary
(1) عشبي/مليء بالأعشاب
(2) يحتفل بـ
(3) يُميِّز
(4) يلتقي
(5) مبادرة
(6) منذ ذلك الحين

UNIT 11

Over 40 different nations are represented in the festival, and each nation offers activities for children and adults, which provides a unique experience of their culture. It is usually attended by over seven thousand visitors, who can enjoy six hours of singing and dancing from each of the various(7) nations. There're also international food stalls, workshops, children's entertainment(8) and displays(9) which celebrate the diversity(10) and feeling of being together and all in one small space. There's something for everyone! So, if you would like to walk from Tanzania to Moldova in just a few steps, I would recommend you visit the Festival of Nations, where you can tour(11) the world in a few hours.

(7) متنوع
(8) ترفيه
(9) عروض
(10) التنوع
(11) يزور - يجول

3 Video script

(SB page 55)

Brazil is famous for its festivals(1) and carnivals(2). Many people visit the country to experience the famous Carnival in Rio de Janeiro, which dates back to the 1650s and takes place in February every year. It's considered to be the biggest carnival in the world with two million people a day out(3) on the streets.

Carnival combines(4) many elements(5) of Brazil's heritage(6) : masked(7) balls from the Portuguese aristocratic(8) tradition, music passed on through(9) the ages from West Africans in Brazil, and paint and marching(10) from the Native(11) American tradition. People from every background(12) and social class take part in 'Carnival' in one way or another. The carnival lasts for(13) four days and is a spectacle(14) of bright colours and fun ! People parade(15), dance, sing, play music and wear costumes and masks.

An important part of the Carnival are the samba schools, which are groups of local neighbours that want to attend the carnival together, with some kind of regional, geographical and common background.

Check Vocabulary
(1) مهرجان / احتفال
(2) كرنفال / حفل كبير
(3) يوم عطلة
(4) يدمج/ يمزج
(5) عناصر
(6) تراث
(7) مقنع / مُلثم
(8) ارستقراطى
(9) ينتقل أو يمر من خلال
(10) يسير فى مسيرة
(11) أصلى من سكان البلد
(12) خلفية
(13) يستمر لمدة
(14) مشهد استعراضى
(15) يمشى فى استعراض / موكب

they spend a lot of time during the whole year preparing for Carnival. Each Samba School prepares an exhibition[16] involving a parade which lasts about 90 minutes.

عرض / معرض (16)
موضوعات تاريخية (17)
مبهر / مثير (18)

Judges choose the best group and the best songs written each year. The songs often have historical themes[17], and speak to the people of Brazil. People from the community spend a lot of time and effort in their Samba school to make their parade the best, loudest and most spectacular[18].

Part IV Language

Compound Adjectives الصفات المركّبة

What is a compound adjective? ما هي الصفة المُركّبة؟

It is an adjective that has two or more words.

- هي صفة تتكون من كلمتين أو أكثر، لاحظ الصفات المُركّبة في الأمثلة التالية:

Mohammed Salah is a well-known footballer.
Omar is a never-to-be-forgotten leader.
The USA is an English-speaking country.
I went on a two-week holiday.
Some university students get part-time jobs.
My aunt is a middle-aged woman.

فيما يلي شرح مُبَسَّط للصفات المُرَكَّبة من خلال تقسيمها إلى أربع تصنيفات رئيسية:

Compound Adjectives

1. Starting with numbers — صفات مركبة تبدأ برقم
2. Starting with adjectives — صفات مركبة تبدأ بصفة
3. Starting with adverbs — صفات مركبة تبدأ بظرف
4. Starting with a noun — صفات مركبة تبدأ باسم

UNIT 11

1 Compound adjective with numbers الصفات المركّبة مع الأرقام

1 نستخدم (رقم و بعده اسم مفرد ثم صفة) و بينهم (-) كصفة مركبة لاسم يأتي بعدها

- My son is a twelve-year-old child.
- My house is in a ten-metre-wide street.

1 نستخدم (رقم و بعده اسم مفرد) و بينهما (-) كصفة مركبة لاسم يأتي بعدها

- Mr Omar is an expert on twentieth-century history.
- We're going on a ten-day trip.
- It's a four-hour journey.

1 نستخدم (رقم و بعده اسم جمع) كصفة مركبة لاسم يأتي بعدها، وفى هذه الحالة ينتهى الاسم الجمع بـ (s')

- My work is two hours' drive from here.

وتستخدم هذه الصيغة غالبا مع الكلمات التي تدل علي مسافة وتستخدم كأسماء وأفعال مثل :

(drive - walk - swim - fly - ride...)

- We have three hours' walk every weekend.

فى هذه الحالة يجب مراعاة ألا يسبق هذا النوع من الصفات المركبة **(a / an)** :

- My work is a two hours' drive from here. (✗)
- My work is two hours' drive from here. (✓)

1 فى حالة وجود كلمة **time** نستخدم ('s) فى حالة المفرد، و(s') فى حالة الجمع.

- She'll be back in a week's time.
- In two weeks' time, I am travelling to Spain.

2 Compound adjective with adjectives الصفات المركّبة التى تبدأ بـ (صفة)

هناك ثلاثة أنواع رئيسية من الصفات المُرَكَّبة التي تبدأ بصفة وهي:

Compound Adjectives Starting with an Adjective

1. adj. + p.p.
2. adj. + -ing
3. adj. + noun

- بعض الصفات المركبة الهامة التى تتكون من (صفة + التصريف الثالث للفعل) :

1 adj. صفة + p.p.

absent-minded	شارد الذهن/كثير النسيان	middle-aged	في منتصف العمر
big-eared	كبير الأذنين	narrow-minded	ضَيق الأفق/مُنغَلِق
clear-cut	بَيِّن/ مُحَدّد، مُعَيّن/ وَاضح	old-fashioned	قديم/عفا عليه الزمن
deep-seated	مُتَأصّل/ مُتَجذِّر	open-minded	واسع الأفق/مُنفتح
green-eyed	أخضر العينين	quick-witted	سريع البديهة
high-spirited	ذو معنويات مرتفعة	red-handed	مُذنب
kind-hearted	طيب القلب	short-haired	قصير الشَعر
long-heard	طويل الشعر	short-sighted	لديه قِصَر نظر
long-nosed	طويل الأنف	strong-willed	قويّ العزيمة
long-sighted	لديه طول نظر	tight-fisted	بخيل

- A strong-willed student will surely achieve their goal.
- I have a deep-seated love for my parents.
- He wants to marry that green-eyed girl.
- I was very sad when my kind-hearted grandfather died.

2 adj. صفة + ing.

بعض الصفات الهامة التى تتكون من (صفة + صيغة اسم الفعل)

good-looking	جذاب/حسن المظهر	slow-moving	بطيء الحركة
long-lasting	يدوم لفترة طويلة	far-reaching	بعيد المَدَي
easy-going	مَرِن		

- Leen is a good-looking student.
- Mr Ashraf is forward-thinking teacher.
- This law will have far-reaching effect on the economy.
- This long-lasting perfume is very expensive.

3 adj. صفة + noun.

بعض الصفات الهامة التي تتكون من (صفة + اسم)

last-minute	في اللحظة الأخيرة	second-hand	مُستَعمَل
full-length	بالطول الكامل		

- I had to make last-minute changes to my article.
- He made his last full-length film in 2002.

3 Compound adjective with adverbs الصفات المركّبة التي تبدأ بـ [ظرف]

هناك نوعان رئيسيان من الصفات المُرَكَّبة التي تبدأ بظرف وهي :

Compound Adjectives Starting with an Adverb

1. adv. + p.p.
2. adv. + -ing

1 adv. ظرف + p.p.

بعض الصفات الهامة التي تتكون من (ظرف + تصريف ثالث)

brightly lit	ساطع الإضاءة	well-educated	مُتعلِّم جيدًا
highly respected	يحظى باحترام كبير	well-known	معروف/مشهور
densely populated	كثيف السُّكان	widely recognized	معروف علي نطاق واسع
well-balanced	جيد التوازن – مُتَّزِن عاطفيًا ونفسيًا	widely spoken	يتم التَحَدُّث بها على نطاق واسع
well-behaved	حَسَن السلوك	well-informed	مُطَّلِع
well-paid	ذو أجر مرتفع		
badly written	مكتوب بشكل سيىء		

- Mr Ayman is a well-balanced manager.
- Arabic is a widely spoken language.
- I live in a brightly lit street.
- Mr Nasser is a highly respected teacher.
- This is a well-informed journalist.

2 adv. ظرف + ing.

بعض الصفات الهامة التي تتكون من (ظرف + صيغة اسم الفعل)

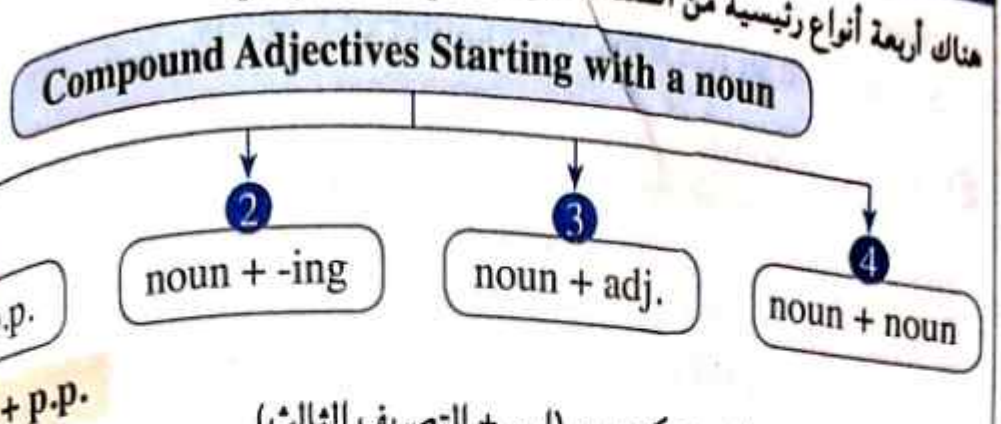
never-ending	دائم	ever-lasting	دائم
forward-thinking	سابق في التفكير/سابق لعصره		

- I don't like his never-ending inquiries.
- Mrs Maha has an ever-lasting smile.

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

Compound adjective with nouns الصفات المركّبة التى تبدأ بـ (اسم)

هناك أربعة أنواع رئيسية من الصفات المُرَكَّبة التي تبدأ باسم وهي:



1 noun. اسم + p.p.

بعض الصفات الهامة التى تتكون من (اسم + التصريف الثالث)

sun-baked	مُجفَّف بالشمس	left-handed	أعسر/يستخدم اليد اليُسرى
child-wanted	محبوب من الأطفال	right-handed	يستخدم اليد اليُمنى
middle-aged	في منتصف العُمر	heart-broken	حزين/منفطر القلب

- No plant will grow in such a sun-baked ground.
- He buys the most child-wanted toys for his children.
- My mother is a middle-aged woman.

2 noun. اسم + ing.

بعض الصفات الهامة التى تتكون من (اسم + صيغة اسم الفعل)

record-breaking	مُحطِّم الرقم القياسي	English-speaking	مُتَحَدِّث باللغة الإنجليزية
mouth-watering	مُسيل للعاب/شهيّ / لذيذ	time-saving	مُوفِّر للوقت
thought-provoking	مثير للتفكير	labour-saving	مُوفِّر للعمالة
time-saving	موفِّر للوقت		

- Omar ran at a record-breaking speed.
- The table was covered with mouth-watering dishes.
- It was a thought-provoking quiz.
- To achieve your tasks quickly, follow these time-saving techniques.

3 noun. اسم + adjective.

بعض الصفات الهامة التى تتكون من (اسم + صفة)

ice-cold	في برودة الثلج	brand-new	جديد تمامًا
world-famous	ذو شهرة عالمية	self-reliant	مُعتمِد على نفسه
fat-free	خالي من الدهون	self-centered	أناني
smoke-free	ممنوع التدخين فيه		

Compound adjective with nouns الصفات المركبة التى تبدأ بـ [اسم]

هناك أربعة أنواع رئيسية من الصفات المُرَكَّبة التي تبدأ باسم وهي:

Compound Adjectives Starting with a noun

1. noun + p.p.
2. noun + -ing
3. noun + adj.
4. noun + noun

❶ noun. اسم + p.p.

بعض الصفات الهامة التى تتكون من (اسم + التصريف الثالث)

sun-baked	مُجفَّف بالشمس	left-handed	أعسر/يستخدم اليد اليُسرى
child-wanted	محبوب من الأطفال	right-handed	يستخدم اليد اليُمني
middle-aged	في منتصف العُمر	heart-broken	حزين/منفطر القلب

- No plant will grow in such a sun-baked ground.
- He buys the most child-wanted toys for his children.
- My mother is a middle-aged woman.

❷ noun. اسم + ing.

بعض الصفات الهامة التى تتكون من (اسم + صيغة اسم الفعل)

record-breaking	مُحطِّم الرقم القياسي	English-speaking	مُتَحَدِّث باللغة الإنجليزية
mouth-watering	مُسيل للعاب/شهيّ / لذيذ	time-saving	مُوفِّر للوقت
thought-provoking	مثير للتفكير	labour-saving	مُوفِّر للعمالة
time-saving	موفِّر للوقت		

- Omar ran at a record-breaking speed.
- The table was covered with mouth-watering dishes.
- It was a thought-provoking quiz.
- To achieve your tasks quickly, follow these time-saving techniques.

❸ noun. اسم + adjective.

بعض الصفات الهامة التى تتكون من (اسم + صفة)

ice-cold	في برودة الثلج	brand-new	جديد تمامًا
world-famous	ذو شهرة عالمية	self-reliant	مُعتمِد على نفسه
fat-free	خالي من الدهون	self-centered	أناني
smoke-free	ممنوع التدخين فيه		

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha.com

- To avoid gaining weight, I prefer fat-free food.
- Salah is a world-famous footballer.
- I can't live in the ice-cold weather of Canada.

4 noun. + noun.

egg-box	صندوق بيض	tea-pot	براد شاى
hair-cream	كريم شعر	eye-drop	نقطة العين

- I had to look for a part-time job.

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

1 تُستخدَم الشرطة الواصلة (-) والتي تُسمَّي (hyphen) لتفصل بين أجزاء الصفة المُرَكَّبة فقط إذا كانت هذه الصفة المُرَكَّبة قبل الاسم الموصوف، أما إذا لم يأت الاسم الموصوف بعدها فلا نستخدم (-):

- Mohammed Salah is a well-known footballer.
- As a footballer, Mohammed Salah is well known.

2 هناك بعض الصفات المركبة التي لابد أن تُستخدم بين أجزائها (-) سواء تم استخدام الصفات قبل اسم أم لا، ومن أمثلة هذه الصفات ما يلي:

clear-cut	واضح - جليّ	second-hand	مُستَعمَل
deep-seated	راسخ - مُتأصِّل	short-sighted	لديه قصر نظر
far-sighted	لديه طول نظر	smoke-free	بدون تدخين
good-looking	حَسَن المنظر	strong-willed	قويّ الإرادة
long-sighted	لديه طول نظر	tight-fisted	بخيل
mouth-watering	لذيذ	well-educated	حاصل على تعليم جيد
old-fashioned	عفا عليه الزمن -قديم الطراز		

3 لا تُستَخدَم الشرطة الواصلة (-) بين الظرف (very) والصفة التى تليه حتى وإن جاء بعدهما الاسم الموصوف:

- Ahmed is a very-clever student. (✗)
- Ahmed is a very clever student. (✓)

4 فى اللغة الرسمية المكتوبة لا تُستَخدَم الشرطة الواصلة (-) بين الظرف المنتهي بـ (ly) والصفة التي تليه حتى وإن جاء بعدهما الاسم الموصوف:

- This is a naturally-dug cave. (✗)
- This is a naturally dug cave. (✓)

لاحظ أنه فى الكتابات غير الرسمية (informal) يمكن استخدام الـ (-) بين الظرف المنتهى بـ (-ly) والتصريف الثالث ليعملان معًا كصفة مركبة :

- The most widely-spoken mother tongue is Mandarin. (WB page 32)
- Spanish is a widely - spoken language. (SB page 82)

لكن تُستخدَم الشرطة الواصلة (-) بين الصفة المنتهية بـ (ly) والصفة التي تليها إذا سبقت الاسم فقط

- It is a friendly-looking dog. (✓) - It is a friendly looking dog. (✗)

٥ بعض الصفات المُرَكَّبة لها أكثر من صيغة مقارنة وتفضيل، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية :

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
good-looking	better-looking OR more good-looking	best-looking OR most good-looking
well-known	better-known OR more well-known	best-known OR most well-known

٦ تُستَخدَم الشرطة الواصلة (-) بين أجزاء الصفة المُرَكَّبة التي تتكون من أكثر من كلمتين عندما تسبق الاسم الموصوف:

- Sama is a ten year old girl. (✗)
- Sama is a ten-year-old girl. (✓)
- Sama is ten-year-old. (✗)
- Sama is ten years old. (✓)

٧ لا يُجمَع الاسم بعد الرقم إذا كانا جزء من صفة مُرَكَّبة:

- I had a four-days holiday. (✗)
- I had a four-day holiday. (✓)

General Exercise On Language Applying

Q Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting Started

1. Do you think French is ..... all over Africa? (LM)
   a. speaking
   b. speaking widely
   c. widely spoken
   d. widely-spoken

2. It is a ..... fact that being bilingual can improve some brain functions.
a. knowing b. widely knowing
c. well known d. well-known

3. Which of the following is NOT a compound adjective?
a. old-fashioned b. Multicultural c. Deep-seated d. Clear-cut

4. Dr Zewail is a world ..... scientist.
a. fame b. -fame c. famous d. -famous

5. Abdulrahman is my ..... son.
a. five-year-old b. five year old c. five-years-old d. five years old

6. Abdulrahman, my son, is..... .
a. five-year-old b. five year old. c. five-years-old d. five years old

7. I had a five - ..... holiday to refresh myself.
a. day b. day's c. days d. days'

8. I had a holiday for five ..... .
a. day b. day's c. days d. days'

9. I have a middle ..... uncle. He is thirty-five.
a. age b. -age c. aged d. -aged

10. When someone has a strong will, we say they're ..... .
a. strong-willed b. strong willed c. strong-will d. strong will

11. When someone has a strong will, we say he or she is a ..... person.
a. strong-willed b. strong willed c. strong-wills d. strong will

12. When someone can't see near objects, we say he or she is long .....
a. sight b. -sighted c. sighted d. sighting

13. When someone can't see near things, we say he or she is a long ..... individual.
a. sight b. -sighted c. sighted d. sighting

14. Mr Ashraf is a ..... man.
a. good-looked b. well-looked c. good-looking d. good looking

15. Mr Ashraf is ..... .
a. good-looked b. well-looked c. good-looking d. good looking

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

16. Asmaa's a green ..... girl.
a. -eyed b. eyed c. eyes d. b&c

17. Asmaa's green .....
a. -eyed b. eyed c. eyes d. b&c

18. He bought a second ..... car.
a. -hand b. hand c. handed d. -handing

19. Mr Mohammed is a ..... respected teacher.
a. highly b. highly- c. high d. highing

20. As a teacher, Mr Mohammed is ..... respected.
a. highly b. highly- c. high d. highing

21. Rodayna is ..... .
a. good-educated b. good educated c. well educated d. well-educated

22. Rodayna is a ..... young lady.
a. good-educated b. good educated c. well educated d. well-educated

23. Rainforest is a never..... source of oxygen.
a. end b. ended c. -ending d. ending

24. Sama is a left .....little girl.
a. -handed b. handed c. handing d. -handing

25. Egypt is an Arabic ..... country.
a. -spoken b. -speaking c. spoken d. speaking

26. You can't smoke in this carriage as it is smoke..... .
a. -freely b. freely c. free d. -free

2 Special Cases

27. I am travelling abroad in two ..... time.
a. week b. weeks c. week's d. weeks'

28. It is only ..... from here to Alexandria.
a. a two-hour-drive b. two hours' drive
c. a & b d. two-hour drive

29. I will join you in an ..... time.
a. hours b. hours' c. hour's d. hours's

30. Mr Baleigh is ..... about the new changes; he has no objection to them.
a. narrow-minded b. tight-fisted
c. open-minded d. well-informed

31. You were caught ..... . Two people saw you stealing the money.
a. narrow-minded b. absent-minded
c. open-minded d. red-handed

32. One should be tolerant of other cultures. They should be ..... .
a. narrow-minded b. absent-handed
c. open-minded d. red-handed

33. I didn't answer Mr Mohammed's question because I was ..... .
a. narrow-minding b. absent-minded
c. open-minded d. red-handed

34. Don't expect him to pay for the meal. He is ..... .
a. tight-fisted b. narrow-minded
c. open-minded d. well-informed

35. To be a TV presenter, you need to be ..... about different topics.
a. tight-fisted b. narrow-minded c. red-handed d. well-informed

36. The report is ..... .
a. bad-writing b. bad-written c. badly-written d. badly written

37. It is a ..... report.
a. bad-writing b. bad-written c. badly-written d. badly written

38. I trust this young man as he is.....looking.
a. friendly b. friendly- c. friending- d. friended-

39. I trust this ..... looking young man.
a. friendly b. friendly- c. friending- d. friended-

40. My school tablet is ..... .
a. up to date b. up-to date c. up-to-date d. a & c

3 Check your understanding

41. "Rahma is fifteen years old." This means that .....
a. Rahma is fifteen year old. b. Rahma is fifteen-year-old.
c. Rahma is fifteen-years- old. d. Rahma is a fifteen-year-old girl.

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

42. Which of the following is correctly structured?
a. He is an old-fashioned man.
b. He is an old fashioned man.
c. This man is old-fashioned.
d. a & c

43. Which of the following is best structured?
a. Windows 2003 is out of date.
b. Windows 2003 is out-of-date.
c. Windows 2003 is out of-date.
d. Windows 2003 is out-of date.

44. "No other Egyptian footballer is as well-known as Mohammed Salah." This means that .....
a. Mohammed Salah is more well-known than other Egyptian players.
b. Mohammed Salah is better-known than other Egyptian players.
c. a & b
d. Mohammed Salah is not as well-known as other Egyptian players.

45. "This dish does not have any fat." This means that .....
a. this dish is free fat.
b. this dish is fat-free.
c. this dish is fat free.
d. this is a fat free dish.

46. "This dish makes me feel I want to eat it." This means that .....
a. this dish is mouth-watering.
b. this dish is mouth-watered.
c. this dish is water mouthed.
d. this is a mouth watering dish.

47. Which of the following is correctly structured?
a. Ibrahim is left hand.
b. Ibrahim is hand lefted.
c. Ibrahim is a left-handed student.
d. Ibrahim is hand-lefted student.



Vocabulary & Definitions

Part 1

تنويه • اختبر مدى اتقانك للمفردات الرئيسية فى كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

ancestors(n)	أجداد / أسلاف	identity(n)	هوية - شخصية
embrace(d) (v)	يَتَبَنَّي - يعتنق	humour(n)	الفكاهة - السخرية
end up (phr. v)	ينتهى به الحال ك/إلى	lucky(adj)	محظوظ
expatriate (n)	مُغترب - وافد	passionate(adj)	شغوف/مُتحمِّس
fortunate(adj)	محظوظ	pride(n)	الفخر - الكبرياء
heritage(n)	التراث - الموروث	proud(adj)	فخور - مُتكبِّر
home-sick / homesick (adj)	لديه حنين للوطن - لا يطيق الغربة	root(n)	أصل - منشأ - جِذْر

تنويه • المفردات اللغوية باللون الأحمر هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية.

2 Important Vocabulary مفردات هامة

annual(adj)	سنوى	immigrant(n)	مهاجر
aspect(n)	جانب - مَنْحَي	impact(n)	أثر/انطباع
association(n)	جمعية	include(d) (v)	يشتمل علي
background(n)	خلفية	influence(d) (n/v)	تأثير - يُؤثر في
Berber(n/adj)	البربر - بربري	instrument(n)	آلة - جهاز
bet - bet - bet (v)	يراهن	Irish(n/adj)	أيرلندي
boring(adj)	مُمِلّ	likes(n)	الأشياء المُفضلة
brilliant(adj)	رائع - بارع	long-lost(adj)	مفقود من فترة طويلة
Cantonese(n)	اللغة الكانتونية	mixture(n)	خليط/مزيج
carriage(n)	عربة	participate(d) (v)	يشارك
case(n)	قضية - حالة/موقف	patriot(n)	وطنى
chopsticks(n)	عيدان الأكل	profession(n)	مهنة/وظيفة
classmate(n)	زميل دراسة	range(n)	نطاق/مَدَي
date harvest(n)	جَنْي البلح	recipe(n)	وَصْفة - طعام
describe(d) (v)	يَصف	relatives(n)	أقارب
dislikes(n)	الأشياء غير المُفضلة	rent(ed) (v/n)	يستأجر - إيجار
drum(n)	الطبلة	ride(n)	جولة

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

satisfaction(n)	احتواء - اعتناق	الرضا - الإشباع
sense(n)	يستكشف	إحساس - حاسّة
shape(d) (v/n)	مُمتد	يُشكّل - شكل
sight(n)	خلّاب/رائع	مَنظر - مَشهد - البصر
similarity(n)	مُفوّه/طليق اللسان	تشابه
tagine(n)	الناي	الطاجن
tend(ed) (v)	مُتحرر - مُحرّر	يميل/يتجه
typical(adj)	فجوة - ثغرة	نموذجي/نَمَطيّ
wedding(n)	جبل	حفل زفاف

...ising(n)
...plore(d) (v)
...ressed(adj)
...sinating(adj)
...ious(adj)
...ture(n)
...ired(adj)
...ge(n)
...eneration(n)

3 Definitions تعريفات

ancestor(n) جدّ	a member of your family who lived a long time ago
embrace(d) (v) يَتَبَنّى - يعتنق	to eagerly accept a new idea, opinion, religion etc.
pride(n) الفخر - الكبرياء	a feeling that you are proud of something that you or someone connected with you has achieved
root(n) أصل - منشأ	the origin or main part of something such as a custom, law, activity etc, from which other things have developed

Exercise On Vocabulary

Understand

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

1 Key vocabulary

1. Leila warmly ..... her son, who was terribly afraid, and he soon felt safe. (LM)
   a. kicked b. hit c. embraced d. traced
2. I'm proud that one of my ..... shared in establishing the local museums hundreds of years ago. (LM)
   a. ancestors b. fathers c. grandchildren d. sons
3. Despite living in a nice villa, I realised I was ..... after I had spent a few months in London; I missed my family so much! (LM)
   a. homeless b. homebuilt c. homemade d. homesick
4. I am ..... of my country's great history.

a. pride b. proud c. gap d. generation

5. I take ..... in my country's great history.
a. pride b. proud c. gap d. generation

6. We are ..... to have such a fatherly teacher.
a. extended b. fascinating c. fortunate d. home-sick

7. I am very ..... to have a close friend like you.
a. lucky b. similar c. relative d. definite

8. Lions, tigers and home cats have a common ..... .
a. patriot b. range c. ancestor d. mixture

9. It is his sense of ..... that makes us enjoy his company.
a. Cantonese b. humour c. chopsticks d. traditions

10. Each country has its national ..... that is always connected to it.
a. similarity b. senses c. immigrant d. identity

11. My family has deep ..... in Upper Egypt.
a. roots b. aspects c. cases d. impacts

12. I am ..... about ancient Egyptian history.
a. typical b. fluent c. passionate d. famous

2 Important vocabulary

13. Tourists leave the country fascinated by the places they visited and the hospitable people they met. This shows the tourists' ..... . (LM
a. dissatisfaction b. infraction c. over action d. satisfaction

14. He is never happy abroad. He is a/an ..... person.
a. extended b. fascinating c. fortunate d. homesick

15. ..... is a Chinese language spoken in Hong Kong and Southern China.
a. Cantonese b. Humour c. Chopsticks d. Traditions

16. Your ..... are the things you don't enjoy.
a. likes b. dislikes c. relatives d. classmates

17. In general, girls ..... to be better at languages than boys.
a. tend b. rent c. explore d. celebrate

18. The political decision is ..... by the economic situation.
a. tended b. participated c. influenced d. rented

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

19. Are you ..... with the side effects of this medicine?
a. typical b. fluent c. passionate d. familiar

20. It is expected from your ..... to support you in hardships.
a. likes b. dislikes c. relatives d. carriages

21. I've enjoyed my ..... stay in Luxor.
a. extended b. fascinated c. fortunately d. home-sick

22. This antibiotic is used to treat a wide ..... of diseases.
a. patriot b. range c. ancestor d. root

23. The fans ..... their team's win in the streets all night.
a. tended b. rented c. explored d. celebrated

24. The plays of Adel Imam have ..... our sense of humour.
a. shaped b. participated c. tended d. laughed

25. My friend Ismail has a high ..... of humour. When he is with us, we never stop laughing.
a. similarity b. sense c. immigrant d. identity

26. Young people don't usually pay much attention to ..... . They enjoy everything fast and new.
a. Cantonese b. humour c. chopsticks d. traditions

27. This novel is ..... of Naguib Mahfouz's style.
a. typical b. fluent c. passionate d. familiar

28. This is a/an..... book by a great writer.
a. embraced b. fascinating c. fortunate d. home-sick

29. I'll ..... the possibility of finding another job.
a. tend b. rent c. explore d. celebrate

30. I was given the chance to ..... in the survey done by a team of researchers.
a. shape b. participate c. influence d. embrace

31. You want to work part-time. In this ....., you will have to apply for another job.
a. root b. aspect c. case d. impact

32. We all noticed the ..... in appearance between Sama and Rodayna.
a. similarity b. sense c. immigrant d. relative

33. The Chinese use ..... instead of spoons.
a. Cantonese b. humour c. chopsticks d. traditions

34. There was a good ..... of talents in the party.
a. patriot b. pride c. ancestor d. mixture

35. Many young people ..... flats to get married in.
a. tend b. rent c. explore d. celebrate

36. There was a big ..... between exports and imports.
a. pride b. proud c. gap d. generation

37. Things we learn in ..... are difficult to forget.
a. likes b. dislikes c. relatives d. childhood

38. My sister is ..... . Words just roll down her tongue.
a. typical b. fluent c. passionate d. familiar

39. We all suffer from the negative ..... pollution has had on the environment.
a. root b. aspect c. case d. impact

40. As a/an ....., she is ready to do anything for her country.
a. patriot b. range c. ancestor d. mixture

41. We need to save natural resources for the coming ..... .
a. prides b. mixtures c. gaps d. generations

42. Some of the illegal ..... were lost in the sea.
a. similarities b. senses c. immigrants d. identities

3 Definitions

43. To ..... is to eagerly accept a new idea, opinion, religion etc.
a. shape b. participate c. influence d. embrace

44. ..... is a feeling that you are proud of something that you or someone connected with you has achieved.
a. Pride b. Proud c. Gap d. Generation

45. A/An ..... is a member of your family who lived a long time ago.
a. patriot b. range c. ancestor d. mixture

46. A/An ..... is the origin or main part of something such as a custom, law, activity etc., from which other things have developed.
a. root b. aspect c. case d. impact

Part II Vocabulary Study

تنويه ساعد نفسك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مُسبقاً بشكل جيد

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

be	proud of	فخور بـ	leave	a comment	يترك تعليقًا
bring	... closer to	يُقرّب ... من	make	friends	يصادق
build	a sense of pride	يُوجد إحساس بالفخر	reach	the top	يصل للقمة
do	activities	يمارس أنشطة	rent	a flat	يستأجر شقة
embrace	change	يتبنى التغيير	shape	personality	يُشكّل الشخصية
explore	a culture	يستكشف الثقافة	stay	connected to	يبقى مرتبطًا /مُتصلاً
give	a reason	يعطي سبب	take	a carriage ride	يذهب في جولة بالعربة
give	the situation	يُوضّح الموقف	take	pride in	يفتخر بـ

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

Mini Test 1 Collocations

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. No one ..... reasons for such a sudden decision.
   a. was b. took c. gave d. made
2. We ..... a lot of activities at school.
   a. embrace b. do c. build d. leave
3. Travel to other countries and ..... their cultures.
   a. make b. reach c. stay d. explore
4. I ..... proud to be the first to raise this issue for discussion.
   a. am b. take c. give d. make
5. It is necessary to ..... a sense of national pride in your children.
   a. embrace b. do c. build d. leave
6. It is easy to ..... the top, but it is not that easy to maintain it.
   a. bring b. reach c. stay d. explore

7. All the friends I have ..... in my new school are toppers.
a. been b. taken c. gave d. made

8. Some people ..... change; others fight it.
a. embrace b. do c. build d. leave

9. Try to ..... connected to your friends after you leave school.
a. bring b. reach c. stay d. explore

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
ancestor (n)	جَدّ - سَلَف	forebear / forefather
embrace (v)	يَتَبَنَّي - يؤيد	welcome / take up
embrace (v)	يعانق/يحتضن	hug
embrace (v)	يُضَمِّن - يضع ... ضمن	include / take in / cover
gain	يكتسب	acquire
lucky(adj)	محظوظ	fortunate
passionate(adj)	شغوف/مُتحمِّس	very keen on / very enthusiastic about / addicted to / devoted to
pride(n)	الفخر - الكبرياء	self-esteem
pride(n)	التَكَبُّر - الغرور	arrogance / vanity
proud(adj)	مُتكبِّر	arrogant / conceited
root(n)	أصل - منشأ	source / origin / starting point

3 Antonyms متضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)	
ancestor (n)	جَدّ - سَلَف	descendant / successor	خلف - خليفة
embrace (v)	يَتَبَنَّي - يؤيد	reject	يُعارض/يرفض
embrace (v)	يُضَمِّن - يضع ... ضمن	exclude	يستثني/يستبعد
lucky(adj)	محظوظ	unlucky / unfortunate	منحوس
pride(n)	الفخر - الكبرياء	shame	الخزي/العار
pride(n)	التَكَبُّر - الغرور	modesty / humility	التواضع - الزُهد
proud(adj)	فخور بـ	ashamed	خجلان/ خَجُول
proud(adj)	مُتكبِّر	humble	متواضع

Mini Test 2 Synonyms & Antonyms

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I'm fortunate to have two cultures in my family. "Fortunate" is a synonym for "..... ". (LM)
   a. lucky b. baggy c. unlucky d. miserable
2. Students gain knowledge and have useful competition with their classmates at school. "Gain" here is similar in meaning to "..... ". (LM)
   a. lose b. miss c. acquire d. inquire
3. "We are proud of our great forebears." The word 'forbears' in this context is a synonym of ..... .
   a. identities b. humours c. ancestors d. embraces
4. "He is too proud to say he is wrong." In this sentence, the word 'proud' is a synonym of ..... .
   a. arrogant b. humble c. conceited d. a & c
5. To ..... an idea is antonymous with to reject it.
   a. embrace b. refuse c. oppose d. object to
6. "He is passionate about my suggestion." In this sentence, we can replace 'passionate about' with ..... .
   a. enthusiastic about b. addicted of c. worried about d. b & c
7. "Loving money is the root of all evil." The word 'root' here can be replaced by ..... .
   a. trunk b. origin c. source d. b & c

4 Derivatives المشتقات

Verb	Noun	Adjective
-	ancestor جَدّ/سَلَف	ancestral سَلَفيّ - موروث
embrace يَتَبَنَّى - يعتنق	embrace عناق	-
pride (yourself) on يتباهى بـ	pride فخر - كبرياء - تَكَبُّر	proud فخور - مُتَكَبِّر

Mini Test 3 Derivatives

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The calculator is the ..... of the computer.
   a. celebrates b. celebrities c. ancestral d. ancestor
2. There are arguments about the family ..... house. Some members want to sell it against the desire رغبة of other members.
   a. celebrates b. celebrities c. ancestral d. ancestor

3. The two brothers had ..... warmly before one of them got on his car and raced away.
a. embrace b. embraced c. proud d. pride

4. The two brothers had been in a warm ..... before one of them got on his car and raced away.
a. embrace b. embraced c. proud d. pride

5. I am ..... to know a good friend like you.
a. embrace b. embraced c. proud d. pride

6. I take ..... in having a good friend like you.
a. embrace b. embraced c. proud d. pride

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a sense of humour	حِسّ الفكاهة	make me laugh	يُضحكني
a sense of identity	الشعور بالهوية	nation's pride	زهو الأمة
a wide range of	نطاق واسع من	national heritage	التراث القومي
at an early age	في سن مبكرة	once a week	مرة واحدة أسبوعيًا
because of	بسبب	open-minded about	منفتح على
cultural influence	تأثير ثقافي	passionate about	شغوف بـ
cultural roots	الأصول الثقافية	similar to	شابه لـ
culture gap	الفجوة الثقافية	stay in touch with	يبقى على إتصال بـ
go for a walk with	يذهب في نزهة سير مع	thanks to	بفضل/بسبب
in English	باللغة الإنجليزية	the best thing about	أفضل شيء في ...
keep hold of	يستحوذ على - يتمسك بـ	the rest	البقية
It's thanks to	إنه بفضل ...		

6 Synonymous Expressions تعبيرات مترادفة

connected with/to = in touch with	مُرتبط/مُتصل بـ	I am fortunate to = I am lucky to	أنا محظوظ بأن
familiar with = to have a good knowledge or understanding of	علي علم بـ/معتاد علي	participate in = take part in	يشارك في
in some cases, = sometimes	في بعض الحالات	I promise you = I give you my word	أعاهدك - أعدك
take pride in = be proud of	يفتخر بـ		

Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

belong to	يخص/ينتمي إلي	share ... with	يشارك/يتقاسم ... مع
chat to	يدردش مع	sign up	يُسَجِّل دخول
end up	ينتهي به الأمر إلي	speak to	يتحدث إلي
live on (phr.v)	يستمر فى التواجد - يتغذى على	talk about	يتحدث عن
meet up	يلتقي/يتقابل	talk to	يتحدث إلي
move away from	يُعَزِّل من/ينتقل بعيدًا من	tend to	يميل لأن
shape ... into	يُشكل ... إلى	write down (phr. v)	يُدَوِّن - يُسَجِّل

Mini Test 4 Expressions, Prepositions & Idioms

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I gave you my word. I will visit you next week. "I gave you my word," means: ..... *(LM)*
   a. I spoke with you. b. I promised you.
   c. You shouldn't expect me to come. d. You should have believed me.

2. My cousins and I ..... once a week in my grandparents' house.
   a. meet b. meet up c. a & b d. end up

3. It is ..... your support that I've passed these difficult times.
   a. similar to b. thanks to c. thank to d. tend to

4. Your teacher has ..... to me about your low grades.
   a. told b. spoke c. talked d. b & c

5. When you participate in an activity, you ..... it.
   a. fall in love with b. are in touch with
   c. take part in d. are lucky to

6. To move ..... a place is to leave it.
   a. away b. away from c. in d. into

7. My parents' ideas have shaped me ..... the person who I am now.
   a. from b. into c. by d. with

8. When you are connected with others, you ..... them.
   a. fall in love with b. are in touch with c. take part in d. are lucky with

9. Temperatures tend ..... be high at this time of the year.
   a. to b. as c. like d. from

abroad - aboard - broad

- **abroad** بالخارج / خارج البلاد
  - I first travelled abroad last year. I travelled to Paris on business.
- **aboard** على متن سفينة / طائرة
  - My plane had 125 passengers aboard.
- **broad** فسيح / واسع / عريض
  - The New Administrative Capital العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة has broad streets.

ancestors - descendants

- **ancestors (n)** أجداد / أسلاف
  - The great Arabs are our ancestors.
- **descendants (n)** أحفاد
  - We are the descendents of the great Arabs.

root - route

- **root (n)** جذر - مَنشأ - أصل
  - Palm trees have deep roots.
  - Love of money is the root of all evil.
- **route (n)** مَسار - طريق
  - Buses follow fixed routes.

be proud of / to= take pride in

- **be proud of (something / someone)** فخور بـ
  - Her parents are very proud of her.
- **be proud to do something** فخور أن
  - I am proud to receive this award.
- **take / have pride in** يفتخر بـ
  - She takes / has pride in her respectable family.

Mini Test 5 Clear the Confusion

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Modern cities have ..... streets.
   a. abroad b. board c. aboard d. broad

2. The flight attendants made sure that all passengers ..... have fastened their seat belts.
a. abroad b. board c. aboard d. broad

3. He travels ..... every summer, namely to Europe.
a. abroad b. board c. aboard d. broad

4. Trees absorb water from the ground through their ..... .
a. bark b. fruits c. roots d. routes

5. Sailing ships follow fixed ..... .
a. walks b. motorways c. roots d. routes

6. The pharaohs are our ..... .
a. descendants b. ancestors c. successors d. children

7. We are the ..... of the pharaohs.
a. descendants b. ancestors c. successes d. forebears

9 Master your Key Vocabulary كل ما يخص المفردات الرئيسية

ancestor

•ancestor (n) جَدّ – سَلَف (للإنسان وغيره)
- Mr Mohammed's ancestors settled down استقروا in Assuit.
- It is said that some types of dinosaurs and farm hens have developed from the same ancestors.

•ancestor = forerunner (n) باكورة (أول شكل أز صيغة لشيء تطور بعد ذلك)
- The steam engine is the ancestor of all modern engines.

•ancestral (adj) موروث – سَلَفيّ
- Our family's ancestral house is about 150 years old.

embrace

•embrace = hug (v) يُعانق – يَحضُن (فعل مُتعدي يأخذ مفعول بهذا المعني)
- The woman embraced her son warmly.

•embrace = hug (v) يتعانق (فعل لازم لا يأخذ مفعول بهذا المعني)
- The woman and her son embraced warmly.

•embrace (v) يعتنق – يتحمس لـ – يتبنّي
- We hope all countries will embrace healthcare reforms. إصلاحات

•embrace (v) يضُمّ – يُضَمّن
- The school trip embraces visiting different places of interest.

•**embrace (n)** عناق - حُضن
- There's nothing like my mother holding me in a tender حنون embrace.

root

•**root (n)** جذر النبات
- Some trees have deep roots.

•**root (n)** سبب - مَنْشأ
- Poverty الفقر and need is the root of child labour عمالة الأطفال.

•**root (n)** اصل - مَنْشأ
- Corona virus is the root of your respiratory problems. المشاكل التنفسية

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- **take roots** يترسَّخ/ يشتد
- **root causes** أسباب جوهرية
- **put down roots** يستقر/يستوطن

•**root (v)** يُكوِّن جذور
- Trees root easily and quickly in fertile soil التربة الخصبة.

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

تنويه: التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

• ✪ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. Her feelings of loneliness are ..... in her unhappy childhood.
   a. removed b. rooted c. managed d. extracted
2. The Egyptian government has ..... the concept of digitalism. الرقمنة
   a. risen b. participated c. tended d. embraced
3. The agenda of the meeting does not ..... your presentation.
   a. embrace b. extend c. tend d. consist
4. The old man and his son held each other in a long ..... .
   a. aspect b. embrace c. root d. case
5. The clever mechanic was able to get the ..... of the problem with my car.
   a. aspect b. embrace c. root d. case
6. He has been living in England since 2001. He seems to have ..... there.
   a. lived b. travelled c. left d. put down roots

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	b	- التعبير (be rooted in) يعني (نشأت في/ تأصلت منذ)
2.	d	- الفعل (embraced) هنا يعني (يتبني/يتحمس لـ)
3.	a	- الفعل (embrace) هنا يعني (يتضمن)
4.	b	- كلمة (embrace) هنا اسم يعني (عِناق)
5.	c	- التعبير (the root of the problem) يعني (السبب الرئيسي في المشكلة)
6.	d	- التعبير (put down roots) يعني (يستقر/يستوطن)

Part III Reading & Listening

1 Reading Texts

5 ways to stay connected with your cultural roots

(SB page 56)

- **Speak it**-try to learn some of the language.
- **Eat it** - you can learn a lot about the culture through its food. Cook it and share it with others.
- **Learn it** - Read about your heritage. Knowing about your family's roots(1) helps build a sense(2) of identity and brings you closer to older relatives(3).
- Embrace(4) your culture - take pride in(5) your family's identity. That's the beauty(6) of life; we are all different.
- **See it**- Travel to where your ancestors(7) come from.

Check Vocabulary

(1) أصول
(2) إحساس
(3) أقارب
(4) يعانق
(5) يفتخر بـ
(6) الجمال
(7) أجداد/أسلاف

My Extended(1) stay in Luxor

(WB page 34)

by **Robert Murphy**

Ten years ago, when I thought about going on a short holiday to Egypt, I never realised I would end up making it my home but here I am!

When I first arrived in Luxor on a Saturday morning in July, I was amazed by the sights(2), sounds and smells of the busy city centre. I took a carriage(3) ride(4) round town and immediately fell in love with(5) the place. After two weeks, I decided to rent(6) a flat and look for work. After a while, I was teaching English and my students were very interested in learning about my culture.

Check Vocabulary

(1) مُمتَد
(2) مناظر
(3) عربة
(4) جولة
(5) يُغرَم بـ
(6) يستأجر

But I soon realised that I was a little home-sick[7]. I found a great website to find other people living abroad[8]. If you sign up, you can search for people of different nationalities living in cities all around the world. I found other Irish expatriots[9] living in Luxor and a few of us arranged to meet up once a week. I now have a great mixture[10] of friends and I do different activities with different groups. With my Irish[11] friends we play traditional Irish music together and share stories and memories of our childhood[12]. I also have a group of Egyptian friends, who I go for long walks with, to discover the city and countryside.

What really helped me to find friends in Luxor was participating[13] in different multicultural groups and doing different activities. I now have a wide range[14] of friends from many countries and while I love the Egyptian culture. I am still in touch with my roots through my Irish friends here in the city.

(7) حنين للوطن
(8) بالخارج
(9) مغتربون مسيقون
(10) خليط/مزيج
(11) أيرلندي
(12) طفولة
(13) يشارك
(14) نطاق/مَدَى

Class forum[1]

(SB page 57)

Please leave your comment



My father is Irish and my mother is Chinese, so I am fortunate[2] to have two cultures to explore[3]. The best thing about being part of a multicultural family is that we tend[4] to be open-minded about new cultural experiences. My parents have shaped[5] me into the person I am today, and the cultures they have shared with me have a big impact[6] on how I see the world and what I am passionate[7] about.

My mum says that I am definitely[8] my father's daughter because we both love soup and rock music, which are popular in Ireland, and we share the same Irish sense of humour.[9] I've never been to Ireland, but I've read a lot about it. One of my favourite authors[10] is Roddy Doyle, an Irish writer, who makes me laugh[11]. Through his books, I've learned about the typical[12] Irish sense of humour.

Check Vocabulary

(1) مُنتدى
(2) محظوظ
(3) يستكشف
(4) يميل/يتجه
(5) يُشَكِّل
(6) أثر/انطباع
(7) شغوف/متحمس
(8) بالتأكيد
(9) الفكاهة/السخرية
(10) مؤلفين
(11) يضحك
(12) نموذجي/النمطي

Thanks to my mum, I am lucky to have grown up using chopsticks[13] and eating rice. I am familiar[14] with the traditions[15] of the Chinese culture, not only because my mum celebrates[16] them, but because my parents introduced them to me at an early age. I have also started to learn Cantonese[17] due to my mum, who is from Hong Kong. What are your main cultural influences[18] ?

(13) عيدان الأكل
(14) معتاد على
(15) تقاليد
(16) تحتفل بـ
(17) اللغة الكانتونية
(18) تأثيرات

2 Listening Texts

(SB page 56)

Radio presenter :
Today on the programme, we are going to be talking about the importance of our cultural roots.[1] Our guests are two teenagers from different backgrounds[2] but who share one thing in common - a belief that your heritage[3] is important and we need to keep hold of[4] it. Let's find out how they are trying to keep in touch with their cultural roots. Hello Fatma, thank you for coming to chat to[5] us.

Check Vocabulary

(1) اصل - مَنشأ
(2) خلفية
(3) تراث
(4) يحافظ على - يتمسك بـ
(5) يدردش مع
(6) جيل
(7) يستمر في التواجد
(8) مفقود من فترة طويلة
(9) حفل زفاف

Fatma : No problem.

Radio presenter : So, you 're from a Nubian family. Is that right?

Fatma : Yes, but I now live in Aswan in southern Egypt.

Radio presenter: And you are taught in Arabic at school,

Fatma : Yes, that's right. Because of that, I don't really speak Nubian. My grandparents still speak Nubian to each other, and I understand a few words but that's all. It's the same for most of my generation.[6] I belong to Nubia and want the Nubian language to live on.[7] Now there is a language leaning app called Nubi, so I'm using that to try and learn it. It includes some long-lost[8] traditional songs which were sung at weddings.[9] I also watch online videos of Nubian people telling stories of their old villages and the customs they practised in the Nubian language.

Radio presenter : What about you, Aderfi?

Aderfi : My family are Berber.(10) My name, Aderfi, is Berber and means 'the freed(11) one' - my grandparents lived in a village near the Siwa Oasis, but we all live in Cairo now. They talk a lot about their lives there. Now they speak Arabic most of the time, but they have taught me a few Berber words. My Berber heritage is important to me. Every year, I go with my parents to the annual(12) Siyaha festival in the Siwa Oasis, which takes place around the October full moon to celebrate the date harvest(13). There's lots of singing and dancing. Berbers love music and dance. Flutes(14) and drums(15) are their chosen instruments.(16) Songs are still sung in the Berber dialect(17) My mum still cooks Berber food at home. My favourite dish is her couscous(18) with tagine(19) - lamb, chicken or vegetables. It's delicious.

(10) البربر - بربري
(11) مُتحرر - مُحرَر
(12) سنوي
(13) جَني لبلح
(14) الناي
(15) الطبلة
(16) آلة - جهاز
(17) لهجة - لكنة
(18) الكسكس (اسم وجبة)
(19) الطاجن

Radio presenter : Thank you both for coming to talk to us about your cultural heritage. It's been really interesting.

(WB page 34)

Check Vocabulary

(1) احتواء - اعتناق

Presenter : Welcome to the podcast about 'Embracing(1) your culture abroad'. Today we're going to hear about Virat Shami's story.

Virat Shami : Well, many years ago, while I was travelling around the world I met a few Egyptian people and we became very good friends. They invited me to visit them in Cairo and I thought it was a great idea. That was over twenty-four years ago now and I'm still here, yes, that's right in Cairo, Egypt! I love the culture and the history here. However, I still haven't forgotten my roots.

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

I studied history at university and feel it's important to remember my ancestors(2) and I'm very proud to be Indian. A few years ago, I started an Indian Association(3) to help promote the Indian culture in Egypt and help bring other Indian nationals together to share our culture. We play different Indian sports and watch them on TV at the weekends, too. We love cricket! We also try to share Indian recipes(4) but I'm afraid I'm not so good at cooking! Many Egyptian people have joined too and really embrace our culture and they say it has many similarities to their own, and they love Indian food. The Association has really helped me to stay in touch with(5) my roots and it has also helped me and my children to learn even more about our Indian heritage.

(2) اجداد
(3) جمعية
(4) وصفة
(5) يبقى على اتصال بـ

My Grandfather's Stories

(WB page 35)

Hamid : Hi, Munir! How are you ? I haven't seen you for ages(1). Where have you been?

Munir : Hi Hamid. Yes, everything's great! We've been in the village with my grandparents for the whole summer.

Hamid : Oh no! I bet(2) that must have been boring(3).

Munir : That's what I thought at first, but it was really interesting.

Hamid : Really! What did you do?

Munir : Well, it was thanks to(4) my grandfather that I had such a great time. He's brilliant(5) at telling stories(6), and due to(7) his great memory, he kept us entertained every evening.

Hamid : I love a good story.

Munir : Me, too! He's had lots of wonderful experiences not only because he used to travel a lot but also because he loves talking to new people and especially older people.

Check Vocabulary

(1) لمدة طويلة
(2) يراهن
(3) مُمِلّ
(4) بفضل
(5) رائع - بارع
(6) سرد القصص
(7) بسبب

Hamid : Why does he prefer talking to older people?

Munir : He says it's because they can tell him details and stories about the past which history books don't include[8]. I feel very fortunate[9] to learn so much about our family's past and compare just how things have changed since he was my age. Some of his stories are really funny!

(8) يشتمل على
(9) محظوظ
(10) يدون
(11) البقية

Hamid : It certainly sounds interesting. You're very lucky to be able to hear about the past from someone who has lived it too.

Munir : Yes, and I started writing down[10] his stories and now the rest[11] of my family want to read them! The funniest story is about a time he went to …

Part IV Language

Relative Clauses عبارات الوصل

1 Relative Pronouns ضمائر الوصل

Pronoun	Notes
who / whom / that الذى / التى / الذين / اللاتى (مع العاقل)	⊙ يمكن أن يأتى بعد **(who / that)** فعل و فى هذه الحالة لا يمكن حذفهم: - The boy who / that won the race is my son. ⊙ يمكن أن يأتى بعد **(who / whom / that)** فاعل وفى هذه الحالة يمكن حذفهم: - The boy who / whom / that you met with me in the party is my cousin. - The boy you met with me in the party is my cousin.
which / that الذى / التى / الذين / اللاتى (مع غير العاقل)	⊙ يمكن أن يأتى بعد **(which / that)** فعل وفى هذه الحالة لا يمكن حذفهما: - The car which / that hit the old man was very fast. ⊙ يمكن أن يأتى بعد **(which / that)** فاعل وفى هذه الحالة يمكن حذفهما: - The mobile which / that I bought yesterday has a very good camera. - The mobile I bought yesterday has a very good camera.

whose للملكية (مع العاقل وغير العاقل)	⊙ يأتى بعد (whose) اسم يخص الاسم الذى قبلها ولا يأتى بعدها فعل مطلقا: - The woman whose son had come first was very happy. - The horse whose leg has been broken won't run in the next race.
where حيث / حيثما / المكان الذى (مع المكان)	⊙ تشير إلى المكان ولا يأتى بعدها فعل: - The town where I live is very crowded. - She likes the school where she works.
when حين / حينما / الوقت الذى	⊙ تشير إلى الوقت أو الزمن ولا يأتي بعدها فعل: - I won't forget the moment when I knew that I got 99% in the final exam. - I was asleep at seven when you called.

Mini Test 1 — Apply

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I admire the person ..... helps others in difficulties.
   a. who b. whom c. that d. a & c
2. My uncle is the man ..... Omar wants to work for.
   a. who b. whom c. that d. a, b &c
3. He doesn't like the clothes ..... I wear.
   a. whose b. whom c. which d. where
4. He asked me about the name of the perfume ..... I used.
   a. that b. which c. a & b d. whom
5. I get up at six o'clock ..... it is time to get ready for school.
   a. where b. when c. which d. whose
6. My mobile alarm rings at six o'clock ..... is the time for me to get up.
   a. where b. when c. which d. whose
7. I live in a flat ..... balcony overlooks the Nile.
   a. whose b. which c. where d. whom
8. I always buy my things from the supermarket ..... is at the corner.
   a. where b. which c. when d. no word
9. At the corner, there is a supermarket ..... I always buy my things.
   a. where b. which c. when d. no word

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

- تستخدم (what) كضمير وصل وهى لا تعود على اسم محدد وتكون الجملة الموصولة كلها إما فاعل أو مفعول أو مجرور :

- What you achieve will help my project. (فاعل)
- Listen to what your parents say. (مجرور)
- I didn't understand what he said. (مفعول)

- تستخدم (who /whom / which) وليس (that) فى الجمل الاعتراضية - أى بعد الفاصلة الانجليزية (,) :

- Sadat, who was a president of Egypt, took the war decision in 1973. *(Not: that was ...)*
- Cairo, which is the capital of Egypt, is very crowded. *(Not: that is ...)*

- يُفضل أن تُستخدم (that) وليس (which) أو (who) فى الحالات التالية :

(أ) إذا كانت أى من الكلمات التالية تصف الاسم الذى يعود عليه ضمير الوصل :

all - any - one - some - every - only - many - much - few - no ...

- I lent her all the money that she needed.
- Ahmed was the only friend that helped me.

- لكن إذا جاءت (of) بعد أى من الكلمات السابقة نستخدم (which / whom) وليس (that) :

- I took three pictures, all of which are not clear. *(Not: all of that)*
- I met a group of professors, some of whom work in foreign universities. *(Not: some of that)*

(ب) بعد صفات التفضيل :

- The fox is the cleverest animal that I have ever seen.

- التى بعد (whose) اسم لكن انتبه لبعض الكلمات التى تُستخدم كفعل واسم، ومن أمثلة ذلك :

- act تصرف / سلوك – **help** مساعدة – **hope** أمل – **wish** أمنية – **stay** إقامة
– visit زيارة – **pay** أجر – **imports** واردات – **exports** صادرات – **likes** المفضلة
– dislikes الأشياء غير المفضلة – ... etc.

- I respect parents whose hope in life is to bring up their children well.
- I'm thankful to my friend whose help was very necessary.

- أطول :

- with = who / which / that + have / has / had ...

- I live in a house which has three floors.
= I live in a house with three floors.
- I met a man who has a degree from Oxford University.
= I met a man with a degree from Oxford University.

Mini Test 2 — Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Sama doesn't stop crying until she gets ..... she wants.
   a. that b. what c. which d. when
2. She isn't used to others telling her ..... she should do.
   a. whose b. which c. that d. what
3. Mr Ayman, ... is our manager, is a clever negotiator مُفاوض.
   a. that b. who c. whom d. a & b
4. Egypt, ... is an African country, has a strategic location.
   a. which b. where c. that d. a & c
5. I have a lot of friends, some of ..... are famous footballers.
   a. who b. that c. whom d. whose
6. These are very important instructions, many of ..... tell you how to protect yourself from coronavirus.
   a. whose b. whom c. that d. which
7. I like the company of those friends ..... likes are similar to mine.
   a. who b. that c. whose d. whom
8. I prefer to live in a villa ..... a large garden.
   a. that b. with c. which d. a & b

2 Prepositions with relative pronouns — حروف الجر مع ضمائر الوصل

١ لا تأتى حروف الجر قبل كل من (who / that) بل تأتى بعدهما فى نهاية جملة الوصل :

- This is my colleague who I work with. *(Not: with who ....)*
- This is my key that I open my front door with. *(Not: with that ....)*

٢ يمكن أن تأتى حروف الجر قبل أو بعد كل من (whom / which) :

- Ahmed is my colleague with whom I work.
= Ahmed is my colleague whom I work with.
- This is my key with which I open the front door.
= This is my key which I open the front door with.

٣ لا تستخدم حروف جر تشير إلى المكان قبل أو بعد (where) :

- I went to the room in which I sleep. *(Not: the room in where ....)*
- I went to the room which I sleep in. *(Not: the room where .... in)*

1 يمكن أن تستخدم حروف الجر قبل (where) بمعنى (a place / the place where) :

- He asked the driver to bring the children from where the bus had broken down.
= He asked the driver to bring the children from the place where the bus had broken down.
- I took the laptop to where it was repaired.
= I took the laptop to the place where it was repaired.

2 هناك طريقة رائعة للاختيار بين (where) و (which) مع اسم المكان كالتالى:

(أ) قم بوضع حرف جر (in مثلاً) بعد الفعل الموجود فى عبارة الوصل.

(ب) انقل اسم المكان بعد حرف الجر الذى وضعته.

(جـ) إذا كانت العبارة صحيحة يكون الاختيار الصحيح (where).

- This is the house ..... we live. (✓)
- We live in the house.

a. which b. where c. what d. whose

(د) إذا كانت العبارة خاطئة يكون الاختيار الصحيح (which / that) :

- This is the house ..... my father has built. (✗)
- My father built in the house.

a. which b. where c. what d. whose

3 لا تستخدم حروف جر تشير إلى التعبير الزمنى قبل أو بعد (when) :

- Friday is the day on which my son was born. *(Not: the day on when ....)*
- Friday is the day which my son was born on. *(Not: the day when .... on)*

4 يمكن استخدام (where) أو (that) أو عدم استخدام أي منهما بعد الكلمات التالية:

- somewhere, anywhere, everywhere, nowhere, place

- I want to find a place where I can rest and have a drink.
= I want to find a place that I can rest and have a drink.
= I want to find a place I can rest and have a drink.
- There's nowhere where you can park your car.
= There's nowhere that you can park your car.
= There's nowhere you can park your car.

٨ يمكن استخدام (when) أو (that) أو عدم استخدام أي منهما بعد الكلمات العامة التالة على الزمن مثل:

. time, day, week, month, year, moment ...

. I can't remember the day when I first met her.
= I can't remember the day that I first met her.
= I can't remember the day I first met her.

. I enjoyed the time when I was free on holiday.
= I enjoyed the time that I was free on holiday.
= I enjoyed the time I was free on holiday.

٩ يمكن استخدام (that) أو (in which) بعد (way):

. the way in which = the way that

. She told me the way in which I can prepare fresh coffee.
= She told me the way that I can prepare fresh coffee.

١٠ يمكن استخدام (that) أو (why) بعد (reason):

. the reason why = the reason that

. She told me the reason why she was angry.
= She told me the reason that she was angry.

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

Mini Test 3 — Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. This is the man for ..... he wants to work.
   a. who b. whom c. that d. a, b & c
2. This is the man ..... he wants to work for.
   a. who b. whom c. that d. a, b & c
3. I washed the knife ..... I cut my food with.
   a. that b. which c. no word d. a, b & c
4. I washed the knife with ..... I cut my food.
   a. that b. which c. no word d. a, b & c
5. I am going to the restaurant ..... I usually have my meals.
   a. that b. which c. a & b d. where
6. I am going to the restaurant ..... I usually have my meals in.
   a. that b. which c. a & b d. where

7. Aswan is the city ..... I live.
a. which b. where c. whose d. whom

8. Aswan is the city ..... I visit at least twice a year.
a. which b. where c. whose d. whom

3 Omission of relative pronouns حذف ضمائر الوصل

❶ يمكن حذف كل من (who - which - whom - that) إذا جاء بعدهم فاعل :

- This is the woman who I helped. = This is the woman I helped.

❷ يمكن حذف كل من (who - which - that) في حالة وجود فعل بعدهما في الحالات التالية :

أ. في المبني للمعلوم يتم حذف ضمير الوصل ويُضاف للفعل (ing):

- The boy who is wearing a white shirt is my son.
= The boy wearing a white shirt is my son.

ب. إذا جاء بعدهم صيغة مبنى للمجهول وهنا نحذف ضمير الوصل و (verb to be) ويبقى التصريف الثالث للفعل :

- The criminal who was arrested yesterday had killed two people.
- The criminal arrested yesterday had killed two people.

Notes for advanced level ملاحظات للمتفوقين

❶ تُستخدم (which) فقط وليس (that) عندما تشير الى مضمون الجملة التى تسبقها :

- He came first, which made his parents very happy. *(Not: that made ....)*

❷ يُفضل أن تُستخدم (that) وليس (who / which / whom) بعد (It + verb to be ...) :

- It's the manager that we want to see at once.
- It was fish that we ordered for lunch.

❸ يمكن أن تستخدم (which) مع المكان إذا كان المكان مفعول لجملة الوصل :

- This is the house which we built. *(Not: where we built ....)*

❹ لاحظ أن الفعل يتحكم أحيانا فى حرف الجر الذى يسبق أو يأتى بعد ضمير الوصل :

- He said something very impolite, for which he should apologise. (apologise .... for)
- He says he's busy, by which he really means he doesn't want to go out this evening. (mean .... by)

٥ يمكن استخدام (to + inf.) بدلاً من عبارة الوصل اذا كان ضمير الوصل فى الجملة يعمل معمل الفاعل مع كلمات مثل :

The first / the second ..... / the last / the only .....

- I was the first person that left the ship.
= I was the first person to leave the ship.

٦ يمكن استخدام (inf. + ing) بدلاً من (who / which / that + verb) فى الحالات التالية :

أ. إذا كانت عبارة الوصل تدل على عادة :

- Passengers who travel on this bus always complain about its seats.
= Passengers travelling on this bus always complain about its seats.

ب. اذا كان الفعل فى عبارة الوصل أحد أفعال التمنى مثل (wish / desire / want / hope) :

- Students who wish to take part in the competition must get 90 % at least.
= Students wishing to take part in the competition must get 90 % at least.

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

Mini Test 4 — Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. This is all the money ..... for.
   a. that asked b. which asked c. you asked d. a & c
2. I prepared everything for the guests ..... .
   a. whom you invited them b. who you invited them
   c. you invited them d. you invited
3. The scientist ..... yesterday had discovered an important medicine.
   a. honoured b. who honoured
   c. he honoured him d. honouring
4. The man ..... in the garden is my uncle.
   a. he works b. working c. that work d. worked

General Exercise On Language — Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting Started

1. Mr Kareem, ... lives in Luxor, assures that tourists going there will experience hospitality and an amazing history. *(LM)*
   a. who b. that c. whom d. which

11

2. The TV ..... I bought last month has started to give a very low sound.
a. who b. that c. what d. when (LM)

3. Cleopatra was the last of a series of rulers, called the Ptolemies, ... ruled Egypt for 300 years.
a. whose b. whom c. which d. who (LM)

4. Al Azhar Park, ... we used to go, is currently being renovated.
a. where b. that c. which d. who (LM)

5. I don't know the name of the factory in ..... he works.
a. what b. which c. where d. who (LM)

6. Mr Amin, ... retired, enjoys spending a lot of time with his grandchildren.
a. whom b. that c. who's d. whose (LM)

7. This is the interesting novel ..... I wanted to lend you.
a. what b. that c. where d. who (LM)

8. Unfortunately, it was only a one-year guarantee ..... came with the fridge, so we will have to pay so much to have it repaired.
a. what b. that c. where d. who (LM)

9. Our civilization, ... is the oldest in the world, is our source of pride.
a. where b. what c. that d. which (LM)

10. My uncle works for the company, ... has developed a vaccine against COVID-19.
a. which b. what c. where d. whose (LM)

11. Do you know the manager with ..... I work?
a. who b. that c. whom d. whose (LM)

12. ..... you say is unbelievable: the sun is not a planet!
a. Which b. What c. That d. Who (LM)

13. Have you seen ..... she bought from the book fair?
a. which b. when c. what d. that (الدور الأول ٢٠١٩)

14. This is the table on ..... I put my books.
a. that b. which c. where d. when (الدور الأول ٢٠١٩ - أدبي)

15. The man, ... car was stolen, called the police. (النموذج الوزارة الاول ٢٠١٩)
a. who b. whom c. whose d. that

16. This is the house ..... we lived when I was young. (دور أول قديم ٢٠١٦)
a. where b. which c. when d. who

17. The manager, ... secretary is seriously ill, has to type the letters by himself. (دور أول حديث ٢٠١٦)
a. who b. whose c. where d. that

18. That is the school in ..... I had my primary education. (دور أول ٢٠١٤ نظام قديم)
a. which b. where c. whose d. when

19. That's the house ..... my parents used to live in.
a. where b. that c. in which d. what

20. Give your sister ..... she needs.
a. that b. what c. when d. whose

21. Was that the time ..... you went to Aswan together?
a. when b. what c. which d. where

22. He loves food and eats ..... is put on the table in front of him.
a. whom b. where c. that d. what

23. Rodayna, ... surname is Mohammed, is a clever student.
a. that b. whose c. who d. who's

24. The summer ..... I graduated from university was long and hot.
a. which b. when c. what d. whom

Special Cases

25. Luxor, ... monuments are famous everywhere, attracts tourists from all over the world. *(LM)*
a. what b. which c. that d. whose

26. I don't know ..... making this noise, but all of you must keep quiet. *(LM)*
a. whose b. who's c. that d. who

27. These famous sonnets are poems ..... by William Shakespeare on a variety of themes. *(LM)*
a. were written b. written c. which written d. writing

28. In the past, Britain had a great empire ..... the sun never set on. *(LM)*
a. what b. where c. which d. whose

29. My neighbour's baby, ... I am caring for, is currently in the hospital.
a. whose b. that c. who's d. whom (LM)

30. The accountant ..... we employed last month is really efficient. (LM)
a. what b. which
c. whose d. no relative pronoun

31. I don't know ..... this strange man is coming from.
a. who's b. who c. where d. that (LM)

32. Do you know ..... your uncle is coming back from Algeria?
a. where b. when c. who d. whose (LM)

33. Siwi is the language ..... in parts of the south of the country. (LM)
a. spoken b. which is speaking
c. speaking d. which spoken

34. The person ..... acts are irresponsible is usually unreliable. (LM)
a. whom b. who c. whose d. which

35. She forgot to bring back her friend's camera, ... she had to apologise.
a. which b. at which c. for which d. that (LM)

36. He showed me all ..... he had brought from the book fair. (LM)
a. what b. where c. which d. that

37. You had better make up your mind on ..... you need to buy.
a. whom b. who's c. what d. that (نموذج الوزارة الأول ٢٠٢٠)

38. The man ..... wearing the white shirt is Ahmed's uncle. (أزهر ٢٠١٩ - علمي)
a. who b. who's c. whose d. that

39. She used to go with her father to meetings ..... she learned to read and write.
a. at which b. who c. when d. for which (نموذج الوزارة الثالث ٢٠١٨)

40. Can I talk to the man ..... on the bench near you? (نموذج الوزارة الثاني ٢٠١٩)
a. is sitting b. whom sits c. who sitting d. sitting

41. The book ..... had many pictures. (نموذج الوزارة الثاني ٢٠١٩)
a. I gave you b. that I gave you it
c. that I gave it to you d. which gave you

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

42. Yesterday, I played a long game of tennis with my brother, ... made me very tired. (دور اول حديث ٢٠١٥)
a. whom b. whose c. which d. when

43. Amir was the third ..... the office.
a. to leave b. leaves c. leaving d. left

44. The tour guide showed me round town, ... was very kind of him. (نموذج الوزارة الأول ٢٠١٨)
a. who b. whose c. where d. which

45. He is the one ..... the prize should be given to.
a. who's b. that c. which d. when

46. A palace is a big house ..... many rooms where a king or queen lives.
a. whose has b. where has c. what has d. with

47. She asked me where I had been, ... which I replied, "It's a secret".
a. to b. at c. for d. by

48. Countries ..... imports are more than their exports have economic problems.
a. whose b. which c. that d. when

49. Cities..... have an underground system are much easier to visit.
a. which b. where c. in which d. at which

50. The residents ..... stay ended, have to renew it. (السودان ٢٠١٧)
a. whose b. who c. that d. when

51. In 1983, Graham Greene travelled to Mexico, ... is where I met him. (نموذج الوزارة الأول ٢٠١٧)
a. which b. where c. when d. what

52. Name the actor ..... plays Salah El Deen. (دور ثان ٢٠١١)
a. which b. whose c. whom d. who

53. I don't know with ..... about the loan. (دور أول ٢٠١٤ نظام حديث)
a. who I should speak b. whom I should speak
c. who should I speak d. whom should I speak

54. He lost the book .....him last week. (السودان ٢٠١٢)
a. which lent b. which I lent it
c. who lent d. I lent

55. We'll give a prize to the company ..... exports are good. (السودان ٢٠١٥)
a. who b. which c. who's d. whose

3 Check your understanding

56. Which of the following is structurally correct? (LM)
a. I read the book which you lent it to me.
b. I read the book you lent me.
c. I read the book what you lent me.
d. I read the book you lent it to me.

57. "I helped the injured man". This means ..... .
a. I helped the man who he was injured
b. I helped the man who was injured
c. I helped the man was injured
d. I helped the man that he was injured

58. "I haven't read your last email yet". This means ..... .
a. I haven't read the last email which you sent it yet
b. I haven't read the last email you sent it yet
c. I haven't read the last email you sent yet
d. a & c

59. "I know this man. He has a scar on his face". This means ..... .
a. I know this man who he has a scar on his face
b. I know this man he has a scar on his face
c. I know this man whose a scar on his face
d. I know this man with the scar on his face

60. "Do as I have told you, please." Please, ...
a. do what I told you
b. do which I told you
c. do that I told you
d. b & c

61. "I have three employees in my office. Their pay is more than I can afford". This means .....
a. I have three employees in my office who pay more than I can afford
b. I have three employees in my office whose pay is more than I can afford
c. I have three employees in my office who they pay more than I can afford
d. I have three employees in my office where I pay more than I can afford

62. "I have lived in this flat since I was born", this means " ..... ".
a. This is the flat where I have lived since I was born
b. This is the flat where I have lived in since I was born
c. This is the flat I have lived in since I was born
d. a & c

63. "I take my annual holiday in August." This means ..... .
a. August is the month which I take my annual holiday
b. August is the month in which I take my annual holiday
c. August is the month when I take my annual holiday
d. b & c

64. "The little girl in the green dress is my daughter." I want to say that .....
a. the little girl wearing the green dress is my daughter
b. the little girl worn the green dress is my daughter
c. the little girl she is wearing the green dress is my daughter
d. the little girl who she is wearing the green dress is my daughter

4 Feedback grammar

• راجع افكارك مع معلمك.

65. "COVID-19 is still spreading, but the light is at the end of the tunnel." This means that ..... (LM)
a. we will reach the end of the tunnel.
b. something bad will happen.
c. we should have a lot of hope even though everything is dark.
d. we shouldn't be optimistic even though everything is clear.

66. "My manager is very sensitive. When I'm with her, I must watch every word I say." This means: ..... (LM)
a. I shouldn't worry about what I say.
b. I should be very careful about what I say.
c. I shouldn't see the result of what I say.
d. I should be spontaneous.

UNIT 11

Advanced Exercise on Language

▶ التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

* **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. The meetings ..... I attended were long and boring.
   a. at which b. where c. of which d. which
2. The meetings ..... I was invited were long and boring.
   a. at which b. where c. to which d. which
3. I always buy my things from the supermarket ..... at the corner.
   a. where b. which c. when d. no word
4. I know for ..... he married her. For her money.
   a. what b. that c. why d. which
5. I have no idea ..... was at the door.
   a. where b. whom c. who d. that

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	d	(meetings) غير عاقل وهي مفعول للفعل (attend) الذي لا يأخذ حرف جر في هذا السياق، لذلك استخدمنا (which)
2.	c	(meetings) غير عاقل وهي مفعول للفعل (invited) الذي يتطلب حرف الجر (to) قبل المكان ، لذلك استخدمنا (to which)
3.	d	لكي يبني الجملة صحيحين بدون ضمائر وصل نظرًا لعدم وجود فعل قبل حرف الجر (at)، والعبارة الموصولة هنا مختصرة، وبالصيغة الكاملة تكون : - .... supermarket which is at ....
4.	a	الجملة ينقصها مفعول والذي يحل محله هنا الضمير (what) وليس أي اختيار آخر
5.	c	الضمير (who) مُستخدم بمعني استفهامي ويحل محل الفاعل

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

Part 1 Key Vocabulary & Definitions

تنويه

• هذا الجزء خاص بالمفردات والتعبيرات الرئيسية للقصة. لقراءة نص القصة المقررة والتمرين ع
المفردات اللغوية والتدريبات نهاية الكتاب.

1 Key Vocabulary & Definitions

deliberately(adv) عمدًا/عن قصد	- done in a way that is intended مقصود or planned - on purpose
faint(ed) (v) يُغمي عليه	feeling weak and as if you are about to become unconscious غير واعي because you are very ill, tired, or hungry
fiercely(adv) بعنف	strongly or severely
guide(d) (v) يُرشِد	to take someone to a place
handle(n) مِقبض	the part of an object that you use for holding it
incredible(adj) رائع/خرافي - غير معقول	- too strange to be believed, or very difficult to believe - unbelievable
scream(ed) (v) يصرخ	to make a loud high noise with your voice because you are hurt, frightened, excited etc.
spark(n) شرارة	a very small piece of burning material produced by a fire or by hitting or rubbing احتكاك two hard objects together
spoil - spoiled/spoilt (v) يُفسِد	to have a bad effect on something so that it is no longer attractive, enjoyable, useful etc.
steamer(n) باخرة	a large ship that uses steam to produce power
tie(d) up (v) يُقيِّد	to tie someone's arms, legs etc. so that they cannot move
tight(adj) ضيق	fitting closely to your body and sometimes uncomfortable

UNIT 11

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. Try to be optimistic; don't let this little incident ..... your day. (LM)
   a. make b. spoil c. cause d. help
2. The wound is gaping. The bandage must be ..... enough to stop the bleeding. (LM)
   a. baggy b. loose c. tight d. light
3. The witness said that the young man had hit the other car ..... He damaged it on purpose. (LM)
   a. deliberately b. deliberate
   c. intentional d. unintentionally
4. It is incredible that he survived that terrible accident. "Incredible" here is a synonym for "....." . (LM)
   a. supposable b. imaginable c. unbelievable d. believable
5. This painting is ..... . Well done, Leen!
   a. tight b. fierce c. spoilt d. incredible
6. Sama ..... loudly when she saw a rat in her bedroom!
   a. tied b. screamed c. spoilt d. fainted
7. The policeman ..... the thief's hands so that he couldn't escape .
   a. tied up b. gave up c. handed in d. gave in
8. The cycler fell on his head and ..... .
   a. tied b. guided c. spoilt d. fainted
9. We crossed the canal by a ..... .
   a. handle b. spark c. steamer d. guide
10. The little boy who was playing in the street ..... the guests to their flat.
    a. tied up b. guided c. spoilt d. fainted
11. The ..... of the knife broke and I couldn't use it any longer.
    a. handle b. spark c. steamer d. guide
12. One ..... can cause a big fire.
    a. handle b. spark c. steamer d. guide

so / such ... that; enough / too ... to

so ... that ... حذا لدرجة أن ...

❶ تُستخدم (so ... that) وبينهما صفة أو ظرف بين بمعني (... جداً لدرجة أن ...) :

... so + adj. صفة + that + جملة

- Sama is so young that she can't look after herself.
- Mohammed got so tired that he slept in his chair.

... so + adv. ظرف + that + جملة

- He ran so quickly that he broke the world record.

---

❷ تُستخدم (so) وليس (such) قبل (many / much / little / few) :

... so + many / much / little / few + (adj. صفة) + noun ...

- I don't know why you have so many books in your bag.
- My wife has eaten so little food and I've eaten so much!

---

❸ تُستخدم (so much) وليس (so) فقط قبل صفات المقارنة :

... so much + comp. صفة مقارنة

- Salah is so much faster that he always manages to reach the ball first.

ملاحظة هامة : لا يُمكن أن تُستخدَم (very ... that) بدلاً من (so ... that)

---

❹ إذا بدأت الجملة بـ (... so) كجزء من الصيغة (So ... that) فلابد أن يأتي فعل مساعد / ناقص قبل الفاعل:

- So + adj. / adv. + ناقص / فعل مساعد + فاعل + that ...

- He spoke so angrily that everybody left the office.
= So angrily did he speak that everybody left the office.
- I was so late for school that I found the gate closed.
= So late was I for school that I found the gate closed.

2 such... that...

جدا لدرجة أن ...

1 لاحظ استخدام (such ... that) :

... such a / an + adj. صفة + اسم مفرد + that ...

- Sama is such a young girl that she can't go out on her own.
- My grandmother is such an old woman that she can't walk.

... such + adj. صفة + اسم غير معدود / اسم جمع + that ...

- They are such good friends that I can't imagine life without them.
- Such good advice will solve all your problems.

... such + اسم

- Don't trust such a thief.

... such + اسم + that + جملة

- Nasser was such a leader that nearly all people liked him.

لاحظ أن الاسم الذي يُستخدم بدون صفة بين (such ... that) لابد أن يوحي معناه بصفة معينة سواء إيجابية أو سلبية، ومن الأسماء الي تُستخدم في هذه الحالة ما يلي:

- gentleman رجل نبيل - **genius** شخص عبقري – **cutie / cutey** شخص جذّاب
- coward شخص جبان - **fool** شخص أحمق - **idiot** شخص أبلَه - **liar** شخص كذاب
- jerk شخص احمق

- He is such a fool that even a child can deceive him.
= He was such a foolish person that even a child can deceive him.
= He is so foolish that even a child can deceive him.

---

2 لاحظ استخدام (so) بالمقارنة بـ (such) في الصيغة التالية:

- such + a\an + adj. + اسم مفرد يُعد + that ...
= so + adj. + a\an + اسم مفرد يُعد + that ...

ملحوظة: تستخدم هذه الصيغة فقط مع اسم مفرد يُعَد، وليس مع اسم جمع أو اسم لا يُعد:

- He is such an intelligent person that we all admire him.
= He is so intelligent a person that we all admire him.

---

3 إذا بدأت الجملة بـ (Such ...) كجزء من الصيغة (Such ... that) فلابد أن يأتي فعل مساعد / ناقص قبل الفاعل:

- Such+ adj. / adv. + ناقص / فعل مساعد + فاعل + that ...
- Such an intelligent person is he that we all admire him.

Exercise On Language

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Rodayna has ..... long hair that some girls at school are jealous of it.
   a. so b. such a c. such d. a
2. He is ..... intelligent that he wins all maths competitions.
   a. very b. such c. to d. so
3. El-Moasser is ..... good book that most students study and revise using it.
   a. such b. such a c. so d. too
4. I am so ..... that I can't go on working. I'll have to leave the office right now.
   a. tired b. a tired c. a tired person d. tired person
5. We all have enjoyed such ..... .
   a. weather b. good weather c. a good weather d. a & b
6. She drives ..... slowly that I don't think she will arrive in time.
   a. such b. so c. too d. enough
7. He has ..... helpful friends that he regards them as his brothers.
   a. such b. such a c. so d. as
8. She is carrying ..... many books that her hands ache.
   a. very b. such c. so d. enough
9. My father is ..... a hero . He took part in the 1973 War.
   a. so b. too c. such d. enough
10. Mr Nasser is so popular with students ..... they all love and respect him.
    a. to b. such c. too d. that
11. He is ..... a coward that he runs away from a cat.
    a. so b. such c. enough d. too
12. Rokaya works so .....that everyone appreciates her efforts.
    a. hard b. a hard c. hardly d. hardness
13. Don't shout at so little ..... . He will hate you.
    a. a child b. child c. children d. a children
14. She was so ..... that she ate six sandwiches.
    a. hunger b. hungry c. hungry girl d. hungrily
15. Mr Ashraf is ..... man that you can trust him.
    a. such a c. such the d. so

16. Mr Ashraf is ..... man that you can trust.
a. such a b. such an c. so d. such the

17. I have ..... much homework that I can't go out with my friends.
a. such b. enough c. so d. very

18. I enjoy his company. صُحْبَة He is ..... great man.
a. too b. so c. such a d. such

19. He was so late ..... a taxi.
a. to take b. not to take
c. that takes d. that he had to take

20. ..... valuable information will help us a lot.
a. So b. Such c. Such a d. A very

21. She has ..... few friends that she feels lonely.
a. so b. such c. such a d. enough

22. We all admire ..... polite a girl.
a. these b. such a c. such d. so

23. Wake up, Mohammed. You have slept ..... much.
a. enough b. so c. such d. such very

24. Sama is such a clever student ..... first.
a. that she comes b. she comes c. comes d. to come

25. The teacher explained the lesson ..... we all understood it well.
a. very easily that b. so easy that
c. so easily that d. such easily that

26. Thank you for presenting ..... thorough lecture. (LM)
a. such b. such a c. so d. enough

27. The mobile phone cost so ..... that I couldn't buy it. (LM)
a. many b. much c. few d. little

28. Don't worry; the lecture is easy ..... to study alone. (LM)
a. enough b. so c. too d. such a

29. I think that Chinese is ..... difficult that we can't learn it easily. (LM)
a. such a b. so c. enough d. such

30. After having been infected with COVID-19, I became too tired to work. This means that ..... (LM)
a. I became fit enough to work.
b. I wasn't so tired that I could work.
c. I was tired enough to work.
d. I became so tired that I couldn't work.

Part II Skills

(Master your skills) كل المهارات الخاصة بالوحدة تم شرحها متبوعة بالتدريبات فى ملحق وحدة علي حدة.

تنويه

Translation الترجمة

① Choose the best Arabic translation :

1. Modern culture and civilisation have become dependent on science and technologies as they have become an integral part of life according to the needs and requirements of the people. (LM)

أ. لقد أصبحت المعرفة والحضارة الحديثة معتمدة علي العلوم والتقنيات حيث أصبحت هامة في الحياة وفقاً لاحتياجات ومتطلبات الناس.

ب. لقد أصبحت الثقافة والحضارة الحديثة معتمدة علي العلوم والتقنيات حيث أصبحت جزء لا يتجزأ من الحياة وفقاً لاحتياجات ومتطلبات الناس.

جـ. أصبحت الثقافة المدنية الحديثة معتمدة علي العلوم والتقنيات حيث أصبحت جزءاً عظيماً في الحياة وفقاً لاحتياجات ومتطلبات الناس.

د. أصبحت الحضارة الحديثة معتمدة علي العلوم والتقنيات حيث أصبحت جزء لا يتجزأ من الحياة وفقاً لأحلام ومتطلبات الناس.

2. Egypt has always been the lighthouse of science and civilisation since the dawn of history. It has a strong cultural background. Some of the greatest Arab writers, musicians and craftsmen are Egyptians.

أ. لقد كانت مصر منارة العلم والحضارة منذ أسفل التاريخ، ولديها خلفية ثقافية قوية، وبعض أعظم الكتاب والموسيقيين والحرفيين العرب مصريون.

ب. لطالما كانت مصر منارة للعلم والحضارة منذ فجر التاريخ، ولديها خلفية ثقافية قوية، وبعض أعظم الكتاب والموسيقيين والحرفيين العرب مصريون.

جـ. لقد كانت مصر على فترات منارة العلم والحضارة منذ فجر التاريخ، ولديها خلفية ثقافية رادعة، وبعض أعظم الكتاب والموسيقيين والحرفيين العرب مصريون.

د. لطالما كانت مصر منارة للعلم والحضارة منذ فجر التاريخ، ولديها خلفية ثقافية قوية، وبعض أعظم الكتاب والموسيقيين والحرفيين المصريين عرب.

3. English is a tool to break down barriers in international communication. It may become the common language of communication among a group of immigrants coming from different countries.

مجموعة من
ب. اللغة الإنجليزية هي وسيلة لاقتحام الحواجز في الاتصال الدولي، ولابد أن تصبح لغة التواصل المشتركة بين مجموعة من المهاجرين القادمين من بلدان مختلفة.
ج. إن اللغة الإنجليزية هي أداة لبناء الحواجز في الاتصال الدولي، وهي تصبح لغة التواصل المشتركة بين مجموعة من المهاجرين القادمين من قري مختلفة.
د. إن اللغة الإنجليزية هي أداة لكسر الحواجز في التواصل الدولي، وهي لن تصبح لغة التواصل المشتركة بين مجموعة من المهاجرين القادمين من بلدان مختلفة.

4. If we don't look after our heritage, it could easily disappear like most of the wonders of the world. It is not the responsibility of the government alone to protect our heritage, but of individuals as well.

أ. إذا لم نعتني بتراثنا، فقد يختفي بسهولة مثل معظم عجائب العالم، وليست مسؤولية الحكومة وحدها حماية تراثنا ولكنها مسؤولية الأفراد أيضًا.

ب. إذا لم نعتني بثروتنا، فقد تختفي بسهولة مثل معظم غرائب العالم، وليست مسؤولية الحكومة وحدها حماية تراثنا ولكنها مسؤولية الأفراد أيضًا.

ج. إذا لم نعتني بتراثنا، فقد يختفي بسهولة مثل معظم عجائب العالم، وليست مسؤولية الحكومة حماية تراثنا ولكنها مسؤولية الأفراد.

د. إذا لم نعتني بتراثنا، فقد يختفي بسهولة مثل معظم عجائب العالم، وليست من مسؤوليات الحكومة حماية تراثنا ولكنها مسؤولية الأفراد.

② Choose the best English translation :

١. هناك العديد من العناصر الأساسية التي تشكل كل ثقافة مهما اختلف نوعها مثل البيئة الجغرافية والروابط الأسرية واللغة ونوعية التعليم والمعتقدات والقيم. *(LM)*

a. There are a lot of basic elements that make up every knowledge, regardless of its type, such as geographical environment, family relations, language, quality of education, issues and values.

b. There are a lot of basic elements that affect every culture, regardless of its type, such as the geographical environment, family ties, language, quality of education, beliefs and skills.

c. There are a lot of basic elements that make up every culture, regardless of its type, such as geographical environment, family ties, language, quality of education, beliefs and values.

d. There are a lot of minor elements that make up every culture, regardless of its type, such as the geographical environment, family ties, hobbies, quality of education, beliefs and values.

أ. إن اللغة الإنجليزية هي أداة لتدمير الحواجز في التواصل الدولي، وقد تصبح لغة التواصل المشتركة بين مجموعة من المهاجرين القادمين من بلدان مختلفة.

ب. اللغة الإنجليزية هي وسيلة لاقتحام الحواجز في الاتصال الدولي، ولابد أن تصبح لغة التواصل المشتركة بين مجموعة من المهاجرين القادمين من بلدان مختلفة.

جـ. إن اللغة الإنجليزية هي أداة لبناء الحواجز في الاتصال الدولي، وهي تصبح لغة التواصل المشتركة بين مجموعة من المهاجرين القادمين من قري مختلفة.

د. إن اللغة الإنجليزية هي أداة لكسر الحواجز في التواصل الدولي، وهي لن تصبح لغة التواصل المشتركة بين مجموعة من المهاجرين القادمين من بلدان مختلفة.

4. If we don't look after our heritage, it could easily disappear like most of the wonders of the world. It is not the responsibility of the government alone to protect our heritage, but of individuals as well.

أ. إذا لم نعتني بتراثنا، فقد يختفي بسهولة مثل معظم عجائب العالم، وليست مسؤولية الحكومة وحدها حماية تراثنا ولكنها مسؤولية الأفراد أيضًا.

ب. إذا لم نعتني بثروتنا، فقد تختفي بسهولة مثل معظم غرائب العالم، وليست مسؤولية الحكومة وحدها حماية تراثنا ولكنها مسؤولية الأفراد أيضًا.

جـ. إذا لم نعتني بتراثنا، فقد يختفي بسهولة مثل معظم عجائب العالم، وليست مسؤولية الحكومة حماية تراثنا ولكنها مسؤولية الأفراد.

د. إذا لم نعتني بتراثنا، فقد يختفي بسهولة مثل معظم عجائب العالم، وليست من مسؤوليات الحكومة حماية تراثنا ولكنها مسؤولية الأفراد.

② Choose the best English translation :

١. هناك العديد من العناصر الأساسية التي تشكل كل ثقافة مهما اختلف نوعها مثل البيئة الجغرافية والروابط الأسرية واللغة ونوعية التعليم والمعتقدات والقيم. *(LM)*

a. There are a lot of basic elements that make up every knowledge, regardless of its type, such as geographical environment, family relations, language, quality of education, issues and values.

b. There are a lot of basic elements that affect every culture, regardless of its type, such as the geographical environment, family ties, language, quality of education, beliefs and skills.

c. There are a lot of basic elements that make up every culture, regardless of its type, such as geographical environment, family ties, language, quality of education, beliefs and values.

d. There are a lot of minor elements that make up every culture, regardless of its type, such as the geographical environment, family ties, hobbies, quality of education, beliefs and values.

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

٢. نحن أمة لها تاريخ عريق وحضارة عظيمة أورثتنا كنوز أثرية قيمة، لذلك تنفق الدولة ملايين الجنيهات على ترميم وصيانة المواقع الأثرية القديمة لكونها جزء هام من تراثنا الثقافي والحضاري.

1. We are a nation where has a long history and a great civilization that took us valuable archaeological treasures. Therefore, the state spends millions of pounds on the restoration and maintenance of ancient archaeological sites, as they are an important part of our cultural and civilizational heritage.
2. We are a nation that has a tall history and a great civilization that bequeathed us valuable archaeological treasures. Therefore, the state spends millions of pounds on the restoration and maintenance of modern archaeological sites, as they are an important part of our cultural and civilizational heritage.
3. We are a nation that has a long history and a great civilization that bequeathed us valuable archaeological treasures. Therefore, the state spends millions of pounds on the restoration and maintenance of ancient archaeological sites, as they are an important part of our cultural and civilizational heritage.
4. We are a nation that has a long history and a great civilization that bequeathed us valuable archaeological treasures. That's the reason, the state spends millions of pounds on the restoration and maintenance of ancient archaeological cities, as they are an important part of our cultural and civilizational heritage.

---

٣. لقد كان للعلماء دور هام في تحقيق الازدهار والرفاهية للأفراد والمجتمعات في كل أرجاء العالم، لذلك نحن ندين بالكثير لهم لما قدموه ولازالوا وسيظلون يقدمونه من إسهامات عديدة لخدمة البشرية.

1. Scientists have had an important role to play in achieving prosperity and welfare for individuals and societies all over the world. Therefore, we owe a lot to them for the contributions they made, are still making and will continue to make to serve humanity.
2. Scientists have had an important role to make in achieving prosperity and welfare for members and societies all over the world, so we owe a lot to them for what they have provided and are and will continue to make of the many contributions to serve humanity.
3. Scientists have had an important role to play in achieving prosperity and welfare for individuals and societies all over the country, so we owe a lot to them for what they have provided and are and will continue to make of the many contributions to serve humane.

٢. نحن أمة لها تاريخ عريق وحضارة عظيمة أورثتنا كنوز أثرية قيمة، لذلك تنفق الدولة ملايين الجنيهات على ترميم وصيانة المواقع الأثرية القديمة لكونها جزء هام من تراثنا الثقافي والحضاري.

a. We are a nation where has a long history and a great civilization that took us valuable archaeological treasures. Therefore, the state spends millions of pounds on the restoration and maintenance of ancient archaeological sites, as they are an important part of our cultural and civilizational heritage.

b. We are a nation that has a tall history and a great civilization that bequeathed us valuable archaeological treasures. Therefore, the state spends millions of pounds on the restoration and maintenance of modern archaeological sites, as they are an important part of our cultural and civilizational heritage.

c. We are a nation that has a long history and a great civilization that bequeathed us valuable archaeological treasures. Therefore, the state spends millions of pounds on the restoration and maintenance of ancient archaeological sites, as they are an important part of our cultural and civilizational heritage.

d. We are a nation that has a long history and a great civilization that bequeathed us valuable archaeological treasures. That's the reason, the state spends millions of pounds on the restoration and maintenance of ancient archaeological cities, as they are an important part of our cultural and civilizational heritage.

---

٣. لقد كان للعلماء دور هام في تحقيق الازدهار والرفاهية للأفراد والمجتمعات في كل أرجاء العالم، لذلك نحن ندين بالكثير لهم لما قدموه ولازالوا وسيظلون يقدمونه من إسهامات عديدة لخدمة البشرية.

a. Scientists have had an important role to play in achieving prosperity and welfare for individuals and societies all over the world. Therefore, we owe a lot to them for the contributions they made, are still making and will continue to make to serve humanity.

b. Scientists have had an important role to make in achieving prosperity and welfare for members and societies all over the world, so we owe a lot to them for what they have provided and are and will continue to make of the many contributions to serve humanity.

c. Scientists have had an important role to play in achieving prosperity and welfare for individuals and societies all over the country, so we owe a lot to them for what they have provided and are and will continue to make of the many contributions to serve humane.

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

d. Scientists have had an important role to play in achieving prosperity and welfare for individuals and societies all over the world, so we own a lot to them for which they have provided and are and will continue to make of the many contributions to serve humanity.

١. لقد كانت مصر دائمًا شامخة على مر تاريخها، وستظل كذلك أبد الدهر بأبنائها، ولن تخضع لأحد مهما تكون الأسباب.

a. Egypt has always been great throughout its history. It will be so forever through its citizens. It will not submit to anyone, whatever the reasons are.

b. Egypt has been great throughout its history. It will be so forever though its citizens. It will not submit to anyone, whatever the reasons are.

c. Egypt has always been great throughout its date. It will be so forever through its citizens. It will never submit to anyone, whatever the reasons are.

d. Egypt has always been great throughout its history. It will be such forever through its citizens. It will not submit to anyone, whatever the reasons are.



للتدريب على اختيارى MRQ بنك الأسئلة

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I found out from my grandmother that I had a/an ..... who lived in Japan.
   a. grandchild b. grandson c. descendant d. ancestor
2. The main ..... of the job of a secretary is doing office work.
   a. root b. aspect c. case d. impact
3. The terrorist tried to avoid being arrested by adopting a false ..... .
   a. multiculturalism b. benefit c. majority d. identity
4. The government warned the ..... villagers to stay safe at home during the storm.
   a. temporary b. unique c. endangered d. isolated
5. Someone who is ..... is able to speak only one language.
   a. monolingual b. bilingual c. multilingual d. multicultural
6. This is a deep-seated situation." In this sentence, the adjective 'deep-seated' is a synonym of ..... .
   a. permanent b. deep-rooted c. a & b d. temporary
7. The comments I ..... on my friends' posts are always related to the post.
   a. embrace b. do c. build d. leave
8. "He is too proud to say he is wrong." In this sentence, the word 'proud' is an antonym of ..... .
   a. arrogant b. humble c. conceited d. a & c
9. You can't smoke in a smoke..... carriage.
   a. -freely b. freely c. free d. -free
10. When I was a university student, I had a ..... time job for Wednesdays and Thursdays.
    a. part b. part- c. partly- d. partly
11. Salah is a ..... Egyptian footballer.
    a. well-known b. best-known c. most well-known d. b & c
12. Salah is the ..... Egyptian footballer.
    a. well-known b. best-known c. most well-known d. b & c
13. This is my old friend ..... visit has made me very happy.
    a. who b. whom c. whose d. that
14. Anything ..... she says makes us annoyed.
    a. why b. whom c. that d. what

15. A famine was the reason ..... so many African people emigrated to the USA.
a. no pronoun b. where c. when d. what

16. She always asks me to say ..... I've said again. That's really boring.
a. which b. that c. what d. whose

Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

In 1961, John Kennedy became president. The world was then introduced to his beautiful wife Jacqueline Bouvier Kennedy. She was intelligent, **graceful**, and beautiful. Americans and the world fell in love with her. She was born in 1929. She lived in New York City and East Hampton, Long Island. She loved riding horses and had lessons at a very early age. She went to private schools. Her interests were writing poems and stories, ballet, and drawing.

Jacqueline traveled all over the world. She became a photographer for a Washington D.C. newspaper and soon met Senator John Kennedy. She married John Kennedy in 1953. They had two children, Caroline, and John Jr., who was born just before John Kennedy became president in 1960. The family moved into the White House. They had another child Patrick, who was born prematurely and died. A president's wife is called the First Lady. As First Lady, Jackie promoted the "arts". She introduced the world to the White House by conducting tours for visitors. She had many responsibilities, but her children always were her top priority.

Tragedy struck with the assassination of President Kennedy. Jacqueline Kennedy had to care for her children alone. She moved to New York City. She protected the children from all the publicity. She wanted as much privacy as possible, but the people and press always wanted to know about her life. She married Aristotle Onassis in 1968 and lived in Greece. After his death she moved back to New York City and was the editor for Doubleday. She died in 1994. She is remembered for her grace and beauty, her love of words and her family.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

17. The best title for the passage is ..... .
a. President Kennedy's assassination b. Senator John Kennedy
c. Jacqueline Bouvier's life d. Aristotle Onassis' career

18. After reading the passage, we can say that Jacqueline's character was ..... .
a. cruel b. sensitive c. hateful d. greedy

19. According to the passage, Jacqueline had ..... hobbies.
a. three b. five c. six d. two

20. The main idea of the first paragraph is ..... .
a. Jacqueline's early life b. Jacqueline's wedding
c. Kennedy became the president d. Kennedy's three children

21. We can infer from the passage that the word "**graceful**" means ..... .
a. ugly b. attractive c. silly d. plumb

22. Where did Jacqueline live when she married Onassis?
a. New York City b. The White house
c. Athens d. Greece

23. Which year do you think Patrick was born in?
a. 1962 b. 1929 c. 1953 d. 1960

24. Women in the latest years ..... .
a. play a negative part in history
b. play a small part in society
c. have less role in the social affairs
d. have more effective role in society

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Nature photographers have captured on film a spider jumping from one flower to another. Using its large eyes, the jumping spider follows its prey. Then, the jumping spider set its sights, spins out a "safety line," and jumps.

A common variety in the United States, the Daring Jumping Spider makes its home in woods, fields, and gardens. Its distinctive, big-eyed appearance makes it easy to recognize. Four of its eight eyes are located on its face, and the other four are on top of its head. The spider is black with gray or white stripes, and it has spots on its abdomen.

Jumping spiders feast on a variety of insects, as well as other spiders. Some varieties climb as well, giving them a wide range of potential prey. These arachnids do not build webs to catch prey. They hunt on foot by sneaking up and pouncing on their victims. Even though jumping spiders only grow to be between one-quarter and one-half inches long, they can leap amazing distances for their size. Additionally, their excellent eyesight makes them very accurate. Jumping spiders are also one of the fastest arachnids. Scientists claim they are very smart.

In addition to using silk for safety lines when jumping, jumping

spiders also use this thread to create shelter under leaves and to encase eggs until hatching. Insects should be wary of this spider without a web that can stealthily approach, keenly observe, and leap.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

25. The main idea of the passage is ..... .
    a. The special skills the spider uses to catch its preys
    b. The different kinds of insects the spider catches
    c. The various environments in which the spiders live
    d. The difference between various kinds of spiders
26. Which of the following sentences is CORRECT ?
    a. Jumping spiders are as smart as bees.
    b. Jumping spiders are as lazy as some bats.
    c. All spiders are jumping.
    d. All spiders are safe.
27. Why does the author say these spiders have distinctive appearance?
    a. They have large eyes to observe their prey.
    b. They spin out a line to construct a web and catch prey.
    c. They enclose their eggs in a silk sack.
    d. They create a shelter under a leaf.
28. The spiders use their silk to ..... .
    a. kill their victims
    b. build shelter
    c. fly in the air
    d. encase their babies
29. The spider has .....different colours.
    a. four
    b. three
    c. two
    d. five
30. The third paragraph deals with ..... .
    a. the details of the spider's jumping abilities
    b. the spider's appearance which is very frightening
    c. how spiders protect themselves against other insects
    d. how spiders build their own homes
31. Spiders have ..... eyesight.
    a. poor
    b. distinguished
    c. weak
    d. terrible
32. Which of the following sentences is an evaluation to the passage ?
    a. Scientists should collect all spiders.
    b. Scientists should forget about spiders.
    c. Insects should kill jumping spiders.
    d. Insects should be wary of jumping spiders.

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

Choose the best Arabic translation :

33. A nation's progress is made with the help of the sincere efforts exerted by all devoted citizens. (امتحان الدور الاول علمى ٢٠٢١)

أ) تقدم الأمة يقوم بمساعدة الجهود المخلصة المبذولة من كل المواطنين المجتهدين.

ب) تقدم الشعب يساعد الجهود الوفية من بعض المواطنين الأوفياء.

ج) تقدم الأمة يتحقق بفضل الجهود المخلصة المبذولة من كل المواطنين المخلصين.

د) تقدم البلاد يعتمد على مساعدة الجهود الوفية من كل المواطنين المتميزين.

34. We are in urgent need of a revolution against our bad behaviour. Really, we should resist any strange conduct.

أ) نحن فى حاجة ماسة لثورة ضد السلوك السيىء. وحقًا ، يجب أن نقاوم أى سلوك غريب.

ب) نحن فى احتياج لثورة على السلوك السيىء. فى الحقيقة، يجب أن نقاوم أى تصرف متعصب.

ج) نحن فى حاجة مستمرة لثورة ضد السلوك السيىء. فى الحقيقة، يجب أن نقاوم أى تصرف أجنبى.

د) نحن فى احتياج لثورة ضد السلوك السيىء. فى الحقيقة، يجب أن نقاوم أى سلوك أجنبى.

Choose the best English translation :

٣٥. يأمل الكثير من الناس بأن تكون هناك سياحة آمنة للفضاء متاحة في المستقبل القريب.

a. Many people hop that safety space tourism will be available in the near future.

b. A lot of people hopped that safely space tourism will be predictable in the near future.

c. Many people hope that space terrorism will be available in the near future.

d. Many people hope that safe space tourism will be available in the near future.

٣٦. يجب أن نكون دائمًا ممتنين للعلماء لما يقدموه كل يوم لخدمة البشرية. فباختراعاتهم واكتشافاتهم تنعم البشرية بحياة مريحة.

a. We should always be grateful to the scientists for what they do every day to preserve humanity. By their inventions and discoveries, the human has a comfortable life.

b. We should always be grateful to the scientists for what they do every day to deserve humanity. By their inventions and explores, the humanity has a comfortable life.

c. We should always be grateful to the scientists for what they do every day to serve humanity. With their inventions and discoveries, humanity has a comfortable life.

d. We should always be grateful to the scientists for what they do every day to reserve humanity. By their inventions and discoveries, the humanity has a comfortable life.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

37. Try to keep your car clean and well maintained; it will sell more easily.
We use semi-colons instead of full stops to .....
a. show exclamation.
b. introduce unexpected events.
c. separate two main clauses.
d. compare two main clauses.

Read this part of the essay and choose the correct answer :

During pandemics, parents prefer homeschooling to help their children avoid being infected. Despite this temporary procedure, I'm a strong supporter of learning at school. It's much more beneficial than homeschooling. According to statistics, at school, students learn much better because they have actual interaction with their teachers. In addition, they can practise activities a lot more effectively. Moreover, they receive their lessons in a natural atmosphere at school, where they gain knowledge and have useful Competition with their classmates. This, in turn, could have a great effect on their achievement.

38. This could be part of a/an ..... essay.
a. persuasive
b. narrative
c. descriptive
d. argumentative

39. According to this essay, the writer .....
a. prefers homeschooling in all cases.
b. finds homeschooling more beneficial than learning at school.
c. supports learning at schools for further benefits.
d. tends to support a mixture of both types: homeschooling and learning at school, even in normal cases.

40. Which of the following is punctuated correctly ?
a. "I haven't put those shelves up yet" said Walid.
b. "I haven t put those shelves up yet", said Walid.
c. "I haven't put those shelves up yet," said Walid.
d. "I haven't put those shelves up yet, said Walid.

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

Answers of Test on unit 11

اسم الطالب (رباعيًا) :

تعليمات: ظلل الدائرة المقابلة تمامًا للإجابة الصحيحة. إذا ظللت الدائرة أمام الإجابة الخطأ، اشطب عليها بشكل واضح ثم ظلل الدائرة المقابلة للإجابة الصحيحة.

1.	a	b	c	d	21.	a	b	c	d
2.	a	b	c	d	22.	a	b	c	d
3.	a	b	c	d	23.	a	b	c	d
4.	a	b	c	d	24.	a	b	c	d
5.	a	b	c	d	25.	a	b	c	d
6.	a	b	c	d	26.	a	b	c	d
7.	a	b	c	d	27.	a	b	c	d
8.	a	b	c	d	28.	a	b	c	d
9.	a	b	c	d	29.	a	b	c	d
10.	a	b	c	d	30.	a	b	c	d
11.	a	b	c	d	31.	a	b	c	d
12.	a	b	c	d	32.	a	b	c	d
13.	a	b	c	d	33.	د	ج	ب	أ
14.	a	b	c	d	34.	د	ج	ب	أ
15.	a	b	c	d	35.	a	b	c	d
16.	a	b	c	d	36.	a	b	c	d
17.	a	b	c	d	37.	a	b	c	d
18.	a	b	c	d	38.	a	b	c	d
19.	a	b	c	d	39.	a	b	c	d
20.	a	b	c	d	40.	a	b	c	d

General Exercises
for Al Azhar students on Unit 11

1. Finish the following dialogue :

Basim and Kareem are talking about tourism.

Basim : What do you think is the most important industry for Egypt ?

Kareem : (1) ..... .

Basim : Why do you think tourism is important ?

Kareem : (2) ..... .

Basim : (3) ..... ?

Kareem : They usually visit the historic sites, the coasts and sometimes even the desert.

Basim : (4) ..... ?

Kareem : I think we should offer them cheap air travel tickets and cheap places to stay in.

2. Write a paragraph of one hundred and twenty (120) words on :

"How to have a useful role to play"

.....

3. Translate into Arabic :

- Poets are always taking the weather so personally. They're intelligence of humanity.

.....

4. Translate into English :

كوكب الأرض هو الوحيد الذى به مقومات الحياة من ماء وهواء ودرجة حرارة مناسبة.

.....

5. Answer the following question : (Islamic Selections) :

Why weren't the Muslims frightened in the Battle of Badr ?

.....

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

UNIT 12

Myths and fables

SB pages 62 : 71 WB pages 38 : 43

Learning Outcomes :

- **Reading :** Read a myth and a fable; Understand a legend
- **Writing :** Write your own myth
- **Listening :** Listen to guests on a radio show discussing the relevance of myths in modern day society
- **Speaking :** Debate about the relevance of myths; Re-tell a story
- **Language :** Reported speech
- **Life skills :** Learn from the past and understand our origins

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com



إتقان الوحدة

- إتقان المفردات اللغوية (حفظ الكلمات) في ملحق بنك الأسئلة.
- بنك الأسئلة والامتحانات التدريبية.
- دليل المعاصر في المهارات.
- دليل المعاصر في القواعد اللغوية.
- قاموس المعاصر اللغوي.
- تدريبات للأزهر الشريف في نهاية كل وحدة وملحق بنك الأسئلة.

Part I Vocabulary & Definitions

تنويه • اختبر مدى اتقانك للمفردات الرئيسية فى كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

boast (ed) (v)	يتفاخر	knight(n)	
brave(adj)	شجاع	legend (n)	
cause (d) (n/v)	سبب - يُسبِّب	legendary (adj)	
cheer (ed) (v)	يُهلِل - يبتهج	look(ed) back (phr. v)	
chop (ped) (v)	يُقطع - يُجزِّئ		
chivalry(n)	شَهامة - مُرُوءَة	myth (n)	
eternal(adj)	أزلي / أبدي - خالد	pass on (phr-v)	
evidence(n)	دليل		
fable (n)	حكاية رمزية	polite (adj)	
fed up(with) (adj)	ضجر - فاض به الكيل (من)	perseverance (n)	
fit of anger	نوبه غضب	steady (adj)	
flood(ed) (v/n)	يفيض- يغمر بالمياه- الفيضان		
generous(adj)	كريم	stretch(ed) out (v)	
honourable (adj)	شريف/مُبجَّل	tear (n)	
humble (adj)	متواضع	tear - tore - torn (v)	

تنويه • المفردات اللغوية باللون الأحمر هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية.

2 Important Vocabulary مفردات هامة

aloud(adv)	بصوت مسموع	monster(n)	
armour(n)	دِرع	musical(n)	
behave(d)(v)	يسلك / يتصرَّف	obey(ed) (v)	
beloved(adj)	محبوب	occur(red) (v)	
castle(n)	قلعة	overall(adj)	
centre(d) (v/n)	يتمركز - مَركَز	pace(n)	
code(n)	قاعدة/دستور - مُدوَّنة	path(n)	
contest(n)	منافسة -صراع	pause(d) (v/n)	
debatable(adj)	مُثير للجَدَل - محل نقاش	plenty(adv/adj)	
debate(d) (v/n)	يتناقش-مناقشة /مناظرة	proof(n)	
defeat(ed)(v/n)	يَهزِم - هزيمة	prove - proved - proven(v)	

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

defend(ed)(v)	يدافع عن	risk(ed) (n/v)	مُخاطرة / خطر - يخاطر
donate(d)(v)	يتبرَّع بـ	ruler(n)	حاكم
dragon(n)	تنين	similarity(n)	تشابه
emergency(n)	حالة طوارئ	stony(adj)	حجري
encouragement(n)	تشجيع	storyteller(n)	قصَّاص / حاكي
exaggerate(d)(v)	يبالغ في	strict(adj)	صارم - حازم
fair(adj)	عادل / مُنصف	tale(n)	حكاية
fierce(adj)	عنيف / شرس	throughout(adv)	في كل أرجاء - طوال
fin(n)	نوبة	holy(adj)	مُقدَّس
force(d) (n/v)	قوة - يُجبر	honest(adj)	أمين
gather(ed) (v)	يتجمع / يحتشد	jealous(adj)	غيور
grateful(adj)	مُمتَنّ / شاكر	youth(n)	الشباب
generation(n)	جيل	modern-day(adj)	مُعاصر - من الوقت الحاضر
hare(n)	أرنب بريّ	verbally(adv)	شفهياً
purpose(n)	غرض	version(n)	نُسخة
real-life(adj)	حقيقي - واقعي	wealth(n)	ثروة
relevance(n)	ملائمة	wealthy(adj)	ثري
rescue(d) (v)	يُنقذ	while(n)	فترة
retell - retold(v)	يُعيد سرد		

3 Definitions تعريفات

boast (v) يتفاخر	to talk too proudly about your abilities, achievements, or possessions ممتلكات
cheer (v) يُهلِّل - يبتهج	to give a shout of encouragement
chivalry (v) الشهامة	behaviour that is honourable, kind, generous, and brave, especially men's behaviour towards women
chop (n) يُقطِّع - يُجزِّئ	to cut into pieces
eternal (adj) أبدي - أزلي	continuing for ever and having no end
evidence (n) دليل	facts or signs that show clearly that something exists or is true
fable (n) الحكاية الرمزية	a traditional short story that teaches a moral lesson, especially a story about animals
flood (v) يفيض - يغمر بالمياه	to cover land with a large amount of water
honourable (adj) شريف/مُبجَّل	behaving in a way that is morally أخلاقياً correct and shows you have high moral standards معايير

defend(ed)(v)	يدافع عن	risk(ed) (n/v)	مُخاطرة /خطر- يخاطر
donate(d)(v)	يتبرَّع بـ	ruler(n)	حاكم
dragon(n)	تنين	similarity(n)	تشابه
emergency(n)	حالة طوارئ	stony(adj)	حجري
encouragement(n)	تشجيع	storyteller(n)	قصَّاص/ حاكي
exaggerate(d)(v)	يبالغ في	strict(adj)	صارم - حازم
fair(adj)	عادِل / مُنصِف	tale(n)	حكاية
fierce(adj)	عنيف / شرس	throughout(adv)	في كل أرجاء - طوال
fit(n)	نوبة	holy(adj)	مُقدَّس
force(d) (n/v)	قوة - يُجبِر	honest(adj)	أمين
gather(ed) (v)	يتجمع / يحتشد	jealous(adj)	غيور
grateful(adj)	مُمتَنّ / شاكر	youth(n)	الشباب
generation(n)	جيل	modern-day(adj)	مُعاصِر- من الوقت الحاضر
hare(n)	أرنب بَرّي	verbally(adv)	شفهياً
purpose(n)	غرض	version(n)	نُسخة
real-life(adj)	حقيقي - واقعي	wealth(n)	ثروة
relevance(n)	ملائمة	wealthy(adj)	ثري
rescue(d) (v)	يُنقذ	while(n)	فترة
retell - retold(v)	يُعيد سرد		

3 Definitions تعريفات

boast (v) يتفاخر	to talk too proudly about your abilities, achievements, or possessions ممتلكات
cheer (v) يُهلِّل - يبتهج	to give a shout of encouragement
chivalry (v) الشهامة	behaviour that is honourable, kind, generous, and brave, especially men's behaviour towards women
chop (n) يُقطِّع - يُجزِّئ	to cut into pieces
eternal (adj) أبدي - أزلي	continuing for ever and having no end
evidence (n) دليل	facts or signs that show clearly that something exists or is true
fable (n) الحكاية الرمزية	a traditional short story that teaches a moral lesson, especially a story about animals
flood (v) يفيض - يغمر بالمياه	to cover land with a large amount of water
honourable (adj) شريف/مُبجَّل	behaving in a way that is morally أخلاقياً correct and shows you have high moral standards معايير

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

humble (adj) متواضع	not considering yourself or your ideas to be as important as other people's
knight (n) فارس	a man with a high rank in the past who was trained to fight while riding a horse
legend (n) أسطورة	an old well-known story, often about brave people, adventures, or magical سحرى events
look back (phr. v) ينظر للخلف - يُفكر فيما مضي	- to look at something behind you - to think about something that happened in the past
myth (n) أسطورة	an ancient story, especially one invented in order to explain natural or historical events
perseverance (n) المثابرة	determination to keep trying to achieve something in spite of difficulties
relevance (n) الملائمة	the quality of directly relating to something that is being discussed or considered
steady (adj) ثابت/رصين	keeping the same regular pace
stretch out (v) يتمدد - يتَمَطّى	to extend يفرد your arms and legs
tear (n) دَمْعَة العين	a drop قطرة of liquid which comes from the eye when you are sad

Exercise On Vocabulary • Understand

• **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1 Key vocabulary

1. Mohamed Salah is a talented player who has achieved marvellous success; he is really a living ..... (LM)
   a. lie b. legend c. superstition d. fable
2. ..... are stories that were made up by people who wanted to explain how our world works, such as how natural events occur. (LM)
   a. Dreams b. Legends c. Lies d. Myths
3. The Nile no longer ..... as it used to as a result of the high dam. (LM)
   a. irrigates b. moves c. floods d. rains
4. Stop being talkative; I'm ..... up with your lies! (LM)
   a. made b. fed c. given d. looked

5. There should be a/an ..... decline in the national birth rate to achieve more development and raise standards of living.
a. steady b. fluctuating c. instable d. trifle (LM)

6. Myths can be passed ..... from one generation to another.
a. in b. into c. on d. to (LM)

7. The police have strong ..... that the factory worker is the killer.(LM)
a. evidence b. cleverness c. eagerness d. dizziness

8. My friend is really ..... ; he never brags about يتباهى بـ his achievements or possessions.
a. tolerate b. arrogant c. pompous d. humble (LM)

9. He behaved with great ..... towards his rival منافس after he had won the game. He showed true nobility.
a. activity b. chivalry c. hatred d. envy (LM)

10. Having healthy food and doing sports are the secrets of ..... youth.
a. external b. ordinary c. eternal d. limited (LM)

11. The purpose of ..... is to teach a lesson or moral. They are often about animals, plants or forces of nature. (LM)
a. myths b. fables c. superstitions d. lies

12. Rodayna ..... when she heard that she got 99% in the final exam.
a. chopped b. flooded c. looked back d. cheered

13. Teaching is undoubtedly a/an ..... profession. It is the career of prophets.
a. honourable b. debatable c. steady d. grateful

14. If you want to succeed in life and work, don't ..... . The past is history, not destiny.
a. chop b. flood c. look back d. cheer

15. Be careful not to cut your fingers while ..... the meat.
a. chopping b. flooding c. looking back d. cheering

16. You can see ..... in armour in historical films.
a. evidence b. knights c. chivalry d. causes

17. Scientifically, ... clean and refresh your eyes.
a. myths b. armours c. paces d. tears

18. I ..... on my bed for a few minutes to relax.
a. looked back b. stretched out c. cheered d. boasted

19. It wasn't polite of him to ..... about his wealth in the presence of the poor couple.
a. look back b. stretch out c. feed up d. boast

20. Antra Ibn Shadad is a/an ..... knight.
a. legendary b. jealous c. steady d. weak

2 Important vocabulary

21. The novel is vastly .....; the author presents the main character as more extreme or dramatic than he really is. (LM)
a. exaggerated b. realistic c. authentic d. historic
22. Sorrowfully, the young man lost his mind and wounded his neighbour in a ..... of anger. (LM)
a. fat b. foot c. fit d. fete
23. Peter is an intelligent student, but he lacks ..... . (LM)
a. hesitation b. motivation c. retardation d. obstruction.
24. To achieve more success, you will need a lot of perseverance. "Perseverance" is the synonym of ".....". (LM)
a. carelessness b. cleverness c. determination d. deterioration
25. It is not easy to defeat such a brave knight in ..... .
a. myth b. armour c. piece d. tear
26. Arab ..... were known for their bravery, honour and skill.
a. hares b. versions c. whiles d. knights
27. I was over the moon due to the success of my ..... daughter.
a. beloved b. overall c. real-life d. fierce
28. Being polite to women and old people is part of our moral ..... .
a. emergency b. code c. contest d. proof
29. Modern technology has made the ..... of change in our life very fast.
a. myth b. armour c. pace d. tear
30. She is both beautiful and polite. You're just ..... of her.
a. jealous b. generous c. polite d. fed up
31. In the past, economic activity was ..... mainly around farming.
a. obeyed b. occurred c. paused d. centred
32. It is difficult to ..... the importance of getting enough sleep to your health.
a. donate b. risk c. exaggerate d. gather
33. Our ..... teacher never allows anyone to talk without permission.
a. fair b. strict c. honest d. wealthy
34. You have to pay the printed price. The prices in this shop are not ..... .
a. honourable b. debatable c. steady d. grateful
35. Most children like the fable of the ..... and the tortoise.
a. hare b. version c. while d. knight
36. The police launched a/an ..... attack on the terrorist cell.
a. beloved b. grateful c. real-life d. fierce

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

37. Mr Mohammed Omar held a/an ..... to see who was able to solve some difficult maths problems.
a. emergency b. code c. contest d. proof

38. Manchester United was ..... by 5 goals to 0.
a. defended b. defeated c. proven d. rescued

39. They are not good sons or daughters those who are not ..... to their parents.
a. overall b. debatable c. steady d. grateful

40. This disease ..... mainly in hot African countries.
a. obeys b. occurs c. debates d. feeds up

41. Some passers-by have ..... to see what the man was selling.
a. donated b. risked c. exaggerated d. gathered

42. He kept ..... his opinion even after it turned out to be inaccurate.
a. defending b. defeating c. attacking d. endangering

43. My children like the 1994 ..... of the 'Lion King' cartoon, not the 2019 one.
a. hare b. version c. while d. knight

44. When giving a presentation, ... for a few seconds after saying something important to let your audience think about it.
a. obey b. occur c. pause d. centre

45. The ..... cost of my new laptop is LE 25,000.
a. beloved b. overall c. real-life d. fierce

46. In case of ....., call 122.
a. emergency b. code c. contest d. proof

47. Wait a moment, please! I will be back in a ..... .
a. hare b. version c. while d. knight

48. People who volunteer to ..... blood are good citizens.
a. donate b. risk c. exaggerate d. burn

49. My experienced lawyer could easily ..... I was innocent. برئ
a. defend b. defeat c. prove d. rescue

50. It is not ..... play if you go on playing while a player is badly injured.
a. fair b. strict c. dishonest d. wealthy

51. Traffic congestion is a ..... problem.
a. legendary b. generous c. modern-day d. fed up

52. A good citizen ..... the law.
a. obeys b. occurs c. pauses d. centres

53. People who are not sociable have very little ..... experience.
a. beloved b. overall c. real-life d. fierce

54. Scientists have found a strong ..... of the existence of life on Mars.
a. emergency b. code c. contest d. proof

55. He ..... his life rescuing the child from the burning house.
a. donated b. risked c. exaggerated d. gathered

56. To be ....., Ali did nothing wrong.
a. unfair b. strictly c. honest d. wealthy

57. In ancient times, stories were told ..... .
a. verbally b. throughout c. unfairly d. debatably

3 Definitions

58. ..... is behaviour that is honourable, kind, generous, and brave.
a. Chivalry b. Legend c. Perseverance d. Relevance

59. ..... is determination to keep trying to achieve something in spite of difficulties.
a. Chivalry b. Legend c. Perseverance d. Relevance

60. ..... is the quality of directly relating to something that is being discussed or considered.
a. Chivalry b. Legends c. Perseverance d. Relevance

61. To ..... is to give a shout of encouragement.
a. chop b. flood c. look back d. cheer

62. A ..... is an ancient story, especially one invented in order to explain natural or historical events.
a. myth b. legend c. fable d. tear

63. Being ..... means behaving in a way that is morally correct and shows you have high moral standards.
a. honourable b. humble c. steady d. generous

64. To ..... is to think about something that happened in the past.
a. chop b. flood c. look back d. cheer

65. A ..... is an old well-known story, often about brave people, adventures, or magical events.
a. myth b. legend c. fable d. tear

66. Being ..... means continuing forever and having no end.
a. humble b. generous c. polite d. eternal

67. To ..... is to cut into pieces.
a. chop b. flood c. look back d. cheer

68. A ..... is a traditional short story that teaches a moral lesson, especially a story about animals.
a. myth b. legend c. fable d. tear

69. ..... means facts or signs that show clearly that something exists or is true.
a. Luxury b. Evidence c. Chivalry d. Literature

70. To ..... is to cover land with a large amount of water.
a. chop b. flood c. look back d. cheer

71. A ..... is a drop of liquid which comes from the eye when you are sad.
a. myth b. legend c. fable d. tear

72. Being ..... means not considering yourself or your ideas to be as important as other people's.
a. humble b. generous c. polite d. fed up

73. To ..... is to extend your arms and legs.
a. look back b. stretch out c. cheer d. boast

74. Being ..... means keeping the same regular pace.
a. honourable b. humble c. steady d. generous

75. To ..... is to talk too proudly about your abilities, achievements, or possessions.
a. look back b. stretch out c. cheer d. boast

Part II Vocabulary Study

تنويه ساعد مُعلمك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مُسبقًا بشكل جيد.

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

apply	a lesson	يُطبِّق درساً مستفاداً	give	... responsibility	يُكلِّف ... بمسئولية
be	debatable	يكون مثيراً للجدل		a shout	يُطْلِق صيحة
bring	eternal youth	يَجلُب الشباب الدائم		examples	يُعطي أمثلة
create	a charity	يُنشئ جمعية خيرية	have	the power to	لديه القوة لـ
cross	the finishing line	يعبر خط النهاية	make	a note	يُدوِّن ملاحظة
cry	tears	يُذرف الدمع/يبكي	pay	attention	ينتبه - يولي اهتمام
defend	himself	يدافع عن نفسه	support	an argument	يدعم رأياً
develop	new skills	يُنمّي مهارات جديدة	take	the risk	يغامر/ يخاطر
find	proof	يجد دليل	teach	a lesson	يُلقِّن درساً
get	bored	يسأم/يمل	wear	a heavy armour	يرتدي درعاً ثقيلاً

Mini Test 1 Collocations

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. She ..... a loud shout once she heard the good news.
   a. applied b. gave c. taught d. found
2. ..... attention to what your teacher says.
   a. Take b. Support c. Bring d. Pay
3. It was just a myth to think that the Nile flooded because Isis ..... tears into it.
   a. defended b. made c. cried d. developed
4. The investigator has ..... a proof that the man is not guilty.
   a. applied b. given c. taught d. found
5. He has ..... the risk of driving along the desert road alone at night.
   a. taken b. supported c. brought d. paid
6. I use my pencil to ..... notes when studying.
   a. defend b. make c. cry d. wear
7. It is good to ..... the useful lesson you have learnt from the story.
   a. apply b. give c. do d. make
8. Don't believe the TV commercials about health products that can ..... eternal youth.
   a. take b. apply c. bring d. pay
9. Everyone has the right to ..... themselves.
   a. defend b. listen c. care d. tell
10. Fables like the hare and the tortoise are used to ..... lessons to little children.
    a. apply b. bring c. teach d. find

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
eternal (adj)	أزلى / أبدى	forever
honourable (adj)	شريف/مُبجَّل	decent / respectable / polite
humble (adj)	متواضع	respectful / polite
legendary (adj)	مشهور	famous / well-known
steady (adj)	ثابت/رصين	stable / balanced / firm / fixed

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

3 Antonyms متضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)	
eternal (adj)	أزلى / أبدى	temporary	مؤقت
honourable (adj)	شريف/مُبجَّل	dishonourable	شائن - مُخجِل
humble (adj)	متواضع	proud	مُتكَبِّر
legendary (adj)	مشهور	unknown, obscure	غير معروف/نَكِرة
steady (adj)	ثابت/رصين	unstable, loose	غير مُستقِر/ مُهلهل

Mini Test 2 Synonyms & Antonyms

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. "Mo Salah is a legendary footballer." In this utterance, the adjective 'legendary' is a synonym of ..... .
   a. unknown b. obscure c. a & b d. well-known
2. "The base was not steady, and the model fell over." In this sentence, the word 'steady' is an antonym of ..... .
   a. stable b. unstable c. balanced d. firm
3. "Steady" is to ..... as "legendary" is to "obscure".
   a. loose b. open-handed c. free-handed d. b & c
4. "The economic situation is steady." Here, we can replace 'steady' with ..... .
   a. unstable b. loose c. firm d. contented
5. When you are 'humble', you are not ..... .
   a. respectful b. proud c. polite d. a & c

4 Derivatives المشتقات

Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
boast يتفاخر - يحتوي على	boast مصدر فخر boaster شخص مُتكبِّر boastfulness التفاخُر - التكبُّر	boastful مُتفاخر - مُتكبِّر	boastfully بتفاخر - بغطرسة
brave يواجه - يتحدى - يتحمل بشجاعة	bravery شجاعة	brave شجاع - جسور	bravely بشجاعة

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

3 Antonyms متضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)	
eternal (adj)	أزلى / أبدى	temporary	مؤقت
honourable (adj)	شريف/مُبجَّل	dishonourable	شائن - مُخجِل
humble (adj)	متواضع	proud	مُتكبِّر
legendary (adj)	مشهور	unknown, obscure	غير معروف/نَكِرة
steady (adj)	ثابت/رصين	unstable, loose	غير مُستقِر/ مُهلهل

Mini Test 2 Synonyms & Antonyms

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. "Mo Salah is a legendary footballer." In this utterance, the adjective 'legendary' is a synonym of ..... .
   a. unknown b. obscure c. a & b d. well-known
2. "The base was not steady, and the model fell over." In this sentence, the word 'steady' is an antonym of ..... .
   a. stable b. unstable c. balanced d. firm
3. "Steady" is to ..... as "legendary" is to "obscure".
   a. loose b. open-handed c. free-handed d. b & c
4. "The economic situation is steady." Here, we can replace 'steady' with ..... .
   a. unstable b. loose c. firm d. contented
5. When you are 'humble', you are not ..... .
   a. respectful b. proud c. polite d. a & c

4 Derivatives المشتقات

Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
boast يتفاخر - يحتوي على	boast مصدر فخر boaster شخص مُتكبِّر boastfulness التفاخُر - التكَبُّر	boastful مُتفاخر - مُتكبِّر	boastfully يتفاخر - بغطرسة
brave يواجه - يتحدى - يتحمل بشجاعة	bravery شجاعة	brave شجاع - جسور	bravely بشجاعة

-	fable حكاية رمزية	fabled = legendary أسطوري / خُرافي	-
chop يُقطع - يُجزئ - يخرّط	chopper ساطور	-	-
cheer يُهلّل - يبتهج	cheer صيحة فَرَح	cheering مُفرِح - مُبهِج cheerful مُبتهج / سعيد	cheerfully يبتهاج
flood يفيض - يغمر بالمياه - تَغمُره المياه	flood فيضان flooding الفيضان	-	-
-	legend أسطورة	legendary أسطوري legend جيد جدا	-
steady(ied) يصبح ثابتاً - يستقر	steadiness - ثبات استقرار على وتيرة واحدة	steady ثابت - مستقر على وتيرة واحدة	steadily بثبات - باستمرار

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

Mini Test 3 Derivatives

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Rivers ..... when there's very heavy rain.
   a. flood b. floods c. flooding d. a & c
2. The ..... of rivers occurs when there's very heavy rain.
   a. flood b. floods c. flooding d. a & c
3. Fans ..... when their team scores a goal.
   a. cheer b. cheers c. cheering d. cheerful
4. I have heard several ..... . Has the National Team scored more goals?
   a. cheer b. cheers c. cheering d. cheerful
5. She is over the moon. She must have received a piece of ..... news.
   a. cheered b. cheers c. cheering d. cheerfully
6. He is a ..... person.
   a. cheer b. cheers c. cheerfully d. cheerful
7. The firemen ..... the fire to rescue the family who were trapped inside.
   a. brave b. braved c. bravery d. bravely

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

according to	طبقاً لـ/حَسَب	in an emergency	في حالة طوارئ
as possible	قدر الإمكان	Middle Ages	العصور الوسطى
be based partly on	قائمة جزئياً على	modern-day society	المُجتمع المُعاصِر
charity work	العمل الخيري	National Cancer Association	الجمعية القومية للسرطان
code of behaviour	قواعد السلوك/ مُدوَّنة أخلاقية	overall purpose	الغَرَض الكُلّي
daily life	الحياة اليومية	real-life people	أشخاص حقيقيين
eternal youth	الشباب الدائم	Round Table	المائدة المستديرة
forces of nature	قُوَى الطبيعة	sporting contests	منافسات رياضية
happiness maker	صانع السعادة	through hard work	عن طريق العمل الجاد
hunting contests	منافسات الصيد		

6 Synonymous Expressions تعبيرات مترادفة

at a slow pace = slowly ببطء - بوتيرة بطيئة	in charge of = responsible for مسئول عن
	keep on = go on = continue يستمر في
at a steady pace = steadily بخُطَي ثابتة - بوتيرة منتظمة	make up = invent يؤلّف/يختلق
	manage to = succeed in يتمكّن أن
be fed up with = annoyed with = bored with يسأم/يمل من	teach a moral = teach a lesson يُوصِّل مغزى أخلاقي
for a while = for a (short) period of time لفترة قصيرة من الوقت	the dead = dead people الموتى
in a fit of anger = in an outbreak of anger في نوبة غضب	throughout the world = all over the world في كل أرجاء العالم

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

7 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

boast about/of	يتباهى بـ	hear of	يعرف بـ/يسمع عن
bring ... back to	يُعيد ... إلي	help with	يساعد في
centre around	تتمركز حول	look back	ينظر للخلف - يعيد التفكير في
challenge ... to	يتحدَّى ... في	pass on/down	ينتقل - يُورِّث
chop ... into	يُجزِّئ ... إلي	pay for	يدفع ثمن
consider ... to be	يَعتبِر أن ... يكون	pull ... out	يتنزع/يستخرج
debate about	يتناقش بشأن	stretch out	يتمدد
fight for	يقاتل من أجل	throw ... into	يلقي بـ ... في
find out	يكتشف	wake up	يستيقظ - يوقظ

Mini Test 4 Expressions, Prepositions & Idioms

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. "He fired his secretary in a fit of anger." 'A fit' here can be replaced by ..... .
   a. an outbreak b. a match c. a similarity d. an agreement
2. She is always boasting ..... her role in the company.
   a. with b. about c. that d. off
3. "Public spending continues to rise at a slow pace." In this context, the expression 'at a slow space' gives an antonymous meaning to ..... .
   a. slow b. slowly c. quiet d. quickly
4. Most of his speech is centred ..... his family.
   a. to b. at c. around d. with
5. "He made up this story to justify يبرر his failure." The phrasal verb 'made up' here means ..... .
   a. invented b. published c. wrote d. copied
6. "Stop boasting, man! We are all fed up with it." Here, the adjective 'fed up' is a synonym of ..... .
   a. annoyed b. bored c. a & b d. full
7. Myths used to pass ..... from one generation to the next verbally.
   a. up b. down c. on d. b & c
8. Ahmed challenged me ..... a chess game.
   a. to b. from c. onto d. about

9. "At last, he could relax for a while." In this sentence, the expression 'for a while' is a synonym of ..... .
a. since then b. for some time c. for ages d. for long

10. He stretched ..... in the warm sunshine on the beach.
a. with b. of c. out d. at

8 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

Myth - legend - fable

What is the difference between a myth, a legend and a fable?

ما الفرق في المعني بين (myth - legend - fable)؟

في اللغة العربية، تُعطي كلمة "أسطورة" المعني الذي تدل عليه كلمتي (myth) و (legend)، أما كلمة (fable) فتعني (حكاية رمزية)، وفيما يلي التوضيح الخاص بالفرق في المعني بين الكلمات الثلاث:

• **Myths** الأساطير

Myths are stories that were made up by people who wanted to explain how our world works, such as how natural events occurred. They are a bit like our ancient ancestor's version of science. These myths are generally passed on from one generation to the next.

الأساطير عبارة عن قصص اختلقها أشخاص أرادوا تفسير آلية عمل عالمنا، مثل آلية وقوع الأحداث الطبيعية، وهي تُعتبَر إلى حد ما نسخة أجدادنا القدماء من العلم، وتنتقل هذه الأساطير عمومًا من جيل إلى الجيل الذى يليه.

The word myth actually comes from the Greek 'mythos' meaning 'word of mouth'. Myths were shared among different groups of people throughout the world, and some became a big part of their community.

تأتي كلمة أسطورة في الواقع من الكلمة اليونانية "mythos" التي تعني "كلمة الفم"، ولقد تم تبادل الأساطير فيما بين الجماعات المختلفة من الناس في جميع أنحاء العالم، وأصبح بعضها جزءًا كبيرًا من مجتمعهم.

• **legends**

Legends are stories that people made up. However, legends are usually about real-life people and what they did. Generally, although the person really did exist the events never happened like they did in the story. The facts are exaggerated to make the story more interesting and exciting.

الأساطير هى قصص اختلقها الناس، ومع ذلك عادة ما تدور الأساطير حول أشخاص حقيقيين وما فعلوه، وبشكل عام، وعلى الرغم من أن الشخص موجود بالفعل، إلا أن الأحداث لم تقع أبدًا كما وقعت في القصة. والحقائق مبالغ فيها لجعل القصة أكثر تشويقًا وإثارة.

• **Fables** الحكايات الرمزية

Fables are also stories that are passed down from one generation to the next. However, their overall purpose is to teach a lesson or a 'moral'. They are often about animals, plants or forces of nature.

الحكايات الرمزية هي قصص تنتقل من جيل إلى جيل. ومع ذلك، فإن الغرض العام منها هو تعليم درس مُستفاد "أخلاقي"، وغالبًا ما تكون عن الحيوانات أو النباتات أو قوى الطبيعة.

be based (on - in)

• **be based in** مقره في - يقع في

- Our office is based in 157 Ramses Street, Cairo.

• **be based on** قائم على - يستند إلى - فكرته الرئيسية هي

- This film was based on a novel by Charles Dickens.

loudly - aloud

• **loudly = in a loud voice (adv)** بصوتٍ عالٍ

- He shouted at the child loudly, which frightened her.

= He shouted at the child in a loud voice, which frightened her.

• **aloud = out loud (adv)** بصوت مسموع

- Something made him laugh aloud in the meeting, which was very embarrassing مُحرج.

from now on/from then on

• **from now on** من الآن فصاعداً (تُستخدم في سياق مضارع أو مستقبل)

- You are always making mistakes. From now on, you will be punished for anything wrong you do.

• **from then on** منذ ذلك الحين (تُستخدم في سياق ماضي وأحياناً مضارع تام)

- I left university in 1998. From then on, I haven't seen Mr Bahaa.

Mini Test 5 Clear the Confusion

• **C Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. My business is based ..... Aswan.
   a. on b. in c. to d. from
2. His objection is based ..... his busy schedule.
   a. on b. in c. to d. from
3. You need to speak quite ..... for the people at the back.
   a. aloud b. a loud c. loudly d. a & b

4. I don't think anybody has heard me while I was thinking ..... . The nearest person was three metres away.
a. aloud b. a loud c. loudly d. a & b

5. We moved to Aswan in 2002. ..... , I haven't seen my friend Magdy.
a. From now b. From now on c. From on d. From then on

6. A ..... is a traditional short story that teaches a moral lesson, especially a story about animals.
a. myth b. legend c. fable d. a & b

7. A ..... is an old well-known story, often about brave people, adventures, or magical events.
a. myth b. legend c. fable d. a & b

8. A ..... is an ancient story, especially one invented in order to explain natural or historical events.
a. myth b. legend c. fable d. a & b

9 Master your Key Vocabulary كل ما يخص المفردات

boast

• **boast (that/about/of)(v)** يتباهى - يتفاخر (بـ)
- He boasts that he is the best footballer ever.
- She boasts of/about her uncle who is a famous scientist.

• **boast (v)** يضم - يحتوي علي (لا يُستخدم في أزمنة مستمرة بهذا المعنى)
- My team boasts the best players in the world.

• **boast (n)** مصدر فخر
- My boast is that I have always depended on myself.

• **boaster (n)** مُتفاخر - مُتباهي
- You're being a boaster. Stop talking about your achievements all the time.

• **boastful (adj)** مُتفاخر - مُتكبّر ≠ modest/humble متواضع
- When he got angry, he started to be boastful.

• **boastfulness (n)** التفاخُر - التكبُّر
- I can't stand his boastfulness.

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

chop

• **chop = chop up (v)** يقطع - يخرّط
- I want you to chop the meat.

• **chop ... into (v)** يقطع - يخرّط ... إلي مكعبات
- I want you to chop the meat into very small cubes.

• **chop ... down (phr. v)** يقطع شجرة
- I am completely against chopping this tree down.

• **chop ... off (phr. v)** يزيل بالقطع
- The gardener chopped some branches off.

• **chopper (n)** ساطور
- Butchers use heavy choppers to cut the meat.

• **choppers (n)** أسنان
- Her row of bright white choppers dominates her face.

cheer

• **cheer (up) (v)** يُهلِّل - يبتهج
- The fans cheered when Salah started to warm up.

• **cheer (up) (v)** يُرفِّه عن- يُبهِج
- The last-minute goal cheered fans.

• **cheer (n)** صيحة فَرَح
- We gave a cheer to the player who won man of the match.

• **cheering (adj)** مُفرِح- مُبهِج
- Thanks to your cheering news, I forgot all about my worries.

• **cheerful (adj)** سعيد- مبتهج
- She is a cheerful person whose smile always illuminates her face.

fed up (with)

• **fed up (v)** ضَجِر-شاعر بالملل
- I am exhausted and a bit fed up.

• **fed up (with) (v)** ضَجِر-فاض به الكيل (من)
- Hurry up, Rodayna! We are fed up with waiting.

flood

يغمر بالمياه - تَغمُره المياه

• flood (v)
- Before we built the High Dam, the River Nile used to flood all agricultural land every year.
- Before we built the High Dam, all agricultural land flooded with the Nile water every year.

يفيض/يطغي (النهر)

• flood (v)
- The river floods in the rainy season.

يجتاح/يتدفق (يصل إلي مكان بأعداد كبيرة)

• **flood = pour/flow (v)**
- The refugees اللاجئون who were escaping the war flooded across the borders.الحدود

يُغرِق/يملأ بـ

• **flood ... with (v)**
- China has flooded the world with cheap goods.

يغمر - ينتاب

• **flood ... over/back (v)**
- Happiness flooded over my mother when she knew I had come first.

فيضان

• **flood (n)**
- The high floods destroyed the village's mud-brick houses.

اجتياح/تَدَفُّق (الوصول إلي مكان بأعداد كبير)

• **flood (n)**
- The flood of refugees اللاجئون across the borders can't be controlled.

في حالة فيضان

• **in flood (n)**
- You should avoid swimming in the river when it is in flood.

الفيضان

• **flooding (n)**
- The flooding of rivers is partly good and partly bad.

steady

ثابت - مستقر علي وتيرة واحدة

• **steady (adj)**
- Ahmed is making a steady progress at school.
- Hold the camera steadily while taking the shot

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

• **hold/remain steady** يبقى ثابتاً
- My blood pressure remained steady at 140/90.

• **steady job/work / income** وظيفة/عمل/دَخْل ثابت
- My father has a steady income from his work as a teacher.

• **steady(ied) (v)** يصبح ثابتاً - يستقر
- The prices of gold have steadied after a week of losses. خسائر

• **steady(ied) (v)** يهدأ - يُهدِّئ
- It is said that lemon juice helps you steady your nerves. أعصاب

• **steadiness (n)** ثبات - استقرار على وتيرة واحدة
- The steadiness of his income makes life easier for him.

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

تنويه: التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

• **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. Omar's ..... is that he is a self-made man.
   a. pace b. myth c. fable d. boast
2. I am taking the underground to work. I can't ..... the heavy traffic.
   a. brave b. boast c. chop d. defend
3. The villages by the River Nile ..... regularly before Egypt built the High Dam.
   a. has flooded b. is flooded c. flooded d. flood
4. I took a deep breath to ..... my nerves.
   a. steady b. boast c. chop d. stretch
5. This table ..... all the irregular verbs in English.
   a. consists b. boasts c. feeds up d. chops

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	d	- كلمة (boast) هنا اسم يعني (مصدر للفخر/مدعاة للفخر)
2.	a	- كلمة (brave) هنا فعل يعني (يتحدى / يتحمّل)
3.	c	- الفعل (flooded) هنا يعني (غمرتها المياه) وباقي الاختيارات في المضارع والسياق ماضي
4.	a	- كلمة (steady) هنا فعل يعني (يُهدِّئ)
5.	b	- الفعل (boasts) هنا يعني (يتضمن/يشتمل على)

Part III Reading & Listening

Tapescript
نصوص استماع الوحدة

1 Reading Texts

What is the difference between a myth, a legend and a fable? (SB page 62)

Myths[1] are stories that were made up[2] by people who wanted to explain how our world works, such as how natural events occurred[3]. They are a bit like our ancient ancestor's version[4] of science. These myths are generally[5] passed on[6] from one generation[7] to the next.

The word myth actually[8] comes from the Greek 'mythos' meaning 'word of mouth'. Myths were shared among different groups of people throughout[9] the world, and some became a big part of their community[10].

Legends[11] are also stories that people made up. However, legends are usually about real-life[12] people and what they did. Generally, although the person really did exist[13] the events[14] never happened like they did in the story. The facts are exaggerated[15] to make the story more interesting and exciting.

Fables[16] are also stories that are passed down[17] from one generation to the next. However, their overall[18] purpose[19] is to teach a lesson or 'moral'. They are often about animals, plants or forces[20] of nature.

Check Vocabulary

(1) أساطير
(2) يؤلّف/يختلق
(3) يَحْدُث
(4) نُسخة
(5) بصفة عامة
(6) ينتقل/يتم توارثه
(7) جيل
(8) في الواقع
(9) في كل أرجاء - طوال
(10) المجتمع
(11) أساطير / خرافات
(12) حقيقي - واقعي
(13) يوجد
(14) أحداث
(15) يبالغ في
(16) الحكايات الرمزية
(17) ينتقل/يتم توارثه
(18) إجماليّ/ كُلّيّ
(19) غرض
(20) قوي

The hare and the tortoise (SB page 63)



All the animals were fed up with[1] Hare boasting[2] about how fast he could run. One day, Slow and Steady the tortoise said, "I can challenge[3] you to a race[4] now. It was a hot day. All the animals had gathered[5] to watch. Hare ran along the road for a while[6], then paused[7] and looked round. He said, "I'm getting bored[8]". He looked back[9] at Slow and Steady and shouted, 'You'll never win this race when you are walking at your slow pace[10]'.

Check Vocabulary

(1) يسأم/يمل من
(2) يتفاخر
(3) يتحدّى
(4) سباق
(5) يتجمع/يحتشد
(6) فترة
(7) يتوقف
(8) يملّ
(9) ينظر للخلف
(10) خطوة/وتيرة

Hare stretched out(11) in the sun to have a little sleep thinking, "There is plenty(12) of time to relax(13)". While Hare was sleeping, Slow and Steady kept walking. He never stopped until he came to the finish line. The animals cheered(14) loudly for the tortoise. Hare woke up and saw the tortoise crossing the finishing line.

(11) يتمدد
(12) كثير
(13) يسترخي
(14) يُهَلِّل

Isis and Osiris

(SB page 63)



Osiris was the king of Egypt. He had a wife called Isis and a son called Horus. Osiris's brother, Seth, was very jealous(1). He said, "I want to be king himself". In a fit of anger(2), he killed his brother Osiris, turned(3), him into little pieces and threw him into the Nile. Isis managed to find the pieces and she brought them to her good friend Anubis, who was very clever. He said, "I could put the pieces back together again, but I don't have the power(4) to bring him back to life.

When Osiris' grandfather Ra found out(5) what happened, he was furious. He said, "I'm going to give Osiris a new job." He made Osiris the god of the dead(6). Finally, Osiris's son Horus defeated(7) Seth and became the ruler(8) of Egypt. From then on, Isis travels to the banks(9) of the Nile every year, and remembers her husband, crying tears(10) into the Nile. This is why the Nile rises(11) each year, and sometimes floods(12).

Check Vocabulary

(1) حاسد
(2) في نوبة غضب
(3) يحول
(4) القوة
(5) يكتشف
(6) المَوْتَى
(7) يهزم
(8) حاكم
(9) ضِفّة النهر
(10) دموع
(11) يرتفع
(12) يفيض

The legend of Setanta

(WB page 38)

A long time ago, a brave knight(1) had a son who was called Setanta. As he was growing up, he loved to stretch out and listen to his father boast about the different adventures(2) he had had. While he was listening to these stories, they would cheer(3) and laugh.

Check Vocabulary

(1) فارس
(2) مغامرات
(3) يُهلِّل - يبتهج

One story was about a group of knights called the Red Knights who were the bravest knights in the country. "I really want to join them!" Setanta thought. He practised hard, even though he was still a young boy, and he had developed many new skills which helped him win hunting and sporting contests(4). He wanted to join the Red Knights so much that one night he left to find them. He had to walk for a long time and it was dangerous. However, as he had learnt how to defend(5) himself, he thought, "If, I keep on(6) walking at a steady(7) pace, I won't face many problems."

Finally, he arrived at the castle(8) of the Red Knights. But they told him "You are too young to join us". And as he was leaving the castle, he was attacked by a very large and fierce(9) dog. The big dog was not a problem for him and when the Knights saw what had happened they invited Setanta to be in charge(10) of protecting the castle.

(4) منافسة
(5) يدافع عن
(6) يستمر في
(7) ثابت/رصين
(8) قلعة
(9) عنيف/شرس
(10) مسئول

Legend of King Arthur

(SB page 64)



Have you ever heard of the legend of king Arthur? King Arthur is a legendary(1) king in ancient Britain. The story of King Arthur is based partly(2) on myth and partly on fact. Many people think King Arthur did exist and there are many ideas about who he was, but there isn't enough evidence(3) to prove(4) if any of them is correct.

In ancient times, stories about King Arthur were told aloud(5). Later, in the Middle Ages(6), authors(7) began to write the stories down. The first story was written by Geoffrey of Monmouth in the 12th century book History of the Kings of Britain. The stories about King Arthur usually centre(8) around a few main characters: King Arthur, Queen Guinevere, and the Knights of the Round Table who helped King Arthur fight(9) for good causes and protect the weak. Knights were fighters in Europe during the Middle Ages. They rode horses and carried swords, and wore heavy armour(10).

Check Vocabulary

(1) أسطوري
(2) جزئياً
(3) دليل
(4) يُثبت/يُبرهن
(5) بصوت مسموع
(6) العصور الوسطي
(7) مؤلفين
(8) يتمركز
(9) يقاتل/يحارب
(10) درع

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

Knights also followed a code(11) of behaviour(12) called chivalry(13). This asked knights to be brave(14), humble(15), honourable(16), generous (17) and polite, especially to women. One of the greatest knights was Sir Lancelot, who was such a brave knight that he defeated(18) many monsters(19) and dragons(20).

The reader might ask, "How has King Arthur become such a legend ?" According to(21) one story, a wise old man called Merlin put a sword in a stone, and said that whoever pulled the sword out would be the king of England. Arthur pulled the sword out and that's how he became king. He was only fifteen years old and many people said he was too young to be king, so they refused to obey(22) him.

A French poet called Chretien de Troyes wrote five stories about King Arthur in the 1100s. He introduced the 'Holy(23) Grail' into the legend, which was a cup that was so powerful that it could bring eternal(24) youth(25) and happiness. In the 1400s, an English writer, Sir Thomas Malory, wrote The Death of Arthur, which became famous, and in the 1900s, another English writer, T. H. White, wrote four novels based on Malory's books. There were also two very well-known films made about King Arthur in the 1960s; a musical(26) called Camelot, and The Sword in the Stone, a Walt Disney film.

(11) دستور - مُدوَّنة
(12) سلوك
(13) نبيلة فروسية/مُروءة
(14) شجاع
(15) متواضع
(16) شريف/مُبجَّل
(17) كريم
(18) يَهزم
(19) وُحوش
(20) تنين
(21) طبقاً لـ/حَسَب
(22) يُطيع
(23) مُقدَّس
(24) أزلي/أبدي
(25) الشباب
(26) فيلم غنائي

Ziad Sabri's daily blog

(WB page 39)

It's debatable(1) whether a person from the present can also be a legend. Personally(2), if I had to choose someone today, I'd consider(3) Mohamed Salah to be a legend. He's an honourable Egyptian footballer and he is also so generous that he has helped lots of people in his country. Although he is famous, he is such a humble(4) person and he has never forgotten his roots. "I am lucky enough to be able to help as many people as possible" he says, "but I wish I had more time in the day to help more people. "To reach as many people as possible(5), he has created a charity(6) and helped with specific(7) projects too.



Check Vocabulary

(1) مُثير للجَدَل
(2) شخصياً
(3) يعتبر
(4) متواضع
(5) قدر الإمكان
(6) جمعية خيرية - عمل خيري
(7) مُحدَّد

For example, in an emergency[8], when he saw there were not enough ambulances[9] to bring people to hospital, he paid for a new ambulance centre[10] in Gharbia. Also, he realised that girls in Nagrig had to walk too far to go to school every day so he helped pay[11] for a girl's school in Nagrig. He also donated[12] 50 million Egyptian pounds to the National Cancer Association. He is well known in Egypt for his charity work and we call him 'the happiness maker' and that's why for me Mohamed Salah is a legend.

(8) حالة طوارئ
(9) عربات إسعاف
(10) مركز
(11) يدفع مال
(12) يتبرع بـ

2 Video Script

(SB page 65)

Sherwood Forest in Nottinghamshire, England is one of the most famous woodlands in the UK. It's famous because of the legend of Robin Hood, an outlaw[1] who lived in the forest during the 12th century, with a group of helpers called his 'Merry Men'. An outlaw is someone who breaks the law[2] and wants to live outside of society because they want to escape legal punishment[3].

He appears in story books dressed in[4] green, carrying a bow[5] and arrow[6]. According to legend, he stole from the rich to give to the poor. His adventures, which are linked with[7] the forest, have been told many times through songs, books and films.

Many people visit the Forest to see the Majour Oak, the biggest Oak Tree in Britain, where Robin Hood used to hide. used to hide. The tree is thought to be between 800 and 1000 years old.

The forest attracts around 350,000 visitors every year, many inspired to visit by the tales of Robin Hood. You can read about his adventures in the Visitor Centre, which also provides information about the history of the forest.

Check Vocabulary
(1) مجرم/ خارج عن القانون
(2) يخالف القانون
(3) يفلت من العقاب القانونى
(4) مرتدى
(5) قوس
(6) سهم
(7) مرتبط بـ

Every year, there is a Robin Hood Festival which goes on for a whole week, with a daily programme of **pony rides**(8) and **archery lessons**(9), the art of shooting arrows with a bow. You'll also find food and **drink** **stalls**(10), **demonstrations**(11) and **medieval**(12) music, and lots of other activities to **immerse**(13) you in the legends of Sherwood.

ركوب المهر (الفرس) (8)
دروس فى الرماية (9)
أكشاك المشروبات (10)
مسيرات استعراضية (11)
متعلق بالقرون الوسطى (12)
يغمر / ينغمس (13)

Part IV Language

Reported Statement الجملة الخبرية فى الكلام غير المباشر

❶ تتكون الجملة الخبرية في الكلام غير المباشر من :

نص الكلام غير المباشر ⟹ that (يمكن حذفها) + ⟹ فعل إبلاغ + ⟹ مُبَلِّغ / مُتحدِّث +

Sama said that her father worked in a secondary school.

❷ تبدأ جملة الكلام غير المباشر بالمُبَلِّغ (المتحدث) :

- Mr Omar said that he was travelling to Cairo the next day.

❸ يوضع فعل الإبلاغ بعد المُبَلِّغ، وهناك نوعان من أفعال الإبلاغ :

أ. أفعال إبلاغ لابد أن يأتي بعدها المُخَاطَب مثل :

persuaded / convinced أقنع - **reminded** ذَكَّر - **assured** أكد - **told** أخبر/ قال لـ
warned حَذَّر + obj. المُخَاطَب.....

والمُخَاطَب يكون اسم أو ضمير مفعول (me – him – her – it – you – us – them) :

- Mohammed told Omar that he wanted to go swimming.
- Nada reminded me that we had to get up early the day after.

ب. أفعال قول لا يأتي بعدها المُخَاطَب مثل :

remarked أبدي ملاحظة – **shouted** صاح - **admitted** أقر - **said** قال
explained أوضح - **replied** رد – **answered** أجاب - **reported** أبلغ / ذكر
whispered همس – **cried** هتف – **complained** قال شاكياً ...

- Yara said that her mother was very busy.
- The worker complained that the weather had been too hot the day before.

في الكلام غير المباشر: (".....") ٤ لا تُستخدم علامات التنصيص

- "I want to buy a new tablet", said Rodayna. (مباشر)
- Rodayna said that she wanted to buy a new tablet. (غير مباشر)

٥ يمكن أن تُستخدم (that) أو تُحذَف مع الفعل (say) ويُفضَّل وجودها بعد أفعال الإبلاغ الأخرى:

- Leen said (that) she could help me.
- Bassem explained that he had an important meeting.

Mini Test 1 Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Rania ..... me that I should buy mom a present.
   a. said b. told c. reminded d. b & c
2. Mr Ayman ..... that Mostafa was polite.
   a. said b. told c. reminded d. b & c
3. I ..... Ahmed should call his mother.
   a. said b. told c. reminded d. b & c
4. Leen said ..... I didn't need to help her.
   a. that b. what c. no word d. a & c

٦ تتحول الضمائر حسب المتكلم والمُخَاطب:

- Karim said, "My mother will give me a nice present". (مباشر)
- Karim said that his mother would give him a nice present. (غير مباشر)
- Mariam said, "My mother will give me a nice present". (مباشر)
- Mariam said that her mother would give her a nice present. (غير مباشر)

ويمكن الاستعانة بالجدول التالي للمساعدة في فهم تحويلات الضمائر حسب السياق:

مباشر	غير مباشر	مباشر	غير مباشر
I	he / she / you / I	mine	his / hers / yours / mine
we	they / we	ours	theirs / ours
me	him / her / you / me	you (فاعل)	I / he / she / they / we / you
us	them / us	you (مفعول)	me / him / her / them / us
my	his / her / your / my	your	my/ his / her / their / our
our	their / our	yours	mine/ his / hers / theirs / ours / yours

Mini Test 2 Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Noha said that ..... was in grade three secondary.
   a. I b. she c. her d. we
2. I told Ashraf that house was ..... .
   a. he b. my c. him d. mine
3. "I'd like to borrow your bike."
   - Ayman said that he would like to borrow ..... bike.
   a. his b. her c. my d. mine
4. "The red book is not yours, Rodayna."
   - Ahmed told Rodayna the red book was not ..... .
   a. hers b. his c. mine d. ours
5. "We are leaving now."
   - Omar said ..... were leaving then.
   a. she b. him c. I d. they
6. "You refused to help me."
   - Mum said that ..... had refused to help her.
   a. you b. I c. me d. my

تختلف بعض ظروف الزمان والمكان في الكلام غير المباشر عن الكلام المباشر:

- "These chairs will be moved here tomorrow", said Nada. (مباشر)
- Nada said that those chairs would be moved there the following day. (غير مباشر)
- "I haven't finished this report yet", explained Youssef. (مباشر)
- Youssef explained that he hadn't finished that report by then. (غير مباشر)

يحتوي الجدول التالي على أهم تحويلات الظروف (تساعدك علي تحديد الزمن في أسئلة الاختياري):

Direct	Reported	Direct	Reported
now	then / at that time	tonight	that night
this	that	today	that day
these	those	yet	by then
here	there	the day before yesterday	two days before
ago	before / earlier	the day after tomorrow	in two days' time

last week	the week before the previous week	next week	the week after the following week
yesterday	the day before the previous day	tomorrow	the day after the following day

Mini Test 3 — Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. "I am doing my homework now.", said Ali
   Ali said that he was doing his homework ..... .
   a. now b. today c. then d. tonight
2. Last Monday, Amira said she would visit us ..... .
   a. today b. tonight c. the day before d. the day after
3. She said that she hadn't called her uncle two weeks ..... .
   a. before b. after c. earlier d. a & c
4. Omar said that he didn't go ..... very often.
   a. here b. there c. her d. their
5. Omar said that he didn't come ..... very often.
   a. here b. there c. her d. their

٨ تتحول الأزمنة للأبعد – أي يتحول كل زمن إلي الزمن المقابل له في الماضي:

- "My wife likes green salad", said Magdi. (مباشر- مضارع بسيط)
  Magdi said that his wife liked green salad. (غير مباشر- ماضي بسيط)
- My cousin said, "I am watching an action film". (مباشر- مضارع مستمر)
  My cousin said that she was watching an action film. (غير مباشر- ماضي مستمر)

ويحتوي الجدول التالي علي ملخص تحويلات الأزمنة:

Direct مباشر	Reported غير مباشر
play / plays (مضارع بسيط)	played (ماضي بسيط)
played (ماضي بسيط)	had played / played (ماضي تام / بسيط)
am / is / are	was / were
was / were (فعل أساسى)	was / were / had been
have / has (فعل أساسى)	had

had	had / had had
can / will / may	could / would / might
shall	should / would
must	must / had to / would have to
needn't	didn't have to / wouldn't have to

لاحظ الأزمنة فى الجمل التالية :

- He explained that he ate fish on Friday. (NOT: eats)
- She said (that) she was having lunch. (NOT: is having)
- Rody said that she had done the shopping. (NOT: has done)
- Bassem said that they had been living there for five years. (NOT: have been)
- He said that he had met his boss. (NOT: has met)
- I told Ali that he had to take his medicine on time. (NOT: must take)
- I promised Laila that I would help her. (NOT: will help)

يمكن أن يبقي الماضي البسيط كما هو بشرط الا يؤدي ذلك إلي غموض في المعني :

- He said that he arrived / had arrived on Friday.

لاحظ تحويلات الفعل الناقص (must) فى الكلام غير المباشر :

أ. تبقى (must) كما هى عند التعبير عن القوانين :

- "Drivers must hold a driving licence ", said Omar. (مباشر)
- Omar said that drivers must hold a driving licence. (غير مباشر)

ب. تتحول (must) إلى (had to) اذا كانت تدل على ضرورة فى المضارع :

- "You must call the manager now, Ali", said Aya. (مباشر)
- Aya told Ali that he had to call the manager then. (غير مباشر)

ج. تتحول (must) إلى (would have to) اذا كانت تدل على ضرورة فى المستقبل :

- "I must return home next month", said Tom. (مباشر)
- Tom said that he would have to return home the following month. (غير مباشر)

Mini Test 4 — Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Rami promised me that he ..... buy me a bike the following week.
   a. can

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

2. "I'm exhausted," said Eman.
- Eman said that she ..... exhausted.
a. is b. would be c. will be d. was

3. We told him that we ..... after school the day before.
a. played b. had played
c. was played d. had been played

4. "I had lunch outdoors." – My father said he ..... lunch outdoors.
a. had b. had had c. was had d. a & b

5. "I must leave now." - He said that he ..... leave then.
a. had to b. must c. would have to d. will have to

6. "I must leave tomorrow." - He said that he ..... the following day.
a. had to b. must c. would have to d. will have to

7. "I must leave now." - He said that he ..... leave now.
a. had to b. must c. would have to d. will have to

8. "I must leave tomorrow." - He said that he ..... leave tomorrow.
a. had to b. must c. will have to d. b&c

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

١ لا يوجد تحويل لأزمنة الماضي التام والتام المستمر :

- "I had returned home by midday", said Ahmed. (مباشر- ماضي تام)
- Ahmed said that he had returned home by midday. (غير مباشر- ماضي تام)

٢ لا يوجد تحويل لصيغة الماضي من الأفعال الناقصة:

- would – could – might – should – would rather – had better

- "You should study hard, Samar", said mum. (مباشر)
- Mum told Samar that she should study hard. (غير مباشر)

٣ يبقي الماضي البسيط كما هو بعد التعبيرات التالية:

- If – would rather – I wish – It is time ...

- "It is time you went home, Tarek ", said Uncle Yahia. (مباشر)
- Uncle Yahia told Tarek that it was time he went home. (غير مباشر)

٤ تبقي (used to) الدالة علي العادة دون تحويل:

- She said, "I used to get up late".
- She said that she used to get up late. (NOT: had used)

٥ من الأفضل ألّا يتغير الزمن إذا كانت الجملة تعبر عن حقيقة:

- "The Nile is the longest river in the world," said the teacher. (مباشر)
- The teacher told us that the Nile is the longest river in the world. (غير مباشر)

٦ لا تتغير ظروف الزمان والمكان والأزمنة إذا كان المدي الزمني أو المكان لم يتغير:

- Ten minutes ago, Aya said to me, "I will call you next Friday".
- Ten minutes ago, Aya told me that she will call me next Friday.

في المثال السابق، أوضح وجود التعبير (ten minutes ago) أن الجمعة القادمة لم تأت بعد، فلم يتغير ظرف الزمان (next Friday) ولا الزمن (will call).

٧ لا تتغير الأزمنة إذا كانت الجملة قيلت منذ فترة وجيزة ويدل على ذلك تعبيرات مثل:

(said a moment ago / said a minute ago / said a short time ago / said just now / .... etc.)

- "We will go out soon", Areej said a moment ago.
- A moment ago, Areej said that they will go out soon.

٨ لا تتغير الأزمنة إذا كان فعل الإبلاغ في المضارع أو المستقبل:

-Walid says to me, "My parents work hard."
-Walid tells me that his parents work hard.

٩ تُحذف عبارات الموافقة أو الاتفاق مثل (Yes / Sure/ Of course ...) ويستخدم فعل إبلاغ يدل علي الموافقة أو الاتفاق مثل:

- **agreed / approved / answered in affirmative** .... etc.
- "Yes, I have received your email," said Sama. (مباشر)
- Sama agreed that she had received my email. (غير مباشر)

١٠ تُحذف عبارات الرفض أو عدم الاتفاق مثل (No / Sorry...) ويستخدم فعل إبلاغ يدل علي الرفض أو عدم الاتفاق مثل:

- **denied / disapproved / answered in negative** .... etc.
- "No, I didn't see Ali today," said Ahmed. (مباشر)
- Ahmed denied that had seen Ali that day. (غير مباشر)

Mini Test 5 Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Omar said a moment ago that he'll see the dentist ..... .
   a. the next day
   b. that day
   c. tomorrow
   d. the following day

2. Ahmed ..... that he had stolen my biscuits, but I am sure he did it.
a. agreed b. approved c. denied d. answered

3. "It is time we went home." - He said it was time they ..... home
a. went b. had gone c. was gone d. had been gone

4. "As, a child, I used to like cartoons."
- He said that he ..... to like cartoons as a child.
a. had used b. used c. was used d. had been used

5. "Lions eat meat." - She said that lions ..... meat.
a. eat b. are eating c. had eaten d. were eaten

6. "Cairo is the largest city in Africa."
- He said that Cairo ..... the largest city in Africa.
a. is b. was c. had been d. a & b

7. "I will call you tomorrow."
- Ten minutes ago, I told Sami that I ..... him tomorrow.
a. would call b. called c. will call d. had called

8. Esraa says she ..... tired. Will you let her go home?
a. is b. was c. had been d. have been

Multiple choice Notes ملاحظات تفيد فى حل أسئلة الاختيار من متعدد

1 التعبيرات الزمنية التالية في جمل الكلام غير المباشر تدل علي أن الاختيار الصحيح ماضي تام:

- the (day / week / ...) before - the previous (day / week / ...)

- the last (day / week / ...) - by then - before

- The old man said that he ..... abroad by then.
a. hasn't travelled b. didn't travel c. hadn't travelled d. wasn't travelling

2 لاحظ التعبيرات الزمنية التالية :

- the (day / week / ...) after - the following (day / week / ...)

- the next (day / week / ...)

تدل هذه التعبيرات في جمل الكلام غير المباشر أن الإختيار الصحيح قد يكون:

- would+inf. ... - (was / were + inf. + ing) - (was / were + going to + inf.)

- Amir said that he ..... us the following Friday.
a. will visit b. had visited c. was visiting d. is going to visit

تدل [then/at that time (moment)] في جمل الكلام غير المباشر تدل علي أن الاختيار الصحيح ماضي مستمر:

- Reham said that she ..... the housework then.
a. is doing b. was doing c. would do d. had done

General Exercise On Language Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

1 Getting Started

1. She informed me that my friend Rami ..... a terrible accident while he was driving to work. (LM)
a. has had b. had c. will be having d. is having
2. I told her that she ..... a bad mistake and that she should be cautious later on. (LM)
a. had made b. is making c. would make d. has made
3. Gaber ..... he was ready for the interview. (LM)
a. told b. said c. wondered d. informed
4. Tarek complained that the service at that hotel ..... bad. (LM)
a. has been b. is c. was d. would be
5. The interviewer said that they would inform me of the result of the interview ..... . (LM)
a. next week b. last week
c. the following week d. the week before
6. Ali told me that he ..... his lesson at that moment. (LM)
a. was revising b. has been revising
c. will revise d. was revised
7. The general manager declared that the company ..... efficient and punctual workers the next month. (LM)
a. had promoted b .is promoting
c. is going to promote d. was going to promote
8. The social studies teacher told us that Russia ..... the world's largest country by landmass. (LM)
a. is being b. is c. has been d. will be
9. Yesterday's newspaper said that he ..... a three - year contract.
a. had signed b. would be signed
c. is signing d. has signed

10. He said that it was raining ..... .
a. here b. then c. now d. tomorrow

11. Dalia ..... me that she needs my help.
a. says b. told c. said d. tells

12. My parents promised me that they ..... me a laptop if I succeeded.
a. might buy b. will buy c. buy d. have bought (نموذج الوزارة الرابع ٢٠٢٠)

13. He said that he ..... be able to sleep until he had finished the story.
a. won't b. didn't c. hasn't d. wouldn't (نموذج الوزارة ٢٠١٥)

14. He wondered how many goals they had scored ..... week.
a. this b. that c. the d. it

15. The air hostess asked if we could fasten ..... seat belts.
a. his b. her c. our d. ours

16. He said the lesson usually ..... at half-past nine.
a. has started b. started c. is starting d. start

17. Mustafa ..... that he had already written that paragraph four times.
a. advised b. complained c. told d. wondered

18. Sally ..... everyone that her father had bought a new car.
a. wanted to know b. asked
c. said d. told

19. Mohammed said, "I've just bought a flat."
- Mohammed said that he ..... bought a flat.
a. have just b. had just
c. just d. has just

20. Ahmed said, "I am very upset." - Ahmed said that ..... very upset.
a. he was b. I was c. he had been d. he would be

2 Special Cases

21. I was told that a secondary school ..... in the neighbouring village. (LM)
a. has built b. has been built c. had been built d. had built

22. My father told me that we ..... to the club until we finished our homework. (LM)
a. don't go b. won't go c. hadn't gone d. wouldn't go

23. Samir says that he ..... the summer holiday in Hurghada when he has finished exams. (LM)
a. has spent b. will spend c. would spend d. had spent

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

10. He said that it was raining ..... .
a. here b. then c. now d. tomorrow

11. Dalia ..... me that she needs my help.
a. says b. told c. said d. tells

12. My parents promised me that they ..... me a laptop if I succeeded.
a. might buy b. will buy c. buy d. have bought (نموذج الوزارة الرابع ٢٠١٦)

13. He said that he ..... be able to sleep until he had finished the story.
a. won't b. didn't c. hasn't d. wouldn't (نموذج الوزارة ٢٠١٥)

14. He wondered how many goals they had scored ..... week.
a. this b. that c. the d. it

15. The air hostess asked if we could fasten ..... seat belts.
a. his b. her c. our d. ours

16. He said the lesson usually ..... at half-past nine.
a. has started b. started c. is starting d. start

17. Mustafa ..... that he had already written that paragraph four times.
a. advised b. complained c. told d. wondered

18. Sally ..... everyone that her father had bought a new car.
a. wanted to know b. asked
c. said d. told

19. Mohammed said, "I've just bought a flat."
- Mohammed said that he ..... bought a flat.
a. have just b. had just
c. just d. has just

20. Ahmed said, "I am very upset." - Ahmed said that ..... very upset.
a. he was b. I was c. he had been d. he would be

2 Special Cases

21. I was told that a secondary school ..... in the neighbouring village. (LM)
a. has built b. has been built c. had been built d. had built

22. My father told me that we ..... to the club until we finished our homework. (LM)
a. don't go b. won't go c. hadn't gone d. wouldn't go

23. Samir says that he ..... the summer holiday in Hurghada when he has finished exams. (LM)
a. has spent b. will spend c. would spend d. had spent

24. Tom said that he ..... about that accident before he returned home. (I.M)
a. hadn't told b. isn't told c. hadn't been told d. won't tell

25. 'Don't park here; it is forbidden". - The policeman said we ..... park there. (I.M)
a. should b. shouldn't c. mustn't d. must

26. The teacher told us that the earth ..... round the sun. (السودان ٢٠١٩)
a. go b. went c. goes d. going

27. Mona promised that she..... home tomorrow. (دور أول ٢٠١١)
a. be b. would have been
c. will have been d. will be

28. Monera has just told Amira that they ..... to their friend's wedding tonight. (دور ثان ٢٠١١)
a. would go b. have gone c. were going d. are going

29. He said a moment ago that he .....his car last month. (الموحد الوزارة السادس ٢٠١٦)
a. sold b. had sold c. would sold d. did sell

30. He said just now that he ..... a new story. (السودان ٢٠١٥)
a. is reading b. was reading c. had read d. was read

31. "It's rather late and it's time for you to go to sleep."
- The mother ..... that the children are still awake. (دور أول ٢٠١٢)
a. remembered b. inquired c. promised d. complained

32. At the wedding party yesterday, the bride said .....the happiest day of her life. (دور أول ٢٠١٤ نظام حديث)
a. today was b. that day was c. yesterday had d. that day had

33. The hostess inquires if we ..... coffee.
a. liked b. had liked c. like d. likes

34. Basma has just remarked that she ..... yet.
a. decided b. had decided c. has decided d. hasn't decided

35. Amr says he ..... in a bank in the city centre. He enjoys his job.
a. had worked b. worked c. works d. would work

3 Check your understanding

36. "You refused to help me, Omar." The pronoun 'me' refers to .....
a. he b. Omar c. the addressee d. the speaker

37. "You refused to help me, Omar." - .....
a. Omar said that I had refused to help him.
b. Omar said that I have refused to help him.
c. I said that Omar had refused to help me.
d. I said that I had refused to help Omar.

38. He said he was travelling to Paris the following day.
- " .....", he said.
a. I was travelling to Paris yesterday.
b. I am travelling to Paris today.
c. I will travelling to Paris tomorrow.
d. I am travelling to Paris tomorrow.

39. "I might take two days off." - Maha said .....
a. she might take two days off.
b. she might have taken two days off.
c. she had taken two days off.
d. a & c

40. "I had returned home by midnight." - Ali said that he .....
a. had been returning home by midnight.
b. had returned home by midnight.
c. was returning home by midnight.
d. was being returned home by midnight.

41. " I will lend you the money you need, Esraa."
- Ahmed told Esraa that .....
a. he will lend her the money she needs.
b. she will lend him the money he needs.
c. he would lend her the money she needed.
d. he would lend her the money she needs.

42. An hour ago, Menna said, "I am going shopping next Friday."
- An hour ago, Menna said .....
a. she was going shopping next Friday.
b. she is going shopping next Friday.
c. she was going shopping the next Friday.
d. she was going shopping the following Friday.

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

Advanced Exercise on Language

توجيه: التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. She stated that giraffes ..... long necks.
   a. has b. have c. had d. are having
2. Omar ..... the public library was on fire.
   a. told b. said c. asked d. wondered
3. Ali said he ..... and help me at twelve.
   a. came b. had come c. would come d. will come
4. Mr Brown wants to know who ..... tall woman is.
   a. this b. there c. those d. these
5. Mr Taha said, "I'd rather you didn't smoke in my office."
   - Mr Taha said he would rather I ..... in his office.
   a. smokes b. smoked c. hadn't smoked d. didn't smoke

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	a	بعد (stated that) يكون فعل الجملة (inf./should+inf.)
2.	b	فعل الابلاغ (said) الأنسب للجملة لان الجملة خبرية ولا يوجد مفعول بعد الفراغ
3.	c	سياق الجملة يتطلب (would come) حيث إن الجملة تعبر عن شيء لم يحدث بعد
4.	a	فعل القول (know) مضارع لذا لا يجب أن يتحول اسم الإشارة
5.	d	بعد (would rather) يبقى الفعل فى زمن الماضى البسيط



SB pages 66 & 67 WB page

Part I Vocabulary & Definitions

تنويه • اختبر مدى اتقانك للمفردات الرئيسية فى كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.

1 Key Vocabulary

perspective (n)	مفهوم/ منظور	boring (adj)	مُمل
reflect (ed) (v)	يعكس/يُمثِّل	conclusion (n)	خاتمة - استنتاج
relate (d) (v)	يتعلق بـ - يتفهَّم	conflict (n)	صِراع
relevance (n)	ملائمة/فائدة	context (n)	سِياق النَص
relevant (adj)	ملائم	creature (n)	مَخلوق/كائن
setting (n)	إعداد/تهيئة	entertaining (adj)	مُسَلي/مُمتع
solution (n)	حَل	humour (n)	سخرية - فُكاهَة
universal (adj)	شامِل- شائع- عامّ	moral (n)	مَغْزَي أخلاقي - درس مستفاد
		mythology (n)	علم الأساطير/ أسطوريات

3 Important Vocabulary

تنويه • المفردات اللغوية باللون الأحمر هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية.

lie (n)	كذبة	actually (adv)	في الواقع
linkers (n)	روابط	approach(ed) (v)	يقترب/يدنو
literature (n)	الأدب	argument (n)	رأي/طَرْح - حجة
long-ago (n)	الماضي السحيق	balance (n)	الاتزان/التوازن
old-fashioned (adj)	قديم الطراز/عتيق	band (n)	شريط
origin (n)	أصل - منشأ	be) based on	يرتكز على
outdated (adj)	عفا عليه الزمن	beneficial (adj)	مُفيد
philosopher (n)	فيلسوف	bite - bit -bitten (v)	يعض - يقضم
primarily (adv)	في الأساس	bounce(d) (v)	يرتد/يَرُدّ (يتنطط - يُنَطِّط)
pull(ed) (v)	يجذب/يسحب	clue (n)	دليل
purpose (n)	غرض	comparison (n)	مقارنة
reality (n)	الواقع	complex (adj)	مُعقَّد
record (n)	سجل	deserve(d) (v)	يستحق - يساوى
represent(ed) (v)	يُمثِّل - يُقدِّم	dove(n)	حمامة
safety (n)	الأمان	educate(d) (v)	يُعلِّم
serve(d) (v)	يخدم/يؤدِّي	elastic (n/adj)	المطاط - مَطّاطي

SB pages 60

Part I Vocabulary & Definitions

تنويه • اختبر مدى اتقانك للمفردات الرئيسية فى كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.

1 Key Vocabulary

perspective (n)	مفهوم/ منظور	boring (adj)	مُمل
reflect (ed) (v)	يعكس/يُمثِّل	conclusion (n)	خاتمة - استنتاج
relate (d) (v)	يتعلق بـ - يتفهَّم	conflict (n)	صِراع
relevance (n)	ملائمة/فائدة	context (n)	سِياق النَص
relevant (adj)	ملائم	creature (n)	مَخلوق/كائن
setting (n)	إعداد/تهيئة	entertaining (adj)	مُسَلِّي/مُمتع
solution (n)	حَلّ	humour (n)	سخرية - فُكاهَة
universal (adj)	شامِل- شائع- عامّ	moral (n)	مَغْزَي أخلاقي - درس مستفاد
		mythology (n)	علم الأساطير/ أسطوريات

3 Important Vocabulary

تنويه • المفردات اللغوية باللون الأحمر هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية.

lie (n)	كذبة	actually (adv)	في الواقع
linkers (n)	روابط	approach (ed) (v)	يقترب/يدنو
literature (n)	الأدب	argument (n)	رأي/طَرْحْ - حجة
long-ago (n)	الماضي السحيق	balance (n)	الاتزان/التوازن
old-fashioned (adj)	قديم الطراز/عتيق	band (n)	شريط
origin (n)	أصل - منشأ	(be) based on	يرتكز على
outdated (adj)	عفا عليه الزمن	beneficial (adj)	مُفيد
philosopher (n)	فيلسوف	bite - bit -bitten (v)	يعض - يقضم
primarily (adv)	في الأساس	bounce (d) (v)	يرتد/يَرُدّ (يتنطط - يُنَطِّط)
pull (ed) (v)	يجذب/يسحب	clue (n)	دليل
purpose (n)	غرض	comparison (n)	مقارنة
reality (n)	الواقع	complex (adj)	مُعقَّد
record (n)	سجل	deserve (d) (v)	يستحق - يساوى
represent (ed) (v)	يُمثِّل - يُقدِّم	dove (n)	حمامة
safety (n)	الأمان	educate (d) (v)	يُعلِّم
serve (d) (v)	يخدم/يؤدِّي	elastic (n/adj)	المطاط - مَطّاطي

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

entertain(ed) (v)	يُسلّى - يُمتّع
escape(d) (v)	يهرب
escape (n)	مَهرَب - مَفَرّ
exist(ed) (v)	يوجد
fascinating(adj)	رائع/خلّاب
fast-paced(adj)	سريع الوتيرة
fine line (n)	خيط رفيع
float(ed) (v)	يطفو
flow(ed) (v)	يتدفق
hunter (n)	صياد برىّ
ideals (n)	مُثُل عليا
illustrate(d) (v)	يُوضّح
intend(ed) (v)	ينوي
sharp (adj)	حادّ
slip(ped) (v)	يتزلق
storytelling(n)	سرد القصص
stuck (adj)	عالق - متورّط
tale (n)	حكاية
teenager = teen (n)	مُراهق
theme (n)	موضوع
theory (n)	نظرية
timeless(adj)	خالد/أبدي
trap(ped) (n/v)	فخّ/مَصيدة - يحتجز
trick(ed) (n/v)	خدعة - يخدع
typical(adj)	نمطي/متكرر
vital(adj)	هام/حيوي

3 Definitions تعريفات

conclusion(n) خاتمة	the end or final part of something
conflict(n) صِراع	a situation in which you have to choose between two or more opposite needs, influences, etc.
creature(n) مَخلوق/كائن	anything that is living, such as an animal, fish, or insect, but not a plant
entertaining(adj) مُسَلٍّي/مُمتِع	amusing and interesting
moral(n) مَغْزَي أخلاقي	a practical عملي lesson about what to do or how to behave, which you learn from a story or from something that happens to you
mythology(n) علم الأساطير/ أسطوريات	a set of ancient myths
perspective(n) مفهوم/ منظور	a way of thinking about something, especially one which is influenced by the type of person you are or by your experiences
relate(d) (v) يتعلق بـ - يتفهّم	to feel that you understand someone's problem, situation, etc.
universal(adj) شامِل- شائع- عامّ	involving everyone in the world or in a particular group

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

Key vocabulary

1. Peace is the backbone of stability and growth all across the world, so its spread is a topic of ..... concern. *(LM)*
   a. minor b. local c. limited d. universal
2. Myths and legends tell us about the ..... of people from the past. *(LM)*
   a. perspectives b. failures c. humour d. laziness
3. Crocodiles and frogs are ..... that live on land and in water.
   a. morals b. perspectives c. conclusions d. creatures
4. I find it difficult to ..... to the moral of this fable.
   a. intend b. approach c. relate d. bounce
5. Isis And Osiris are characters from the ..... of the pharaohs.
   a. mythology b. conflict c. solution d. setting
6. It is known that white clothes ..... heat.
   a. stretch b. slip c. deserve d. reflect
7. The lesson a story teaches us is its ..... .
   a. moral b. perspective c. conflict d. creature
8. I find your company ..... . You're really a good friend.
   a. relevant b. universal c. entertaining d. boring
9. There's an eternal ..... between good and evil.
   a. mythology b. conflict c. solution d. setting
10. Fables are of particular ..... to children.
    a. context b. humour c. relevance d. argument
11. Your qualifications and skills are not ..... to this type of work.
    a. relevant b. universal c. entertaining d. boring
12. The ..... of a story is its time and place.
    a. mythology b. conflict c. solution d. setting
13. Most of my friends have a sense of ..... . When I am with them, I never stop laughing.
    a. context b. humour c. relevance d. argument
14. In ....., respecting our parents and teachers is an important part of our behavioural code.
    a. moral b. legend c. conclusion d. creature

15. Compared to the excitement of the city, some people find the quietness in the countryside ..... . They do not like it.
a. relevant b. universal c. entertaining d. boring

16. There should be an urgent ..... to this issue.
a. mythology b. conflict c. solution d. setting

2 Important vocabulary

17. Our country will continue to make progress as long as sincere people do ..... .
a. disappear b. rest c. escape d. exist

18. The ball ..... off the defender's knee and into the goal.
a. intended b. approached c. related d. bounced

19. Hit on the head, he lost ..... and fell to the ground.
a. balance b. humour c. relevance d. argument

20. She ..... up to reach the bag in the top shelf.
a. stretched b. slipped c. deserved d. reflected

21. Most children's books are .....with colourful drawings.
a. bounced b. warned c. represented d. illustrated

22. Not many people read his stories because his style is ..... .
a. attractive b. outdated c. lively d. elastic

23. The farmer is making ..... for the foxes that attack his animals.
a. traps b. tricks c. tales d. purposes

24. My father ..... to change his old car. He is going to buy a BMW.
a. intends b. flows c. relates d. bounces

25. Our children ..... our full interest.
a. stretch b. slip c. deserve d. float

26. We were ..... against swimming in deep water.
a. flowed b. warned c. represented d. illustrated

27. Children's trousers have ..... waists.
a. complex b. outdated c. stuck d. elastic

28. My grandma used to tell us ..... of adventure.
a. traps b. tricks c. tales d. purposes

29. Don't ..... that dog. It is very aggressive. عدواني
a. intend b. approach c. relate d. bounce

30. I saw a piece of wood ..... down the river.
a. warning b. slipping c. deserving d. floating

31. There are increasing numbers of refugees ..... from the conflict areas.
a. flowing b. warning c. representing d. illustrating

32. I tried to move the desk but it was ..... .
a. complex b. outdated c. stuck d. elastic

33. The villagers didn't believe the boy because he had played several ..... on them.
a. traps b. tricks c. tales d. purposes

34. You need more evidence to support your ..... .
a. balance b. humour c. relevance d. argument

35. The child ..... on the soapy floor.
a. stretched b. slipped c. deserved d. reflected

36. Both people and animals are ..... in the fable called "Alice in Wonderland".
a. flowed b. warned c. represented d. floated

37. A maths problem that is ..... is very difficult to understand.
a. complex b. outdated c. stuck d. elastic

3 Definitions

38. To ..... is to feel that you understand someone's problem, situation, etc.
a. intend b. approach c. relate d. bounce

39. A ..... is a way of thinking about something, especially one which is influenced by the type of person you are or by your experiences.
a. moral b. perspective c. conclusion d. creature

40. ..... is a set of ancient myths.
a. Mythology b. Conflict c. Solution d. Setting

41. ..... means amusing and interesting.
a. Relevant b. Universal c. Entertaining d. Boring

42. A ..... is anything that is living, such as an animal, fish, or insect, but not a plant.
a. moral b. perspective c. conclusion d. creature

43. ..... is a situation in which you have to choose between two or more opposite needs, influences, etc.
a. Mythology b. Conflict c. Solution d. Setting

44. ..... means involving everyone in the world or in a particular group.
a. Relevant b. Universal c. Entertaining d. Boring

45. The ..... is the end or final part of something.
a. moral b. perspective c. conclusion d. creature

Part II Vocabulary Study

تنويه ساعد مُعلمك على الإرتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مُسبقاً بشكل جيد.

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

have	a picnic	يقوم بنزهة	play	a trick on	يُدبر مقلبًا لـ
lose	his balance	يفقد توازنه	take	turns	يتبادل الأدوار
make	traps	ينصب فخاخًا			

Mini Test 1 Collocations

• ✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. We took ..... to answer the multiple-choice questions.
a. out b. place c. turns d. tricks
2. The picnic I have ..... has relieved the work stress.
a. to b. had c. lost d. played
3. Be careful not to ..... your balance while painting the ceiling.
a. lose b. make c. have d. play
4. The so many tricks you have ..... on us make it difficult to believe you any more.
a. lost b. taken c. done d. played
5. I think it is cruel to ..... traps to catch these nice birds.
a. lose b. make c. do d. play

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
entertaining(adj)	مُسَلٍّ/مُمتِع	amusing and interesting
moral(n)	مَغْزَى أخلاقي	a practical lesson
perspective(n)	مفهوم/ منظور	outlook / view / viewpoint / point of view
relate to (d) (v)	يتفهَّم	understand
relevant(adj)	ملائم	to the point / to the purpose
universal(adj)	شامِل- شائِع- عامّ	comprehensive

3 Antonyms متضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)	
entertaining(adj)	مُسَلٍّ/مُمتِع	boring	مُمِلّ
universal(adj)	شامِل- شائِع	particular / restricted	مُحَدَّد - محلود
relevant(adj)	ملائم	irrelevant	غير ملائم

Mini Test 2 Synonyms & Antonyms

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Something that is 'entertaining' is not ..... .
   a. boring b. amusing c. interesting d. b & c
2. "Pollution is a universal issue." In this context, the adjective 'universal' is a synonym of ..... .
   a. comprehensive b. restricted c. particular d. b & c
3. If a story has a moral, then it has a ..... lesson.
   a. no b. one c. practical d. useless
4. ..... to is to 'understand' as 'relevant' is to 'to the purpose'.
   a. Misunderstand b. Relate c. Debate d. Entertain

4 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

act of kindness	عمل طيب - سلوك طيب	in common with	مشترك مع
any more	بعد الآن - مرة أخرى	in return	فى مقابل
as we see it	كما نراها - في رأينا	in spite of	بالرغم من
at least	علي الأقل	once upon a time	ذات مرة
deep down	فى الأعماق - في الأصل	see a long way away	يرى مسافة طويلة
elastic band	شريط مطاطي	you have a good point there	أنت محق فى ذلك
in between (adj/adv)	بَيْنَ بَيْنَ/ فى الوَسَط		

5 Synonymous Expressions تعبيرات مترادفة

in favour of = on the side of = be for / all for = approving of لصالح/داعم لـ	point of view = opinion وجهة نظر
in trouble = in difficulty = in a tight corner في ورطة	stop for a break = take a break يتوقف للاستراحة
It's all water under the bridge now = That was an event in the past, but it's no longer regarded as important. لقد مضي هذا الأمر ولم يعد ذو أهمية	walk closer to = approach يدنو من

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

UNIT 12

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

climb onto	يصعد إلى سطح	intend to	ينوي أن
escape from	يهرب من	reach up	يمد - يتعلق
get on	يركب علي	regarded .... as	يعتبر .... ك
hang from	يتدلى من		

Mini Test 3 Expressions, Prepositions & Idioms

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. We had a big argument a few months ago, but it's all water under the bridge now. This means: ..... (LM)
   a. That was an event in the past and it's still regarded as important now.
   b. That was an event in the past, but it's no longer regarded as important.
   c. That event is still effective like running water.
   d. That event is as important as running water.
2. When you are in favour of an idea, you are ..... it.
   a. beside b. next to c. for d. against
3. I saw a large bat hanging ..... the ceiling of the old hut.
   a. from b. with c. out d. up
4. To walk closer to means to ..... .
   a. return b. support c. get on d. approach
5. She reached ..... to get a jar of honey from the top shelf.
   a. down b. up c. at d. about
6. "We have stopped for a break." In this context, 'stopped for' can be replaced by ..... .
   a. suffered b. found c. approached d. took
7. When one is in ....., then they're in a tight corner.
   a. trouble b. return c. opinion d. difficult
8. Your point of view is your ..... .
   a. trouble b. return c. opinion d. difficult
9. I've stopped smoking. I do not smoke ..... .
   a. no more b. any more c. not longer d. no longer

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

Master your Key Vocabulary كل ما يخص المفردات

creature

كائن حي (إنسان/حيوان/حشرة/أسماك، وليس نبات)

• creature (n)
- I like watching programmes about strange sea creatures.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- creatures of the deep الكائنات التي تعيش في المحيط
- a creature of habit شخص نمطي لا يتغير
- a nocturnal creature كائن ليلي
- a primitive/simple creature كائن أولي(بدائي)
- a living creature كائن حي

• creature (n) صَنيعة/نِتاج (تُطلق علي الأشياء السيئة)
- Monopoly الاحتكار is a creature of first-world countries.

entertaining

• entertain (...with) (v) يُسَلِّي - يُرَفِّه عن
- My grandmother used to entertain us with her exciting stories.

• entertain (v) يُضَيِّف (علي طعام أو شراب)
- I entertained my friends to a meal on the occasion of my success.

• entertainer (n) فنان ترفيهي
- He was one of the Egyptian cinema top entertainers.

• entertainment (n) الترفيه (مثل الأفلام والمسلسلات والمسرحيات ...)

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية :

- We went to the cinema for entertainment.
- the entertainment industry/business/world النشاط الترفيهي
- live entertainment الترفيه المباشر (أمام الجمهور مباشرة)
- light entertainment (= comedy) الكوميديا
- provide entertainment يوفر وسائل الترفيه

• entertainment = entertaining (n) استضافة (علي طعام أو شراب)
- The entertainment of all your classmates will cost a lot of money.
= Entertaining all your classmates will cost a lot of money.

• entertaining (adj) مُسَلِّي/مُمتع
- The children watched an entertaining cartoon.

perspective

• perspective (on) (n) مفهوم - منظور
- His illness has changed his perspective on life.

7 Master your Key Vocabulary كل ما يخص المفردات

creature

• **creature (n)** كائن حي (إنسان/حيوان/حشرة/أسماك، وليس نبات)
- I like watching programmes about strange sea creatures.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:
- creatures of the deep الكائنات التي تعيش في المحيط
- a creature of habit شخص نمطي لا يتغير
- a nocturnal creature كائن ليلي
- a primitive/simple creature كائن أولي(بدائي)
- a living creature كائن حي

• **creature (n)** صَنيعة/نِتاج (تُطلق علي الأشياء السيئة)
- Monopoly الاحتكار is a creature of first-world countries.

entertaining

• **entertain (...with) (v)** يُسَلِّي - يُرَفِّه عن
- My grandmother used to entertain us with her exciting stories.

• **entertain (v)** يُضَيِّف (علي طعام أو شراب)
- I entertained my friends to a meal on the occasion of my success.

• **entertainer (n)** فنان ترفيهي
- He was one of the Egyptian cinema top entertainers.

• **entertainment (n)** الترفيه (مثل الأفلام والمسلسلات والمسرحيات ...)

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية :
- We went to the cinema for entertainment.
- the entertainment industry/business/world النشاط الترفيهي
- live entertainment الترفيه المباشر (أمام الجمهور مباشرة)
- light entertainment (= comedy) الكوميديا
- provide entertainment يوفر وسائل الترفيه

• **entertainment = entertaining (n)** استضافة (علي طعام أو شراب)
- The entertainment of all your classmates will cost a lot of money.
= Entertaining all your classmates will cost a lot of money.

• **entertaining (adj)** مُسَلٍّي/مُمتع
- The children watched an entertaining cartoon.

perspective

• **perspective (on) (n)** مفهوم - منظور
- His illness has changed his perspective on life.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية :

- from my perspective من منظوري/ في تَصَوُّري
- wider/broader perspective من منظور أرحب
- have a perspective لديه تَصَوُّر
- see/view ... from a perspective يري ... من منظور ...
- lose perspective يفقد حُسْن تقديره للأمور

relate

• **relate (to) (v)** يرتبط/يتعلَّق (بـ) = connect = has ... to do with

- It is difficult to understand how one of these two ideas relates to the other.

= It is difficult to understand how one of these two ideas connects to the other.

= It is difficult to understand what one of these two ideas has to do with the other.

• **relate (... to) (v)** يربط (... بـ)

- Most doctors relate lung cancer to smoking.

• **relate (... to) (v)** يُخبر ... (بـ) - يحكي ... (لـ)

- She relates everything she does to her mother.

• **relate (to) (v)** يتفهَّم - يستوعب

- Rodayna looks angry. I can relate to that.

• **relation (between) (n)** ارتباط/علاقة (بين) = relationship

- What you say has no relation to the topic.

= What you say has no relationship to the topic.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- close relations علاقات قوية
- establish relations (with) يوطِّد العلاقات (مع)
- maintain relations يحافظ علي العلاقات
- break off relations (with) يقطع العلاقات (مع)
- restore/resume relations (with) يوطِّد العلاقات (مع)

• **relation (to/of) (n)** أحد الأقارب = relative(n)

- I have some relations here in Aswan.

= I have some relatives here in Aswan.

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- a close relation/relative قريب من الدرجة الأولي أو الثانية
- a distant relation/relative قرابة من بعيد
- a blood relation/relative قرابة نَسَب (ليست قرابة مصاهرة)
- a relation by marriage قرابة مصاهرة(عن طريق الزواج)

• relative (adj) نِسبِيّ

- Travel by air has so many relative advantages.

• related (to) (adj) مُرتَبِط/مُتَعَلِّق (بـ) ≠ unrelated

- The problem of homeless children is related to drug abuse. تعاطي المخدرات

• related (adj) ذو قرابة مع (لا تُستخدَم قبل الاسم)

- Sama and Mariam are related.

universal

• universal (adj) عام/شامل

- Pollution is a problem of universal interest.

• universal (adj) ثابت

- Death is a universal truth.

تنويه: التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

• ❶ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I was ..... to lunch by my boss in a five-star restaurant.
   a. entertained b. reflected c. intended d. approached
2. A break or a short nap might give you a better ..... on the problem.
   a. mythology b. perspective c. solution d. conclusion
3. My father insists that I ..... whatever I do to him.
   a. relate b. bounce c. represent d. deserve
4. Here're some simple recipes for easy ..... .
   a. inventing b. relating c. bouncing d. entertaining
5. Terrorism is a/an ..... of poverty and ignorance.
   a. perspective b. elastic c. creature d. purpose

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- a close relation/relative قريب من الدرجة الأولي أو الثانية
- a distant relation/relative قرابة من بعيد
- a blood relation/relative قرابة نَسَب (ليست قرابة مصاهرة)
- a relation by marriage قرابة مصاهرة(عن طريق الزواج)

• **relative (adj)** نِسبِيّ

- Travel by air has so many relative advantages.

• **related (to) (adj)** مُرتَبِط/مُتَعَلِّق (بـ) ≠ unrelated

- The problem of homeless children is related to drug abuse. تعاطي المخدرات

• **related (adj)** ذو قرابة مع (لا تُستخدَم قبل الاسم)

- Sama and Mariam are related.

universal

• **universal (adj)** عام/شامل

- Pollution is a problem of universal interest.

• **universal (adj)** ثابت

- Death is a universal truth.

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

تنويه : التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

• **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. I was ..... to lunch by my boss in a five-star restaurant.
   a. entertained b. reflected c. intended d. approached
2. A break or a short nap might give you a better ..... on the problem.
   a. mythology b. perspective c. solution d. conclusion
3. My father insists that I ..... whatever I do to him.
   a. relate b. bounce c. represent d. deserve
4. Here're some simple recipes for easy ..... .
   a. inventing b. relating c. bouncing d. entertaining
5. Terrorism is a/an ..... of poverty and ignorance.
   a. perspective b. elastic c. creature d. purpose

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	a	- الفعل (was entertained) هنا يعنى (استضافته / عُزم)
2.	b	- كلمة (perspective) هنا تعنى (حُسْن تقدير الأمور)
3.	a	- الفعل (relate) هنا يعنى (يحكى / يسرد / يخبر)
4.	d	- كلمة (entertaining) هنا اسم يعنى (الاستضافة على طعام أو شراب)
5.	c	- كلمة (creature) هنا تعنى (صنيعة / نتاج)

Part III Reading & Listening

1 Reading Texts

Why do giraffes have long necks ? (SB page 67)



A very long time ago, in Africa, there was a family of giraffes with very short necks. There was another family of giraffes that had taller necks. The two families lived together in the grasslands(1) near a river. It was very hot there, but there were open spaces where the giraffes could move quickly and drink the water they needed. The giraffes ate grass and fruits of some trees which were not very tall. There were also some tall trees with even more delicious leaves and more tasty fruits(2). The giraffes with long necks were able to eat the green leaves and tasty fruits high above, while the other giraffes with shorter necks were able to eat only grass and the leaves which were close to them. When winter came, there was very little grass, and the second family found little to eat. Sometimes it was very dry and it never rained and grass rarely grew. Day after day, the giraffes with the shorter necks became weaker and weaker, as the grass and shorter trees were never enough to them. The giraffes with longer necks tried to help their neighbours. One giraffe from the long-necked family said, "We should do something to help. Our friends are suffering. They can't reach taller trees. What can we do ?"

Check Vocabulary
(1) أرض عشبية
(2) فواكه لذيذة

They agreed to collect as many leaves as they could and deliver them to the short-necked[3] giraffes, but his was not enough. The long-necked giraffes could not bend[4] their necks much to give the food they collected to their friends.

After many, many years, the number of giraffes from the family with longer necks increased over time, while the opposite happened to the short-necked giraffes. Until one day there were no giraffes with the shorter necks. The giraffes with the long necks were the only ones surviving in the area.

(3) قصيرة الرقبة
(4) ينحنى - يلتوى

The Ant and the Dove

(WB page 41)



Once upon a time on a warm sunny day, an ant[1] was working hard to collect food. The ant said, "I'm thirsty[2] as I have started early this morning and have not stopped once[3]". He saw a river nearby[4] and decided to have a drink before he continued.

The river was flowing[5] very quickly and although the ant moved slowly towards the water to drink, he slipped[6] and fell into the water.

As he was floating down the river, a dove[7], which was sitting in a tree above the river, saw the ant in trouble[8] and decided to drop[9] a leaf[10] into the river. The ant was able to climb onto the leaf, which floated[11] to the side of the river, and the ant could climb back onto the land to safety[12]. He was very happy to be alive. As he walked back to thank the dove, he saw a hunter[13] under the tree where the dove was sitting. The hunter was making traps[14] to catch the dove. The ant walked quietly closer to the hunter and bit[15] his leg, with his sharp[16] teeth, as hard as he could. As soon as he had done this, the hunter shouted because of the pain and the dove was able to fly away to safety. We can learn from this story that one good action deserves[17] another in return.

Check Vocabulary

(1) نملة
(2) عطشان
(3) مرة
(4) يمر / مجاور
(5) يتدفق
(6) ينزلق
(7) حمامة
(8) ورطة / مأزق
(9) يُسقِط
(10) ورقة نبات
(11) يطفو
(12) الأمان
(13) صياد
(14) تصيدة
(15) يعض
(16) حادّ
(17) يستحق

2 Listening Texts

The relevance of myths and legends in the modern world

Presenter : Hello, and welcome to the literature(1) show. With us today, we have Dr Gamal El-Shazly, a professor of literature from Alexandria University, and author Scott Mills, who has recently written a book called Myths and Legends of our time. We're going to be talking about the relevance(2) of myths and legends in the 21st century, and whether there is a place for them in our fast-paced(3) digital(4) age. Scott, you've spent a lot of time researching the myths for your new book. Are people still interested in these old stories from the past, especially young people? Aren't teens(5) more interested in computer games than Isis and Osiris?

Scott : Well, that is an interesting comparison(6) because, after all, many computer games are actually(7) based on(8) the old-fashioned(9) story-telling(10) you find myths. Teens like playing video games because they offer an escape(11) to fantastic unreal(12) worlds with characters who have special powers, just like the characters and creatures(13) in many myths. Think of the well-known video game character Maxwell, for example, who has the power to make things exist(14) by writing them in his notebook. I think many people still find myths fascinating(15), not just young people. They are fantastic stories which are very entertaining(16). But they weren't written primarily(17) to entertain(18) of course. They were written by philosophers(19) with great minds who wanted to pass on(20) knowledge and ideals(21). And people still read myths and legends today because they talk about timeless(22) and universal(23) themes(24), which are relevant(25) in both the art of storytelling and in portraying(26) human experience.

(See page 45)

Check Vocabulary

(1) أدب
(2) ملائمة - أهمية
(3) سريع الوتيرة
(4) رقمي
(5) مراهقين
(6) مقارنة
(7) في الواقع
(8) يرتكز على
(9) قديم
(10) سرد القصص
(11) مهرب - مفرّ
(12) غير حقيقي
(13) مخلوق/كائن
(14) يوجد
(15) رائع/خلاب
(16) مُسلّي
(17) في الأساس
(18) يُسلّي
(19) فيلسوف
(20) ينقل - يمرر
(21) مُثل عليا
(22) خالد/أبدي
(23) عالمي - شامل
(24) موضوع
(25) ملائم
(26) تصوير

Dr Gamal: And let's not forget their cultural value. Myths and legends give an understanding of the values and perspectives[27] of past cultures. The stories offer clues[28] to how these people lived, and the kind of societies they were part of. They also show how much we have in common with[29] long-ago[30]. Every culture has its own myths and legends which reflect[31] the geography, history and values[32] of that culture. Japanese myths, for example, reflect the fact that Japan is an island nation. The sea and its creatures play an important part in their myths. Each myth you read has something to tell you about the culture of the country the myth comes from.

(27) منظور، وجهة نظر
(28) دليل
(29) مشتركة مع
(30) منذ زمن بعيد
(31) يعكس
(32) قيم
(33) بالرغم من
(34) في الواقع - في الأصل
(35) أصل

Presenter: Well. In spite of[33] our differences, it is good to know that deep down[34] we are all the same. We want to know about our origins[35], how the world around us works. Thanks to both of you. Next on today's show …

The importance of myths, legends and fables

(WB page 40)

Presenter : Hello, and welcome again to Teenagers[1] Talk. Today, we are debating[2] the importance of myths, legends and fables with Hany and Mazin. Welcome to you both!

Hany : Glad to be here.

Mazin : Thanks for having us.

Presenter : So, tell us, just how beneficial[3] are myths, legends and fables to society today?

Hany : Well, in our opinion they have always helped human beings understand the world.

Check Vocabulary
(1) مُراهق
(2) يتناقش
(3) مُفيد

Mazin : We don't quite agree with that, as there is a fine line[4] between reality[5] and lies[6]. For example, we know that in ancient times the Earth was thought to be flat. If this story were told now, it would be regarded[7] as false.

Hany : That's one way of looking at it, but we've always used the knowledge we have at the time to explain the things we don't completely understand. For example, there are many theories[8] as to how the pyramids were built.

Mazin : As we see it, there are two different things happening in many myths, legends and fables. One is to explain the common human experience, and the other is to entertain.

Hany : What do you mean by that?

Mazin : Well, before books existed, the storyteller[9] would tell stories from different places which illustrate[10] the similarities[11] of people in other lands. They were the modern-day[12] version[13] of television or the internet. The best examples of these, I think, are Aesop's fables. Unfortunately, storytelling is disappearing due to modern technology.

Hany : We don't agree with that, just look at the Egyptian Records[14] of Traditional Culture, which has collected 623 hours of old stories. Without technology, these tales might have been lost.

Mazin : We agree that these tales form a vital[15] part of our heritage, but do they serve[16] another purpose[17] for society?

Hany : Well, that's where we may agree. Look, you mentioned Aesop's fables, and they are an example of short stories with a moral[18] to help explain typical[19] human problems. For example, the Lion and the Mouse tells us that acts of kindness[20] will always be returned.

Mazin : Mmm, you have a good point there[21].

Presenter: Well, I think that is probably a good time to end this very interesting discussion on the benefits of myths, legends and fables. Thank you very much Mazin and Hany for joining us today. Next week, we will be talking about …

(4) طبيعة رفيع
(5) الواقع
(6) كذب
(7) يعتبر
(8) نظريات
(9) قصاص - حكائي
(10) يوضح
(11) التشابه
(12) عصري/حديث
(13) نسخة
(14) سجل
(15) هام/حيوي
(16) يخدم/يؤدي
(17) غرض
(18) درس أخلاقي
(19) نمطي/متكرر
(20) عمل طيب
(21) لك حق في ذلك

Part IV Language

Reported Questions الأسئلة في الكلام غير المباشر

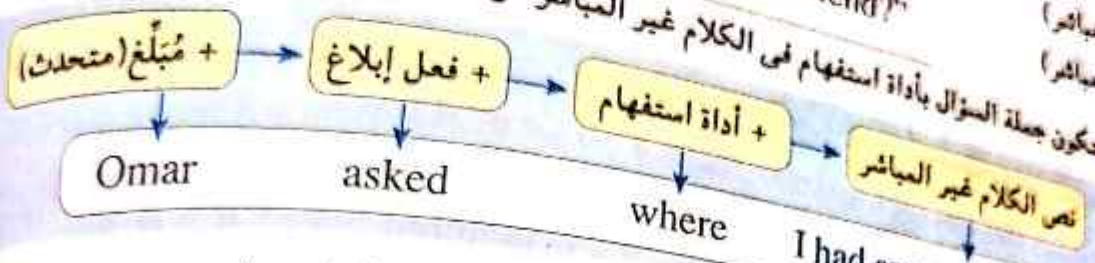
❶ يبدأ السؤال في الكلام المباشر بأحد أدوات الاستفهام التالية يليها الفعل المساعد :

What – When – Where – Why – Who – Whose – Which – How ...

. "Where have you spent the weekend?" asked Omar. (مباشر)

= Omar asked, "Where have you spent the weekend?" (مباشر)

❷ تتكون جملة السؤال بأداة استفهام في الكلام غير المباشر من :



لاحظ : نص الكلام غير المباشر يكون على شكل جملة خبرية (فاعل + فعل ...)

❸ يبدأ سؤال (Yes / No) بأحد الأفعال المساعدة أو الناقصة مثل :

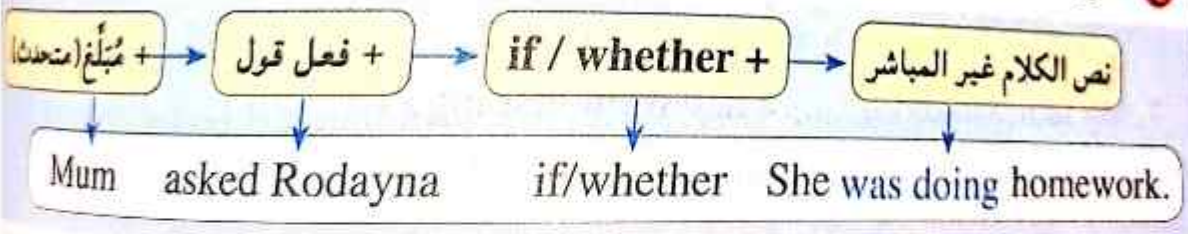
am – is – are – was – were – have – has – had – do – does – did

can – could – will – would – may – might – shall – should – must ...

. "Are you doing your homework, Rodayna?" asked mum. (مباشر)

= Mum asked, " Are you doing your homework, Rodayna?" (مباشر)

❹ تتكون جملة سؤال (Yes / No) في الكلام غير المباشر من :



لاحظ : نص الكلام غير المباشر يكون على شكل جملة خبرية (فاعل + فعل ...)

❺ يستخدم فعل إبلاغ بعد المُبلِّغ (المتحدث) ، وهناك نوعان من أفعال الإبلاغ الخاصة بالأسئلة :

(١) يمكن استخدام أو عدم استخدام المخاطب بعد الفعل **(asked)** والمُخَاطَب يكون اسم أو ضمير مفعول (me – him – her – it – you – us – them) :

. Nada asked Ahmed when he was leaving home. (السؤال كان موجهًا لأحمد)

. Nada asked when Ahmed was leaving home. (السؤال كان موجهًا لأحمد أو غيره)

(ب) لا يمكن أن يأتى المُخَاطَب بعد أفعال الإبلاغ التالية :

wondered تساءل - wanted to know أراد أن يعرف - inquired استفسر

- Nada wondered when Ahmed was leaving home. (Not : wondered Ahmed)

● لا تُستخدم علامات التنصيص ("....") أو علامة الاستفهام فى الكلام غير المباشر :

- "Why are you angry, father?" said Abdu. (مباشر)
- Abdu asked father why he was angry. (غير مباشر)

Mini Test 1 ○ Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Mohammed ..... me if I enjoyed my mid-year holiday.
   a. told b. asked c. inquired d. a & b
2. Mohammed ..... if I enjoyed my mid-year holiday.
   a. told b. asked c. inquired d. b & c
3. She wanted to know ..... I was doing.
   a. if b. whether c. a & b d. what
4. She wanted to know ..... I was doing anything.
   a. if b. whether c. a & b d. what
5. My father asked ..... I had been.
   a. where b. who c. if d. which
6. My father asked ..... I had been busy or not.
   a. where b. who c. if d. which
7. My father asked ..... I had been visiting.
   a. where b. who c. if d. which

● تذكر أن: بعد كل من (if - whether) وأدوات الاستفهام يأتي الفاعل وليس الفعل المساعد فى الكلام غير المباشر:

- Mum asked if had I done the shopping. (✗)
- Mum asked if I had done the shopping. (✓)
- Hasnaa wanted to know why was I late for school. (✗)
- Hasnaa wanted to know why I was late for school. (✓)

تتحول الضمائر حسب المتكلم والمُخاطب مثل الجملة الخبرية (راجع جدول تحويل الضمائر بهذه الوحدة) :

- Yara asked, "When are you repairing my tablet for me, father?" (مباشر)
- Yara asked father when he was repairing her tablet for her. (غير مباشر)

تتحول بعض ظروف الزمان والمكان مثل الجملة الخبرية (راجع جدول تحويل الظروف بالوحدة) :

- "Did you visit this place last year?", said Khalid. (مباشر)
- Khalid asked me if I had visited that place the previous year. (غير مباشر)

تتحول الأزمنة مثل الجملة الخبرية (راجع جدول تحويل الأزمنة بهذه الوحدة) :

- "Are you having dinner outdoors tomorrow?" Mariam said to Karim. (مباشر)
- Mariam asked Karim if he was having dinner outdoors the next day. (غير مباشر)
- "Where have you found your lost keys, Amr?" asked Nancy. (مباشر)
- Nancy asked Amr where he had found his lost keys. (غير مباشر)

Mini Test 2 — Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The reporter asked if the firefighters were saving the child ..... .
   a. tonight b. now c. today d. then
2. The reporter asked if the firefighters had saved the child ..... .
   a. then b. the following day
   c. the day before d. a & b
3. Menna asked Bassant how ..... travel to Cairo.
   a. will she b. she will c. would she d. she would
4. Menna asks Bassant how ..... travel to Cairo.
   a. will she b. she will c. would she d. she would
5. I asked Mai what ..... doing.
   a. she was b. was she c. could she be d. is she
6. Ahmed asked me when I had gone to bed ..... .
   a. tonight b. that night c. now d. yet

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

❶ لا تُستخدم (do – does) كأفعال مساعدة فى الكلام غير المباشر ويتحول الفعل الأصلى إلى زمن الماضى البسيط (التصريف الثانى) :

- "What time do you have your break?" asked Eman. (مباشر)
- Eman asked me what time I had my break. (غير مباشر)
- "Does your mother help you, Rokaya?" asked Leen. (مباشر)
- Leen asked Rokaya if her mother helped her. (غير مباشر)

❷ لا تُستخدم (did) كفعلٍ مساعد فى الكلام غير المباشر ويتحول الفعل الأصلى إلى زمن الماضي التام أو يبقى ماضيًا بسيطًا كما هو :

- "What did you prepare for lunch, mum?" asked Walid. (مباشر)
- Walid asked mum what she (had) prepared for lunch. (غير مباشر)
- "Did you use my tablet, Zamzam?" asked Rodayna. (مباشر)
- Rodayna asked Zamzam if she (had) used her tablet. (غير مباشر)

Mini Test 3 ○ Apply

✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I wondered when ..... up every morning.
   a. does he get b. he gets
   c. did he get d. he got
2. I wonder when ..... up every morning.
   a. does he get b. he gets
   c. did he get d. was he getting
3. I asked, "When ..... up every morning?"
   a. does he get b. he gets
   c. did he get d. a & c
4. Rodayna wants to know whether ..... her a present.
   a. mum has bought b. has mum bought
   c. did mum buy d. mum bought
5. Rodayna wanted to know whether ..... her a present.
   a. mum has bought b. has mum bought
   c. did mum buy d. mum had bought

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

- "Shall we speak English?" said Ahmed.
- Ahmed wondered if / whether we should speak English.

❶ تتحول (shall) فى حالة الاقتراح إلى (should) : (مباشر) (غير مباشر)

❷ الصيغة التالية ليست كلام غير مباشر، لكن يأتى الفاعل وليس الفعل المساعد بعد (if / whether) أو أداة الاستفهام :

Can / Could ... + you / he / ... + أدوات استفهام + subj. فاعل ... ?

- Can you tell me how I can answer this question? (NOT : how can I)
- Do you know if Mai will be late ? (NOT : if will Mai)

❸ يمكن استخدام أفعال الإبلاغ الخاصة بالجملة الخبرية قبل (if / whether) أو أداة الاستفهام عند الرد على سؤال وليس فى الكلام غير المباشر :-

- I have told you why I was late for school.
- Malak didn't say whether her father would attend the party or not.

❹ عند تحويل السؤال المذيل إلى غير المباشر يتم تحويل الجملة الخبرية مثل الجملة الاستفهامية ويفضل استخدام فعل القول (want(ed) to make sure).

- John said, "You'll buy a car, won't you ?"
- John wanted to make sure if I would buy a car.

General Exercise On Language Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

I Getting Started

1. Samir ..... me why I had chosen that T-shirt. (LM)
   a. said b. inquired c. ordered d. asked
2. Ali wanted to know ..... I was ready for the exam or not. (LM)
   a. whether b. why c. that d. when
3. The shop assistant asked why I ..... to change that tie. (LM)
   a. want b. was wanted c. wanted d. have wanted
4. My mother asked why ..... that loud noise. (LM)
   a. I was making b. was I making c. I will make d. had I made

5. My friend wanted to know how long ..... for the car factory.
a. am I working b. I am working
c. had I been working d. I had been working

6. My neighbours wanted to know ..... I had lived in my flat.
a. who b. what c. how long d. that

7. Mona asked the technician.....he had fixed her mobile.
a. why b. if c. that d. weather

8. She wanted to know if ..... to go to university the following year.
a. was I planning b. I plan c. I was planning d. I will plan

9. He wanted to know ..... swimming and had a good time.
a. whether I enjoying b. if did I enjoy
c. whether I enjoy d. if I enjoyed

10. She asked me ..... for my holiday the previous summer.
a. where I have gone b. I had gone
c. where I had gone d. where had I been

11. Mum wanted to know whether I ..... anything wrong that made my aunt leave so angrily.
a. had said b. was said c. would say d. was saying

12. Emma said, "Can we use your camera?"
- Emma asked me if ..... could use my camera.
a. I b. he c. we d. they

13. The interviewer asked her ..... she had experience in sales.
a. what b. while c. if d. that

14. Leila asked Sara if ..... anything the next day.
a. she is doing b. she was doing
c. was she doing d. is she doing

15. He asked me whether I had finished reading the book ..... lent me the week before.
a. he was b. was he c. he had d. had he

16. "How much money do you need?" he asked. - "Twenty pounds," I .....
a. replied b. told c. wanted d. asked

17. She wanted to know if he was staying with his family at ..... time.
a. that b. the c. this d. these

18. He asked me if I knew that his sister ..... ill the week before.
a. was b. has been c. had been d. is

19. She wanted to know if I ..... a driving licence.
a. am b. has c. had d. was

20. She asked me which university I ..... to.
a. had been b. was gone c. has been d. have been

21. She wanted to know ..... in his spare time.
a. if he did b. what he did c. what did he d. what he is doing

22. She asked him what ..... doing since he left school.
a. had he been b. he was c. he had been d. he is

2 Special Cases

23. Tamer wonders when I ..... home because he needs my help badly. (LM)
a. had returned b. going to return
c. would return d. will return

24. I asked my mother if food ..... .
a. has prepared b. had prepared (LM)
c. had been prepared d. has been prepared

25. Please, tell me where ..... meet tomorrow.
a. we were going to b. we are going to (LM)
c. will we d. are we going to

26. Could you tell me why ..... to London last month?
a. did you travel b. had you travelled (LM)
c. you travelled d. you had travelled

27. Huda inquired ..... or not I would accept that invitation. (LM)
a. if b. whether c. that d. which

28. The policeman asked the reporter about ..... when he was jogging.
(نموذج الوزارة الثاني ٢٠٢٠)
a. what did he lose b. what had he lost
c. what he lost d. what he was losing

29. She asked me whether ..... there before. (نموذج الوزارة الأول ٢٠١٩)
a. I had been b. I went c. I had had d. had I been

30. Omar wondered where the charger ..... (نموذج الوزارة ٢٠١٥)
a. puts b. is putting c. was put d. is put

31. He wondered if iron ..... a metal.
a. had been b. were c. is d. has been

32. He wanted to know whether anyone ..... the book he was reading.
a. had seen b. has seen c. sees d. was seeing

33. "Where ..... been?" he asked me.
a. have you b. you have c. had you d. you had

34. Nadia wants to know if I ..... anything interesting next weekend.
a. am going to do b. have done c. am doing d. a & c

35. He asked me whether I ..... I would enjoy working there.
a. thinking b. has thought c. was thinking d. thought

36. I wonder why ..... at me like that. Stop it, please.
a. you will shout b. did you shout c. you shout d. do you shout

37. Can you will tell me how ..... to the train station, please?
a. I got b. I get c. can I get d. do I get

3 Check your understanding

38. Mustafa wonders if I have enough money on me. What is Mustafa's question?
a. Have you had enough money on you?
b. Have you got enough money on you?
c. Do you have enough money on you?
d. b & c

39. "Would you mind lending me some money?" I asked Omar .....
a. if he minds lending me some money.
b. whether he would mind lending me some money.
c. if I minded lending him some money.
d. whether I would mind lending him some money.

40. "Could you show me .....?"
a. how I can answer this question
b. how can I answer this question
c. how I had answered this question
d. how had I answered this question

41. **Sama:** "Where are my glasses, mum ?" **Mum:** ..... . On your desk!
a. Sama asked mum where her glasses were
b. I have told you where they are, Sama
c. I told Sama where they were
d. a & b

42. **Ali:** "You are OK, aren't you?" **Ziad:** What does Ali say?
a. Ali told you whether he was OK.
b. Ali tells you whether he is OK.
c. Ali wanted to make sure if you had been OK.
d. Ali wants to make sure if you are OK.

34. Nadia wants to know if I ..... anything interesting next weekend.
a. am going to do b. have done c. am doing d. a & c

35. He asked me whether I ..... I would enjoy working there.
a. thinking b. has thought c. was thinking d. thought

36. I wonder why ..... at me like that. Stop it, please.
a. you will shout b. did you shout c. you shout d. do you shout

37. Can you will tell me how ..... to the train station, please?
a. I got b. I get c. can I get d. do I get

3 Check your understanding

38. Mustafa wonders if I have enough money on me. What is Mustafa's question?
a. Have you had enough money on you?
b. Have you got enough money on you?
c. Do you have enough money on you?
d. b & c

39. "Would you mind lending me some money?" I asked Omar .....
a. if he minds lending me some money.
b. whether he would mind lending me some money.
c. if I minded lending him some money.
d. whether I would mind lending him some money.

40. "Could you show me .....?"
a. how I can answer this question
b. how can I answer this question
c. how I had answered this question
d. how had I answered this question

41. **Sama:** "Where are my glasses, mum ?" **Mum:** ..... . On your desk!
a. Sama asked mum where her glasses were
b. I have told you where they are, Sama
c. I told Sama where they were
d. a & b

42. **Ali:** "You are OK, aren't you?" **Ziad:** What does Ali say?
a. Ali told you whether he was OK.
b. Ali tells you whether he is OK.
c. Ali wanted to make sure if you had been OK.
d. Ali wants to make sure if you are OK.

43. "I asked if Ahmed was at home." Who is the possible addressee?
a. Ahmed. b. Someone else.
c. a & b d. Me.

Advanced Exercise on Language

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

تنويه : التدريبات التالية يليها الإجابة والتوضيح

1. Sama inquired who ..... I had been talking to.
a. was the man b. the man was
c. the man had been d. the man is

2. I had ..... you where I saw the criminal and you wrote down his name on a piece of paper.
a. said b. wondered c. inquired d. told

3. He didn't say ..... he would do next. He hadn't made up his mind by then.
a. that b. what c. if d. weather

4. Can you tell me your plans for ..... ?
a. the last summer b. the summer before
c. the previous summer d. next summer

5. I wanted to know what ..... on his head.
a. did Ali hit b. Ali hit c. hit Ali d. Ali had hit

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	a	ضمير الاستفهام (who) يحل محل الفاعل فيأتى بعده الفعل (was) ، كما أن وجود عبارة الوصل (I had been talking to) يستلزم وجود الاسم الذى تعود عليه (the man) قبلها مباشرة.
2.	d	- لا يمكن استخدام (said / inquired) لأنه لا يأتى بعدهم المخاطب - سياق الجملة يدل على أن المتحدث (I) هو من أخبر (told) وليس من سأل (asked)
3.	b	- الجملة بعد النقط تحتاج إلى مفعول وضمير الاستفهام (What) يسأل عن المفعول ويحل محله.
4.	d	-.هذه الجملة ليست كلام غير مباشر فلا يتم تحويل ظروف الزمان إلى الأبعد
5.	c	- ضمير الاستفهام (what) يحل محل الفاعل (الشىء الذى ضرب على رأسه) ، لذلك يأتى بعده الفعل.

Part I Vocabulary & Definitions

تنويه • هذا الجزء خاص بالمفردات والتعبيرات الرئيسية للقصة، لقراءة نص القصة المقررة وللمزيد من المفردات اللغوية والتدريبات نهاية الكتاب.

1 Key Vocabulary, Idioms & Collocations

apart (adv)	متفرقين - بعيداً عن بعضهم البعض	find … guilty	تثبت إدانة …
		have a place in … heart	يهوى/يُحب
break into (phr. v)	يقتحم		
consider (ed) (v)	يُفكر في	pay with his life	يدفع حياته ثمناً
fascinate (d) (v)	يَفتِن - يسْتَهْوَى - يجْتَذِب	struggle (d) (v)	يكافح/يناضل
fight for freedom	يقاتل من أجل الحرية		

Exercise On Vocabulary

Understand

• **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. Finally, the terrorist paid with his life. This means: ..... . (LM)
   a. He was sentenced to death as a result of his crimes.
   b. He had to pay a huge fine for his crime.
   c. He had to prove he was innocent.
   d. He was imprisoned for a short time.
2. The green colour of the countryside ..... me.
   a. considers b. breaks c. fights d. fascinates
3. He's never been ..... from his family. That's why he finds it difficult to live away from them.
   a. a part b. apart c. partly d. part
4. The identity of the thieves who have broken ..... our house is still a mystery.
   a. of b. up c. down d. into
5. If someone has a place in your heart, then you ..... them.
   a. love b. can't stand c. don't mind d. detest
6. He didn't even ..... my offer.
   a. struggle b. consider c. flow d. float

7. He was found .....: he was sentenced to death.
a. a guilt b. guiltless c. guilt d. guilty

8. The Egyptians have always ..... for their country's freedom.
a. considered b. broken c. fought d. fascinated

Part II Language

Reported imperatives, suggestions and advice
جمل الأمر والاقتراحات والنصيحة في الكلام غير المباشر

❶ تبدأ جملة الأمر المثبت (افعل) في الكلام المباشر بالفعل في المصدر (inf.) :

"Open the door, Leen", said mum. = Mum said, "Open the door, Leen".

❷ تبدأ جملة النهي (لا تفعل) في الكلام المباشر بـ (Don't / Never + inf.) :

"Don't / Never eat too much, Amr", said father.
= Father said, "Don't / Never eat too much, Amr".

❸ تتكون جملة الأمر / النهي في الكلام غير المباشر من :

مُبَلِّغ	+	فعل إبلاغ	+	مُخاطَب	+	to / not to	+	inf. المصدر ...
Mum Father		asked warned		Leen Amr		to not to		open the door. eat too much.

❹ يُستخدم فعل إبلاغ مناسب ويستخدم بعده المخاطب (اسم أو ضمير مفعول):

- حَذَّر warned - ذكَّر reminded - أمر commanded - أمر ordered - طلب asked - أخبر / قال told
- أراد wanted – دعي invited - أمر instructed - شجَّع encouraged - نصح advised
- هدد + obj. threatened - توقع expected - عَلَّم taught - ساعد helped ..... المُخَاطَب

- I told Sama to help her mother.
- Grandpa advised me to work hard at school.

❺ لا تُستخدم علامات التنصيص ("....") في الأمر أو النهي في صيغة غير المباشر:

(مباشر)
- "Never play with matches", said my mother.

(غير مباشر)
- My mother warned me not to play with matches.

❶ تُستخدم (to + inf.) بمعني (أن ...) في الإثبات:

- I told him to do more exercise.

❷ تُستخدم (not to + inf.) بمعني (ألّا ...) في النفي:

- The officer ordered the soldiers not to leave their places.

❸ تتحول الضمائر حسب المتكلم والمُخَاطب (راجع تحويلات الضمائر بهذه الوحدة):

- Amira said, "Lend me your camera, Ali". (مباشر)

Amira asked Ali to lend her his camera. (غير مباشر)

❹ تتحول بعض ظروف الزمان والمكان (راجع تحويلات الظروف بهذه الوحدة):

- "Bring this book with you tomorrow", said Miss Mona. (مباشر)

- Miss Mona asked me to bring that book with me the following day. (غير مباشر)

Mini Test 1 Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Leen asked me ..... my money on clothes.
   a. to waste b. to wasting c. not to waste d. not to wasting
2. Leen asked me ..... good use of my money.
   a. to make b. to making c. not to make d. not to making
3. My mother asked Aya ..... the phone.
   a. that she answered b. if she answer
   c. what she answered d. to answer
4. The head teacher told ..... to do our best.
   a. we b. us c. our d. ourselves
5. "Put away your toys, Hamza." - Mum told Hamza to put ..... toys away.
   a. he b. him c. his d. himself
6. "Send the email now." - He asked me to send the email ..... .
   a. then b. than c. earlier d. ago

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

- "You should study hard, Malak", said Mr Hassan.
  Mr Hassan advised / told Malak to study hard.
- "If I were you, I'd get up early", said Aya.
  Aya advised me to get up early.

❶ لاحظ تحويل جمل النصيحة :
(مباشر)
(غير مباشر)
(مباشر)
(غير مباشر)

- "Can you lend me some money, Omar ?", said Mustafa.
  Mustafa asked / wanted Omar to lend him some money.

❷ لاحظ تحويل جمل الطلب :
(مباشر)
(غير مباشر)

❸ عند تحويل جمل النصيحة إلى الكلام غير المباشر يمكن استخدام الفعلين (suggest / recommend)
ويأتي بعدهما (inf. + ing) :

- "What about going to the cinema ?", said Doaa.
  Doaa suggested / recommended going to the cinema.

(مباشر)
(غير مباشر)

❹ في حالة وجود جملة بعد الأفعال التالية يكون فعلها (inf. / should + inf.)

suggest يقترح – recommend يوصي بـ - ask – insist يصمم - advise ينصح
important ... - ضروري necessary – essential /crucial / ضروري (vital) .It is / was

- Ahmed suggested/ advised that Sama take a rest.
= Ahmed suggested / advised that Sama should take a rest.
- It is important that Omar see a doctor.
= It is important that Omar should see a doctor.
- It is essential that he be fit.
= It is essential that he should be fit.

❺ تتحول (come here) إلى (go there) في الكلام غير المباشر:

- "Come here, Emma," Said mum.
  Mum asked Emma to go there.

(مباشر)
(غير مباشر)

Mini Test 2 — Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I suggested that she ..... the conference as our representative.
   a. attends b. attend c. had attended d. to attend
2. It is important that he ..... careful.
   a. be b. was c. has been d. is being
3. Omar asked ..... Nada help her mother.
   a. if b. what c. whether d. that
4. It is essential that he ..... hard.
   a. works b. work c. should work d. b & c

General Exercise — On Language — Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

1 Getting Started

1. Our chemistry teacher advised us ..... experiments to understand well.
   a. does b. doing c. would do d. to do
2. Malik advised that I ..... my bed.
   a. make b. makes c. to make d. making
3. It's important that we ..... rules.
   a. followed b. had followed c. should follow d. follows
4. My friend ..... me to go and see a doctor.
   a. threatened b. forbade c. advised d. stopped
5. She ..... me to turn off the lights.
   a. insisted b. remarked c. reminded d. denied
6. Shady told me ..... that again.
   a. do b. don't do c. not to do d. did
7. The doctor ..... me to walk 5 km every day.
   a. said b. told c. spoke d. talked
8. The teacher ..... the students to stop running in the corridor.
   a. recommended b. ordered c. suggested d. avoided
9. The policeman warned me .....go near the fire.
   a. not to b. to c. if d. that

10. Malak..... going shopping at the new mall.
a. advised b. demanded c. suggested d. warned

11. He told me .....be silly.
a. whether b. that c. to d. not to

12. The tour guide ..... the tourists not to go into the desert on their own.
a. encouraged b. advised c. warned d. b & c

13. The teacher ..... to punish me if I didn't keep quiet.
a. advised b. promised c. told d. threatened

14. We want the windows ..... before Friday.
a. be washed b. to wash c. washing d. to be washed

2 Special Cases

15. My friend recommends ..... "Oliver Twist "as it is interesting. (LM)
a. reading b. to read c. read d. not reading

16. My friend suggests ..... for the next bus because it is too late. (LM)
a. not waiting b. to waiting c. we waited d. don't wait

17. The policeman ..... the rash driver not to drive so fast. (LM)
a. made b. wondered c. instructed d. said

18. Ahmed recommended me ..... on the new course. (نموذج الوزارة الثاني ٢٠٢٠)
a. enrolling b. should enrol c. enrol d. to enrol

19. It is necessary that every student ..... a uniform.
a. wear b. wore c. had worn d. was wearing

0. Mido trained .....attack thieves.
a. to his dog b. his dog c. his dog to d. to his dog to

1. The doctors recommended that she ..... a holiday.
a. take b. takes c. has taken d. will take

2. My professor suggested ..... a chemistry course.
a. that I take b. me to taking c. to take d. me take

3. They demanded that the president ..... something about the situation.
a. do b. does c. has done d. were doing

4. It is important that each patient ..... comfortable.
a. was

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

10. Malak.....going shopping at the new mall.
a. advised b. demanded c. suggested d. warned

11. He told me .....be silly.
a. whether b. that c. to d. not to

12. The tour guide ..... the tourists not to go into the desert on their own.
a. encouraged b. advised c. warned d. b & c

13. The teacher ..... to punish me if I didn't keep quiet.
a. advised b. promised c. told d. threatened

14. We want the windows ..... before Friday.
a. be washed b. to wash c. washing d. to be washed

2 Special Cases

15. My friend recommends ..... "Oliver Twist "as it is interesting. *(LM)*
a. reading b. to read c. read d. not reading

16. My friend suggests ..... for the next bus because it is too late. *(LM)*
a. not waiting b. to waiting c. we waited d. don't wait

17. The policeman ..... the rash driver not to drive so fast. *(LM)*
a. made b. wondered c. instructed d. said

18. Ahmed recommended me ..... on the new course. (نموذج الوزارة الثاني ٢٠٢٠)
a. enrolling b. should enrol c. enrol d. to enrol

19. It is necessary that every student ..... a uniform.
a. wear b. wore c. had worn d. was wearing

20. Mido trained .....attack thieves.
a. to his dog b. his dog c. his dog to d. to his dog to

21. The doctors recommended that she ..... a holiday.
a. take b. takes c. has taken d. will take

22. My professor suggested ..... a chemistry course.
a. that I take b. me to taking c. to take d. me take

23. They demanded that the president ..... something about the situation.
a. do b. does c. has done d. were doing

24. It is important that each patient ..... comfortable.
a. was b. be c. were d. had

25. The landlord requested that Mamdouh ..... out of the apartment.
a. has moved b. will move c. move d. moves

26. We insist that more money ..... in education.
a. to be invested b. has invested c. was invested d. be invested

27. The boss asks that you ..... early for your first day of work.
a. to be b. be c. were d. had been

28. People demand that the hospital .....
a. be renewed b. was renewed c. renews d. renew

29. The psychologists recommended that the criminal ..... in prison.
a. puts b. is put c. be put d. has put

30. Mohammed ..... that his daughter take the medicine in time.
a. insisted b. said c. told d. wondered

31. It was important that everyone .....
a. enrol b. enrols c. is enroling d. has enrolled

32. It is essential that she ..... at the meeting.
a. have been b. does c. be d. was

3 Check your understanding

33. "Stop shouting at me, Rokaya." - Nada asked Rokaya .....
a. to shout at her. b. not to shout at her.
c. if she could shout at her. d. why she shouted at her.

34. "Give me back my money." - I wanted Omar to give .....
a. him back my money. b. me back his money.
c. me back my money. d. him back his money.

35. "Come here at five tomorrow, Mai."
- When we were in the club, I told Mai to .....
a. come here at five the following day.
b. come there at five the following day.
c. go here at five the following day.
d. go there at five the following day.

36. "If I were you, I'd accept the offer." - I advised Ahmed .....
a. to accept the offer. b. that he accept the offer.
c. that he should accept the offer. d. a, b & c

37. "Do you mind helping me, Sama?" - I asked Sama .....
a. to help me. b. if she helped me.
c. that she helped me. d. a & c

38. "What about going on a boat trip?" - Ahmed suggested .....
a. to go on a boat trip.
b. that we go on a boat trip.
c. going on a boat trip.
d. b & c

Advanced Exercise on Language

تنويه : الاسئلة التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. "Don't park there."
- The policeman said that we ..... park there.
a. didn't have to b. don't have to c. did not d. must not

2. It was essential that Nasser ..... late for work.
a. be b. be not c. not be d. doesn't be

3. He tries to study hard. It is important that he ..... .
a. tried b. was trying c. has tried d. try

4. It is crucial that you be there when the manager ..... .
a. arrive b. arrives c. arrived d. had arrived

5. The company asked that each employee ..... personal phone calls during business hours.
a. not accept b. doesn't accept
c. don't accept d. never accepts

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	d	- الفعل الناقص (must) هنا يدل علي القانون، فلا يتحول الي الأبعد، كما أنه لا يوجد اختيار أخر يؤدي معني صحيح
2.	c	- التعبير (It was essential) يأتي بعد المصدر الذي يتم نفيه بوضع (not) أمامه
3.	d	- فعل الجملة التي تأتي بعد التعبير (It is important) يكون في المصدر أو (should + inf.)
4.	b	- الجملة الثانوية بعد أداة الربط (when) لا تتأثر بوجودها بعد التعبير (It is crucial) .
5.	a	- فعل الجملة التي تأتي بعد التعبير (asked that)، وهو هنا منفي فيكون (not accept) .

Part II Skills

تنويه المهارات الخاصة بالوحدة تم شرحها متبوعة بالتدريبات فى ملحق (Master your skills) كل وحدة على حدة.

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

Translation الترجمة

① Choose the best Arabic translation :

1. You should stop criticizing others without objectivity. You should be positive and take effective steps towards giving back to the community, or at least appreciating what others are doing.

أ يجب أن تتوقف عن مجاملة الأخرين دون موضوعية. يجب أن تكون إيجابياً وتتخذ خطوات فعالة تجاه مساعدة الجميع، أو علي الأقل أن تُقَدَر ما يقوم به الأخرون.

ب يجب أن ننتقد الأخرين بموضوعية. يجب أن تكون إيجابياً وتتخذ خطوات فعالة تجاه رد الجميل للمجتمع، أو علي الأقل أن تُقَدَر ما يقوم به الأخرون.

جـ يجب أن تتوقف عن انتقاد الأخرين دون موضوعية. يجب أن تكون إيجابياً وتتخذ خطوات فعالة تجاه رد الجميل للمجتمع، أو علي الأقل أن تُقَدَر ما يقوم به الأخرون.

د يجب أن تتوقف عن انتقاد الأخرين دون موضوعية. يجب أن لا تكون سلبياً، وعليك أن تتخذ الخطوات الهامة تجاه رد الجميل للوالدين، أو علي الأقل أن تُقَدَر ما يقوم به الأخرون.

---

2. To write your own fable, you can choose to stay in the traditional vein of forest creatures, or you can try something new.

أ لكتابة حكايتك الرمزية الخاصة، يمكنك اختيار البقاء في السياق التقليدي لمخلوقات الغابة، أو يمكنك تجربة شيء جديد.

ب لكتابة حكايتك الخاصة، يمكنك اختيار البقاء في سياق مخلوقات الغابة، أو يمكنك تجربة شيء جديد.

جـ لكتابة خرافاتك الخاصة، يمكنك اختيار البقاء في السياق التقليدي لمخلوقات الغابة، أو يمكنك تجربة شيء جديد.

د لكتابة حكايتك الرمزية الخاصة، يمكنك اختيار البقاء في السياق التقليدي لمخلوقات الغابة، ولا يمكنك تجربة شيء جديد.

---

3. Don't expect to find a job that is all advantages; you will have to face hardships every now and then.

أ لا تتوقع أن تجد وظيفة بكل المزايا؛ فيكون عليك مواجهة المصاعب بين الحين والآخر.

ب لا تتوقع أن تجد وظيفة بلا مزايا؛ سيكون عليك مواجهة المصاعب بين الحين والآخر.

جـ لا تتوقع ألا تجد وظيفة لكل المزايا؛ سيكون عليك مواجهة المصاعب بين الحين والآخر.

د لا تتوقع أن تجد وظيفة بها كل المزايا؛ سيكون عليك مواجهة المصاعب بين الحين والآخر.

4. A moral is the lesson we get to learn from a situation in real life, or from reading a piece of writing.

أ. الخُلْق هو الدرس الذي نتعلمه من موقف في الحياة الواقعية، أو من قراءة قطعة من الكتابة.

ب. الدرس الأخلاقي هو الدرس الذي نتعلمه من موقف في الحياة الواقعية، أو من قراءة قطعة من الكتابة.

جـ. الأخلاق هي الدرس الذي تتعلمه مواقف الحياة الواقعية، أو من قراءة قطعة من الكتابة.

د. الأخلاق هي الدرس الذي نتعلمه من موقف في الحياة الواقعية، لا من قراءة قطعة من الكتابة.

② Choose the best English translation :

١. تنفق الدولة ملايين الجنيهات على ترميم وصيانة المواقع الأثرية القديمة لكونها جزء هام من تراثنا الثقافي.

a. The state spends millions of pounds on the restoration of ancient archaeological sites as they are an important part of our cultural heritage.

b. The state spends millions of pounds on the restoration and maintenance of ancient biological sites as they are an important part of our cultural heritage.

c. The state sends millions of pounds on the restoration and maintenance of ancient archaeological sites as they are an important part of our cultural heritage.

d. The state spends millions of pounds on the restoration and maintenance of ancient archaeological sites as they are an important part of our cultural heritage.

٢. إن ضغوط الحياة رغم شدتها لا يجب أن تكون عقبة أمام استمتاع جميع الناس بحياتهم.

a. The pressures of life, however their intensity, should not be an obstacle to all people enjoying their lives.

b. The pressures of life, despite their intensity, should be an obstacle to all people enjoying their lives.

c. The pressures of life, despite their intensity, should not be an obstacle to all people enjoying their lives.

d. The pressures of life, despite its intensity, should not be an obstacle to all people enjoying their lives.

٣. تتميز الحكاية الرمزية بأنها قصة قصيرة ذات لغة بسيطة تنتهي بدرس مستفاد يصلح في كل مكان وزمان.

a. The fable is characterized as a short story with simple language that ends with a lesson learned that is suitable for every place and time.

b. The myth is characterized as a short story with simple language that ends with a lesson learned that is suitable for every place and time.

c. The myth is characterized as a short story with simple language that ends with a lesson learned that is suitable for every place and time.

d. The novel is characterized as a short story with simple language that ends with a lesson learned that is suitable for every place and time.

---

٤. الأساطير القديمة لا تقوم على الواقع، بل تختلق شخصيات ذات قوي خارقة تدخل في صراع عنيف بين الخير والشر.

a. Ancient fables are not based on reality, but rather create supernatural characters who engage in a violent struggle between good and evil.

b. Ancient myths are not based on reality, but rather create supernatural characters who engage in a violent struggle between good and evil.

c. Ancient myths are not based in reality, but rather create supernatural characters who engage in a violent struggle between good and evil.

d. Ancient myths are based on reality, but rather create supernatural characters who engage in a violent struggle between good and evil.



Test on Unit 12

• Understand • Apply • Create

تنويه
للتدريب على أسئلة اختيارى MRQ بنك الأسئلة

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. To be ..... means behaving or speaking in a way that is correct for the social situation you are in, and showing that you are careful to consider other people's needs and feelings.
   a. humble b. generous c. polite d. fed up
2. War needs ..... people who do not fear death.
   a. modern-day b. generous c. brave d. fed up
3. You need more evidence to ..... your arguments.
   a. take b. support c. bring d. pay
4. "Mo Salah is a legendary footballer." In this utterance, the adjective 'legendary' is an antonym of .....
   a. unknown b. obscure c. a & b d. well-known
5. A joke doesn't make you laugh unless you understand its cultural .....
   a. context b. dove c. hunter d. argument
6. The moral is the ..... of a novel, a story or a film.
   a. trap b. trick c. tale d. purpose
7. A ..... is a practical lesson about what to do or how to behave, which you learn from a story or from something that happens to you.
   a. moral b. perspective c. conclusion d. creature
8. Something that is 'entertaining' is ..... .
   a. boring b. amusing c. interesting d. b & c
9. He ..... he wouldn't be able to sleep until he had finished it.
   a. asked b. wondered c. said d. told
10. She asked me whether ..... there before.
    a. I had been b. I went c. I go d. had I been
11. My uncle promises he ..... wait for me at home.
    a. would b. will c. can d. may
12. My father wondered where his keys ..... .
    a. put b. are putting c. were put d. are put
13. He asked me ..... I had had lunch or not or not.
    a. whether b. weather c. if d. a & c
14. I asked her if she was enjoying the novel she ..... .
    a. read b. was reading c. will read d. would read

15. "If I were you, I'd take your coat."
– My mother ..... me to take my coat.
a. advised b. recommended c. suggested d. explained

16. "Do exercise 2 again," said Leila.
– Leila asked ..... exercise 2 again.
a. to do b. that I do c. whether I do d. if I did

Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

At the start of the Civil War, the people in the state of Tennessee struggled with the decision of whether to stay with the Union or to join the Confederacy. Eventually, the state would be the last to **secede**. However, there were people living in the state who would remain loyal to the Union. One such person was Captain William Driver. Driver is best known for a special flag he owned and hid during the Civil War, affectionately called "Old Glory."

William Driver was born in 1803 and was apprenticed to a blacksmith. Hating his situation, Driver ran away and became a cabin boy on a ship. His father told him not to come home until he had his own ship and was captain. Eventually, Driver did become a captain of his own ship. The people of his hometown in Salem, Massachusetts, were all very proud of Driver and made him a huge flag that was twelve feet by twenty-four feet, which he nicknamed "Old Glory." Driver eventually sailed around the world and even rescued the descendants of the crew that had mutinied against their captain on the British ship the *HMS* Bounty.

Later, Driver would retire to Nashville, Tennessee, leaving the sea behind and becoming a clerk at his brother's store. During the Civil War, he hid "Old Glory" by sewing the flag into a quilt. When Tennessee was taken over by Union soldiers, the soldiers asked Driver to raise his flag over the state's capitol. As people heard about Driver and his flag, others began calling the American flag "Old Glory," a nickname that is still used today for the flag of the United States of America.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

17. What is the best title for this passage?
a. William's fast ship b. Old Glory
c. A brave captain d. A valueless flag

18. How do you think Driver felt towards the flag?
a. The flag represented his loyalty to the Union.
b. The flag was a memento from his younger days.
c. It reminded him of being a captain of his own ship.
d. The flag was not special to Driver.

19. The moral that we can get from the text is ..... .
a. you should do your best to achieve yours goals
b. you should always achieve others' goals
c. you should have your own ship on time
d. you should retire when you become old

20. Why do you think William Driver hid the American flag during the Civil War?
a. He knew that the large flag would make his quilt thicker and warmer.
b. He liked the feeling of safety he had being covered with the American flag.
c. He wanted to hide the flag from his neighbours in Salem, Massachusetts.
d. He was worried the Confederates would take or harm the Union flag.

21. The second paragraph deals with ..... .
a. William's education
b. Sewing William's flag
c. Captain William's life
d. Buying William's ship

22. What can you infer يستنتج about William Driver?
a. He rarely finished anything he started.
b. He was a person with an extremely strong will.
c. He had become sick of the ocean as he aged.
d He missed his days as captain of his own ship.

23. The meaning of the word "**secede**" according to the passage is to ..... .
a. win
b. lose
c. remain
d. leave

24. What happened at the end?
a. The Union soldiers controlled the state.
b. The state joined the Confederacy.
c. William was taken to prison by the soldiers.
d. William went mad after his failure.

Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

The victory of the small Greek democracy of Athens over the mighty Persian empire in 490 BC is one of the most famous events in history. Darius, king of the Persian empire, was furious because Athens had

interceded for the other Greek city-states in revolt against Persian domination. In anger the king sent an enormous army to defeat Athens. He thought it would take drastic steps to pacify the rebellious part of the empire.

Persia was ruled by one man. In Athens, however, all citizens helped to rule. Ennobled by this participation, Athenians were prepared to die for their city-state. Perhaps this was the secret of the remarkable victory at Marathon, which freed them from Persian rule. On their way to Marathon, the Persians tried to fool some Greek city-states by claiming to have come in peace. The frightened citizens of Delos refused to believe this. Not wanting to abet the conquest of Greece, they fled from their city and did not return until the Persians had left. They were wise, for the Persians next conquered the city of Etria and captured its people.

Tiny Athens stood alone against Persia. The Athenian people went to their sanctuaries. There they prayed for deliverance. They asked their gods to expedite their victory. The Athenians refurbished their weapons and moved to the plain of Marathon, where their little band would meet the Persians. At the last moment, soldiers from Plataea reinforced the Athenian troops.

The Athenian army attacked, and Greek citizens fought bravely. The power of the mighty Persians was offset by the love that the Athenians had for their city. Athenians defeated the Persians in archery and hand combat. Greek soldiers seized Persian ships and burned them, and the Persians fled in terror. Herodotus, a famous historian, reports that 6400 Persians died, compared with only 192 Athenians.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

25. The city mentioned in the last paragraph is ..... .
    a. Persia b. Athens c. Greece d. Etria
26. What mainly enabled the Athenians to defeat the Persians is ..... .
    a. their great army b. their love for their city
    c. the desire to take revenge d. the desire to invade another country
27. Athens had ..... the other Greek city-states against the Persians.
    a. wanted to fight b. intervened on behalf of
    c. given orders for all to fight d. defeated
28. Darius took drastic steps to ..... the rebellious Athenians.
    a. duplicate b. placate c. weaken d. destroy
29. The Athenians were ..... by some soldiers who arrived from Plataea.
    a. captured b. welcomed c. strengthened d. held

30. The weakness point of the Persians was that .....
a. they had a vast empire
b. there was a conflict over power
c. they were less in number
d. they suffered from individual rule

31. The writer of this text is interested in .....
a. science
b. history
c. the techniques of writing
d. mysteries

32. Which of the following sentences summarises the last paragraph?
a. The war was lost.
b. The war was fruitful.
c. The citizens were coward.
d. Democracy beats dictatorship.

Choose the best Arabic translation :

33. To provide a comfortable life for its nation, the government should offer good services.

أ. لتوفير حياة مريحة لوطنها ، يجب على الحكومة تقديم خدمات مريحة.
ب. لتوفير معيشة مريحة لشعبها، كان يجب على الحكومة تقديم بعض الخدمات الجيدة.
جـ. يجب على الحكومة تقديم خدمات جيدة لتوفير حياة مريحة لشعبها.
د. كان يجب على الحكومة تقديم بعض الخدمات الجيدة لتوفير حياة بسيطة لشعبها.

34. Our great big cities don't suit modern living because of the great increase in population.

أ. لا تتناسب مدننا الكبيرة مع الحياة المعاصرة بسبب الزيادة الكبيرة فى عدد السكان.
ب. لا تتناسب مدننا الحديثة مع الحياة الكبيرة بسبب الزيادة الواسعة فى عدد السكان.
جـ. تتناسب مدننا الكبيرة مع الحياة المعاصرة بسبب الزيادة المفرطة فى عدد السكان.
د. لا تتناسب مدننا الكبيرة مع الحياة المعاصرة بسبب الزيادة المحددة فى عدد السكان.

Choose the best English translation :

٣٥. تتمتع مصر بالكثير من المواقع الأثرية القديمة والمنتجعات السياحية الحديثة ، مما يجعلها واحدة من أكثر الدول الجاذبة للسياح.

a. Egypt has many ancient historical sites and modern tourist resorts which makes it one of the most attractive countries for tourists.

b. Egypt has many old historical sites and modern terrorist hotels which makes it one of the most countries for tourists.

c. Egypt has much ancient historical sites and modern tourist resorts which makes it one of the most interactive countries for tourists.

d. Egypt has many old historical sites and modern tourist hotels which made it the most attractive countries for tourists.

٣٦. نحتاج أن نضع حد أقصى للأجور في الوظائف الحكومية ووظائف القطاع العام، لتحقيق العدالة بين كل الناس.

a. We should have maximum wages for environmental jobs and the jobs of public sector to believe the justice between all people.

b. We should have minimum salaries for governmental jobs and the jobs of private section to achieve the justice between all people.

c. We should have maximum wages for governmental jobs and the jobs of public sector to achieve the justice between all people.

d. We should have minimum salaries for environmental jobs and the jobs of public section to achieve the justice between all people.

✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Read this paragraph and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

The primary purpose of mass media is to reach out to the general public and inform them. Moreover, it analyses and observes our surroundings in order to deliver information in the form of news. As a result, the general public is continually informed about not only their immediate surroundings but also the rest of the world. This is how the media **disseminates** and perceives information. Weather forecasts, for example, enable individuals and farmers to plan ahead. Fishermen, likewise, receive information on tidal activity from the news. Furthermore, the media works to preserve the fabric of our social heritage by showcasing our rituals, mythology, and civilisation.

37. What is the main idea of this essay? *(LM)*
    a. The disadvantages of the mass media.
    b. The merits and demerits of the mass media.
    c. The role of the mass media.
    d. How to avoid being badly affected by the mass media.

38. According to the paragraph, the news provides information on ..... to fishermen. *(LM)*
    a. kinds of water
    b. tides
    c. species of fish
    d. quiet waves

39. Furthermore, it analyses and observes our surroundings in order to deliver information in the form of news. In this sentence, "Furthermore" shows ..... . *(LM)*
    a. addition
    b. contrast
    c. cause
    d. contrast

40. Which of the following is punctuated correctly? *(LM)*
    a. You don't know your 20 year-old neighbour well, do you?
    b. You don't know your 20-year-old neighbour well, do you?
    c. You don't know your 20-year old neighbour well do you?
    d. You don t know your 20-year old neighbour well, do you?

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha.com

1.	a	b	c	d	21.	a	b	c	d		
2.	a	b	c	d	22.	a	b	c	d		
3.	a	b	c	d	23.	a	b	c	d		
4.	a	b	c	d	24.	a	b	c	d		
5.	a	b	c	d	25.	a	b	c	d		
6.	a	b	c	d	26.	a	b	c	d		
7.	a	b	c	d	27.	a	b	c	d		
8.	a	b	c	d	28.	a	b	c	d		
9.	a	b	c	d	29.	a	b	c	d		
10.	a	b	c	d	30.	a	b	c	d		
11.	a	b	c	d	31.	a	b	c	d		
12.	a	b	c	d	32.	a	b	c	d		
13.	a	b	c	d	33.	د	ج	ب	أ		
14.	a	b	c	d	34.	د	ج	ب	أ		
15.	a	b	c	d	35.	a	b	c	d		
16.	a	b	c	d	36.	a	b	c	d		
17.	a	b	c	d	37.	a	b	c	d		
18.	a	b	c	d	38.	a	b	c	d		
19.	a	b	c	d	39.	a	b	c	d		
20.	a	b	c	d	40.	a	b	c	d		

General Exercises
for Al Azhar students on Unit 12

تنويه
للمزيد من التدريبات للأزهر الشريف - بنك الأسئلة

1. Finish the following dialogue :

Yasser is interviewing his neighbour, who is a scientist, to ask about his work for a school project.

Yasser : Hello, Mr Ibrahim. May I ask you some questions about your work for a school project ?

Mr Ibrahim : Yes, of course, Yasser. (1) ..... ?

Yasser : First of all, what kind of research do you do ?

Mr Ibrahim : I'm an agricultural researcher. I'm studying how to grow cotton using less water.

Yasser : (2) ..... ?

Mr Ibrahim : Yes, it is important work.

Yasser : What's your favourite part of the work ?

Mr Ibrahim : My favourite part of the work is being outside.

Yasser : How much time do you spend outside in your work ?

Mr Ibrahim : (3) ..... .

2. Write a paragraph of one hundred and twenty (120) words on :

"A story with an exciting end"

.....

3. Translate into Arabic :

- To remain employable, individuals must be good at the jobs they are doing and predict what skills they may need in the future.

.....

4. Translate into English :

- لابد أن تتقبل العمل مع آخرين تختلف معهم وقد لا تحبهم وإلا ستفشل فى حياتك العملية.

.....

5. Answer the following question : (Islamic Selections) :

Who had hurt the Muslim immigrants before the battle of Badr ?

.....

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

Part I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary & Derivatives المفردات الرئيسية والمشتقات

audience(n)	الجماهير
aware(adj)	علي علم بـ
bilingual(adj)	ثنائي اللغة
case(n)	حالة/وَضْع
celebrate(d)(v)	يحتفل بـ
cheerful(adj)	مُبتهِج
comedian(n)	مُمثِّل كوميدي
cool(adj)	جذاب
corn(n)	الذُّرة
danger(n)	خَطَر
destroy(ed)(v)	يُدمِّر
die out (phr. v)	ينقرض/يندثر
dominant(adj)	سائد/مُسَيطِّر
drama(n)	مسلسل
earthquake(n)	زلزال
embrace(d)(v)	يحتضن/يحتوي
escape(d)(v)	يهرب
frightened(adj)	خائف
full(adj)	ممتلئ (شبعان)
generation(n)	جيل
grand(adj)	فَخم - كَبير
grapes(n)	العنب
hanging adj)	مُعَلَّق
historian(n)	مُؤرِّخ
identity(n)	هويَّة/شخصية
illustration(n)	رسم توضيحى - توضيح
majority(n)	أغلبية
man-made(adj)	من صُنع الإنسان
multicultural(adj)	مُتعدِّد الثقافات
native(adj)	أصلي
originally(adv)	في الأصل
peas(n)	بازلاء/ بسلّة
plot(n)	حبكة القصة
politicians(n)	السياسيون
population(n)	السكان
pride(n)	الفخر/الكبرياء
proof(n)	دليل/برهان
quiet(n)	الهدوء
raise(d)(v)	يُربِّى - يرفع
recommend(ed)(v)	يُزكِّي/يوصي بـ
relevant(adj)	ذو صِلة / مُرتبط
remain(ed)(v)	يبقى / يظل
ruin(ed)(v)	يُدمِّر
serve(d)(v)	يُقدِّم
streaming(adj)	بَثٌّ مباشر
supply(ied)(v)	يَمدّ/يُزوِّد
transport(ed)(v)	ينقُل
unreal(adj)	غير حقيقي
vast(adj)	كبير/هائل
view(n)	رأي/وجهة نظر
Wales(n)	ويلز

imaginary(n)	خيالي	Welsh(n/adj)	ويلزي
immerse(d)(v)	يغمُر - ينغمس	Welsh-speaking(adj)	يتحدث اللغة الويلزية
irrigation(n)	الري	widely(adv)	على نطاق واسع
luxury(n)	رفاهية	wonders(n)	عجائب

Part II Language Study

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

come	true	يتحقق	have	pride in	لديه شعور بالفخر
feel	like	يشعُر وكأنه	set	a goal	يضع هدفاً
feel	safe	يشعر بالأمان	take	place	يحدُث
get	fed up with	يسأم من	take	pride in	يفتخر به

2 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

angry-looking	يبدو عليه الغضب	rise from ... to ...	يرتفع من ... إلى ...
close enough to	قريب بما يكفي من	road signs	لافتات الطريق
die out	ينقرض/يندثر	run for their lives	يهربون للنجاة بحياتهم
fact sheet	مَلَفّ حقائق	set off(to)	ينطلق (إلي)
If this was the case	لو كان الأمر هكذا	supply ... with	يمد ... بـ
in luxury	في رفاهية	thanks to	بفضل
irrigation system	نظام الرَّي	the country	الريف
just a generation ago	منذ جيل واحد فقط	the countryside	الريف
just in time	في الوقت المناسب تماماً	the Hanging Gardens of Babylon	حدائق بابل المُعلَّقة
language classes	دروس اللغة	the Seven Wonders of the World	عجائب الدنيا السبع
man-made	من صُنع الإنسان	TV dramas	المسلسلات التليفزيونية
miss part of my own identity	أفتقد جزء من هويتي	using social media	استخدام وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
on the point of	علي وشك	vast majority	الغالبية العُظمَى
public-action groups	جماعات الحِراك الاجتماعي	Welcome to	أهلاً بكم في

Reading

1 Reading Text

Welsh saved from extinction

Just a generation[1] ago, the Welsh[2] language was on the point of dying out[3] completely, joining the hundreds of other languages which are no longer spoken.



Growing up in West Wales in the 1950s and 1960s, Tony Evans was very aware[4] that his native[5] language was not relevant[6]. 'Although I was born and grew up in a Welsh-speaking[7] area, at school we were taught mostly in English; everything round us was in English. It was being predicted that there would be no Welsh speakers by the end of the century.'

Thanks to politicians[8] and public action groups like the Welsh Language Society, Welsh is widely[9] spoken in Wales[10] today, and has even become 'cool'[11]. There are many children who have been raised[12] to speak Welsh as their first language, and only speak English outside the home. The number of speakers has risen from 726,000 in 2008 to 874,700. The vast[13] majority[14] are bilingual[15]. The government in Wales has set a goal of one million Welsh speakers by 2050, out of a population[16] of around 3.5 million. Road signs are in Welsh and English, and there are Welsh-language TV channels.

There certainly seems to have been a cultural change in the country; young people today have pride in being Welsh. People are embracing[17] Welsh culture, streaming[18] pop bands such as Alffa and singers like Gwenno TV dramas[19] such as Hinterland, which were originally produced for Welsh speakers, have become popular with wider audiences[20] through streaming services.

(SB page 72)

Check Vocabulary

(1) جيل
(2) ويلزي
(3) ينقرض/ينمحي
(4) علي علم بـ
(5) أصلي
(6) ذو صلة / مُرتبط
(7) يتحدث اللغة الويلزية
(8) السياسيون
(9) علي نطاق واسع
(10) ويلز
(11) جذاب
(12) يُربّي
(13) كبير/هائل
(14) أغلبية
(15) ثنائي اللغة
(16) السكان
(17) يحتضن/يحتوي
(18) بثّ مباشر
(19) أعمال درامية
(20) الجماهير

The well-known Welsh comedian(21) Kiri Pritchard-McClean was born in Wales in 1986, but is only now learning the language. 'I love the country, I love the countryside, I love the history. But I can't speak the language ... I feel like I am missing part of my own identity(22) by not speaking it.'

She is just one of many Welsh people who are taking pride in their culture and choosing to celebrate(23) what makes them different.

(21) ممثل كوميدي
(22) هوية/شخصية
(23) يحتفل بـ

Town mouse and country mouse

(SB page 74)



Once upon a time there were two mice who were cousins. One mouse lived in a small simple house in the country. The other mouse lived in a large grand(1) house in the city. One day the city mouse went to visit his cousin in the country.

Check Vocabulary

(1) فخم - كبير
(2) يُقدِّم
(3) بازلاء / بسلة
(4) الذرة
(5) مُبتهج
(6) الهدوء
(7) بقايا
(8) العنب

The country mouse was very happy to see the city mouse. He invited him to lunch. He served(2) a simple meal of fresh peas(3) and corn(4). As they were eating the city mouse became less cheerful(5). Suddenly he said,

"Dear cousin, don't you get fed up with such simple food?"

"I'm sorry, cousin but this is what we eat most of the time in the country".

The city mouse invited the country mouse to the city. "We have such wonderful food in the city that I'm sure you won't want to return to the country."

So, the city mouse and the country mouse set off to-the city. They arrived that evening. The country mouse saw that his cousin lived in a very grand house.

"Quiet(6) please', the city mouse said as they entered the house through a tiny hole in the wall. 'We don't want anyone to hear us."

He took his cousin into the dining room and climbed up on to a huge table, where there were the remains(7) of a delicious meal.

"This is how we eat every day in the city" said the city mouse.

"There was enough food to feed a hundred mice; grapes(8), chocolate cake, cheese and special bread.

I've never eaten such fine food. I'm too full[9] to eat another thing " said the country mouse.

Then both mice suddenly heard a noise. An angry looking cat appeared in the dining room. The two mice ran quickly and escaped[10] just in time.

The country mouse was so frightened[11] that he couldn't speak. He had never been in such danger[12] before.

He thought about his simple house in the country and realised how much better he would like it there. So he left the big house and went back to the country where he felt safe and happy.

(9) معدتي امتلأت
(10) هربوا
(11) خائف
(12) خطر

Myths about the Hanging Gardens of Babylon

(SB page 75)

The Hanging[1] Gardens of Babylon are thought to have been built in the ancient city of Babylon. Even though there is no proof[2] that they actually existed, they are considered to be one of the Seven Wonders[3] of the Ancient World.



Check Vocabulary

(1) مُعَلَّق
(2) دليل/برهان
(3) عجائب
(4) مؤرِّخ
(5) حالة/وضع
(6) ينقل
(7) الري
(8) يمدّ / يزوّد
(9) آراء - وجهات نظر

Why do we think they might have existed?

Several ancient Roman and Greek writers wrote about the gardens. They wrote about why there were built, how they were built, and the size of the gardens. They even described how the gardens were watered. One Greek historian[4] named Diodorus Siculus described the gardens as being 400 feet wide and 400 feet long. He said that the walls were more than 80 feet high.

If this was the case[5] the water must have been transported[6] to the top of the gardens by some kind of irrigation[7] system (a system to supply[8] the land with water so plants will grow).

There were lots of different views [9] on why the gardens were built and who they were built for. The most popular idea was that the gardens were built by King Nebuchadnezzar II to make his wife happy.

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

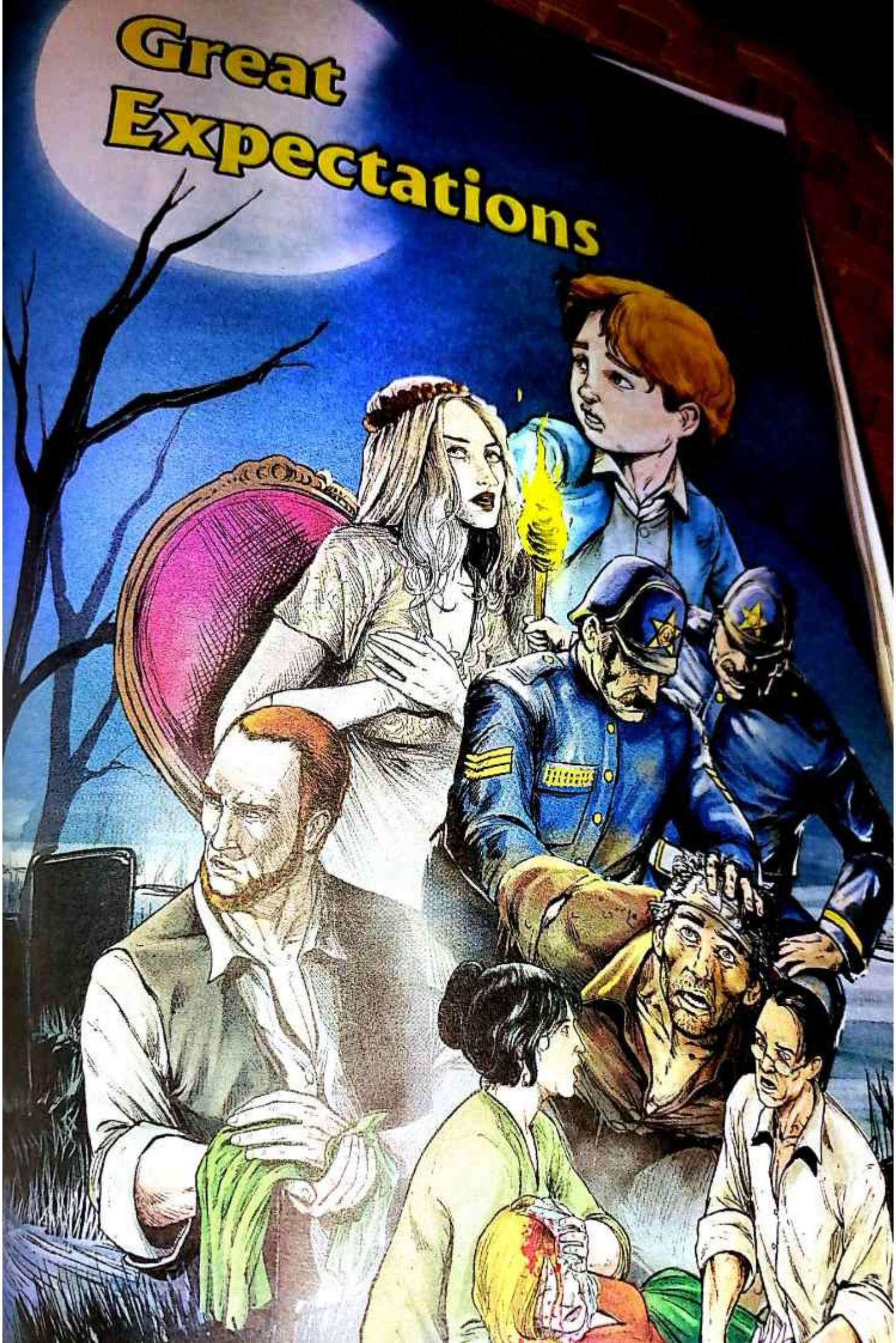
If they did exist, what happened to the gardens ?

Some historians think they might have been ruined(10) by war. Others believe that they could have been destroyed(11) by earthquakes(12).

Although we might never know the truth about the Hanging Gardens we can certainly say that if they did exist, they must have been the most beautiful man-made(13) gardens ever created.

(10) يدمر
(11) يدمر
(12) زلازل
(13) من صنع الإنسان

احرص على اقتناء
EL-MOASSER
فى
اللغة الإنجليزية
المراجعة النهائية
للصف 3 الثانوى


Great
Expectations



Pip

Village boy aspiring to more



Miss Havisham

Rich, grim, secluded lady



Mrs. Gargery

Pip's cruel older sister

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com



Joe Gargery

Pip's kindhearted brother-in-law; a blacksmith



Estella

Miss Havisham's ward; beautiful and aloof



Magwitch / Provis

Pip's "convict" and secret benefactor



Mr. Jaggers & Wemmick

London lawyer and his clerk

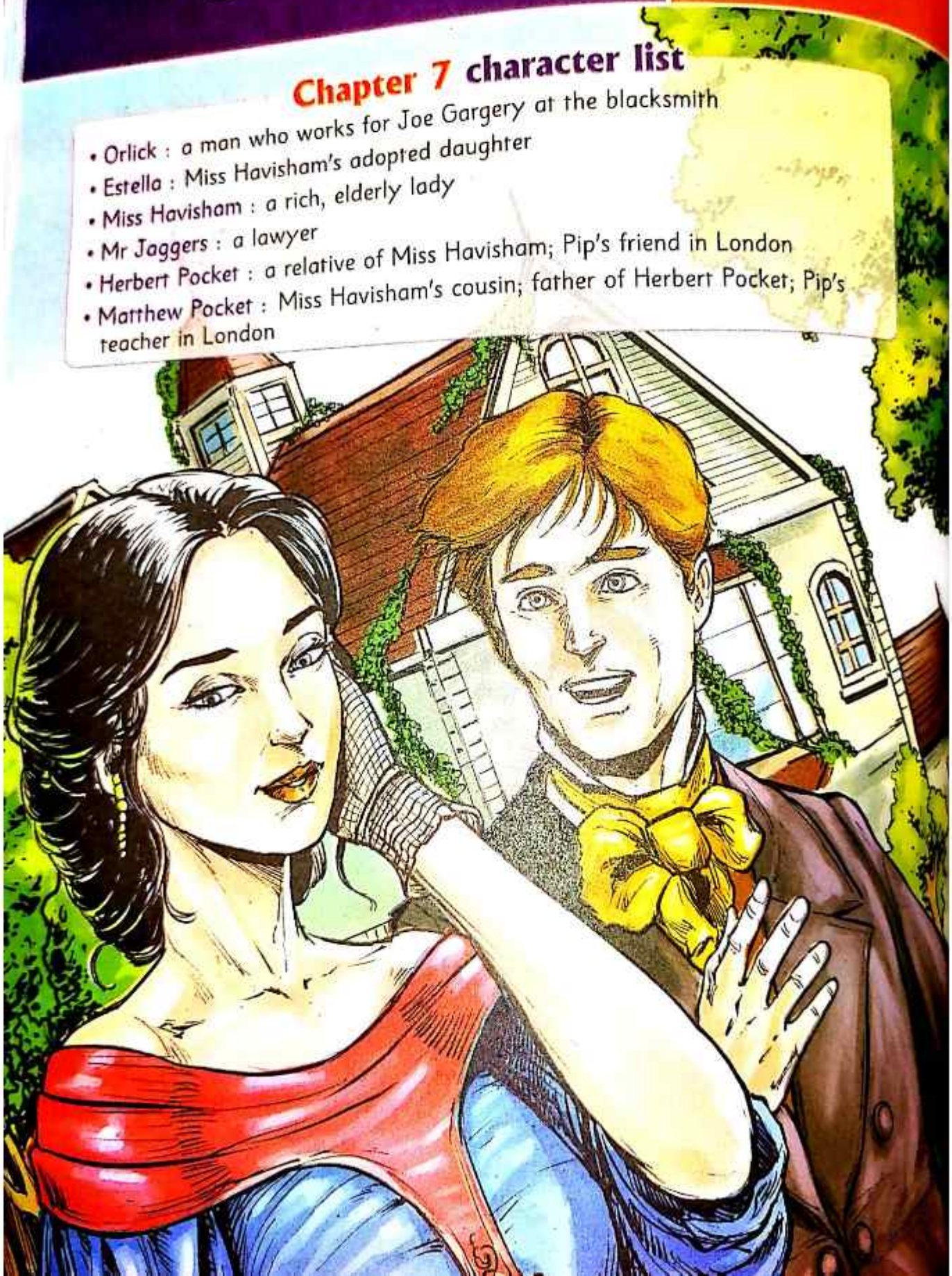
- Philip Pirrip (PIP) : a young man; the main character
- Mrs Joe : Pip's older sister
- Joe Gargery : the husband of Pip's older sister; a blacksmith
- Mr Pumblechook / Uncle Pumblechook : Joe's uncle
- A convict
- Biddy : teacher and friend to Pip, Joe and Mrs Joe
- Miss Havisham : a rich, elderly lady
- Estella : a young lady who lives with Miss Havisham / Miss Havisham's adopted daughter.
- Sarah, Georgiana, Camilla and Raymond pocket : Miss Havisham's relatives اقارب
- Orlick : a man who works for Joe at the blacksmith
- Mr Wopsle : a friend of Mr and Mrs Gargery
- Mr Jaggers : a lawyer
- Matthew pocket : Miss Havisham's cousin; father of Herbert pocket; Pip's teacher in London
- Mr Wemmick : Mr. Jagger's clerk
- Sarah pocket : a relative of Miss Havisham
- Herbert pocket : a relative of Miss Havisham; who pip will live with in London / son of Pip's teacher Pip's friend in London.
- Miss Havisham's half-brother
- Miss Havisham's fiancé
- Startop : a man who is staying with Herbert pocket and Pip / Pip's friend and house-mate
- Bently Drummle : a man who is staying with Herbert pocket and Pip / Pip's house-mate
- Molly : Mr Jaggers' housekeeper
- Two convicts
- Magwitch : the convict Pip helped to escape

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

CHAPTER 7

Chapter 7 character list

- Orlick : a man who works for Joe Gargery at the blacksmith
- Estella : Miss Havisham's adopted daughter
- Miss Havisham : a rich, elderly lady
- Mr Jaggers : a lawyer
- Herbert Pocket : a relative of Miss Havisham; Pip's friend in London
- Matthew Pocket : Miss Havisham's cousin; father of Herbert Pocket; Pip's teacher in London



Vocabulary

unpleasant surprise	مفاجأة غير سارة	take a walk	، فى تمشية
let me in	سمح لى بالدخول	keep away from	. عن
gatekeeper	حارس البوابة (العقار)	feel guilty	ر بالذنب
elegant	أنيق	adore	ق
recognise	يتعرف على	luggage	ة
proud	فخور - مغرور	purse	ظة نقود
rude	وقح	gloomy	ب
cruel	قاس	wealthy lady	ة ثرية
decision	قرار	relatives	رب
remind	يُذكر	jealous (of)	ور من
whisper	يهمس	influence	ر على
a knock on	طرقه على	set off	أ (رحلة)
recover	يستعيد وعيه - يشفى	clients	ملاء / زبائن
obviously	بوضوح	call on	ور
dismiss	يطرد	sigh	نهد

Early the next morning, at the gate to Miss Havisham's house, I had an unpleasant surprise. Orlick let me in. He told me that he was Miss Havisham's gatekeeper now. I felt worried and I went to see her at once.



As I entered her room, I found that neither she nor her house had changed at all since my last visit more than a year ago.

Then I noticed an elegant lady sitting next to Miss Havisham. When she looked up and I could see her face, I realised it was Estella!

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

Vocabulary

unpleasant surprise	مفاجأة غير سارة	take a walk	يذهب فى تمشية
let me in	سمح لى بالدخول	keep away from	يبتعد عن
gatekeeper	حارس البوابة (العقار)	feel guilty	يشعر بالذنب
elegant	أنيق	adore	يعشق
recognise	يتعرف على	luggage	أمتعة
proud	فخور - مغرور	purse	محفظة نقود
rude	وقح	gloomy	كئيب
cruel	قاس	wealthy lady	سيدة ثرية
decision	قرار	relatives	أقارب
remind	يُذكر	jealous (of)	غيور من
whisper	يهمس	influence	يؤثر على
a knock on	طرقه على	set off	يبدأ (رحلة)
recover	يستعيد وعيه - يشفى	clients	عملاء / زبائن
obviously	بوضوح	call on	يزور
dismiss	يطرد	sigh	يتنهد



Early the next morning, at the gate to Miss Havisham's house, I had an unpleasant surprise. Orlick let me in. He told me that he was Miss Havisham's gatekeeper now. I felt worried and I went to see her at once.

As I entered her room, I found that neither she nor her house had changed at all since my last visit more than a year ago.

Then I noticed an elegant lady sitting next to Miss Havisham. When she looked up and I could see her face, I realised it was Estella!

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

She was more beautiful than ever, but she made me feel like a poor working boy again.

'Has Estella changed much, Pip?' asked Miss Havisham.

'Yes, at first, I didn't recognise her', I began. 'But now I can see ....'

'What? Please don't say that she is the Estella you knew!' Miss Havisham said, annoyed.

'That Estella was proud and rude to you.

Don't you remember ?'

'Well, perhaps, but it was a very long time ago,' I said, not quite sure of myself.

Estella agreed with Miss Havisham that she had been unkind to me.

'Has Pip changed?' Miss Havisham asked her.

'Very much,' Estella replied.

Miss Havisham laughed, and told us to walk together in the garden.

'As you have become a fine gentleman, I expect you have new friends,' Estella said.

'The ones you had in the village wouldn't be good enough now, would they ?'

I agreed with her. And at that moment, I made the decision not to see Joe again.

'Do you remember when you were cruel to me?' I asked Estella.

She looked at me in surprise.

"You made me sad then,' I told her.

'I don't remember,' she replied. 'But, you know, I have no heart; I am neither kind nor good!'

As she spoke, she reminded me of someone, but I did not know who it was. I forgot the idea, thinking instead how beautiful she was. But she was still so cold!

Later, when I was alone with Miss Havisham, I told her that everyone must love Estella.

'Love her! Love her! Love her!' Miss Havisham replied. 'If she is cruel, love her! If she breaks your heart, love her! I made her what she is - to be loved!'

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

Then she whispered, 'I'll tell you what real love is! It is giving your heart to someone completely – just as I did!'

She fell back in her chair with a loud cry. As I tried to help her, there was a knock on the door and Mr Jaggers entered. I did not know why he had come, but Miss Havisham recovered almost at once.

'Do come in, Mr Jaggers,' she said.

She was obviously expecting him, and thanked him for arriving on time.

That evening, as we all ate dinner together, I noticed that Mr Jaggers did not look at Estella at all. But she looked at him often. It gave me a strange feeling.

As soon as possible, I told Mr Jaggers how worried I was to see Orlick again. I was sure that Miss Havisham was not safe with him as her gatekeeper.

'Leave it to me!' he replied, and he promised to dismiss Orlick.

Estella planned to visit London soon, and I had agreed to meet her off the coach when she arrived. I was secretly delighted and could not sleep that night. 'I love her! I love her! I love her!' I thought, again and again. I was now sure that Miss Havisham wanted me to marry Estella.

In the morning, as I took a walk through the village, I saw several people that I knew. I did not speak to any of them, however; I was too proud of myself and my new life. I also kept away from Joe, but feeling guilty that I had not seen him, I sent him a present before I left.

On my return to London, I told Herbert about my feelings for Estella. 'I adored her before, but I adore her twice as much now!' I said.

'She will make you unhappy,' he replied. 'You should try to forget her!'

I knew that would be impossible.

When Estella arrived in London, some weeks later, I thought once again that she reminded me of someone.

'But who could it be?' I asked myself.

Estella climbed out of the coach. In her new coat, she seemed more beautiful than ever before.

She stood outside the inn while I brought her luggage to her. Then I asked where she was going.

'I am going in a carriage to Richmond,' she answered, 'and you are coming with me. You must take this purse and pay for everything!

We are not free to do what we want, you know; we have to follow our instructions.'

She did not seem annoyed that I was going with her, however.

While we waited for a carriage to arrive, we went into the inn to drink some tea. The room that we sat in was dark and gloomy, but I was happy because Estella was with me. Then Estella told me that she would be staying with a wealthy lady, who would be paid to introduce her to suitable people in London.

'Do you like your teacher, Mr Matthew Pocket?' she asked, after a few moments.

'As much as I could like anyone who is not you!' I replied.

'You silly boy!' said Estella, 'how can you say that ? To return to Mr Matthew Pocket; I am sure that he is a much better person than some other members of his family! They are Miss Havisham's relatives, you know, and they are jealous of you. I have heard them complain about you! But Miss Havisham refuses to discuss you with them, so they cannot influence her.'

A carriage soon arrived, and we set off to Richmond.

On the way, we saw the walls of Newgate Prison. I told Estella that Mr Jaggers visited his clients there, and knew all the secrets of that terrible place.

'He knows the secrets of every place, I think!' Estella replied. 'I have known him for most of my life, but I know him no better now than I did when I was a small child. How well do you know him?' she asked.

'I have had dinner at his house,' I said.

'That must be a very interesting place,' replied Estella.

Just then, our carriage passed under a street light and I knew again that she reminded me of someone.

We continued our journey, passing Mr Matthew Pocket's house in Hammersmith on the way. I invited Estella to visit me there, and she told me that I was expected to call on her, in Richmond.

'And, Pip,' she sighed, 'Miss Havisham wants me to write to her often, to say how I am, where I have been, and what I have worn. She has given me nearly all of her jewellery, you know!'

This was the first time that Estella had called me Pip!

I was delighted, and thought it would be wonderful if I married Estella and lived in Richmond with her. But in my heart, I knew the truth; Estella would never make me happy.



MASTER YOUR SKILLS

اتقن المهارات اللغوية

EL-MONASSER

فى اللغة الانجليزية

امنح ثقتك لمن يستحق

Check your Understanding Chapter 7

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. One of her disadvantages that she is very ..... of her friends.
   a. cheerful b. friendly c. generous d. jealous
2. What do you complain ..... ? The device works well.
   a. out b. about c. on d. with
3. What a/an ..... suit? How much is it?
   a. delicious b. dull c. elegant d. ugly
4. The detective asked the ..... if he saw anyone entering the house, but he said no.
   a. activist b. sociologist c. publisher d. gatekeeper
5. Don't be ..... ; they won't accept this bad offer.
   a. silly b. sensitive c. suspicious d. scared
6. Can you tell me ..... why you were angry with me?
   a. obviously b. likely c. fortunately d. cruelly
7. Disobeying the rules results in being ..... .
   a. rewarded b. promoted c. honoured d. dismissed
8. A/An ..... was an important means of transport in the past.
   a. electric car b. spacecraft c. carriage d. airplane
9. What have you done? I can't ..... any change in the car.
   a. do b. notice c. excuse d. accuse
10. We were over the moon when my father ..... .
    a. spread b. recovered c. imprisoned d. deteriorated

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

Definitions :

1. ..... means feeling unhappy because someone has something that you wish you had.
   a. Jealous b. Stingy c. Wealthy d. Balanced
2. To get better from an illness or injury is to ..... .
   a. redo b. reply c. recover d. retreat

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

3. To ..... means to have an effect on the way someone behaves.
a. include b. influence c. create d. conclude

4. A person whose job is to guard the entrance is called a/an ..... .
a. fighter b. operator c. gatekeeper d. expert

5. To ..... is to make someone leave their job.
a. boast b. boost c. impress d. dismiss

6. Having an attractive and graceful appearance means ..... .
a. elegant b. uninteresting c. annoying d. tolerant

7. To ..... is to say something very quietly.
a. spy b. crawl c. climb d. whisper

8. Someone who pays a person for a service or advice is a/an ..... .
a. employee b. waiter c. client d. attendant

9. A/An ..... is a metal tool with rough surfaces for shaping or smoothing metal.
a. gun b. foil c. axe d. file

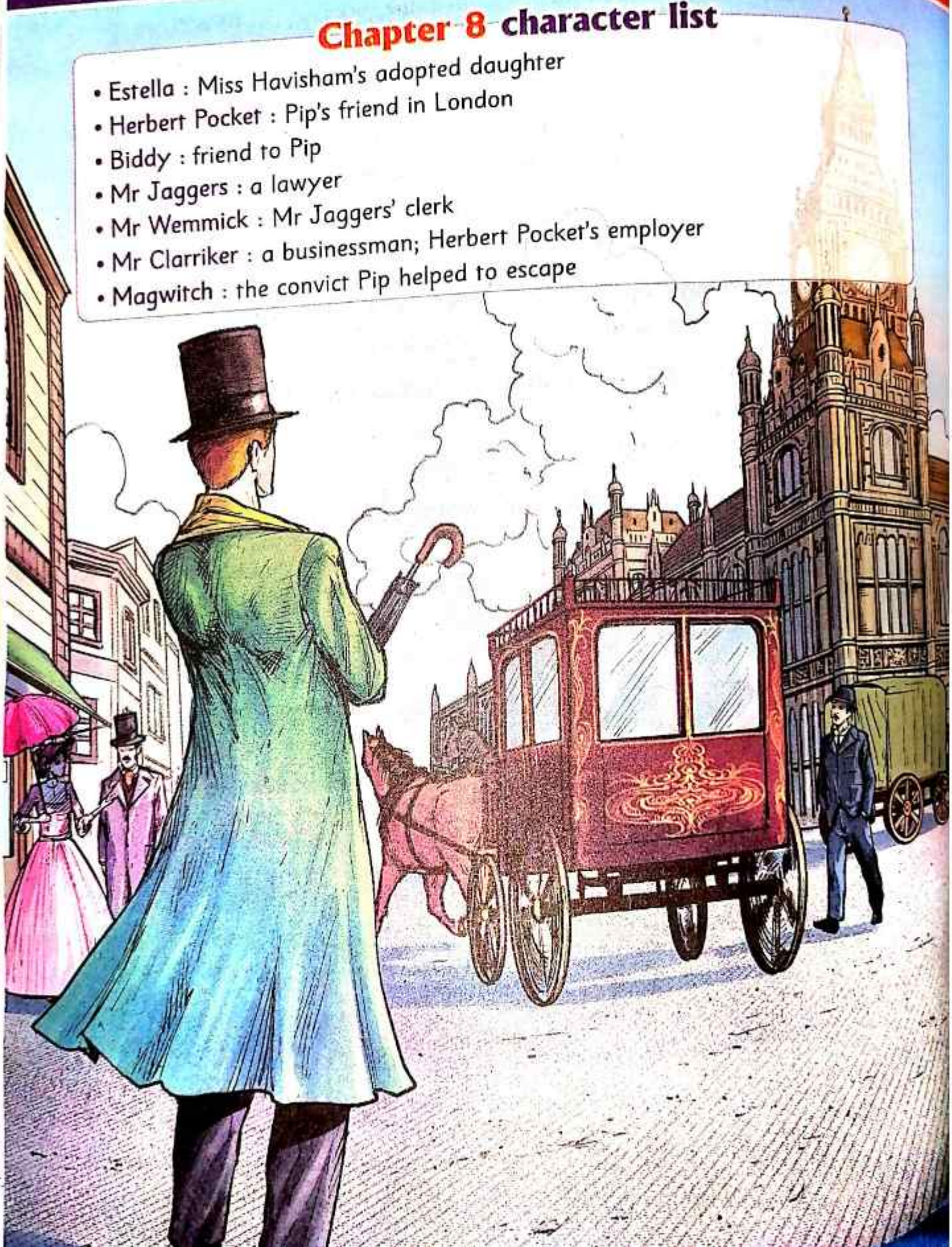
10. A/An ..... is a small bag in which women keep paper money, coins, cards, etc.
a. purse b. notebook c. option d. envelop



CHAPTER 8

Chapter 8 character list

- Estella : Miss Havisham's adopted daughter
- Herbert Pocket : Pip's friend in London
- Biddy : friend to Pip
- Mr Jaggers : a lawyer
- Mr Wemmick : Mr Jaggers' clerk
- Mr Clarriker : a businessman; Herbert Pocket's employer
- Magwitch : the convict Pip helped to escape



Vocabulary

expectations	توقعات - آمال	dressed in black	يرتدون الزى الأسود
extravagant	مبذر	affectionately	بعطف / بحنان
discussions	مناقشات	keep my promise	أحافظ على وعدى
lodging	مسكن	say goodbye to	يودع
argument	جدال - نقاش	fortune	ثروة
feel sorry for	يشعر بالحزن من أجل	benefactor	راع - كفيل
complain	يشكو	merchant	تاجر
with a cold heart	بقلب بارد	well-paid job	وظيفة ذو راتب جيد
admirers	معجبين	the clock struck	دقت الساعة الحادية
arrogant	متعجرف	eleven	عشرة
apart from	باستثناء	rough coat	معطف خشن
pay off	يدفع كل ديونه	graveyard	مقبرة - مدفن
debts	ديون	convict	متهم
owe	يدين	marshes	المستنقعات
attacker	مهاجم	nod	يهز رأسه (بالموافقة)
revenge	أنتقام - ثأر	astonished	متدهش
funeral	جنازة		

I did not understand Estella, or my feelings for her. My future in London and what my expectations might bring were also uncertain. I knew that I had changed, and not for the best, since I had met Mr Jaggers and learnt that I was to become a gentleman. I sometimes wished that I had never met Miss Havisham.

I also felt guilty for two reasons : I had not visited Joe, and I had been extravagant, encouraging Herbert to spend more money than he should. We had both become members of The Finches – an expensive gentlemen's club where we ate large dinners and had discussions with some of the other members – including Bentley Drummle. Herbert and I often returned to our lodgings after midnight, and woke up late.

After visiting my teacher in Hammersmith, I often went to Richmond so that I could see Estella. I still hoped that she would like me, but I usually felt unhappy when we were together.

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

Once, when I took Estella to visit Miss Havisham, they had a terrible argument. I had felt sorry for Miss Havisham as she sighed and complained to me that Estella was a proud, hard woman, with a cold heart.

'You should know,' replied Estella, 'because I am what you made me!'

If Estella had a cold heart, she hid it well.

The wealthy woman, who Estella lived with in Richmond, had introduced her to many people in London and she now had many admirers. I was jealous of them all, especially Bentley Drummle. He was stupid, arrogant and ugly, and I was sorry that she knew him.

One day, I told her how sad I was that she encouraged Drummle to visit her.

'You know that I want to trick all of my admirers,' she replied. 'All of them, apart from you!'

At least Herbert and I were good friends, even though we were often in debt. As soon as we had paid off our old debts, new ones appeared. As Herbert had less money than I did, he soon owed more than me.

Our extravagant life was interrupted one day when news came that my sister had died.

Because she had been ill for so long and now lived so far away, I had almost forgotten about her; and although I was not sad, I was angry that her attacker had not been caught. And when I thought of Orlick, I wanted revenge.

I returned home for the funeral and found the house full of neighbours, all dressed in black. As my sister was buried beside my parents, a bird sang high above us.

Soon afterwards, Joe, Biddy and I were alone together. Joe was as good to me as ever, and Biddy was kind and patient. I was sorry that I had not visited them sooner.

That evening, I went for a walk with Biddy.

'What will you do now, Biddy?' I asked her, affectionately. 'If you want any money ....'

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

'I'll tell you, Mr Pip,' she replied quickly. 'I'm going to be the teacher at our new village school! I know that I will enjoy it. After all, I learnt such a lot when I helped you with your lessons at my grandmother's school.'

I was pleased for her. Then I asked about Orlick.

'I am not sure what he does now,' she replied.

'But I saw him by that tree on the night your sister died. I think I saw him there again tonight! But he has gone now.'

So Orlick had attacked my sister, and now he was frightening Biddy!

I promised that I would try to make Orlick leave the village. 'And I will come to visit often,' I said. 'I am not going to leave you and Joe alone!'

'Are you sure that you will come often?' she asked, in a very quiet voice.

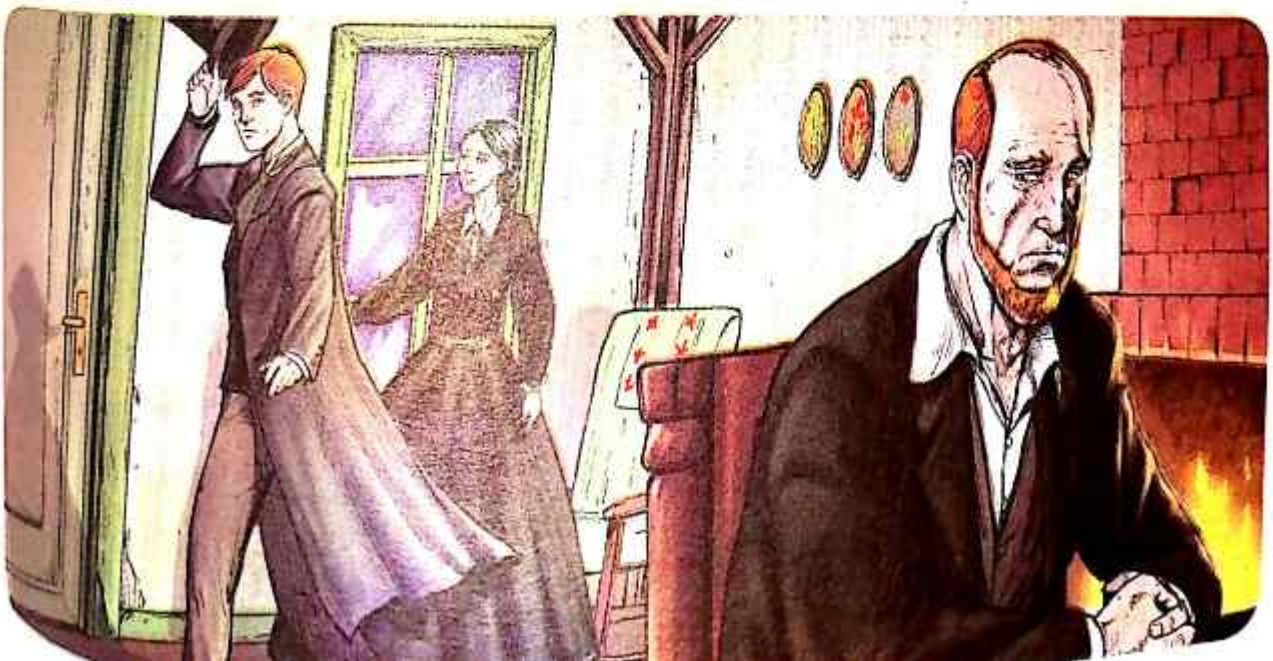
I was hurt. But in my heart, I was not sure that I would keep my promise.

As I said goodbye to Biddy and Joe the next day, I realised that they knew me better than I knew myself.

It would soon be my twenty-first birthday.

I hoped that I would receive all of my fortune then, and discover the name of my secret benefactor.

But when the day arrived, Mr Jaggers gave me a very extravagant present of five hundred pounds. He told me, however, that he could not answer any questions about my secret benefactor, nor could I send my thanks.



He also said that he did not know when I would meet my benefactor. I realised then that it might be years before I would know the truth.

By now, I was worried about Herbert. He did not earn enough money to pay his debts, and so I decided to use my five hundred pounds to help him.

Mr Wemmick suggested that I used some of my money to help a merchant, called Mr Clarriker, with his business. In return, Mr Clarriker agreed to meet Herbert and offer him a well-paid job. Herbert was delighted, and accepted at once. When I saw how happy he was, it seemed that my expectations had done some good at last.

Two years passed. Herbert and I moved to our new lodgings next to the river, and as I did not need a teacher any more, I no longer visited the Pocket family in Hammersmith. Herbert often travelled abroad for Mr Clarriker, and I missed him and hoped that he would soon return.

One dark and stormy evening, when Herbert was away in France, I was reading by the fire in our lodgings. As the clock struck eleven, I shut my book. And then I heard it – a strange noise outside on the stairs.

I held up a light and ran to see what it was.

'Is someone there?' I called out.

'Yes', came a man's voice, 'I've come to see Mr Pip.'

'Is there something the matter?' I asked, worried now.

'Nothing's the matter,' said the man as he came towards me.

And then, I saw him : a man of about sixty, with dark, grey hair and a heavy, rough coat. He was clearly delighted to see me. I invited him in and he looked around.

'I'm glad you've grown up, my boy!' he said.

Suddenly, I realised that I knew him.

It was as though the wind and rain had washed away the years since we had last met, in the graveyard where I had given him Joe's file and some food. He was Magwitch, the convict from the marshes all those years ago.

'I have never forgotten what you did for me that day, Pip!' Magwitch said. 'I was sent to Australia for life when they caught me afterwards. I've been a sheep farmer there ever since, and have made a fortune.'

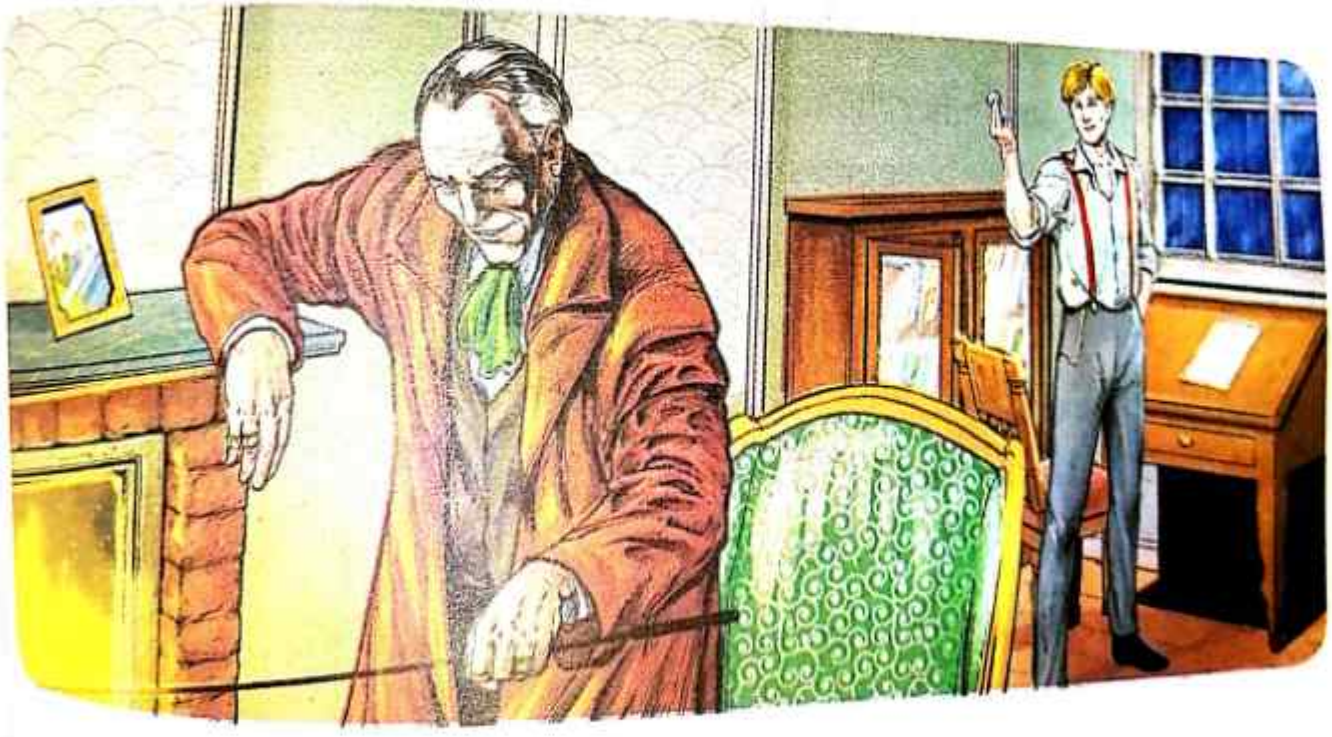
'Your friend kept his promise,' I said.

'He found me and brought me this.' Then I showed him the shiny new coin I had been given years before by the stranger at the village inn. Magwitch smiled and nodded.

'I wanted to find you as soon as I arrived back in England,' Magwitch said, 'so I wrote to Mr Jaggers and was given your address.'

Seeing my astonished face, he said, 'Yes, Pip, I've made a gentleman of you! When you gave me the food and that file all those years ago, I decided that if I ever became rich, I would make you rich, too! I've worked hard in Australia ever since, so that you won't need to work. I'm your second father, Pip. You mean more to me than any son!'

I didn't know what to say.



موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I don't like the new shirt; it's very ..... .
   a. rough b. attractive c. elegant d. brilliant

2. Sorry, I couldn't attend your uncle's ..... ; I was abroad. He was really a good man.
   a. honour b. funeral c. wedding d. graduation

3. Our children should be taught not to ..... anyone while speaking.
   a. follow b. esteem c. appreciate d. interrupt

4. Why did you look ..... when Ali got the first prize? He really deserved it.
   a. satisfied b. delighted c. astonished d. pleased

5. Her father travels a lot to buy goods; he is a/an ..... .
   a. expert b. merchant c. professional d. amateur

6. We all love our father; he treats us ..... .
   a. affectionately b. aggressively c. affectionate d. aggressive

7. My son spends his weekly pocket money on the first day of the week. He is really ..... .
   a. friendly b. intelligent c. greedy d. extravagant

8. No one of his teammates loves his ..... behavior.
   a. respectable b. arrogant c. cruel d. brilliant

9. What a wasteful man! He was ..... debt despite his great wealth.
   a. up b. out c. off d. in

10. She is a very polite girl. All of us ..... her.
    a. avoid b. neglect c. admire d. distract

• Definitions :

1. A/An ..... is a religious ceremony for burying someone who died.
   a. appointment b. attendance c. conference d. funeral

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

2. A/An ..... is someone who buys and sells goods in large quantities.
a. optician b. merchant c. anthropologist d. actor

3. To stop someone from continuing what they are saying or doing by suddenly speaking to them, making a noise, etc. is to .....
a. contain b. interrupt c. consult d. entertain

4. To ..... means to have strong romantic feelings for someone.
a. keep love away
b. hide love from
c. fall in love with
d. fall off love for

5. Something that has an uneven surface, not smooth means ..... .
a. suspicious b. anxious c. tough d. rough

6. ..... means owing money .
a. In debt b. With debt c. In debit d. With debit

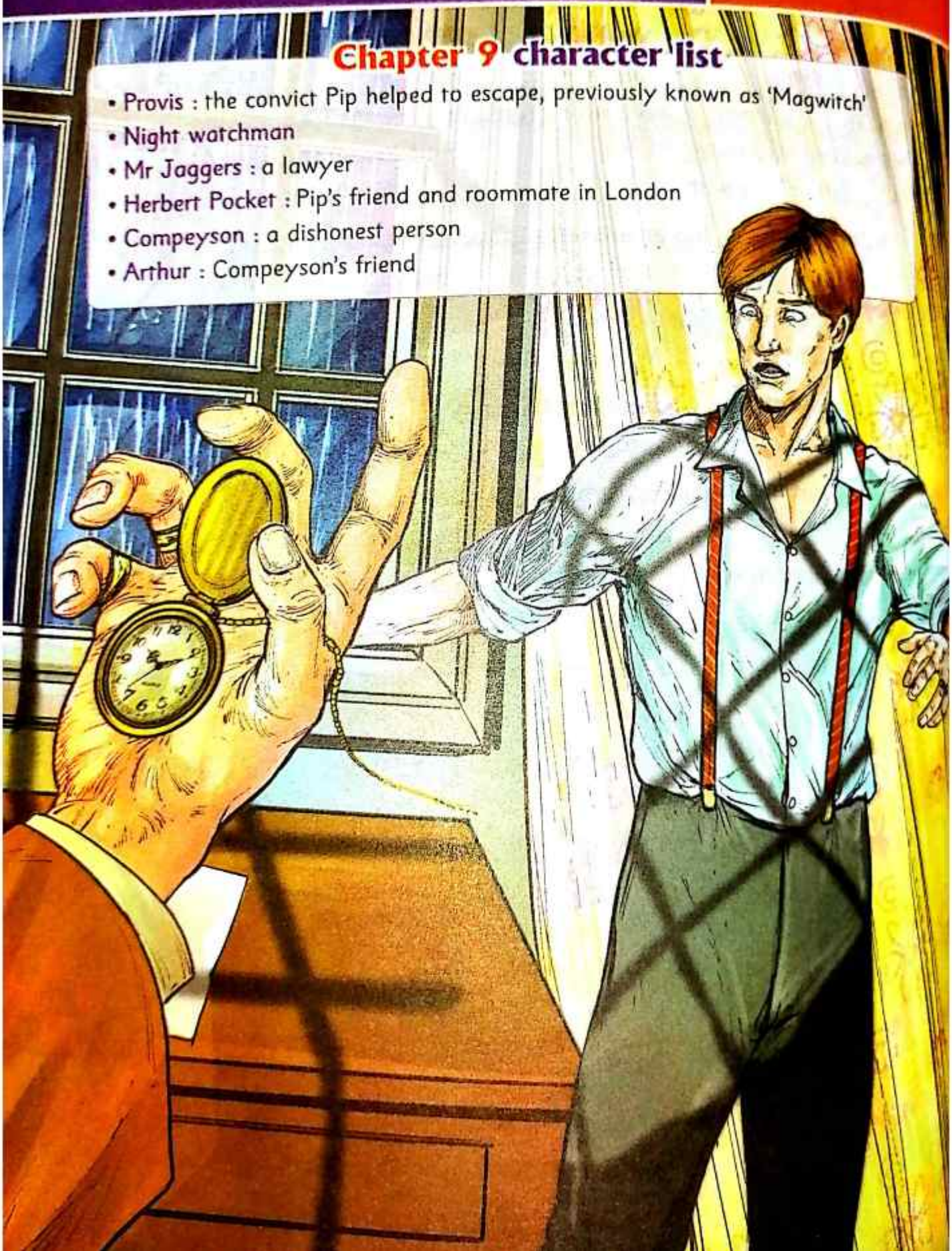
7. Someone who spends too much money is ..... .
a. extravagant b. arrogant c. stubborn d. obedient

8. ..... means extremely surprised.
a. Retired b. Exhausted c. Fascinated d. Astonished

9. Someone who likes a particular person is called a/an ..... .
a. presenter b. hunter c. admirer d. advisor

10. ..... means someone who thinks they're better or more important than they really are.
a. Experienced b. Arrogant c. Practical d. Energetic

CHAPTER 9



Chapter 9 character list

- Provis : the convict Pip helped to escape, previously known as 'Magwitch'
- Night watchman
- Mr Jaggers : a lawyer
- Herbert Pocket : Pip's friend and roommate in London
- Compeyson : a dishonest person
- Arthur : Compeyson's friend

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

Vocabulary

horrified	خائف – مرعوب	behaviour	سلوك – تصرف
my heart sank	لقد حزن قلبى	boast	يتفاخر
ashamed	شاعر بالخجل	criminal	مجرم
worse was to come	الأسوأ كان سيأتى	duty	واجب
life sentence	حكم بالسجن مدى الحياة	beg	يتوسل
crouch	ينحنى بركبتيه	survive	ينجو – يحيا
night watchman	حارس ليلى – غفير	trick	يخدع – خدعة
proudly	بكل فخر	responsible for	مسئول عن
permanently	بشكل دائم – باستمرار	crimes	جرائم
confirm	يؤكد على	half-brother	أخ غير شقيق
immediately	فى الحال – مباشرة	desert	يهجر – يتخلى عن
grateful	شاكر – ممتن	fear for	يخاف على / من أجل

Magwitch pulled my gold watch out of my pocket, and looked at the ring on my finger, and at my clothes and books.

'What a fine gentleman you are now, Pip!' he said, happily. 'Did you not think that I might be your benefactor?'

'No, never!' I replied, horrified.

'Only Mr Jaggers knew,' Magwitch continued.

'But all the time I was in Australia, I was planning to return home – to see my gentleman!'

My heart sank when I heard this news. Miss Havisham was not my benefactor after all, and so Estella was not meant for me! And this convict had made me leave Joe for a new life in London! I felt sad and ashamed.

But worse was to come. Magwitch came close to me, and whispered, 'The problem is, my boy, that I have a life sentence. If I am caught here, I will be put back in prison!'

What would I do with Magwitch? Where could he stay? I was upset by these and other questions that night while Magwitch slept well in Herbert's room.

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

Vocabulary

horrified	خائف – مرعوب	behaviour	سلوك – تصرف
my heart sank	لقد حزن قلبى	boast	يتفاخر
ashamed	شاعر بالخجل	criminal	مجرم
worse was to come	الأسوأ كان سيأتى	duty	واجب
life sentence	حكم بالسجن مدى الحياة	beg	يتوسل
crouch	ينحنى بركبتيه	survive	ينجو – يحيا
night watchman	حارس ليلى – غفير	trick	يخدع – خدعة
proudly	بكل فخر	responsible for	مسئول عن
permanently	بشكل دائم – باستمرار	crimes	جرائم
confirm	يؤكد على	half-brother	أخ غير شقيق
immediately	فى الحال – مباشرة	desert	يهجر – يتخلى عن
grateful	شاكر – ممتن	fear for	يخاف على / من أجل

Magwitch pulled my gold watch out of my pocket, and looked at the ring on my finger, and at my clothes and books.

'What a fine gentleman you are now, Pip!' he said, happily. 'Did you not think that I might be your benefactor?'

'No, never!' I replied, horrified.

'Only Mr Jaggers knew,' Magwitch continued.

'But all the time I was in Australia, I was planning to return home – to see my gentleman!'

My heart sank when I heard this news. Miss Havisham was not my benefactor after all, and so Estella was not meant for me! And this convict had made me leave Joe for a new life in London! I felt sad and ashamed.

But worse was to come. Magwitch came close to me, and whispered, 'The problem is, my boy, that I have a life sentence. If I am caught here, I will be put back in prison!'

What would I do with Magwitch? Where could he stay? I was upset by these and other questions that night while

Chapter 9



On the way downstairs to get a light, I fell over something. It was a man, crouching in the corner! When I asked him what he was doing, he didn't reply and ran outside. I followed him, but the street was empty.

I told the night watchman what had happened, and we looked for the man together. But we found no one.

'We haven't had many visitors tonight, because of the storm,' the watchman said. 'But I saw your visitor arrive at eleven. He had another man with him, I think,'

'What did that other man look like ?' I asked.

The night watchman did not know exactly, but thought he wore a dark coat.

In the morning, I asked Magwitch if he had brought a man with him. He denied it, but said that someone could have followed him into the building.

'We'll turn you into the best gentleman in London, Pip!' he said proudly, and threw a purse full of money onto the table.

'Everything I have is yours! And there's a lot more where that came from!'

He then told me to call him Provis from now on. That was his name in Australia. When Provis said he had returned permanently, I went to see Mr Jaggers at once. Unfortunately, he confirmed that Provis was my benefactor, and advised me to be careful.

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

I was sure that Provis would be caught. Even with the new clothes that I had bought him, he still looked like a convict. We did not go out for several days while I wondered what to do.

Then Herbert returned. Provis told him not to tell anyone that he was there, and Herbert, who was as scared as I was, immediately agreed.

'We'll make you a gentleman, too, my boy!' Provis laughed.

I was grateful to Provis because he had done so much for me, but at the same time, I also disliked his behaviour.

He boasted that he had made me a gentleman, and he thought that I would be happy with a wealthy new life in London.

Now that I knew the truth, however, I was horrified. My benefactor was a criminal! I knew that I could not accept any more money from him in the future.

Herbert and I knew that Provis would be caught if he stayed in England. As he had been so good to me, I felt it was my duty to help him escape. After that, I never wanted to see him again.

The next day, Provis told Herbert and I about his life. He did not know where he was born, or who his parents were. He had been alone for as long as he could remember.

As a child he was always hungry, so he stole and begged to survive. As he grew up, he continued to steal and spent more and more time in prison. However, when he was not in prison, he sometimes worked for a short time. He learnt to read and write from people that he met as he travelled around the country. He even got married and it seemed that his life was finally improving. Then, one day, he met a man called Compeyson.

At first, Provis thought that his new friend was a gentleman; he wore fine clothes and spoke well. But then Provis discovered that Compeyson was really a dishonest person.

He found out that Compeyson and his friend, Arthur, had been very successful in the past, and had even tricked a rich, young woman out of

most of her money. They had now spent almost all the money and needed to get some more. Arthur could not help because he was too ill, but he also felt guilty for what he had done in the past.

So Provis began to steal for Compeyson, and soon they were both caught. However, Compeyson told everyone in court that Provis was responsible for all the crimes.

Because Compeyson looked and behaved like a gentleman, the court believed him.

As a result, Provis was given a longer prison sentence than Compeyson.

The two men were both sent to the same prison ship, far out on some marshes. One day, after they had had a bad argument, Provis dived off the ship and swam to land. It was while he was hiding in the graveyard nearby that he met me.

Compeyson had also escaped from the ship that day. When I had met the second convict on the marshes and had told Provis that there was a second man, he had started to search for him. When the two men met, they began to fight. It was then that they were found by the soldiers and taken back to the prison ship.

I remembered that Joe and I had walked with the soldiers that day, and that we had seen what had happened. When the convicts had returned to the prison ship, Compeyson was put in leg-irons for trying to escape.

However, Provis got a life sentence and was sent to Australia.

'Well, you can see that I didn't stay there for life. I had to come back to see you Pip,' he said. 'I wanted to see you as a gentleman.'

At that moment, I began to feel sorry for Provis, but I was horrified by him, too.

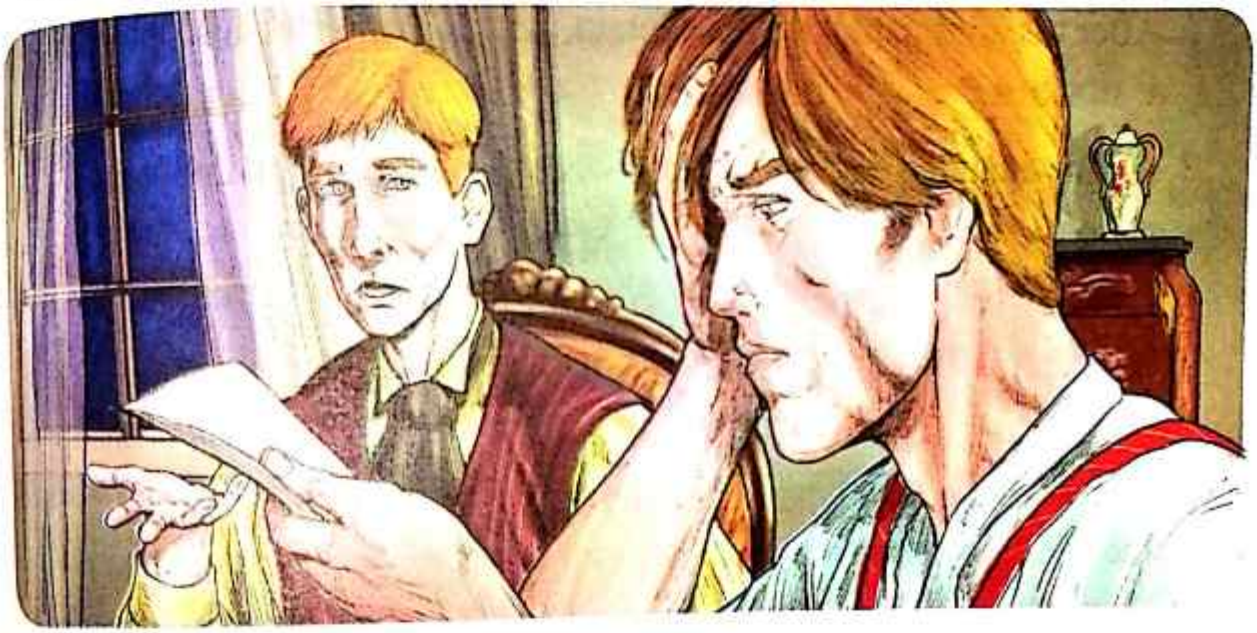
'Is Compeyson still alive?' I asked.

'I don't know,' he replied. 'But if he is, I am sure that he will want to kill me!'

Just then, Herbert showed me a note that he had written. It said,

Miss Havisham's half-brother was called Arthur. Compeyson is the man who took Miss Havisham's fortune and deserted her!

When I read this, I feared for Provis. Compeyson would certainly kill him if he found him. Herbert and I both knew now that Provis must leave the country as soon as possible. I felt that I must go with him, to help him escape, and I did not know how long it would be before I would return.



موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

احرص على اقتناء
EL-MOASSER
فى
اللغة الإنجليزية
المراجعة النهائية
للصف 3 الثانوى

Check your Understanding Chapter 9

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Since her husband's death, she has visited the ..... many times. She loved him so much .
   a. graveyard b. aquarium c. inn d. marsh
2. After his argument with his captain, he ..... the club and the team.
   a. attached b. connected c. deserted d. joined
3. All the attendance were shocked when the man was given a long prison ..... .
   a. word b. sentence c. promise d. phrase
4. Be careful! This forest is full of ..... .
   a. pets b. earrings c. paintings d. marshes
5. The detective asked the ..... why he had left his place outside the building before the robbery .
   a. dentist b. magician c. butcher d. watchman
6. Seeing the murderer, the girl was ..... and fainted.
   a. scared b. scary c. fearful d. frightening
7. If we didn't find a good solution, we would face this problem ..... .
   a. quietly b. quickly c. permanently d. temporarily
8. Don't ..... all the time in front of your poor friend. It's really embarrassing.
   a. support b. boast c. cure d. confirm
9. Coming close ..... this device is very dangerous. Keep away from it, please.
   a. in b. to c. for d. by
10. He is used to donating some money to this charity; he is a/an ..... .
    a. benefactor b. landlord c. attendant d. operator

Definitions :

1. Someone whose job is to guard a place is called a/an ..... .
   a. eyebrow b. eyewitness c. watchman d. watchtower

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

2. To ..... means to talk proudly about your abilities, achievements or possessions.
a. boast b. scream c. steal d. sneeze

3. Someone who gives money for a good purpose is a/an ..... .
a. observer b. interpreter c. trainer d. benefactor

4. To ..... is to lower your body close to the ground by bending your knees completely.
a. cover b. crouch c. suffer d. snatch

5. To show that something is definitely true, especially by providing more proof means to ..... .
a. confront b. confirm c. contribute d. conclude

6. An area of low flat ground that is always wet and soft is called a/an ..... .
a. institution b. store c. orphanage d. marsh

7. ..... means always or for a very long time .
a. Permanently b. Luckily c. Deliberately d. Accidentally

8. To leave someone or something and no longer help or support them means to ..... .
a. secure b. assure c. desert d. befriend

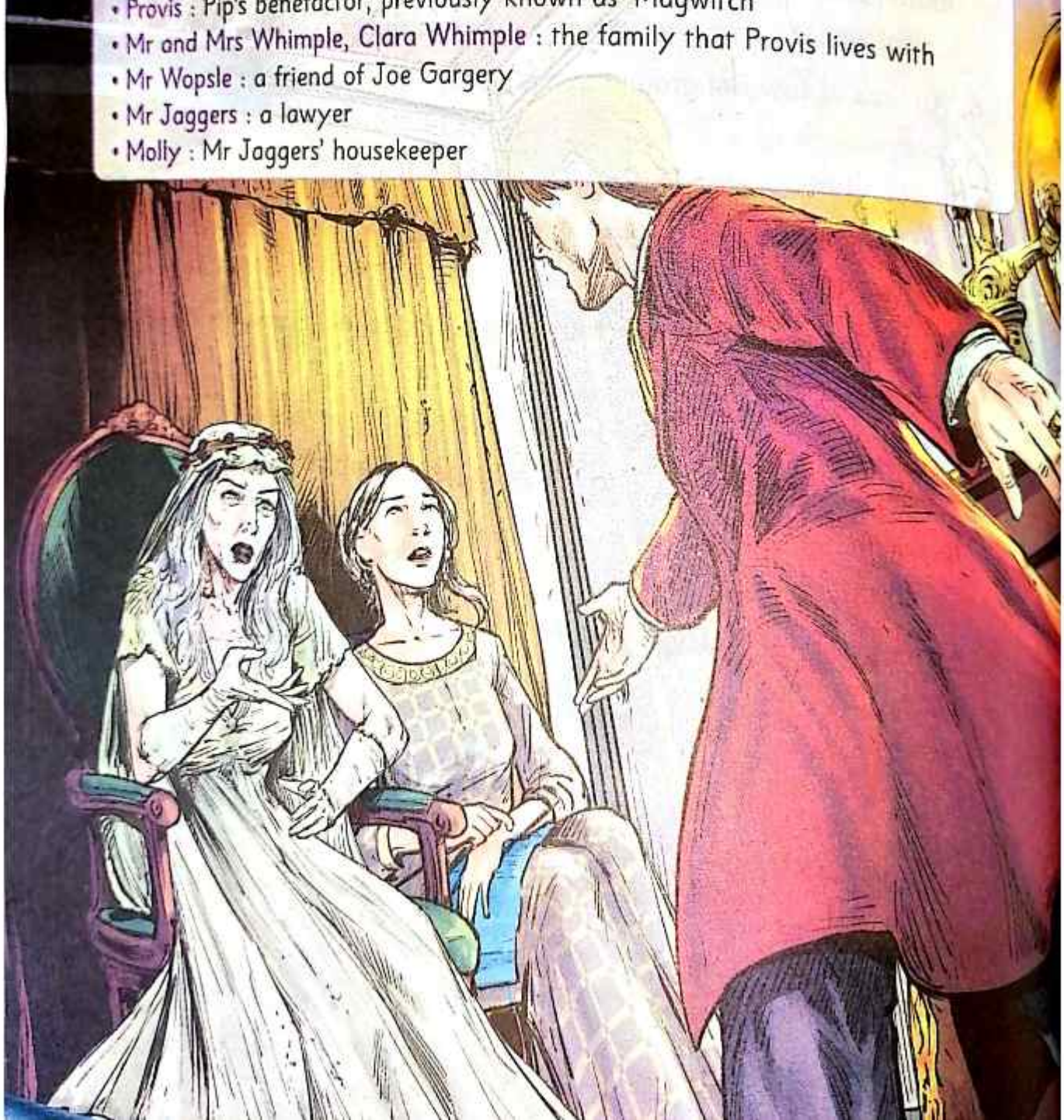
9. A/An ..... is someone who has been proved guilty of a crime and sent to prison.
a. import b. convict c. respect d. object

10. An area of ground where people are buried, often next to a church is a/an ..... .
a. safe b. emergency c. exit d. graveyard

CHAPTER 10

Chapter 10 character list

- Estella : Miss Havisham's adopted daughter
- Miss Havisham : a rich, elderly lady
- Bentley Drummle : Someone Pip knows in London
- Mr Wemmick : Mr Jaggers' clerk
- Compeyson : a dishonest person; Miss Havisham's ex-fiancé
- Herbert Pocket : Pip's friend and roommate in London
- Provis : Pip's benefactor, previously known as 'Magwitch'
- Mr and Mrs Whimple, Clara Whimple : the family that Provis lives with
- Mr Wopsle : a friend of Joe Gargery
- Mr Jaggers : a lawyer
- Molly : Mr Jaggers' housekeeper



موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

Vocabulary

knit	يقوم بالتطريز أو الحياكة	familiar	مألوف - عادى
misunderstand	يسئ الفهم	marriage	زواج
lawyer	محامى	related	مترابط - متعلق بـ
coincidence	تزامن - مصادفة	homeless	مشرد / بلا مأوى
mislead / misled / misled	يضلل - يخدع	(be) accused (of) murder	متهم بـ يرتكب جريمة قتل - جريمة قتل
apprenticeship	فترة التدرب فى مهنة		
clearly	بوضوح	acquit	يبرئ - يحل من إلتزام
rowing	التجديف	dressing room	حجرة اللبس
take my mind off	أزيح عن ذهنى	tears	دموع
congratulate	يهنئ	pity	يشفق على - يرثي

Estella had left Richmond, and was now living with Miss Havisham again. I decided to visit them immediately. Herbert offered to look after Provis while I was away; it was only to be for one night.

On my way to Miss Havisham's house, I stopped at the nearby inn and found Bentley Drummle there. He boasted that he was having dinner that evening with a young lady, and he looked pleased with himself. When he left on his horse, I noticed a man outside the inn who reminded me of Orlick.

I went to see Miss Havisham at once. She was in her room, wearing her wedding dress. Estella sat next to her. She was knitting.

'Why are you here, Pip?' Miss Havisham asked.

I could see that she was surprised to see me.

'You will not be surprised – or sorry – to know that I am very unhappy,' I replied. 'I know now who my benefactor really is. And I realise that until now, I have misunderstood everything! I thought that Mr Jaggers ...'

'Mr Jaggers,' Miss Havisham interrupted,' has nothing to do with this. He is my lawyer. The fact that he is also your benefactor's lawyer is a coincidence, and that is all! He is a lawyer who works for many different people.'

Vocabulary

knit	يقوم بالتطريز أو الحياكة	familiar	مألوف - عادى
misunderstand	يسئ الفهم	marriage	زواج
lawyer	محامى	related	مترابط - متعلق بـ
coincidence	تزامن - مصادفة	homeless	مشرد / بلا مأوى
mislead / misled / misled	يضلل - يخدع	(be) accused (of)	متهم بـ
		murder	يرتكب جريمة قتل -
apprenticeship	فترة التدرب فى مهنة		جريمة قتل
clearly	بوضوح	acquit	يبرئ - يحل من إلتزام
rowing	التجديف	dressing room	حجرة اللبس
take my mind off	أزيح عن ذهنى	tears	دموع
congratulate	يهنئ	pity	يشفق على - يرثي

Estella had left Richmond, and was now living with Miss Havisham again. I decided to visit them immediately. Herbert offered to look after Provis while I was away; it was only to be for one night.

On my way to Miss Havisham's house, I stopped at the nearby inn and found Bentley Drummle there. He boasted that he was having dinner that evening with a young lady, and he looked pleased with himself. When he left on his horse, I noticed a man outside the inn who reminded me of Orlick.

I went to see Miss Havisham at once. She was in her room, wearing her wedding dress. Estella sat next to her. She was knitting.

'Why are you here, Pip?' Miss Havisham asked.

I could see that she was surprised to see me.

'You will not be surprised – or sorry – to know that I am very unhappy,' I replied. 'I know now who my benefactor really is. And I realise that until now, I have misunderstood everything! I thought that Mr Jaggers ...'

'But you misled me!' I said. 'I made a mistake and you let me continue to believe it. That isn't kind, Miss Havisham..'

'Yes, I have misled you, Pip,' Miss Havisham said. 'But why should I be kind?'

'You were kind to me as a child,' I replied. 'You paid for my apprenticeship with Joe.

However, when you allowed me to believe that you were my benefactor, you were unkind to your family too.'

'You believed what you wanted to believe.'

'I have lived with your relatives, Herbert and Matthew Pocket, in London,' I said.

'They are kind, and they helped me because they thought you were my benefactor. They wanted to make you happy, but you have misled them, too. They are both good people – not like some of your other relatives!'

Miss Havisham thought for a moment. Then she turned and asked, 'Then tell me, what can I do to thank Herbert and Matthew Pocket?'

'Miss Havisham, please use your money to help Herbert,' I replied. 'Two years ago, I secretly arranged for him to get a better job so that he could pay his debts. But now I must go abroad, and I cannot help him any more.'

Miss Havisham nodded. I turned to Estella, who was looking down at her work.

'Estella, you know that I love you!' I cried.

She did not move.

'I have loved you since we first met,' I continued. 'I thought Miss Havisham wanted us to get married.'

Estella looked at me coldly. 'I do not share your feelings,' she said. 'Don't you remember? I warned you long ago that I have no heart.'

'I saw Bentley Drummle just now,' I told her.

'Surely you don't love him?'

'We are going to marry,' she answered. I left at once. Unable to think clearly, I walked all the way back to London. It was late that evening when I reached the edge of the city. Near my lodgings, a young boy was waiting. When he saw me, he stopped me and gave me a note from Mr Wemmick, warning me not to return home.

I went to a hotel, but I was unable to sleep that night. The next morning, I visited Mr Wemmick and asked what had happened.

He explained that while I was away, he had visited Newgate Prison. Someone there had warned him that Provis, Herbert and I were being watched. Mr Wemmick had also heard that Compeyson was alive, and that he was in London.

Herbert had already been warned by Mr Wemmick, so he had found Provis some new lodgings in a house by the river. Mr and Mrs Whimple lived there, together with their daughter, Clara.

I left Mr Wemmick and went to see Provis at the Whimple's house. Provis already knew that he was in danger, and agreed to escape abroad with me. Herbert and I decided that we would keep a boat on the river, close to the Whimple's house. We could use it to escape when the time came.

I began to take the boat out from the Whimples' house regularly so that I could practise rowing. I went out on the river every day, whatever the weather.

Sometimes Herbert came with me. The weeks passed slowly. Nothing happened, but Herbert and I feared for Provis. We felt that someone was permanently watching us.

I was sure that Estella had become Bentley Drummle's wife. One evening in February, to take my mind off my sad thoughts, I went to the theatre. Mr Wopsle, a friend from home, was now working in London as an actor. I watched him perform and went to congratulate him afterwards.

When I saw him, Mr Wopsle told me that he had seen a man in black sitting behind me and watching me during the play. 'Mr Pip, do you remember that day when you were a child and some soldiers came to the

'I remember it well,' I replied.

'Well, it is very strange, but the man in the theatre today seemed very familiar. When I saw his face, I remembered our walk across the marshes with the soldiers to find the convicts who had escaped. I am sure that the man I saw today was one of those convicts.'

I was sure that the man was Compeyson, but there was nothing I could do.

Herbert, Provis and I waited. I felt we were going to have to wait for some time.

****

Mr Jaggers, Mr Wemmick and I were eating dinner at Mr Jaggers' house, and we had just been talking about Miss Havisham. She wanted me to visit her the following day.

'So our friend, Estella, has married!'

Mr Jaggers said.

Mr Jaggers continued, 'Bentley Drummle is strong, but he is not intelligent. He may find it difficult to be married to Estella. I do not think they will have a happy marriage.'

He looked at Molly, his housekeeper. She quickly put some food on the table. I realised then that her hands, her eyes and her hair all reminded me of Estella! I was sure that they were related.

As we were walking back home that evening, I asked Mr Wemmick to tell me Molly's story. He explained that when she was young, Molly had been a homeless criminal.

'She was once married,' said Mr Wemmick,

'to a man who used to spend a lot of time in prison. One day, she was accused of murdering her young daughter as well as an older woman. She was acquitted by the court, however, thanks to Mr Jaggers. She became his housekeeper afterwards. This all happened more than twenty years ago. Mr Jaggers is very good at what he does.'

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

Could Estella be Molly's daughter? I wanted to find out, and hoped to
an answer from Miss Havisham the following day.

To my surprise, Miss Havisham seemed almost afraid of me now.

'You have asked me to help Herbert Pocket, and I will,' she said,
soon as I entered her dressing room. 'I will pay for him to continue
orking for Mr Clarriker.'

I was pleased. But then I thought of Estella, who was no longer there.

Miss Havisham asked if I was very unhappy.

'Yes,' I said, 'for many reasons, which I cannot discuss.'

Then she asked, 'Is there nothing I can do?'

'I do not think so.'

'Oh, what have I done?' she cried, over and over again. Her eyes were
ıll of tears.

'Is Estella married?' I asked.

'Yes,' she said. 'Forgive me, Pip! I used her to break your heart. But if
'ou knew my story, you would pity me!'

Then she told me everything.



Check your Understanding Chapter 10

- **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. Without his ....., he'd have been given a longer sentence .
   a. murderer b. lawyer c. accountant d. employer
2. ..... was my father's favourite hobby. He no longer does it, but he keeps his oars.
   a. Rowing b. Drawing c. Blowing d. Robbing
3. Nader was accused ..... breaking the class window last week.
   a. from b. at c. on d. of
4. She left her office in flood of ..... .She was very sad to leave it.
   a. views b. jokes c. tears d. rains
5. Your bag is very heavy. Is it full ..... stones?
   a. of b. by c. out d. from

- **Definitions :**

1. A member of your family is called a/an ..... .
   a. relative b. opponent c. foe d. enemy
2. To ..... is to move your head up and down, especially in order to show agreement or understanding.
   a. beg b. dig c. pay d. nod
3. When someone is told officially that they didn't commit a crime means ..... .
   a. fainted b. deceived c. acquitted d. missed
4. ..... are the drops of water which fall from your eyes when you are sad.
   a. Liquids b. Sprays c. Pears d. Tears
5. To stop thinking about something which is negative means to ..... .
   a. pay attention to b. take my mind off
   c. take care of d. pay a visit to

CHAPTER 11

Chapter 11 character list

Miss Havisham : a rich, elderly lady
Compeyson : Miss Havisham's ex-fiancé
Mr Jaggers : a lawyer
Estella : Miss Havisham's adopted daughter
Herbert Pocket : Pip's friend and roommate in London
Provis : Pip's benefactor
Molly : Mr Jaggers' housekeeper
Mr Wemmick : Mr Jaggers' clerk
Orlick : a man who worked at the blacksmith's
startop : Pip's friend



موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

Vocabulary

fiancé	خطيب	bandage my	يضمد يداى المحروقتان
take revenge	يأخذ بالثأر	burnt hands	محكم الإغلاق
adopt	يتبنى (طفل)	tight	
break people's hearts	يكسر قلوب الناس	incredible	لا يصدق
orphan	يتيم	pale	شاحب / باهت
fault	خطأ - غلطة	guide	يرشد
forgive	يسامح	handle	مقبض (الباب)
even if	حتى لو - بالرغم من	spoil	يفسد
full of memories	ملئ بالذكريات	tied up	مكتوف
scream	يصيح	deliberately	عمدًا
spark	شرارة - بريق	faint	يفقد الوعى
fiercely	بشراسة - بغضب شديد	entrance	مدخل
put out flames	يطفئ ألسنة اللهب	pack	يحزم أمتعته
tablecloth	مفرش المنضدة	steamer	باخرة
take off	يخلع (ملابسه)	opportunity	فرصة
badly injured	مصاب بشدة	confident	واثق
unable to move	غير قادرة على الحركة	go wrong	يخطئ - يخفق

When Miss Havisham's fiancé left her, her heart was broken. As time passed, however, she wanted to take revenge on men. She decided to adopt a daughter so that she could teach her how to break people's hearts. When she told Mr Jaggers that she wanted to adopt a little girl, he brought Estella to her. He told her that Estella was an orphan.

'It is my fault that Estella is so cruel. Forgive me, Pip!' Miss Havisham cried.

I told her that there was nothing to forgive; I knew that I would always love Estella, even if she was cruel to me.

Miss Havisham was crying more now. I did not know how to help her, so I thought that I should leave. Before I went, I walked for a while in the untidy garden. It was so full of memories!

I was thinking of Estella, and my first meeting with Herbert, when suddenly had a terrible feeling. I was sure that something bad had ppened to Miss Havisham, so I ran back to her room.

I quickly opened the door. Miss Havisham was still in her chair, but e was screaming. A spark from the fire had fallen on her wedding dress, nd now it was burning fiercely. I was wearing a thick coat, so I took it off nd used it to cover her and put out the flames. I also pulled the tablecloth ff the table in the dining room and used that. The spiders ran away in all irections. I didn't notice that I had burnt my hands until the fire was out nd we were lying on the floor of the black and burnt room.

Miss Havisham was badly injured and unable to move. The doctor came, and then I waited for Miss Havisham's relatives to arrive. It was late in the afternoon before I opened the gate to leave. As I left, I heard Miss Havisham crying out, again and again, 'Forgive me! Forgive me!'

I was in pain when I reached my lodgings that night, so Herbert washed and bandaged my burnt hands. If I sat quietly and rested, my mind immediately went back to the terrible fire.

Herbert noticed this and did his best to talk to me about other things. As he worked, he told me that he had had a long conversation with Provis, and had learnt much more about his past.

'About twenty years ago, Provis was in love with a young woman called Molly,' Herbert said. 'They were married and had a daughter. Provis loved the child very much, but one day, after an argument, Molly disappeared with the little girl. Provis was afraid that his daughter was dead. Oh, sorry, did I hurt you? Is the bandage too tight?'

'Not at all, Herbert, You are very gentle. Please continue the story.'

'After several months, Provis heard that Molly had been accused of murder. Some people thought that she had killed the child, as well as an older woman. Provis was very upset and did not go to the court. Mr Jaggers worked as Molly's lawyer and she was acquitted.

I was thinking of Estella, and my first meeting with Herbert, when I suddenly had a terrible feeling. I was sure that something bad had happened to Miss Havisham, so I ran back to her room.

I quickly opened the door. Miss Havisham was still in her chair, but she was screaming. A spark from the fire had fallen on her wedding dress, and now it was burning fiercely. I was wearing a thick coat, so I took it off and used it to cover her and put out the flames. I also pulled the tablecloth off the table in the dining room and used that. The spiders ran away in all directions. I didn't notice that I had burnt my hands until the fire was out and we were lying on the floor of the black and burnt room.

Miss Havisham was badly injured and unable to move. The doctor came, and then I waited for Miss Havisham's relatives to arrive. It was late in the afternoon before I opened the gate to leave. As I left, I heard Miss Havisham crying out, again and again, 'Forgive me! Forgive me!'

I was in pain when I reached my lodgings that night, so Herbert washed and bandaged my burnt hands. If I sat quietly and rested, my mind immediately went back to the terrible fire.

Herbert noticed this and did his best to talk to me about other things. As he worked, he told me that he had had a long conversation with Provis, and had learnt much more about his past.

'About twenty years ago, Provis was in love with a young woman called Molly,' Herbert said. 'They were married and had a daughter. Provis loved the child very much, but one day, after an argument, Molly disappeared with the little girl. Provis was afraid that his daughter was dead. Oh, sorry, did I hurt you? Is the bandage too tight?'

'Not at all, Herbert, You are very gentle. Please continue the story.'

'After several months, Provis heard that Molly had been accused of murder. Some people thought that she had killed the child, as well as an older woman. Provis was very upset and did not go to the court. Mr Jaggers worked as Molly's lawyer and she was acquitted.

But Provis does not know what happened to Molly, or their daughter, after that.'



'Herbert!' I cried, 'This is incredible. Provis is Estella's father!'

I went at once to Mr Jaggers, and told him that I knew that Molly and Provis were Estella's parents. He explained that when Molly left Provis, she had hidden Estella. Because the little girl suddenly disappeared, Molly was accused of murder. Miss Havisham wanted to adopt a little girl at that time, so he took Estella to her. And once Molly was free from prison, he asked her to become his housekeeper.

'Now that you know the truth, I advise you not to repeat it to anyone,' Mr Jaggers said. I promised that I would not tell anyone.

Soon afterwards, two letters arrived. One was from Mr Wemmick, telling Herbert and I that it was time to help Provis escape. The second letter did not say who it was from. It promised that I would find out more about Provis if I went that night to an old house, on the marshes near my village.

I thought this was probably important, so I decided to leave at once. But first I left a note for Herbert, telling him what had happened.

It was dark and wet as I walked to the old house on the marshes that evening. The pale light of a candle, in a downstairs window, helped to guide me there. I knocked on the door, but nobody came.

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

Then I tried the handle and found that the door opened easily. As I went into the building, however, I was hit by something. 'Who is this?' I shouted. 'Help! Help!'

A man's strong hand held me against the wall. With my burnt arms, I could not fight. Then I was tied up. By the light of the candle, I recognised Orlick.

'Now I've got you!' said Orlick, in a loud voice. Then he shouted, 'I am going to stop you. You have always spoiled things for me. I lost my job at Miss Havisham's because of you! And you told Biddy not to trust me!'

I knew that calling for help would make no difference because the house was too far from any other building. As I stood there, tied up against the wall, I thought of all the people who would suffer if I died now: Provis would think I had deserted him; Herbert would be sad; Joe and Biddy would never know how sorry I was for my behaviour towards them.

'I'm going to tell you something.' he said quietly.' You made me angry and jealous, so I took my revenge!'

Now I knew what had happened. Orlick had found Provis's leg-irons, years ago, when they were forgotten on the marshes. So Orlick had deliberately left the leg-irons in the kitchen when he attacked my sister! Nearly everyone who saw it thought that a convict had committed the crime.

But now, Orlick was going to kill me! He ran towards me, and I fainted.

When I opened my eyes, Herbert was next to me and Orlick had gone. When I left my house that morning, I had dropped Orlick's letter in the entrance hall to our rooms. After I had left, Herbert had found my note and the letter and he had started to worry. He had met Startop, our friend from Hammersmith, and together they had followed me to the marshes. He arrived with a group of men from the village and this had saved my life.

But now there was no time to look for Orlick. We had to help Provis any delay would be very dangerous for him.

Herbert and I had already made plans to help Provis escape. I was to go with Provis abroad, so I quickly packed a suitcase and took it with me to the river, where Herbert and Startop were waiting by our boat. We didn't know exactly where were going, but we had to get Provis out of the country without anyone else seeing us.



The sun shone as we rowed slowly along the river so that no one would notice anything strange about us. Provis joined us in the boat when nobody was watching, and we went further down the river.

Late that evening we tied our boat up and spent the night at a nearby inn. We continued our journey the next day until we came to the place where steamers took on passengers. Then we stopped our boat in deep water and waited.

About an hour later, the steamer to Hamburg appeared. We thought that this boat would be our best opportunity, and we felt confident that nothing was going to go wrong with our plan.

Provis and I said goodbye to Herbert and Startop, and stood up. But as we did so, another boat stopped next to ours. In it were some police officers and an older man.

It was Compeyson! My heart nearly stopped in surprise. But Provis was the most surprised of all of us. He wasn't expecting things to end like this at all.

'Abel Magwitch, also known as Provis!' a police officer shouted. 'You must come with us!'

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. When Eman saw the mouse, she ..... loudly. She was terrified.
   a. entertained b. screamed c. smiled d. laughed
2. Don't buy everything for your children or you will ..... them.
   a. isolate b. spill c. spoil d. desert
3. It's my first visit to the old temple, so I needed someone to ..... me.
   a. believe b. deceive c. cheat d. guide
4. She apologized as she didn't break the mobile ..... .
   a. deliberately b. suddenly c. creatively d. accidentally
5. I couldn't wear the new suit; it was very ..... .
   a. sociable b. suitable c. tight d. light

Definitions :

1. To ..... means to have a bad effect on something so that it is no longer attractive, enjoyable, useful etc.
   a. spell b. spoil c. benefit d. profit
2. ..... means to fall unconcious.
   a. Stream b. Step c. Struggle d. Faint
3. A narrow piece of cloth that you tie around a wound or around a part of the body that has been injured is called a/an ..... .
   a. crash b. accident c. bandage d. injury
4. To ..... means to be the cause of something especially trouble or violence.
   a. spark b. sneeze c. consider d. cooperate
5. A part of a door that you turn to open is a/an ..... .
   a. corridor b. entrance c. organ d. handle

CHAPTER 12

Chapter 12 character list

- Provis : Pip's benefactor; Estella's father
- Compeyson : a dishonest man
- Herbert Pocket : Pip's friend
- Startop : Pip's friend
- Mr Clarriker : a businessman; Herbert Pocket's employer
- Joe : Pip's friend, the blacksmith who was married to Pip's sister
- Miss Havisham : a rich, elderly lady
- Matthew Pocket : Pip's teacher in London, Herbert's father
- Orlick : worked at the blacksmith, attacked Pip's sister
- Uncle Pumblechook : Pip's uncle
- Biddy : Pip's childhood friend
- Estella : Molly and Provis' daughter, adopted by Miss Havisham

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com



Vocabulary

leap / leaped / leapt	يقفز / قفز	to my horror	من خوفى ...
grab	يخطف / انتزاع	illness	مرض
crew	طاقم السفينة	break into	يقتحم
wave	موجة	rob	يسرق
sweep / swept / swept	يرمى - يكتسح	sign	يوقع (الخطاب)
shouts	صيحات - صرخات	warmly	بود - بحرارة
struggle	يصارع - يكافح	fascinate	يفتن - يجذب
missing	مفقود	(have) a place in my heart	لها مكان فى قلبى
pay with his life	يدفع حياته ثمنًا لـ	be (apart)	منفصل - متباعد
weakly	بضعف		
consider	يفكر		

Provis suddenly jumped up and leapt into the police officer's boat. He grabbed Compeyson and pulled him to his feet. The crew of the steamer could not stop the ship and it passed close by us moments later. A large wave swept over us. There were shouts as our boat filled up with water, and then began to sink.



I was **struggling** to swim, and was pulled out of the river by the police officers. Herbert and Startop had already been rescued, but Provis and Compeyson were missing. Then we saw a dark shape in the water. It was Provis! He had been hit on the head by the steamer as it passed by. We pulled him into the boat, too, and I sat with him. Compeyson did not come back up. Provis had struggled with him under the water and pushed him away. He did not see what happened to him after that.

Provis lay in the bottom of the boat and I held his hand. He had been so kind to me! I looked at him now, and felt only pity. He had left Australia to return to England for me, and now he might have to pay with his life.

'You can become a gentleman without me, my boy,' Provis said, weakly.

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

"I will not leave you," I replied.

Provis was taken to the prison hospital, where I visited him every day. I could not leave him now, but my debts were growing. Herbert had a new job in Egypt, and Mr Clarriker had asked if I would also like to work for him there. He had agreed to give me some time to **consider** his offer.

When Provis appeared in court, he was **found guilty.** To my horror, he and thirty-two other criminals were all given life sentences at once. Some were crying, but Provis was calm. He knew that this might happen.

I visited Provis in the prison hospital for one last time. He was very weak.

'Provis,' I said, 'Your daughter is still alive! She is very beautiful, and I love her!'

Provis looked at me affectionately. Then his hold on my hand became weaker, and he died.

I was very tired, and worried about my debts.

Soon I became very ill, and I did not know what day or what time it was. The illness gave me strange dreams. I heard voices talking to me and frightening memories of the fire at Miss Havisham's house came back to me.

One morning, however, I opened my eyes and saw Joe. He had been looking after me, like a child, for weeks. He was so kind!

When I was feeling better, Joe had some news for me. Miss Havisham had recently died, leaving most of her money to Estella. She had also left some money to Mr Matthew Pocket, because I had told her she should help him. I was very pleased to hear that I had been able to help him.

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

I also found out that Orlick was in prison! With some other men, he had **broken into** Uncle Pumblechook's house and tried to rob him, but Uncle Pumblechook had recognised him.

Joe continued to look after me and I became stronger and healthier each day.

One morning, I was surprised to find that Joe had gone, but he had left a letter for me. It said that he had paid all my debts, so now I would not go to prison. The letter was signed : "Your best friend always, Joe."

I knew then that I must go back to the blacksmith's very soon to thank him. I also felt that I must see Biddy. I wanted to tell her how sorry I was that I had hurt her in the past and I hoped now that she might marry me.

It was a beautiful summer day when I returned to the blacksmith's. Nobody was in the house when I arrived, but after a few minutes, I saw Joe and Biddy together in the street. They were delighted to see me, and Biddy began to cry.

"It's my wedding day, Pip!' Biddy said, happily. "Joe and I have just got married!"



They welcomed me back to the blacksmith's, and although the news surprised me, I was glad that I had never told Joe that I hoped to marry Biddy.

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

"You have the best husband in the world, Biddy!" I said. 'And Joe, you have the best wife!'

I asked them to forgive me. They both told me they would, but they also said there was nothing to forgive.

It was time for me to leave. Within a few weeks I had sold everything I had in London. Then I travelled to Egypt, to work for Mr Clarriker. After some years there, Herbert and I both became managers in Mr Clarriker's business.

Eleven years passed before I saw Joe and Biddy again. They were very happy at the blacksmith's and had two children, a little boy and a little girl. Joe told me that his son was called Pip, after me. He and Biddy welcomed me warmly, and it felt as though I had never been away.

'What kind people they are,' I said to myself. "I am so lucky to know such good people.'

That night, I went to the place where Miss Havisham's house used to be. It was no longer there; instead, I found a large, untidy garden. As I walked in this strange place with the stars shining brightly above me, I thought of Estella. She had been very unhappy with Bentley Drummle. He had been cruel to her, and so she felt she had no choice but to leave him. Several years ago Drummle had died in an accident with a horse, and I did not know if Estella had married again.

And then I saw her. Estella was no longer beautiful. She was older of course, but she looked tired, and her eyes were sad. But she still **fascinated** me.

I called to her, and we sat down to talk. "I have not been here for many, many years," Estella said. "But I have returned tonight to say goodbye to this land. I have sold it now.' Then she said quietly, "I have often thought of you, Pip."

"You have always **had a place in my heart,"** I replied.

"I have been hurt, just as much as I hurt you," she said, 'and now I understand how you felt. Please tell me that we are friends, Pip'.

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com

'We are friends!' I said at once.

"And we will continue to be friends, even when we are **apart,'** she added.

As we left the untidy garden, I felt sure, however, that we would never be apart again.



MASTER YOUR SKILLS
اتقن المهارات اللغوية
EL-MONASSER
فى اللغة الانجليزية
امنح ثقتك لمن يستحق
A B C D E

Check your Understanding Chapter 12

• **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. After her husband's death, she ..... to bring up her children.
   a. struggled b. relaxed c. boosted d. rescued
2. My father told us about his ..... abroad.
   a. advice b. topics c. memories d. tips
3. Some armed people broke ..... the villa and stole some money and jewels.
   a. on b. in c. onto d. into
4. I love my sons; they ..... a big place in my heart.
   a. earn b. have c. take d. make
5. We haven't decided yet; we are ..... where to spend the weekend.
   a. considering b. celebrating c. avoiding d. neglecting

• **Definitions :**

1. ..... means a strong feeling of shock and fear.
   a. Brilliance b. Darkness c. Horror d. Joy
2. To..... means to enter a building or car by using force, in order to steal something.
   a. break into b. give up c. take place d. throw away
3. The place where a trial is held, or the people there, especially the judge and the jury who examine the evidence and decide whether someone is guilty or not guilty is called a/an ..... .
   a. office b. warehouse c. orphanage d. court
4. ..... means having done something wrong or a crime.
   a. Injure b. Injury c. Guilt d. Guilty
5. Something that you remember from the past about a person, or experience is a/an ..... .
   a. memory b. souvenir c. article d. award

موقع الدحيحة كتب وملخصات ثانوية عامة
www.aldhiha..com